Aquaculture

Aquaculture

The Farming and Husbandry of Freshwater and Marine Organisms

John E. Bardach
Hawaii Institute of Marine Biology

John H. Ryther
Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution

and

William O. McLarney
Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution

WILEY-INTERSCIENCE, A DIVISION OF JOHN WILEY & SONS, INC
NEW YORK • LONDON • SYDNEY • TORONTO

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

Bardach John E

Aquaculture the farming and husbandry of freshwater and marine organisms

Includes bibliographies

I Aquaculture I Ryther John H., joint author
II McLarney William O joint author III Title

SH135 B37 639.3 72 2516

ISBN 471 04825 9 (cloth) ISBN 471 04826 7 (paper)

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6

Preface

Much of the success of the green revolution lies in the planned systems approach that was followed in developing certain key crops. Yet husbandry of land animals in the developed world had already taken a similar approach, including the development of automation. Chicken, for example, are a highly efficient source of animal protein production. On a modern chicken farm, perhaps best called an industry, adequate fixed and variable inputs permit one man to produce 500 tons or more of meat per year. He obtains his chicks from a hatchery and only tends to feeding, watering, and cleaning devices. It is relevant here that part of the variable cost inputs, namely feed, is spent for fish meal, that is, cheap aquatic animal protein.

The question has been asked if one could rear aquatic animals in a manner similar to these chicken production-line assemblies. This question is pertinent, not only to obtain, for example, the fish meal protein base, but also because there are large areas available in the developing world where water is or can be supplied and where intensive *aquaculture** might well be practiced. Also, it has been said that it may be cheaper, pound per pound, to grow aquatic rather than land animals for food because they are of the same density as the medium in which they live and require only containers for their water rather than supporting and sheltering structures, such as stables and huts. Since man is a land dweller, it is logical that he applied scientific and engineering skills to land animal production first and foremost, especially since he could, and still can, gather, rather than grow and tend, fish from the sea and inland waters. That process—traditional fisheries—rather than aquaculture has

* Even though often called aquiculture—in consonance with agriculture—aquaculture is the etymologically correct term.

received significant technological inputs so that the weight of sea fish harvested per man per year in the well mechanized fisheries for cheap sources of fish meal the previously mentioned chicken feed is easily twice or more that attained on a mechanized chicken farm

Aside from the lack of attention to aquaculture so far there exist in it biotechnical and economic obstacles of peculiar dimensions to efficiency upgrading water rather than air is *the environment of the animals* we wish to rear in part this is the reason why animal husbandry in water is far less developed than the corresponding branch of agriculture on land For instance unused chicken feed and excreta—even at high densities—are easily disposed of at least in the space where the animals grow That poultry farms present off site pollution problems is another matter, but at least the air in the chicken house is not full of feed or droppings In contrast in the water unused feed as well as metabolic products surround the animals befoul the medium and impose the need for continuous flushing which requires either an overabundance of water or costly recycling schemes Furthermore young chickens—and calves and piglets after weaning—eat the same food as their parents not so most cold blooded aquatic animals Their larvae undergo several transformations from hatching to their adult stages (e g six in the case of the shrimp) during which they neither resemble the parents nor consume the same food In the life cycle fish and invertebrates alike recapitulate their evolutionary history in the water instead of warm blooded animals *in ovo* or *in utero* Growing fish and invertebrates requires therefore attention to larval survival and larval feeding and imposes constraints on successfully rearing them from the egg At the same time the large number of eggs they produce affords certain advantages even for the selective rearing of desirable strains

Man has tried for millennia to overcome these obstacles and with some animals he has been very successful indeed others hold considerable promise In a few cases helped by specially favorable conditions man has been able to surpass the efficiency attained with chicken producing more than *100 000 lb* of flesh per man per year (e g mussels in the Bays of Galicia Spain and sewage stream fattened carp in Indonesia) In other cases though not growing as much bulk aquacultural entrepreneurs do a lucrative business (e g shrimp in Japan under rather unique socio-economic conditions trout in Denmark and the Snake River Valley of the United States and milkfish and Chinese carp in Southeast Asia) Even for them but especially considering the world s need for nutrition it is clearly worthwhile to apply more technological and engineering principles to aquaculture than has been done in the past The result would then be substantial improvements in production efficiency at various

levels of intensity. One aim of this book is to provide a useful baseline for such endeavors by describing what is being done in aquaculture now in many parts of the world.

The division of the world into nutritionally and otherwise rich countries and poor and needy ones is a reality, much as one may deplore it, and aquaculture develops under somewhat different premises in each region. In the technically advanced countries it is strictly a question of producing mostly luxury food commodities at competitive costs for a diversified, often protein-glutted food market (or products for high monetary return or recreation). In the developing world the predominant problem is one of producing additional animal proteins, which may be so scarce there that any meat, unless excessively cheap, is a luxury commodity available only to the relatively wealthy few. The corollary here is that especially in developing nations herbivores or plankton filter feeders are most suitable for aquaculture, producing the most per surface or volume of water from the more-or-less natural amenities, such as solar energy, existing standing or flowing waters, and natural or man-enhanced fertility.

The rearing of herbivores as well as carnivores modifies the natural ecology of land or water by passing through the system energy and materials at a faster rate than that set there by natural evolution—faster than nature intended. This practice requires labor and installations and is likely to accelerate natural dysfunctions—waste accumulations and the like—which must be coped with through technical, hence economic, inputs. Thus an aquacultural product is likely to cost more per pound than many if not most that can be gathered through fisheries from natural aquatic populations. Aquaculture will not replace fisheries. However, it may, and in our opinion is likely to, supplement them increasingly as the natural production limit is reached in one after another of the large fishing areas of the world. True, there are presently unexploited fishing grounds in the Indian Ocean, the Indonesian Archipelago, Australian waters, and elsewhere that eventually could permit an expansion of traditional fishery products to perhaps double the present level In addition there are such unused resources as the Antarctic krill where exploitation may become technically and economically feasible. But these areas have natural limits beyond which their yields cannot be sustained.

Seafaring, including the quest for fish, and the domestication of land plants and animals have enabled man to spread over the globe. We now wish to explore what species can be domesticated in the sea or in lakes and rivers, especially with the development of some technical mastery over the once alien, liquid portion of our biosphere. It is not surprising that aquaculture has advanced farther in fresh than in salt water and

that mariculture is still in its infancy Thus the only truly domesticated aquatic animals are carp and trout rather than saltwater creatures

Whether we wish to grow crab or mullet lobster or shrimp and whether the first consideration is to make money or to supply additional animal proteins in a country s diet we should have complete manipulative mastery over the entire life cycle of the animal Provided that ecological considerations and economic reasons prove (e g trout) or suggest (e g shrimp) that an animal can and should be reared the following should be considered (1) *Control over reproductive biology* of the species in question is necessary One should be able to produce offspring at will and at predetermined times Lacking this level of control one should at least be able to gather the young in sufficient abundance (e g oysters) more than once a year especially in the tropics (2) Another set of problems common to all aquaculture concerns *nutrition* and *diseases* As mentioned different larval stages require different foods and the exact nutritional requirements of but few species are known The rearing of animals in close proximity in the water leads easily to their infection with viruses bacteria fungi and multicellular parasites many of which are only cursorily known As in human populations animals under crowding and stress even if they are fish are more likely to succumb to diseases than are calm well nourished ones be it because of poor nutrition or for psychological reasons Thus success in aquaculture requires an understanding of nutrition and diseases of a species and of their interplay with aspects of the animals behavior (3) Economically sound technology—*aquacultural engineering*—must be utilized Technology here ranges from the extremely simple such as the proper construction of ponds or of hand-operated sluice gates that mix fresh with salt water to the more complex such as sophisticated larval rearing schemes that employ pumps filters and ultraviolet sterilization of the water all more or less automated The book treats these three general areas of concern and involvement in sequence Rearing practices of animals are arranged by species according to their occurrence in fresh brackish and salt water

The book is an outgrowth of our longstanding interest in aquaculture with individual practical experiences in cold temperate and tropical regions A report prepared by two of us for the American Institute of Biological Sciences under contract with the President s Council on Marine Resources and Engineering Development sparked the idea in 1968 Although that report may be considered as the nucleus of the present effort a very considerable amount of new information has been added Most of the new material and in fact virtually the entire book in its present guise is eminently the product of the writing talents and organizational abilities of the third author

Our purpose in the book is to give an overview of present, and to some extent past, practices of food aquaculture the world over, within our language and subject to the following constraints. We do not wish to speculate excessively about what might be done if certain incipient technologies and scientific hunches were advanced and perfected. We can, of course, only report what is available in the literature and what workers in the field are willing to tell us. It must be understood that some aquaculture operations are highly competitive, purely profit-oriented ventures and that even scientists in them consider some facets of what they do their secrets, which are not to be published or otherwise divulged. Their practices are often experimental, however, and as likely to be scrapped as they are to be operationally perfected; these then would not represent "the state of the art" and would hardly contribute to the conservative report that it is our intent to give. In addition one must note that many practices, especially in the developing countries, are not reported in print. Thus we may well have missed some important items here and there. We can only add to our apology for this shortcoming that we were unable to prevent it. We have restricted ourselves to food species and to some mention of their foods, respectively. For reasons of space and unity we have omitted in our treatment ornamental or industrial living aquatic resources, such as pearls or aquarium fishes or marine colloids from red and brown algae.

News stories of the last decade show substantial preoccupation with the oceans and their use and abuse; the growing of crops in the sea is prominent in the former category. Much has been said in this context, often in glowing terms, that on closer examination has made little ecological or economic sense. We hope this book provides a basis on which such speculations can be measured. We have compiled a welter of information from literatures of various countries that should be useful throughout the world, especially in regions where it is difficult to come by much comparative material. But we realize that in a field as fast growing as this one we cannot be as up to date as we would like to be. We offer this caution to our prospective readers who, we hope, can acquire through our book a "wet green thumb."

The information given in this book comes from many sources, the most valuable and timely of which are interviews and correspondence with individuals working in the various areas of specialization. We acknowledge these contributions at the end of each chapter, but we also wish to express here our grateful appreciation for their generous assistance, as well as that of any others whose names we may have inadvertently omitted. The drawings were prepared by Ilyse Rosenthal and Ann Hinds, to whose skill and patience we are indebted, and we wish par-

ticularly to acknowledge the invaluable assistance of Anita Gunning with many of the tasks involved in the preparation of the manuscript

JOHN E BARDACH
JOHN H RYTHER
WILLIAM O MCLARNEY

Kanehoe, Hawaii
Woods Hole, Massachusetts

Contents

Aquaculture

1

General Principles and Economics

Husbandry of aquatic organisms, though a novelty to much of the world, has been practiced through the ages. Oyster culture, for instance, thrived in ancient Rome and Gaul. There are earlier, less certain reports of artificial propagation of fish; the legendary Chinese Croesus, Fan-Li, of the fifth century B.C., is said to have reared carps in ponds. Although the description of their arrangement is reminiscent of the legendary well-field system of ancient Chinese social organization, its authenticity is not established. It has been speculated that aquaculture may have even more remote roots in the highly organized ancient water-oriented civilizations of the Near East, in which fish were an important dietary component.

No matter the antiquity of aquaculture, the contribution of the world's waters to man's diet still stems largely from the hunting and gathering of fish and shellfish from untended stocks. There has been a spectacular increase in the production of world fisheries, but wild stocks of aquatic organisms are limited, and ecological reasoning suggests that we must eventually reach a ceiling on the harvest of wild aquatic organisms. Recognition of these facts, coupled with the increasing efficiency of communications and the establishment of international technical agencies, such

as the Food and Agricultural Organization of the United Nations has led to a nearly worldwide interest in the last two decades in the potential of aquatic husbandry

Neither aquaculture nor any other method of food production will be a panacea for human nutritional problems but all can and must contribute if the specter of hunger is to be banned Aquaculture * that is the growing of aquatic organisms under controlled conditions can make a unique contribution to nutrition in many parts of the world by virtue both of its extremely high productivity in many situations and the fact that aquatic crops are primarily protein crops rather than sources of starchy staple foods In this regard it should be noted that certain aquatic organisms may be better converters of primary foods than ruminants fowl or even pigs Some such as filter feeding fishes and mollusks feed on microscopic plankton which cannot be used directly by man

Whereas many existing aquaculture enterprises including some of the most successful rely on supplying high protein feed to produce a luxury product for human consumption aquaculture has the potential of producing large quantities of lower-cost protein rich food This has been done in parts of the Orient but elsewhere applied scientific technological and managerial skills must be improved and substantial seed funds must be provided if aquaculture is to assume comparable importance

Aquaculture is by no means restricted to food production Sport fishermen have for centuries relied on hatcheries to supplement wild stocks and will increasingly do so in the future as recreational needs among developed nations grow in the face of much environmental degradation Bait organisms are cultured for both sport and commercial purposes Propagation of ornamental fish and plants constitutes an important industry in some areas Pearls are cultured in appropriate molluscan species and goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) and other species are commercially reared for use as laboratory animals We have however limited ourselves to those organisms which are raised for use as human food † which must be judged as the most important function of aquaculture at this point in history

Aquaculture also contributes to human nutrition through the production of unicellular algae for use in animal feeds Human and other animal

* Even though the term aqu culture is often used—in consonance with agriculture—it must be stressed that aquaculture is etymologically correct

† As the methods for growing certain fish (e g salmon pay as you go pond trout and catfish) are the same whether they be used for market or for sport the use of portions of the fish crop the rearing of which we treat may not be primarily but only secondarily for food

waste is sometimes used in this process in a manner that is ecologically sound and, under certain conditions, perhaps less costly than traditional sewage disposal methods. Attempts have been and are being made to apply similar methods to the production of human food items. Obstacles to large-scale adoption of such methods are sociocultural as well as technical, in that people would have to learn to accept new and unusual foods. We believe that practical aquaculture for such purposes is relatively far in the future, whereas production of species presently used for food, in some cases involving the use of organic wastes, is imminent and in some cases has been accomplished. For this reason, for the sake of unity, and because the culture of fish, shellfish, and multicellular plants comprises a vast subject in itself, we shall treat only organisms raised to be consumed more or less directly by man.

We have attempted to bring together information on cultured organisms from all over the world. The necessity for such a treatment is pointed up, for example, by the present simultaneous experimentation with mullet culture in Israel, Taiwan, Hawaii, and Great Britain, the widespread adoption of hybrid tilapia, and the worldwide practice of oyster culture. It is hoped that this book will make some contribution to the coordination of such research and management practices and also help researchers to avoid costly and time-consuming duplication. In this regard, however, planned international and regional exchanges of information are at least equally important.

Following a discussion, in this chapter, of general principles of aquaculture, including biological and some economic considerations, the book is organized by groups of organisms: true freshwater fish, fish which can adapt to varying salinities, true marine fish, invertebrates (mostly marine), and plants. An appendix treats some principles of construction and management of ponds.

RANGES OF AQUACULTURAL PRACTICES

Aquaculture is akin to terrestrial agriculture in that it cannot economically be carried out just anywhere. A site for aquaculture must present certain natural amenities, particularly an ample supply of water of suitable temperature, salinity, and fertility. It is also necessary that the culturist exercise control through ownership, lease, or other means of secure holding; this consideration is problematical for marine and brackish water aquaculture in many parts of the world, including much of the United States, where the traditional view is that the sea, its shores, and its resources are common property, available to all. Where this attitude

prevails, aquaculture is effectively thwarted Elsewhere, aquaculture in coastal waters is fostered by protective grants or leases In Japan, where some of the most advanced and the greatest variety of aquacultural enterprises are carried out and are strongly encouraged by all levels of government, the prefectural governments (comparable to states or provinces elsewhere) designate the areas to be used for aquaculture, and the local fishermen s cooperative associations, unique and highly effective organizations allocate subareas to individual aquaculturists at no charge

However the site is held, it must usually be modified to greater or lesser extent, the amount of time and effort expended on management varies considerably In a general way, aquaculture practices may be characterized by the relative intensity of human effort applied to them Such a treatment permits the following arrangement according to increasing inputs of capital and labor, often with corresponding increases in yields

1 Transplantation of organisms from poor to better growing grounds not considered aquaculture in this book, is sometimes classified as the least intensive form of aquaculture It is most prevalent in the Soviet Union, where by 1965 more than 50 species of fish had been acclimatized in 1225 lakes, 80 rivers and nearly 100 reservoirs

2 Transplantation often involves hatchery reared fish, and transplanted stocks may be partially or totally dependent on hatcheries for their maintenance A well known recent example is the successful introduction of the coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) to Lake Michigan Hatchery propagation has also often been employed to augment stocks of naturally occurring species This practice was particularly common in the United States and Canada during the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries At that time, large numbers of fish fry and very early larvae of invertebrates were released, almost invariably with no discernible benefit to the fishery in question More recently it has been shown in a number of instances that if young animals can be reared to a later stage before release they may ultimately contribute significantly to fisheries

3 Fish and invertebrates may be induced to enter special enclosures where they are trapped and held until ready for harvest This technique with virtually no further labor input, is used successfully to grow shrimp and various euryhaline fishes in the Malay Peninsula and the Mediterranean area respectively

4 The foregoing technique may be intensified by fertilization and/or the installation of devices to control the rate of exchange of water Such schemes are widely applied in the culture of milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) and shrimp in southeast Asia

5. More complete control of stocking may be achieved through the use of artificial enclosures so constructed as not to permit entry of wild fish. Earthen ponds are the oldest and most common of such enclosures. In classical freshwater fish culture, as best exemplified by the polyculture of cyprinids in China, food for the fish is produced "naturally" by fertilizing the pond. It is to be noted that this level of aquaculture represents the dividing line between what might still be called subsistence aquaculture, albeit with a high application of labor, and endeavors demanding higher capital as well as intensive labor inputs. The maximum yields which can be achieved with labor-intensive subsistence aquaculture are around 5000 to 8000 kg/ha and occur in tropical and subtropical regions.

6. Pond culture may be further intensified by feeding the stock directly, a practice which is usually essential in enclosures constructed of cement or wood, in the increasingly popular floating net cages, or wherever carnivorous animals are raised. Examples of such high-intensity methods in practice include catfish farming in the southern United States, trout farming in the United States and Europe, and the culture of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), eels (*Anguilla japonica*), yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*), kuruma shrimp (*Penaeus japonicus*), and other animals in Japan.

7. Another culture method that merits special treatment is raft culture of sessile invertebrates and macroscopic algae. Although the source of stock may be natural production (hatcheries also play a role, notably in oyster culture in the United States) and food is not artificially provided, the construction and management of the growing facilities usually involve considerable labor and expense, so that raft culture must be considered an intensive form of aquaculture. Probably the highest yields ever attained through aquaculture have involved the use of rafts; for example, 300,000 kg/ha of mussels (*Mytilus edulis*) have been raised in the Galician bays of Spain.

Yields obtained by this method, or through culture in floating cages, depend, however, on a much larger area or volume of water than the one in which the installations are found; they depend also on adequate tidal or current exchanges whereby food is carried to and/or wastes are removed from the sessile (oysters or mussels) or enclosed (e.g., yellowtail) animals.

With the preceding categories in mind, the reader may judge the approximate intensity, in terms of labor and other costs, of any aquaculture enterprise. Unfortunately, however, there is much more information available on yields per unit of water surface or volume than on the

TABLE 1 SELECTED EXAMPLES OF AQUACULTURAL YIELDS ARRANGED BY ASCENDING INTENSITY OF CULTURE METHODS

CULTURE METHOD	SPECIES	YIELD [KG/(HA)(YEAR)] OR ECONOMIC GAIN
Transplantation	Plaice (Denmark, 1919–1957)	Cost benefit of transplantation, 1 1 1–1 3 in best years (other social benefits)
	Pacific salmon (U S)	Cost benefit, based on return of hatchery fish in commercial catch, 1 2 3–5 1
Release of reared young into natural environment	Pacific salmon (Japan)	Cost benefit 1 11–20, on above basis
	Shrimp, abalone, puffer fish (Japan)	Not assessed, reputed to increase income of fishermen
	Brown trout (Denmark, 1961–1963)	Maximum net profit/100 planted fish 163%
Retention in enclosures of young or juveniles from wild populations, no fertilization, no feeding	Mullet Eel miscellaneous fish (Italy)	150–300
	Shrimp (Singapore)	1,250
Stocking and rearing in fertilized enclosures no feeding	Milkfish (Taiwan)	1 000
	Carp and related spp (Israel, S E. Asia)	125–700
	Tilapia (Africa)	100–1,200
	Carp (Java, sewage streams) (¼–½ of water area used)	62 500–125 000
Stocking and rearing with fertilization and feeding	Channel catfish (U S)	3 000
	Carp, mullet (Israel)	2,100
	Tilapia (Cambodia)	8 000–12,000
	Carp and related spp (in polyculture) (China, Hong Kong, Malaysia)	3 000–5 000
	Clarias (Thailand)	97,000

Intensive cultivation in running water; feeding	Rainbow trout (U.S.)	2,000,000 [170 kg/(liter)(sec)][b]
	Carp (Japan)	1,000,000–4,000,000 [about 100 kg/(liter)(sec)]
	Shrimp (Japan)	6,000
Intensive cultivation of sessile organisms, mollusks, and algae	Oysters (Japan, Inland Sea)[a]	20,000
	Oysters (U.S.)	5,000 (best yields)
	Mussels (Spain)[a]	300,000
	Porphyra (Japan)[a]	7,500
	Undaria (Japan)[a]	47,500

[a] Raft-culture calculations based on an area 25% covered by rafts.
[b] See text for volume of flow versus surface as basis of yield.

fixed and variable costs of producing these yields The selective tabulation of Table 1 should be perused with this caution in mind

BIOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES UNDERLYING THE PRACTICE OF AQUACULTURE

Aquatic animals possess a number of advantages for use in husbandry Since the body density of fish and swimming crustaceans is nearly the same as that of the water they inhabit, they are spared the chore of supporting their weight, and thus may devote more food energy to growth than terrestrial animals In addition, fish and invertebrates, being cold blooded animals, expend no energy on thermoregulation (Tuna and other fast swimmers are an exception here) This property would further enhance their potential growth rate, which is far more plastic than that of higher vertebrates Russian sources aver that accumulation of flesh in the body of carp, per unit of assimilated food, is one and one half times as rapid as in swine or chickens and twice as rapid as in cattle or sheep Repetition of these measurements would be of practical as well as theoretical interest

Sessile shellfish achieve economies of energy by replacing the active search for food with a highly efficient method of filter feeding The rate of filtration varies, but it may amount to 450 liters/day in large, healthy, favorably situated oysters

Nor should it be overlooked that a body of water is a three-dimensional growing space Many of the highest aquaculture yields have been achieved through polyculture of fish inhabiting different strata of the water column or by hanging strings of mollusks from floating structures, both methods which make use of the entire water column Strictly speaking, such methods are not unique to aquaculture Three-dimensional or multistory gardening incorporating trees, bushes, and low-growing plants has been developed, but to date aquaculture is alone in widespread commercial application of three-dimensional growing systems

The principal disadvantages of the aquatic medium for production of human food have to do with the general properties of liquids and the specific property of water as the universal solvent These two characteristics render physical and chemical contamination of bodies of water much more difficult to prevent or control than is the case for expanses of land We need not cite specific instances of water pollution which have been detrimental or lethal to aquatic organisms or their consumers

Of course some "pollutants," most notably human and animal metabolites, may be turned to the culturist's advantage, a number of instances of use of sewage or animal wastes as fertilizers are described in the text.

However, the application of organic wastes should be under the strict control of the culturist if consistent results are to be achieved. The same applies to heat; most of the large energy-generating stations, which are becoming increasingly prevalent, use water as a coolant. The result is often accurately termed "thermal pollution" but may, under carefully controlled conditions, be a boon to the aquaculturist.

Other pollutants, such as pesticides, heavy metal compounds, and polychlorinated biphenyls, are in no way beneficial to aquatic organisms. Yet they are present in ever-increasing concentrations in many waters. They present a particularly severe problem in heavily populated or industrialized areas or where large amounts of chemicals are employed in terrestrial agriculture. From such areas, they may be widely disseminated by water currents. Thus the aquaculturist or fisherman who relies on the sea, a large lake, or a river as a source of water or fish is often confronted with dangerous pollutants which are neither of his making nor subject to his control. While the majority of current research and development efforts in fisheries and aquaculture are directed at marine and brackish water resources, we feel that expansion of freshwater aquaculture should be at least equally encouraged. With proper management and intelligent site selection, freshwater culturists may largely avoid the pollution problem.

DESIRABLE CHARACTERISTICS IN A CULTURED ORGANISM

Since aquaculture developed during times when water pollution was not a serious problem, resistance to pollutants was not a consideration in species selection. Today it might reasonably be added to the following list of desirable attributes. Even with pollution resistance off the list, these properties limit choice greatly and explain why, among the 25,000 or so species of fish and the many thousand invertebrates, only a very few have thus far been successfully employed in intensive and commercially feasible aquaculture. In addition to such obvious factors as size, availability, and nutritive or gustatory value, the following biological attributes should be taken into account in considering any aquatic organism for culture:

1. Reproductive habits. Although it is highly desirable that man be capable of breeding the species in question in captivity, it is not strictly necessary. For example, the important milkfish and mullet industries of southeast Asia are solely dependent on natural reproduction to maintain their stocks, as are most shellfish culture enterprises. In such cases, the

reproductive habits of the culture species lead to the availability of adequate numbers of young where they may be captured for stocking

Culture systems based on capture of wild stock are, of course, ultimately limited by the success of the natural population in reproducing itself In some cases for instance mullet, milkfish, and shrimp culture in the Philippines and Taiwan culturists now experience limitations in the harvest of fry Further expansion of the industry would be made possible by the development of means of breeding the animals in captivity Success in such an endeavor would also do much to stabilize the fry market and would permit the genetic selection of stocks, as has been done for virtually every important terrestrial food organism

Many ingenious methods have been devised toward the end of controlled reproduction of aquatic animals, but the most far reaching advance was the development in Brazil in 1934 of the process of hypophysation of fish, which appears to have near universal applicability In hypophysation, female, and occasionally male breeders are injected with suspensions or extractions of pituitary gland material The treatment raises the concentration of the sex hormones in the bloodstream of the recipient and facilitates maturation and shedding of the sex products In addition to permitting the controlled breeding of hitherto unspawned species hypophysation permits the culturist to exercise some control over the time of spawning

2 Requirements of the eggs and larvae. The hardier the eggs and larvae, the easier the culturist's task. In general, it may be stated that animals which produce fewer and larger eggs have larger, and therefore less delicate larvae. Such animals, which include most of the intensively cultured species, usually make some provision to protect their eggs (e.g , trout bury their eggs, tilapia hatch them in their mouths, shrimp carry them on the body), but the culturist may often successfully apply artificial means of preventing predation or damage

In contrast, many marine fish and most aquatic invertebrates produce small eggs which hatch into tiny, delicate larvae Such species depend for their survival not on hardiness but on sheer reproductive capacity With many of these animals, particularly the invertebrates, the situation is further complicated by the fact that the larvae may go through many developmental stages, each with its own distinct environmental and nutritional requirements, before assuming the adult form Thus it is not surprising that culture of most of this second group of animals has succeeded only on a laboratory scale, if at all

3 Feeding habits There are two general approaches to feeding cultured aquatic animals One is to raise animals which are low on the food chain, supply them with a low-cost feed, if any, and aim to produce a

protein product that can be sold in quantity at a low price or consumed at the subsistence level. The second is to select a species high on the food chain, which itself requires a high-protein diet. Food for such an animal will ordinarily be relatively expensive, thus the culturist's product will be a high-priced "luxury" food. Both approaches have often been successful; the point is that in order to determine whether he can economically grow a particular species, the culturist must know its feeding habits and nutritional requirements and the cost of satisfying them.

Usually fertilization of the water, rather than direct feeding, is employed in rearing the first group of animals. Though fertilization of fish ponds is an ancient practice in the Orient, knowledge of the effects of fertilizers in aquatic systems lags decades behind what is known for terrestrial communities. As is the case on land, fertilization of waters is as much a matter of art as science, and in the Orient, where pond fertilization is most extensively and successfully employed, local variation of dosage and application is great.

Linked with the process of fertilization is the concept of polyculture —the growing together of different species or age groups. Almost all fertile bodies of water produce a variety of food organisms; for the most efficient utilization of these organisms it is essential that a variety of species be present to crop them. The more completely the culturist can fill the available feeding niches, the greater the total weight of flesh he can produce.

Since the culturist who chooses the second approach—direct feeding of an animal high on the food chain—usually supplies only one or two feeds, he is more likely to restrict himself to monoculture. However, any body of water produces a certain amount of natural food, and where carnivorous fish are cultured, this supply may be enhanced by the fertilizing effect of excess food and the metabolites of the stock. Thus the culturist again has the opportunity to increase total fish production through intelligent polyculture.

The grower of carnivorous species is sometimes able to reduce costs by taking advantage of inexpensive sources of food. For example, one of the reasons for Denmark's preeminence in commercial trout culture is the ready availability of trash fish at Danish fishing ports. Another sort of economy may be achieved by the use of pelleted feeds, which are much more easily handled than many unprocessed feeds. An increasing number of livestock feed concerns, particularly in the United States, are adding such fish feeds to their catalogs.

A word of caution is in order regarding feeding: The fish culture literature contains more than a few reports of conversion efficiencies of 1:1 or only slightly more. Such reports, which appear to defy the second law

of thermodynamics, are based on the dry weight of food and wet weight of fish The best verified conversion efficiencies are on the order of 3 to 4 1, which is comparable to or slightly better than the best results obtained on land, where intensive feeding of animals is a much older process

Caution is also in order in interpreting the reported yields of filter feeding mollusks Although it is true that higher yields may be obtained by culture of herbivores than carnivores and that the highest yields ever recorded for aquaculture have been achieved by growers of essentially herbivorous shellfish, it should be borne in mind that these yields depend not on local production of food organisms but on the action of tides and currents in transporting food organisms grown in a far wider area than that inhabited by the shellfish Production figures from a few strategically located rafts cannot be extrapolated, on an areal basis, to an entire coastal or estuarine region

4 Adaptability to crowding It is obvious that the more individuals of a given size that can be confined in a given space, the greater the potential production of that space Crowding however, creates a host of problems, many of them unique to the aquatic environment Growth of some species of fish has been shown to depend on population density, yet this most certainly is not true of the common carp Far too little is known of the behavioral adaptations of fish to crowding For example when channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) which are normally territorial in the wild are kept in ponds at very high population densities their territorial behavior breaks down but their appetites do not suffer Other territorial species for example, some of the centrarchids, do not appear capable of this adaptation

Concentration of waste products in standing water increases directly with population density, but this problem and the associated problem of oxygen depletion may be largely compensated for by increasing the exchange rate of water, raceways and net cages may be stocked at densities unthinkable in pond culture Even such species as the rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*), which has quite a high oxygen requirement, have thus been grown at extremely high densities

Another concomitant of high population density is the facilitation of transmission of disease This problem is not usually alleviated by rapid circulation of the water but calls for specific preventive or curative measures The oldest disease control method is the fallowing of ponds, with or without lime treatment More recently, chemical treatments have been developed for a number of diseases, and antibiotics are often incorporated in fish diets as a prophylactic measure, though this practice is of doubtful advisability Present emphasis with many species is on the selective breeding of disease resistant stock.

Yet another crowding effect sometimes observed is cannibalism, particularly in the early life stages. This problem may be alleviated to some extent by provision of ample amounts of food and shelter, but with some animals, notably pikes, pike-perches, and lobsters, it is impossible to stock them above a certain density.

THE GENERAL ECONOMICS OF AQUACULTURE

The success of aquatic farming ventures depends largely on the marketability of the product and the wise and efficient use of certain natural factors which render a particular site suitable for a particular form of aquaculture. For instance, the success of trout farming in southern Idaho hinges on the presence of an abundant supply of water at an optimal temperature for growth of salmonid fishes, and the farming of sessile mollusks originated, and remains concentrated, in areas where the seas are fertile and tidal exchange considerable. It is, of course, often possible to modify extensively natural environments or provide artificial habitats, but it is obviously most conducive to profitable operation to make maximum use of naturally favorable conditions.

It is often debated whether precedence should be given in aquaculture to development and improvement of programs designed to improve subsistence diets, or whether a more conventional, profit-oriented course should be pursued. In the latter case, it is often hoped that persons other than entrepreneurs and consumers will benefit initially through increased employment opportunities, and that eventually mass production will permit the price of the crop to drop until it is within the reach of all. It seems obvious, at least from a global vantage point, that high priority should be accorded to programs which show some promise of contributing to the alleviation of protein deficiencies. To discuss the relative efficiency in achieving this end of the two approaches just described would lead us into a discussion of economic development and far away from the subject of aquaculture. Certainly both approaches have been and will be explored, regardless of our opinions, so we will confine ourselves to analyzing the economics of a few selected aquacultural ventures.

It must be remembered that the term "luxury food" is relative and is defined within the context of a particular national or regional economy. Further, reliable information on the economics of aquaculture is scarce and difficult to obtain, both because of the understandable reluctance of many successful operators to reveal their economic secrets and because the situation, particularly in areas like the United States, where aquaculture is relatively new, is in a state of flux.

If our examples are drawn more from commercial enterprises than from subsistence aquaculture, it is only because the latter is even harder to analyze than the former Not only are subsistence operations more diffuse and accurate data more scarce, but no one has yet ventured to quantify in dollars and cents the difference between a healthy, well nourished and a sick, malnourished child

Probably no form of aquaculture has been subjected to more intensive economic analysis than the young catfish culture industry in the United States (Table 2) It seems solidly entrenched as part of the 'agribusiness complex, but it is obvious that many of the early expectations of large and easy profits were extremely unrealistic. It is said that, at present, less than 10% of the American catfish farmers are making a profit, yet individual operators have realized returns on investment as high as 55%

The crucial factor, as in most agricultural enterprises, is the degree of technical and managerial skill possessed by the operator In fact, according to a publication of the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Fish farming generally requires a higher level of management than conventional agriculture in the sense that the technology as yet lies mainly in the realm of art rather than science' In catfish farming the required skills find expression in the ability of the best culturists to grow large fingerlings to produce larger fish in a growing season than their competitors, to buy or produce cheap feed and to harvest the fish more cheaply and efficiently

It is also interesting to look at the price sensitivity of the catfish industry In the last few years, the price of catfish has dropped considerably and, as might be predicted from Table 3 and Fig 1, the percentage of operators realizing a profit has declined Interestingly, most of the successful growers have been those who have emphasized a single product, usually live or fresh, dressed fish and have restricted themselves to local or regional markets Attempts to diversify with packaged or prepared products and/or to seek a national market often have preceded economic failure This information may not have wide applicability since catfish has historically been only regionally popular in the United States

Looking into the future, it appears likely that the remaining catfish growers will continue to improve their yields for a few years at least The net result may be a further thinning of the ranks until the field is restricted to a few large producers or emphasis may revert to small, low profit operations serving local markets It is conceivable that with further application of cage and raceway culture, improvement of feeding methods and so on the evolution of American catfish culture could parallel that of chicken farming—from a luxury food industry to a staple food

TABLE 2. POTENTIAL ANNUAL PROFIT (PER HA) OF CHANNEL CATFISH CULTURE

UNDER AVERAGE MANAGEMENT		UNDER SUPERIOR MANAGEMENT	
Growing expense		Growing expense	
Fingerlings (1,200 @ 4¢)	$ 48	Fingerlings (1,200 @ 2¢)	$ 24
Chemicals	25	Chemicals	30
Feed (180 days, 22.5 kg/ha, $95/ton)	214	Feed (150 days, 33 kg/ha, $85/ton)	191
Labor	40	Labor (self-feeders)	50
Water pumping	8	Water pumping	8
Fuel and miscellaneous supplies	4	Fuel and miscellaneous supplies	4
Harvesting (4.6¢/kg)	30	Harvesting (2.2¢/kg)	14
Maintenance and taxes	25	Maintenance and taxes	25
Depreciation	13	Depreciation (self-feeders)	15
Interest on working capital	14	Interest on working capital	12
Total	$421	Total	$373
Income (93% survival, 0.56 kg ave. wt., 84¢/kg)	530	Income (93% survival, 0.68 kg ave. wt., 84¢/kg)	636
Profit (before tax)	109	Profit (before tax)	263
Return on investment (before tax)	23%	Return on investment (before tax)	55%
Cost of production		Cost of production	
Not including interest on investment	66¢/kg	Not including interest on investment	48¢/kg
Including interest on investment	73	Including interest on investment	53
Including interest on investment and 20% tax on profit	75	Including interest on investment and 20% tax on profit	73

SOURCE: U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife.

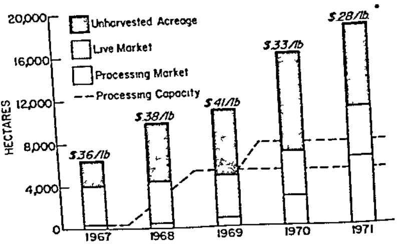
TABLE 3 PRICE SENSITIVITY OF THE CATFISH INDUSTRY

PRICE ($/KG)	PROFIT ($/HA)	RETURN ON FIXED INVESTMENT (%)
1.09	324	28
1.04	272	23
0.88[a]	219	19
0.91[b]	170	14
0.89	119	10
0.84	67	6
0.79	15	1
0.74	−37	−3
0.69	−89	−8
0.64	−141	−12
0.59	−183	−16

[a] 1969 average price to producers
[b] 1968 average price to producers
SOURCE U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife

source For this change to take place, however, would most certainly require a massive promotion campaign to increase the acceptance of catfish on American tables

As if the situation were not confusing enough, the entire industry in the United States is threatened by foreign competition Since its inception in the early 1960s, the center of the industry has shifted from Arkansas to southern Mississippi and Louisiana as a consequence of the longer



* To transform lb → kg multiply by 2.2

FIG 1 An estimate of the status of the catfish industry in the U.S

growing season enjoyed by culturists in the latter locations. Further southward shifts would take the industry out of the United States. Already a farm in Honduras is capable of shipping frozen, dressed channel catfish to New Orleans at a price lower than that asked by Louisiana growers.

We have earlier asserted that animals which are low on the food chain may be produced more cheaply than carnivores. In making this claim, we assumed that other factors were equal. This, unfortunately, is seldom the case and we cannot offer comparative analyses of the culture of a carnivore and an herbivore within the same economy. A comparison of the American catfish industry with another fairly well analyzed aquaculture industry—milkfish culture in the Philippines—will, however, serve to illustrate the relative importance of biological, technical, and local economic factors.

Annual yields of good catfish and milkfish farms are roughly the same, as are annual profits to capital (Table 4). But the reasons for this similarity are quite different in the two cases.

Milkfish do not require extraneous feeding but subsist on a natural community of algae and associated microinvertebrates known locally as "lab-lab." However, to obtain maximum production of this food and hence the best yield of milkfish, the ponds must be fertilized at a cost which, relative to gross income, closely approaches that of feed in the best-managed catfish farms.

A major cost in Philippine milkfish farming, as in other forms of coastal aquaculture in southeast Asia, is that involved in the construction of ponds, often from virgin mangrove swamps. The large capital investment required for pond construction and related costs relative to the general level of economy of the Philippines and the high interest rate on loans for such purposes prevents the industry from enjoying much higher profits that would otherwise be indicated by yields and operational costs. Government-sponsored long-term, low-interest loans for pond construction could conceivably lower the price of milkfish and other species grown in the same manner to the point where they could represent a significant source of low-cost, high-quality protein for the Philippines and other developing countries. As matters now stand, milkfish is, in fact, more truly a luxury product than channel catfish; it fetches about one-quarter the price of catfish in a country where the average income is less than 5% of that in the United States.

Another group of cultivated organisms still closer to the base of the food chain are the bivalve mollusks. These animals feed directly on the unicellular algae or phytoplankton suspended in the water. No established commercial shellfish practice to date has involved the use of arti-

TABLE 4 ECONOMICS OF A TEN HECTARE MILKFISH PROJECT ($US)[a]

Gross annual income	
15 000 kg of milkfish at $ 22/kg	$3,300
Miscellaneous fish shrimp, crabs, etc.	150
	3,450
Operating expenses	
Annual rental @ $1.50/ha	15
Purchase of 120 000 milkfish fry at $1 50/1,000	180
Salary of one caretaker, $18/*month*	216
Emergency labor	15
Supplies and material	22
30 tons of agricultural lime	9
2,500 kg organic fertilizers and 10 bags chemical fertilizers	787
Miscellaneous	15
Depreciation on equipment	
2% *on concrete* gate	8
20% on wooden gates	20
50% on nets	28
15% on flatboats	27
Interest (10% on capital)	726
Sales charges (brokers commission and other expenses)	158
Fish containers	6
	2 232
Annual net income for 1 year	1,240
Annual profit to capital	17%

[a] Expenses are based on the assumption that (1) the area is virgin mangrove swamp with second growth forest (2) there are at least two creeks to close, (3) the desired elevation is one foot lower than the tide for the area, (4) labor is imported and workers get at least $0 75/day, and (5) area must be leveled and 50% excavated Conversion from pesos at PS 1 00 = $0 15

SOURCE Esso Agroservice Bull No 8, Jan–Feb, 1967

ficial food artificially grown algae, or even the fertilization of natural waters to enhance the growth of the phytoplankton Thus the yields of cultivated shellfish depend, among other things, upon the concentration of food organisms naturally present in the water and rate of movement of water carrying the suspended food to the animals Greatly increased yields per unit of area under cultivation over those obtained by the traditional bottom culture of shellfish have been achieved by using the Japanese technique of three-dimensional culture in which mollusks are suspended from rafts on ropes or wires 10 m or more in length

Grown in this way, the bivalves have access to all of the food organisms suspended in the entire column of water from surface to bottom. A single raft 16 × 25 m in size and suspending 600 10-m strings of oysters is capable of producing over 4 tons of oyster meat per year, though average yields are probably about half that figure.

An economic breakdown of the Japanese oyster industry as practiced in the Inland Sea (Table 5) shows that profits and return on investment are high, as would be expected in a form of aquaculture dependent entirely on natural food. The capital investment is also modest, consisting only of the rather simple rafts (about $400 each), one or more small workboats, and a shed for shucking the oysters. An attempt was made to estimate capital outlay, but the figures may be very generous judging from the small annual cost of interest on capital, and the annual return on investment may therefore also be underestimated.

A distinct economic advantage to the industry is that the area under cultivation is designated by the prefectural government and assigned by the local fishermen's cooperative association to the individual grower at no cost. Raft culture is, however, a labor-intensive form of aquaculture. Labor costs in the Japanese oyster industry may account for as much as

TABLE 5. ECONOMICS (IN $U.S.)[a] OF THE JAPANESE OYSTER INDUSTRY[b] (FOUR EXAMPLES RANKED BY SIZE OF THE OPERATION.)

Rank of grower	1	2	3	4
Area of growing field (ha)	3	6	12	24
Number of rafts	5	9	18	33
Capital investment (est.)[c]	10,000	14,000	19,000	27,000
Labor (hours/year)	5,121	10,963	27,106	28,343
Annual production, shucked meat (kg)	12,019	21,632	52,550	63,511
Annual gross income	6,000	10,000	17,400	32,600
Annual expenditures	2,200	6,500	13,700	23,700
Labor	540	1,800	5,700	9,300
Maintenance	265	930	2,950	3,450
Depreciation	615	1,120	3,100	4,200
All other[d]	780	2,650	1,950	16,750
Interest on capital investment	70	520	410	1,080
Annual profit[d]	3,730	2,980	4,260	7,820
Annual return on investment (%)[c]	38	25	25	33

[a] Conversion at 360 yen = $1.00 U.S.
[b] Data provided by Nansei Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory, Hiroshima, Japan, except where noted.
[c] Estimate of J. H. Ryther, based on personal visit and interviews with growers.
[d] Includes cost of seed oysters, fuel, rent, and charges

50% of gross income, in contrast to about 10% for both U S catfish and Philippine milkfish farming In countries where the cost of labor is appreciably higher than in Japan, raft culture is not economical for that reason alone

It is clear from these few examples that the economic viability of a given aquacultural practice is dependent upon a large number of complex and interacting factors, often more sociological than technical, that are peculiar to the region if not unique to the individual enterprise Broad generalizations and principles concerning the economics of aquaculture thus have little meaning The blueprint of a profitable operation in one location is no guarantee of its successful application in another physical environment or in a different cultural or political setting

Commercial aquacultural enterprises can also be evaluated and compared in terms of the tonnage produced per unit of human labor input. On the basis of the data presented in the preceding tables it can be calculated that approximately 4 tons of Japanese oysters (excluding shell weight), 15 tons of Philippine milkfish, and 30 tons of U.S catfish may be produced per man year of labor Carp culture in the sewage ponds of the Bavaria Power Company near Munich, West Germany, yields over 30 tons per man year (100 tons of carp from 200 ha of ponds tended by 3 men) Trout culture in Denmark yields about 16 tons of fresh fish per man year, whereas on the more efficient trout farms in Idaho, the labor of one man may annually produce over 100 tons of fish The latter figure is also closely approached if not exceeded in the high labor and moderately capital intensive mussel industry of northern Spain It is to be noted that the Spanish mussel industry makes full use of extremely favorable natural amenities (high fertility of the water, protected natural sites, three-dimensional use of the water and its contained food organisms) and that the product therefore becomes relatively cheap

Yields per unit of labor input in aquaculture compare favorably with medium intensity pig and chicken farming but the most advanced and mechanized high-capital input methods of rearing hogs and poultry produce considerably more animal meat per man year of effort than commercial fish farming enterprises Lack of adequate cost accounting and the difficulty in obtaining reliable information make such comparisons tenuous to say the least But it is not unreasonable to assume that the far greater application of research and development to land animal husbandry, as compared to the rearing of aquatic animals is largely responsible for the relative disadvantage in weight produced per man year of aquacultural effort There is no doubt that commercial application of newly developed highly automated methods of feeding and harvesting can greatly improve aquacultural production efficiencies

The foregoing information casts some doubt on the ability of intensive commercial aquaculture to contribute significantly either to the improvement of nutrition or the expansion of the economy in low-income countries. These two potential aims ought to be considered separately, though. Hundreds of hectares of ponds are now being brought under eel culture in Taiwan, the products so raised, small eels for further culturing, and others reared to minimal consumption size, are exported to Japan. Mullet culture is being perfected in that same country not so much because the mullet is a herbivore with a good growth rate and palatable flesh but because its sun-dried roe is a highly prized delicacy on the Japanese market. These enterprises provide employment and foreign exchange, both assets of great importance in the economy of an agricultural country of high population growth and low per capita income.

These assets of export aquaculture make it easy to find the capital necessary to achieve even moderately high production. Capital is less readily available for the production of low-priced fish for home consumption. Its supply must rely on the availability of government loans, which should result from a clearly stated policy of diversification of food production and the upgrading of nutritional levels. All too often governments lack the necessary experience to assess the security offered by proposed aquaculture enterprises. Thus aquaculture in low-income countries tends to remain a part of mixed subsistence or near-subsistence farming which defies conventional economic analysis.

Even where governments have correctly assessed the potential contributions of aquaculture, the incentives necessary to implement a successful program may be lacking, as illustrated by an example from Cambodia, a country in most respects naturally well suited to aquaculture.

Cambodia's large fish consumption [about 20 kg/(person)(year)] has traditionally been supplied by largely unmanaged freshwater fisheries. By the mid-1950s, however, changes in land use and overfishing had resulted in a reduction in fishery yields. This, coupled with an annual net population increase of over 2%, made it apparent to Western technical advisers that more intensive fishery management, augmented by fish culture, would be necessary if the consumption of fish was to be maintained at its high level. Ginnelly (1962), who documented the successes and failures of fish culture in Cambodia, maintains that the failure to establish tilapia culture, attempted in 1955, resulted because (1) conditions were not right for the acceptance of raising fish in this manner, that is, the government officials themselves were probably not convinced that it was a good thing; (2) the forestry division chiefs who were responsible

for the ponds were neither interested nor trained in the management of fish ponds, and (3) an unfamiliar and foreign fish was introduced simply because this species is, in some respects, easy to raise.

The same constraints did not apply to a French rubber plantation where the management decided in 1955 to try to cut employee food costs by raising fish on the plantation rather than buying them from the distant market. After two years the management of the ponds was well in hand. Each 0.1-ha pond yielded 1600 kg/year on the average, or 16 tons/ha. The new species of fish was readily accepted by the workers on the plantation (Cambodian, Vietnamese, and Cham), although under conditions where they had no choice.

Ironically, the plantation ponds are but a short distance from the government pond in the town of Mimot. The installations were started about a year apart, one has been extremely successful and the other a failure.

Even smaller, subsistence-type aquacultural enterprises may be very successful, as is borne out from the cost accounting for a live-box fish culture operation, also in Cambodia. (Table 6.)

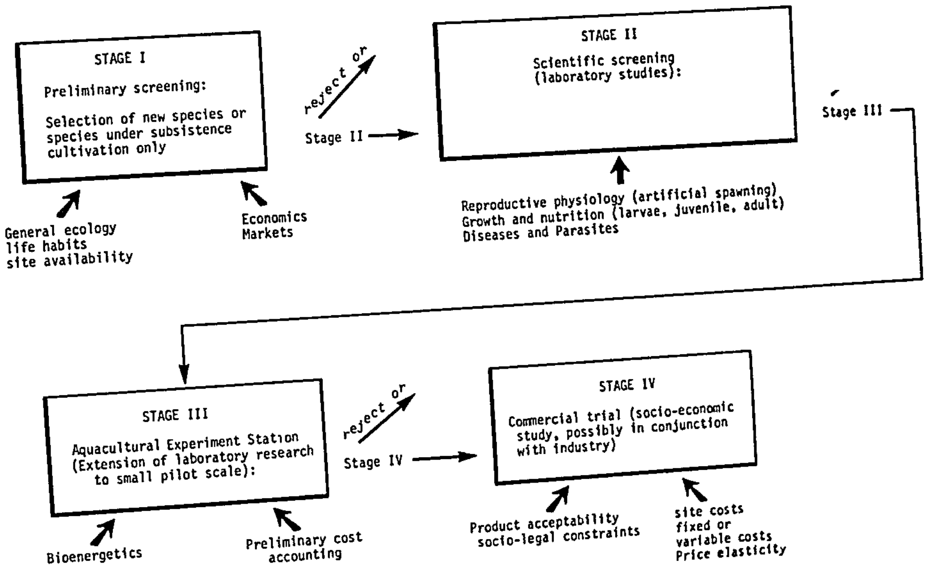
TABLE 6. COSTS (IN RIELS, 36 RIELS = 1 U.S. DOLLAR) FOR ONE YEAR OF CAGE CULTURE OF *Pangasius* (CAMBODIA)

Box	5,000
Pen in lake, estimated	3,000
Fingerlings	10,000
One coolie	7,200
Fish food	30,000
Total	55,200

NOTE: If these fish are sold at the customary average price of 5 riels/kg and the mean weight is 1.75 kg/fish, then

1.75 kg/fish × 10,000 fish = 17,500 kg
17,500 kg × 5 riels/kg = 87,500 riels
87,500 − 55,300 = 32,300 riels (923 $ U.S.), or 37% profit to owner

Comparable examples could be cited from other Asian countries, from Africa, and from Latin America. They suggest that the slow development of aquaculture in many low-income countries is not so much due to inherent shortcomings of the practice—although there are many lacunae in biological knowledge also—but largely to such problems as lack of funds, slow capital formation, lack of credit facilities, overextended administrations, and inadequate infrastructures (roads, markets, etc.). As


STAGE I
Preliminary screening:
Selection of new species or species under subsistence cultivation only
General ecology
life habits
site availability
Economics
Markets
reject or
Stage II
STAGE II
Scientific screening (laboratory studies):
Reproductive physiology (artificial spawning)
Growth and nutrition (larvae, juvenile, adult)
Diseases and Parasites
Stage III
STAGE III
Aquacultural Experiment Station (Extension of laboratory research to small pilot scale):
Bioenergetics
Preliminary cost accounting
reject or
Stage IV
STAGE IV
Commercial trial (socio-economic study, possibly in conjunction with industry)
Product acceptability
socio-legal constraints
site costs
fixed or
variable costs
Price elasticity

these are alleviated it behooves governments and private entrepreneurs alike to make the best assessment of the market potential of any species before embarking on large scale developments Aquacultural development in emerging nations might also be improved if some foreign technical advisers were less insistent on doing things their own way and more attentive to local preferences and practices The interplay of many (or some) biological, social, economic, and other factors on the development of a species for commercial aquaculture is schematized in Fig 2

Necessary steps in the further development of aquaculture are (1) the establishment of central and regional aquaculture research stations, (2) demonstrations of techniques and facilities (3) instruction for local officials teachers and farmers, (4) adequate extension services, and (5) provision of special credit arrangements All of these depend on the adoption of a clear policy to promote aquaculture in each country

In the so-called developed world, the considerations involved in the promotion of aquaculture are much more likely to be purely economic. Government assistance should be but is not necessarily effectively aimed at making the enterprise financially competitive with other food producing industries Official policies to improve the diet of the people are hardly seen as incentives except, perhaps, in the socialist planned economies, where, incidentally, cost accounting is also relevant

A PROGNOSIS FOR AQUACULTURE

The total world tonnage annually produced through aquaculture, as defined by us, has recently been established at over 4 million metric tons This tonnage is derived mainly from fresh and brackish water, with true mariculture barely in its infancy Provided there were no economic constraints on the upgrading of culture techniques, the yields from existing aquaculture installations could well be multiplied tenfold within the next three decades Aquaculture would then furnish us with animal proteins equivalent to more than half the present world fish catch

In theory, there are opportunities for considerably greater expansion For example vast regions of presently unutilized brackish swamps exist in the tropics, in the archipelagoes of southeast Asia alone they are estimated to comprise 6 to 7 million ha Their wholesale use for aquaculture or any other purpose is not to be advocated because they are important nursery grounds for a great number of animal species, including many of commercial importance. However, judicious development of a portion of these swamps say 10% or less, would be both possible and advisable. Within two to three decades these areas could contribute an additional

10 million metric tons of fish and shellfish—more than the current fishery production of the world's leading fish-producing nation.

Mariculture proper is also likely to make great strides in the coming decades. Already, Japanese culturists are producing nearly 30 kg of yellowtail/(m^2)(year) in floating net cages. If they succeed in breeding these fish and/or in developing a pelleted feed for them, substantial improvement may be made.

To further illustrate the potential of true mariculture, we quote Shelbourne (1964), who discusses, albeit speculatively, the rearing of marine flatfishes in a very limited space:

> The natural diet of the plaice includes small mollusks and marine worms. Mussel (*Mytilus edulis*) culture on a large scale should present no special difficulties; it is not beyond the realms of possibility that a cheap manufactured food based on fish offal or agricultural by-products, with balanced additives, would be acceptable to marine fish in fattening ponds.
>
> Whereas "reaping" the natural stock is the expensive aspect of fishing, as we understand the term, "reaping" a pond stock is the cheapest imaginable process—simply pull out the plug and drain the pond. In this way, really fresh fish would become available to the national market with minimum preservation and processing costs. Processing plant is an expensive investment at the moment, inefficiently operated due to the fickle nature of fish supply. Rotational pond cropping, in a systematic manner, would enable the industry to trim its processing investment to the scale of continuous, guaranteed supply.
>
> As a matter of interest, roughly 200 million North Sea plaice reach marketable size (25 cm) each year. About 75 percent of fish entering the fishery are caught by trawlers, the British effort accounting for 25 percent of the total take. In 1961, for instance, 35 million North Sea plaice were caught by British vessels. If each fish be given a hypothetical allowance of 1 ft^2 of bottom, then the annual British catch could be housed in shallow ponds covering 1¼ square miles in extent.

Among the imaginative schemes being tested for application in mariculture are various designs to increase the productivity of the surface waters of the oceans by pumping up nutrient-rich water from the depths. It is questionable that such pumping schemes could be economical for the purpose of aquaculture alone but if they were coupled with deep water (which is both cold and rich in nutrients) for use in the condenser cooling systems of power plants, for air conditioning, or perhaps for the production of power by means of vapor pressure differentials of the water from

the deep and the tropical shallows, aquaculture could become a viable secondary industry, made possible by the costs of pumping being apportioned to several enterprises It must be stressed though that such schemes can be potentially disastrous in certain environmental contexts since they may lead to the rapid eutrophication of lagoons within coral atolls It would be important, therefore, to include in the feasibility studies of such maricultural schemes tests for methods that would use, or remove completely, the nutrients of the injected deep water If deep water pumping were still envisaged for aquaculture alone, there would, in many locations be no particular advantage to using deep-sea nutrients as opposed to nutrients of terrestrial origin such as sewage or runoff from fertilized land, provided the latter two were not contaminated with man made, potentially toxic, inorganic or organic chemicals or human pathogens

The total theoretical potential of aquaculture is, without question, very high Whether it can be reached and sustained is problematical In addition to technical and economic difficulties to be overcome there is the phenomenon of global pollution to be dealt with Water pollution not only threatens the very survival of aquatic animals, it may also render them unfit for human consumption, as has already happened in a number of instances Clearly, the future of large-scale aquaculture will be bright only if man thoroughly reappraises his policies of land and water management

Some forecasters have also discerned a threat to the future of aquaculture in the actual and potential increases in the productivity of terrestrial agriculture Such speculations underestimate the present and future need for food, as well as global problems of food distribution, which aquaculture can alleviate, to some extent, by being capable of producing moderate volumes of meat in many different places Yet unless and until man achieves population stabilization, food needs will not be fully met, and regional inequalities in diets will persist In fact, man's ultimate survival depends on his realizing the urgent need for curbing his numbers to the replacement level As we proceed down what is hopefully the road to attaining this state, we will strain not only the food producing capacity of the land, but that of the waters as well, indeed, we have already begun to do so In the long run then, to discuss the competition of aquaculture with agriculture or any other means of food production seems irrelevant What is important is to work to maximize sustained production of high-quality human food—along with population stabilization

It is certain that maximization of the production of aquatic foods can be achieved only if the importance of aquaculture is realized, and its development aided by government and industry sponsored research and

development programs Then it is not improbable that its development may parallel that of terrestrial agriculture In a more distant future, the harvest of cultured aquatic stock may even come to rival the traditional, barely managed harvest of natural populations

REFERENCES

ANON 1970 A Program of Research for the Catfish Farming Industry U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, Ann Arbor, Michigan September 1970

BARDACH, J 1968 Harvest of the Sea Harper and Row, New York

BROWN M E 1957 The Physiology of Fishes Vol I Experimental Studies in Growth, 361–398 (M Brown Ed) Acad Press

BROWN, L R, and G W FINSTERBUSCH 1972 Man and his Environment, Food Harper and Row, New York

DAVIS H S 1953 Culture and Diseases of Game Fishes University of California Press Berkeley 332 pp

Esso Agroservice Bull No 8 Jan Feb, 1967

FAO Fish Cult Bull 2(3) Editorial

GALTSOFF P S 1964 The American Oyster US Department of the Interior Fish Bull 64

GINNELLY, G 1962 The Role of Fish Culture in Cambodian Fisheries M.S Thesis University of Michigan

GUNDERSEN, K, and P BIENFANG 1970 Potential Productivity Value of Deep Nutrient Rich Pacific Ocean Water in a Combined System of Power Plant Cooling Water and Aquaculture in the State of Hawaii, U.S.A Paper XXX, FAO Technical Conference on Marine Pollution Rome Italy, December 9–18, 1970

HOLT, S 1967 The Contribution of Freshwater Fish Production to Human Nutrition and Well Being *In* Symposium on the Biological Basis of Fishery Production Blackwell, London

NEESS J C 1946 Development and Status of Pond Fertilization in Central Europe *Trans Am Fish Soc* 76 335–358

NICHOLSON, H P 1967 Pesticide Pollution Control Science 158 871–876

OVCHYNNYK, M 1969 *In* J E Bardach and J H Ryther (Eds), Fish Culture Part II

PICKFORD G E and J W ATZ 1957 The Physiology of the Pituitary Gland of Fishes New York Zoological Society, New York 613 pp

RADCLIFFE, W 1926 Fishing from the Earliest Times, 2nd ed E. P Dutton and Co, New York 493 pp

ROELS, O A and R D GERARD 1970 Artificial Upwelling Marine Technology Society, Proceedings Conference on Food Drugs from the Sea Univ Rhode Island Kingston, R I pp 102–122

RYTHER, J H 1969 Photosynthesis and Fish Production in the Sea Science 166(3901) 72–76

SCHAPERCLAUS W 1954 Fischkrankheiten, 3rd ed Akademie Verlag Berlin 708 pp

SENGBUSCH, R. V., B. LUHR, C. MESKE, and W. STARLEWSKI. 1966. Aufzucht von Karpfenbrut in Aquarien. Arch. Fischereiwiss. 17(2): 89–94.

SHELBOURNE, J. E. 1964. The Artificial Propagation of Marine Fish. *In* F. S. Russell (Ed.) Advances in Marine Biology, Vol. 2. Academic Press, London, New York. pp. 1–82.

SPOTTE, S. H. 1970. *Fish and Invertebrate Culture.* Wiley Interscience, New York. 145 pp.

THOMAZI, A. 1947. Histoire de la peche. Payot, Paris. 645 pp.

T'UNG-K'AO, WEI SHU. 1939 and 1954. An Examination of Apocryphal Books. Shanghai (Chang Hsin-ch'eng, Ed.)

2

Culture of the Common Carp
(Cyprinus carpio)

HISTORY AND STATUS OF COMMON CARP IN FISH CULTURE

Of all the species of fish utilized by man the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) has the longest history of culture As early as 475 B C spawning of captive carp in China was described and advocated as a profitable

business by Fan Li in the first known treatise on aquaculture Some authors believe the practice dates back as far as 2000 B.C Aristotle mentions carp and it is likely that both the Greeks and Romans fattened carp in ponds Further introductions in Europe may have taken place around 1150 The history of carp culture in Austria goes back to 1227, and by 1860 the species was raised in most, if not all, the countries of Europe

Carp were first introduced into North America in the mid nineteenth century and subsequently became widespread in streams and lakes there, although carp culture remained unimportant The countries of south east Asia have many similar native cyprinids which are used in aqua culture, but common carp were introduced to every southeast Asian country between 1914 and 1957 and are now cultured throughout the region They were also introduced to Australia at an unknown date In recent times carp have been widely introduced in Africa and Latin America for aquacultural purposes but to date they do not play an important role in fish culture in Africa and among the Latin American countries only Guatemala and Haiti support significant carp-raising enterprises

SUITABILITY OF COMMON CARP FOR CULTURE

The culture of carp has been a remarkably successful and widespread method of producing protein for human consumption In 1965 carp were estimated to have contributed 210 000 tons to the world fish supply This estimate did not include the carp production of mainland China, which exceeds that of all other countries combined 1.5 million tons of common and Chinese carp were grown there in 1965 Furthermore, these figures are based on market statistics which are notoriously inaccurate in developing countries where 50% or more of the production is not offered for sale and therefore not counted The total world production of carp and similar cyprinids may well approach 2 million metric tons with perhaps half of this figure derived from waters under intensive culture If one assumes a per hectare yield of carp of 500 kg which corresponds to the average in Israel for unfed fish in unfertilized ponds (2000 kg or more per hectare are attained with fertilization and feeding) 2 million hectares of water surface would be necessary to produce the estimated tonnage of cultured carp This area is less than 1% of the total estimated freshwater area of the globe, including brackish lagoons and certainly a small fraction of the water areas that eventually could be made usable for this type of fish culture

The success of carp culture is due largely to the relative ease with which carp can be made to spawn in captivity and the hardiness of the species at all life stages from egg to adult. Carp adapt themselves to both acid and alkaline waters and easily tolerate salinities of up to 20‰. In Israel, carp are raised at salinities of up to 30‰. Although production at such high salinities is low, selective breeding is being carried out with the aim of developing a strain of carp which will thrive under such conditions. Carp are naturally tolerant of a wide range of temperatures, and selective breeding has enhanced this advantage by producing strains adapted to a wide variety of temperature regimes. Thus carp are now profitably raised from the tropics to the northern limits of the north temperate zone. Unlike most fish species, carp do well under conditions of high turbidity.

Complementing the general hardiness of carp are their catholic food habits. The natural food of young carp is zooplankton. Later in life they feed chiefly on bottom invertebrates. Both of these animal groups respond by an increase in their biomass to fertilization of the water, which considerably simplifies the aquaculturists' feeding chores. Other foods consumed in nature include algae, small fish, earthworms and other terrestrial invertebrates, and various kinds of detritus, particularly decaying plant matter. As might be expected, in captivity carp quickly learn to accept a wide variety of live and prepared foods.

The significance to the aquaculturist of the carp's remarkable hardiness is that, according to S. Tal, Director of the Inland Fisheries, Ministry of Agriculture, Tel Aviv, Israel, no other fish has yet been found that can be as easily managed for high yields per unit surface or volume of water, nor are there many other species that are as economical to raise. The carp's adaptability is expressed not only in its wide distribution and long history as a cultured fish and in the enormous production of carp flesh throughout the world, but also by the wide variety of techniques employed in carp culture.

COLLECTION OF WILD CARP FOR USE IN CULTURE

Although the carp is notable for the ease with which it is bred in captivity, in some localities low-intensity methods, which do not involve reproduction in captivity, are still employed. In the Soviet Union many carp of various ages as well as other fishes are stranded in shallow pools when spring flood waters of the larger rivers recede. It is common practice to rescue such fish for stocking in other waters. In some years as many as 1½ to 2 million carp are thus rescued.

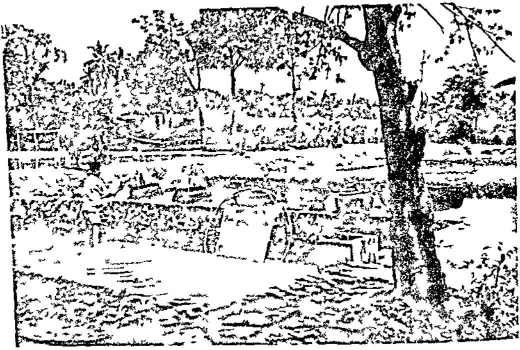


PLATE 1 Transfer of breeder carp into Indonesian pond showing tarred bamboo containers for transport of fish (Courtesy S Bunnag FAO)

Collection of stocks of naturally spawned fish in mainland China is a somewhat more sophisticated operation Eggs and fry, rather than adult fish, are collected from the larger rivers to be raised in ponds Common carp are not as highly valued in China as the various Chinese carps, but some are inevitably collected due to the nonselective methods of obtaining eggs and fry (For a description of these methods see the following section on Chinese carp culture) Some of these fish are raised, either alone or in polyculture with the Chinese carps, so that common carp accounts for about 5% of the weight of cyprinid fishes cultured in mainland China and Taiwan

BREEDING

TROPICAL AND SEMITROPICAL WATERS—SEMINATURAL BREEDING

Since the carp is so easily spawned in captivity, most cultured carp are many generations removed from wild stock Breeding in captivity has the advantage of stabilizing the supply of carp available for culture More important, it permits selection for various desirable traits

The classical methods of breeding carp are many, but all are adaptations of the spawning habits of carp in nature. In nature, carp spawn seasonally in temperate climates and year round in the tropics. The stimulus for spawning is a rise in water temperature, often accompanied by flooding. The adhesive eggs are laid near the surface on rooted aquatic plants, on floating plants, or on submerged terrestrial vegetation. The aquaculturist simulates these conditions by bringing spawners together in freshwater slightly warmer than that in his holding areas and providing real or artificial plants for attachment of the eggs. Perhaps the oldest variation of this technique is the Dubisch method, which is still practiced in some parts of Europe and in Indonesia. In this method, grass is grown on the bottom of a dry spawning pond to a height of 40 cm and the pond is filled until the water just reaches the top of the grass. Eggs are deposited on the grass. A trench 0.75 m deep may be dug around the perimeter of the pond to prevent spawning on overhanging terrestrial plants. When spawning is completed the carp are removed and the eggs allowed to hatch in the spawning pond. The classical Chinese method is identical except that filamentous floating plants such as *Ceratophyllum*, *Myriophyllum*, or water hyacinth are used as egg collectors. These should be thoroughly washed to remove potential egg predators. In Europe, piles of brush are used in place of aquatic plants in the similar Hofer method of carp culture.

Today most carp culturists rely on transporting the eggs to hatching ponds rather than removing the spawners. If the eggs are carefully handled this results in less disturbance than would be caused by netting out the adult carp. The simplest way of accomplishing this is to introduce floating plants confined within a floating frame into carp stock ponds at spawning time and let the carp spawn naturally. When spawning has been completed, the egg-laden plants are removed. Greater ease of handling may be effected by attaching the plants to bamboo poles fixed at regular intervals in the pond. Spawning carp in stock ponds has the advantage of minimizing handling operations and cutting down on the number of ponds required; however, it precludes selection of individual spawners, thus careful primary selection of spawning stock is imperative.

Space, labor, and water supply permitting, it is better to provide separate enclosures for each phase of culture. Spawning enclosures, particularly those used for small breeders, need not be nearly as large as ponds used in other carp culture operations. In India cement cisterns 10 m × 9 m × 1 m are used in commercial breeding. When the fish are ready for spawning, water from a pond heavily populated by carp is pumped into a depth of 0.5m; 15 or 20 kg of thoroughly washed aquatic plants such as *Hydrilla* or *Naias* are used to collect the eggs. In the evening 5 or 6

selected ripe females weighing about 20 kg each and 10 to 15 oozing males of the same weight are introduced By morning all or most of the fish will have spawned and the eggs can be removed to hatching tanks

Containers placed in shallow areas of stock ponds may also be used for spawning The best known device of this sort is the Indian hapa, a rectangular cloth tank about 1 m in depth stretched and fixed by bamboo poles The sizes of male and female carp and the amount of plants used are limited by the size of the hapa Table 1 is a guide to the approximate amounts of fish and plants used

TABLE 1 AMOUNTS OF PLANTS AND FISH TO BE STOCKED IN HAPAS FOR SPAWNING COMMON CARP IN INDIA

DIMENSIONS OF HAPA (M)	NO ♀♀	WEIGHT OF ♀ (KG)	NO ♂♂	TOTAL WEIGHT OF ♂♂ (KG)	WEIGHT OF PLANTS (KG)
2 × 1	1	1 or less	2–3	1 or less	2
3 × 1½	1	3–4	2 3	3–4	5
4 × 2	1	5–6	2–3	5–6	7

In the evening the spawners are introduced and the hapa is covered to prevent the fish jumping out Most of the fish will spawn by the next morning but to insure complete spawning 30 hours may be allowed before the plants and eggs are removed and transferred to the hatching area

After spawning the carp are returned to the stock pond The females are weighed before and after spawning The difference in weight in grams multiplied by the average number of ovarian eggs per gram weight of ovary is used as an estimate of the total number of eggs laid

In Indonesia carp are spawned in ponds as small as 5 m^2 In such small ponds freshly cut grass or bunches of the dark, horsehairlike fibers of the indjuk plant (*Arenga pinnata* and *A saccharifera*) are floated on the water surface to serve as egg collectors However, most carp spawning in Indonesia is carried out in ponds 20 to 30 m^2 For such ponds a more easily handled egg collecting device known as a kakaban or egg mat has been developed Kakabans are made of indjuk fibers which have been strengthened by soaking them in water for about 5 days. A thin layer of fibers 1 2 to 1 5 m long is pressed longitudinally between two bamboo lathes 4 to 5 cm wide The margins are trimmed to produce an even end The resulting structure is shaped like a two-sided comb with a width of 40 to 70 cm Properly used and cared for, kakabans will last 1 to 2 years

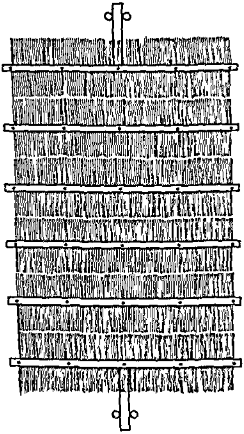


FIG 1 Arrangement of Kakabans in an Indonesian carp spawning pond (After Alikunhi, 1966)

Kakabans are placed in a spawning pond with a bottom free of silt and mud but not hard enough to bruise the breeders. If the bottom tends toward muddiness, the pond may be dried for some days before use. The bottom may also be cemented or covered with sand To prevent eggs being deposited elsewhere than on the kakabans the margins of the spawning pond should be free of aquatic and terrestrial plants.

Kakabans are laid transversely on a long bamboo pole held in place between two pairs of shorter poles driven into the bottom at either end of the pond. They are spaced so that the fibers of adjacent kakabans just touch. The bamboo pole floats, thus the whole structure moves freely with changes in water level, but the weight of the kakabans keeps it slightly submerged (Fig. 1). The number of kakabans required is calculated on the basis of 5 to 8 kg of female spawners.

While spawning is taking place a gentle flow of water is maintained. As in other methods spawning occurs mostly at night. When the lower surface of a kakaban is covered with eggs it is turned over; if both sides are full, it is replaced with a fresh one. When spawning is completed, the kakabans with eggs attached are placed in hatching ponds.

The spawning methods thus far described, all similar to natural spawning, are quite satisfactory in tropical and subtropical countries where carp are perennial spawners. In warm climates carp of both sexes may

become ripe again within three months after spawning or, under exceptionally good conditions within two months There are records of individual carp in India which have spawned five times in one year Thus a commercial carp breeder in the tropics can count on three spawnings a year by merely placing ripe males and females together in warm water and providing an egg collecting device

TEMPERATE WATERS INDUCED BREEDING

In the temperate zones carp are annual spawners The carp culturist in a temperate climate is at a disadvantage in comparison to his tropical counterpart not only because his fish spawn less often but because their spawning is less predictable Unforeseen changes in the weather, an occasional problem in the tropics are almost usual in temperate climates For example a cold snap during the spawning period may interrupt or delay spawning at a considerable loss in efficiency and total production Total control of the carp s environment would undoubtedly prove effective in solving this problem but costs are prohibitive Instead the carp culturist may regulate the time of reproduction through inducing spawning by pituitary injection This technique is being experimented with as a means of increasing frequency of carp spawning in temperate climates but at present its chief advantages are in permitting the fish culturist to schedule his work quite rigidly and in allowing strict genetic control (A short discussion of the history and significance of induced spawning using pituitary materials along with a list of references on the subject may be found in Chapter 3)

Ripe female common carp are injected intraperitoneally at the axil of the pelvic fin with fresh or fresh frozen pituitary extract from another common carp of either sex and equal weight or with 2 to 3 mg per kg body weight of acetone dried carp pituitary in 1 cm^3 distilled water The importance of using common carp pituitaries should be stressed for although most fish which have been tested with pituitary extracts respond to materials from unrelated species even animals belonging to different classes the common carp has thus far been found to respond only to pituitary extracts of its own species

For best results fish to be injected should be conditioned and spawned in well-oxygenated water at about 20°C The simplest spawning procedure is to place injected females in small ponds with an equal number of males and a device to collect the eggs and let spawning occur as in the methods already described The males may also be injected but if they are very ripe it is not necessary

More efficient fertilization and a high degree of genetic control can be achieved by hand stripping the fish This method is best for very large

breeders which would normally require excessive space to spawn After injection, females are kept in holding tanks separated from males Within 12 to 20 hours they are usually ready to strip Male breeders are injected in exactly the same way as the females This has the effect of increasing the amount of seminal plasma, thus providing more milt Eggs are stripped first, then milt from a male is stripped directly onto the eggs (For a detailed description of the techniques of egg and milt stripping, see Chapter 20) The eggs and milt should be mixed thoroughly with a nylon bristle paint brush in a plastic container, to which the eggs will not stick as they do to glass or enamel Care should be taken to prevent any water from coming into contact with the eggs or milt during stripping In this connection it is helpful to wipe the fish dry with cheesecloth and work in dry gloves

Shortly after the eggs and milt are mixed, small amounts of water are dripped onto them, fertilization will occur only in the presence of water Once fertilized, the eggs will begin to clump and adhere to each other Before clumping progresses very far the eggs are lifted with the brush and shaken into a holding vessel containing 10 to 15 cm water and a mat of Spanish moss or some other egg collector, or the eggs can be poured onto the egg collector from the plastic container In either case the water in the holding vessel should be vigorously agitated during transfer of the eggs in order to disperse the eggs in a manner similar to that attained by carp in nature Dispersion is important to prevent fungus, which will inevitably form on any dead eggs, from smothering adjoining live eggs The egg collectors with eggs attached are tranferred from the holding vessel to ponds or hatchery troughs for hatching

It is worth noting in connection with induced spawning of common carp by pituitary injection that while common carp are unusual among fish in responding only to pituitary extracts from their own species, common carp pituitary is by far the most widely used in inducing spawning of other fish species It is relatively large and easy to remove, retains its potency when dried for up to 2 years or, in some instances, as long as 10 years, and common carp are readily available and easily kept nearly everywhere that fish culture is carried out Thus many state, commercial, and experimental fish culture stations maintain small populations of common carp, often culls from stocks raised for food, as a source of pituitary glands

SEXING AND SELECTION OF SPAWNERS

Two common needs in all types of intensive carp culture are sexing and selection of spawners Often it is not easy to determine the sex of common carp When ripe, the female usually exhibits a fuller profile than the

male. Old males usually develop a few nuptial tubercles on the sides of the head and on the pectoral and ventral fins. The only sure way to sex young breeders is by extrusion of the genital product. To avert the need for examination of each fish, carp culturists in India and elsewhere have developed the practice of spawning each female with two or more presumptive males of such a size that the total weight of the "males" approximately equals that of the female. Thus though a few immature males or females may be included among the brood stock, there is a very low probability of any female's eggs not being fertilized.

Male and female carp to be used as spawners are usually kept separately from each other and from other stock. It is often recommended that ponds used for this purpose be in a sheltered location, for it is believed that exposure to a cold wind with resultant chilling of the water may retard spawning.

In Indonesia spawners are fed a special diet of rice bran, porridge, and corn for 3 days prior to spawning. Immediately after introduction to the spawning pond they may receive a special ration of porridge about 1/20 the total weight of breeders. In general, though, breeders will reach optimum spawning condition under the same dietary regime which produces healthy commercial stock. However, breeders should not be overfed or encouraged to grow too rapidly, for excess fat hampers gonad development. Rice bran may be fed to spent breeders during the period of recovery.

Over the centuries culturists have developed and maintained a number of strains of carp considered to be especially desirable breeders. Fecundity is of course the primary consideration. But fecundity cannot be empirically determined without considerable expenditure of time and effort and the sacrifice of a number of fish. Thus external indicators of fecundity have been sought. Presumed characteristics of good breeders have been summarized as follows:

1. Body moderately soft.
2. Lower side of the belly broad and flattened so that the fish will stand on its belly.
3. Relatively great body depth.
4. Caudal peduncle relatively broad but supple.
5. Small head and pointed snout.
6. Rather large and regularly inserted scales.
7. Genital opening nearer to the caudal peduncle than in the average carp.

According to Hora and Pillay (1962), "Some farmers believe that the best mark of a good spawner relates to the insertion of the last scale be-

fore the genital opening; if a line is drawn from the head along the body to the center of the genital opening it should cross this scale and divide it into two equal parts."

There is also at least one behavioral indicator used in selecting spawners. Females which release large numbers of eggs at one time, so that they are bunched on the collector, are considered poor brood stock.

Discriminatory use of spawners displaying the preceding characteristics of course amounts to selective breeding, a subject which will be covered in detail later.

Age and size of spawners is also a factor to be taken into consideration. Age at maturity varies greatly with climate, as does growth. As a general rule in temperate countries males mature by their second or third year and no later than the fourth; females in their third or fourth year. In very cold climates, some individuals may not mature until the fifth or sixth year. In the tropics both sexes usually reach maturity within one year, sometimes in as little as six months.

Carp follow the general rule for fish in that the largest females produce the most eggs. Fecundity of course varies with genetic and environmental factors but Table 2 illustrates the general relationship between size and number of eggs. It should be pointed out that the spawn of very old fish may be low in viability.

TABLE 2. FECUNDITY OF FEMALE COMMON CARP

SIZE (CM)	NUMBER OF EGGS
15–20	13,512
20–25	29,923
25–30	54,180
30–35	128,434
35–40	141,000
40–45	249,000
45–50	310,000
50–55	468,000
55–60	405,000
60–65	1,507,000
Over 65	2,945,000

It might seem more efficient to spawn the largest and most productive females, but under the conditions of close confinement characteristic of most of the classical carp spawning methods it may be difficult or impossible to breed very large females. Small males are preferred for the same reason and because they are more ardent courters. Most Asian

culturists select females weighing 1 to 2 kg and males of the same size or slightly smaller If induced spawning by pituitary injection and stripping of eggs and milt is employed however, it does make sense to take advantage of the high fecundity of large spawners

HATCHING

The time required for carp eggs to hatch in nature varies widely with temperature Hatching times from 46 to 144 hours have been reported Prehatching mortality is nearly always high, and may be as great as 80% The chief causes of mortality are predators, including the parent fish, low rates of fertilization, low temperatures, and fungus brought on by the presence of dead or unfertilized eggs The newly hatched larvae also suffer heavy mortality due to predation and, in relatively sterile environments to poor food supply

Of these causes of mortality, only poor fertilization need be of little concern to the fish culturist Even if stripping of eggs and milt and artificial fertilization are not practiced, cultured carp are usually spawned in close enough confinement that each egg is almost certain to be reached by a sperm

Predation by the parent fish is controlled by removing the eggs from the spawners or vice versa If a hatching pond separate from the spawning area is used, the commonest predators among them fish, crayfish copepods and aquatic insects, may be eliminated by leaving the pond dry until just before use If it is not practical to dry the hatching pond it may be treated with Lexone at 2 5 ppm for 2 or 3 days before stocking This will kill most predators and some parasites but will not affect the fertility of the eggs Other poisons, including quicklime, Camellia seed cake powdered croton seed, derris root, or commercially available rotenone, may also be used in conjunction with partial draining Quicklime is especially effective against bottom organisms Proper dosages are 60 kg/ha applied to a nearly dry pond or 100 kg/ha of quicklime and 150 kg/ha of tea seed cake if there is considerable water Camellia seed cake or powdered croton seed are applied at from 50 to 200 kg/ha depending on the amount of water in the pond Raw derris root must be soaked in water for a few hours before use It is then crushed and the juice containing the rotenone wrung out into a bucket of water and diluted for use One kilogram of derris root will provide enough rotenone to treat one hectare of pond surface Rotenone powder should be used at about 5% of this concentration Predation may also be averted by keeping the eggs indoors in hatching troughs with flowing water until they are eyed. They are then transferred to hatching ponds, however, for it is difficult

to provide an adequate amount of zooplankton to feed the newly hatched fry in an indoor environment, although recent experiments in West Germany indicate the potential feasibility of rearing carp fry on a diet of brine shrimp (*Artemia*) in flowing water aquaria.

The temperature for hatching should be the same as that at which the eggs were spawned. The optimum temperature is about 20°C in temperate climates and 25°C in the tropics. Carp are quite temperature tolerant, but eggs and larvae should not be chilled. For this reason, it is best that hatching ponds be sheltered from the wind. During abnormally cold seasons, Indonesian carp culturists hatch eggs in wooden tubs about 12 cm deep which are placed in the sunshine during the day and kept in a warm building at night.

Fungus as a source of mortality is perhaps more prevalent in culture than in nature. The fungus *Saprolegnia* gains a foothold on eggs which are unfertilized or have been killed by physical shock. The white, fuzzy, foul-smelling masses of mycelia which form on such eggs may spread and smother adjacent eggs, killing them as well. In this manner *Saprolegnia* can spread throughout a batch of eggs with disastrous results. Carp eggs are large and remarkably resistant to physical abuse as fish eggs go; nevertheless, they should be transferred from spawning to hatching enclosures with the utmost care. The incidence of fungus can be further reduced by seeing to it that eggs are not allowed to bunch together too closely. If, despite all precautions, numerous dead eggs are seen, growth of fungus may be inhibited when there is a current over the eggs by flushing with malachite green at about 2 ppm.

In primitive methods of carp culture, such as the Dubisch method, the eggs are allowed to hatch in the spawning pond. In more advanced methods the egg collectors with eggs attached are transferred to separate hatching enclosures. Indonesian carp culturists support loaded kakabans in the same manner as for spawning. Before transfer to the hatching pond they are gently washed to insure that none of the eggs are coated with mud. In the hatching pond the fiber margins of the kakabans are not allowed to touch but are separated by 2 to 8 cm. Bamboo poles are placed across the ends of the kakabans parallel to the center pole and held in place by a board at each end of the pond parallel to the kakabans (Fig. 2). The weight of this device is adjusted so that it will compensate for changes in water level in keeping the kakabans about 8 cm below the surface. Hatching ponds are stocked at rates of approximately 1 kakaban per 30 to 50 m² of water surface.

Masses of plants and other egg collectors may be placed directly into hatching ponds or kept in smaller enclosures within ponds. In Indonesia, carp are sometimes hatched in a sump in the center of the pond; thus

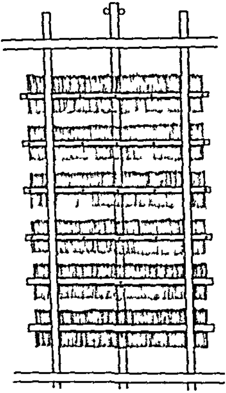


Fig 9 Arrangement of Kakabans in an Indonesian carp hatching pond (After Alikunhi 1966)

the pond proper may be kept dry until the eggs hatch This is especially advantageous where predators are plentiful or water is scarce In India cloth hapas similar to those sometimes used in spawning are used as hatching enclosures Hatching hapas are usually 2 m × 1 m × 1 m and made of cloth fine enough to prevent the fry from escaping but coarse enough to permit zooplankton to enter

In parts of Indonesia the spawning enclosure is a compartment in a larger pond separated from the pond proper by a temporary earthen dam When spawning is completed the dam is opened and the spawners allowed to escape Then the dam is sealed After a week the dam is opened again and the larvae are allowed access to the pond

Whether the eggs are hatched in a pond or an enclosure within a pond it is important that the pond receive ample sunshine to insure the growth of phytoplankton to feed zooplankton which will in turn nourish the young carp For the same reason the pond should be no more than 80 cm deep at its deepest point and naturally fertile or artificially enriched (see pp 43–45) A soft bottom is best moderate turbidity will do no harm It is convenient to have the pond so arranged that it can be easily drained A catching device may be set up at the lower end to trap the fry during draining for transfer to rearing ponds

FRY REARING AND GROWING FOR MARKET

As previously mentioned, the time to hatching varies, but visual detection of larvae is no problem. When first hatched, the larvae do not swim about but attach themselves to plants or the walls of their container by means of a cement gland. Even so, with their elongate shape and beating tails they do not look at all like eggs. A little practical experience will enable the culturist to gauge the hatching rate of his fish under normal conditions. Complications in this regard will be diminished and growth of fry will be more uniform if all the eggs from a spawning are placed in hatching enclosures within one day.

The yolk sac is absorbed and the larvae become free swimming and capable of taking nourishment in 2 to 6 days, again depending on water temperature. The young carp may be transferred to nursery ponds as early as 3 days after spawning or they may remain in the hatching pond for up to 3 weeks. At the time of transfer they may be counted volumetrically. Survival to this point varies greatly; rates as high as 86% of egg production and as low as 20% have been reported, depending on weather, availability of zooplankton, and the success or failure of precautions against fungus and predators.

Once the fry have been transferred to nursery ponds, the culturist's main concern is to raise them to marketable size or for use as breeding stock. In temperate climates, where the carp is an annual spawner, it is often necessary to hold fry at a convenient size so as to have a supply of fish on hand for stocking thoughout the year. Carp may be kept at a relatively small size for 2 years or more by judicious crowding and feeding just enough for maintenance but not enough for growth. This amount has been calculated as 30 mg of protein per 100 mg of carp per day at 22 to 24°C, or a daily intake of about 1/1000 of the total protein content of a carp. In general, however, the culturist's aim is to maximize production and profits by growing fish as rapidly as possible consistent with economic considerations. Maximum production is attained by fertilization of the water to increase production of natural carp foods, supplementary feeding, regulation of population density in the rearing areas, periodic culling of inferior fish, selection of breeding stock, and control of various environmental parameters.

POND FERTILIZATION

Pond fertilization may be thought of as an indirect method of feeding. Its purpose is to provide nutrients for phytoplankton, the lowest link

in the food chain An increase in phytoplankton will eventually be reflected in an increase in production at all levels of the food chain on up to the top, in this case the carp Although it is possible to raise carp with no actual feeding whatsoever if the water used is sufficiently fertile, most successful carp culturists do make some use of direct feeding But most carp culturists also find it advantageous to let their fish take part of their nourishment from natural foods There is no economically feasible diet fed to carp which cannot be improved by the presence of naturally occurring bottom-dwelling invertebrates In most cases the water used for carp culture will not naturally be so rich in nutrients that the numbers of these animals cannot be substantially increased by proper application of organic or inorganic fertilizers While this may require some investment, the amount of money will usually be less than would be spent in adding the same amount of nutrient directly in the form of food

In certain cases carp may be raised in waters which are exceptionally rich in organic nutrients or, to put it another way, heavily polluted The carp perform an additional service by retarding further organic enrichment of the environment For example in Java carp are confined in bamboo cages in rapidly flowing polluted streams They graze on the carpet of small worms and insect larvae in the highly enriched water and yields of 50 to 75 kg of fish flesh per square meter of surface per year are not rare Yields of pond fish are usually expressed per hectare or per acre, straight multiplication of the production figures just given would result in a weight of over 500,000 kg/ha Even with allowances made for the fact that a large portion of a running hectare of such a stream might not be suitable for the placement of cages this practice clearly represents an extremely efficient and ecologically sound use of sewage It is however, possible only in fairly rapidly running warm water and is not consistent with public health considerations

A more sanitary method of utilizing carp as sewage converters is to grow them in conjunction with conventional sewage treatment operations In Munich, Germany, the settled and/or partially treated sewage of the city is diluted and led through a 7 km series of 4 to 5-ha ponds, each containing about 5000 2 year-old carp which are fattened over the summer on the abundant invertebrate fauna. The annual increment in fish flesh is about 500 kg/ha without additional feeding The net income of this now amortized installation owned by the Bavarian Hydropower Company is 50 000 DM (about $12,500) Similar installations in Berlin Germany, and Kielce, Poland, have produced yields of 800 to 900 kg/ha, and 1300 kg/ha, respectively

Certain industrial and agricultural wastes may be similarly used In Czechoslovakia effluents from dairies, sugar mills, slaughterhouses, and

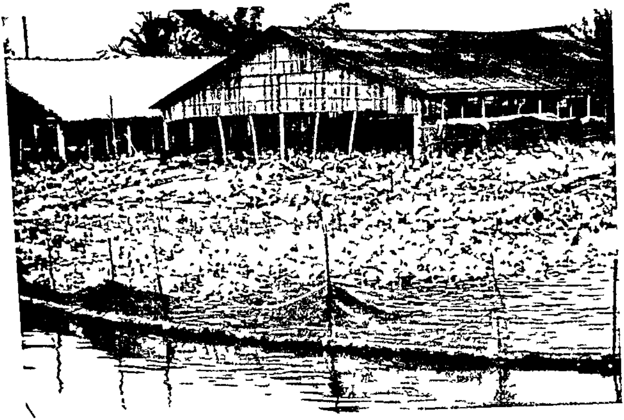


PLATE 2 Combined duck carp farming in Malaysia

starch mills have all been utilized in carp culture. When treated with 5 tons/ha of lime, such wastes have produced yields of carp averaging 500 to 600 kg/ha. In several European and Asian countries ducks are reared in the same ponds as carp and natural fertilization of the ponds by duck manure results in fish yields of up to 500 kg/ha.

These exceptions notwithstanding, most carp culturists will find it highly advantageous to artificially enrich the water. But it should not be assumed that no harm can be done by fertilizers. Whatever combination of decaying plants, human or animal manure, or chemical fertilizers is used, an overdose may actually reduce production or even have a lethal effect on the fish. The correct types and amounts of fertilizer to be used vary from locality to locality and even from pond to pond in the same area. For specific advice it is best to determine the chemical and biological characteristics of the body of water to be used or of the soil on which it is to be constructed and to seek advice from local aquaculturists or from agricultural or fishery personnel.

SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

Carp culture usually is economic only when the population density of fish in rearing areas exceeds that which could be supported by the natural

or augmented fertility of the water For this reason, supplementary artificial feeding is necessary except for newly hatched fry

In most culture methods food for very young fry is produced within the pond by fertilization rather than being introduced by the culturist. Notable exceptions occur in Japan, where water fleas (*Daphnia*) are cultured in ponds prior to the introduction of newly hatched fry, and in India, where young fry are commonly fed on various types of oil cakes mixed with rice bran Recent research in India tested the effectiveness of 19 carp fry foods fed singly and in combinations of 2, 3, and 4 components The various food combinations were compared in terms of percentage survival of fry and average growth in millimeters over a 15-day period Of all combinations tested a mixture of backswimmers (aquatic insects) freshwater prawns and cowpeas in a 5 3 2 ratio was judged best It produced significantly greater growth than any of the other experimental foods, and while a number of other blends, notably a 1 1 1 mixture of prawns, cowpeas and wheat bran produced higher survival this was offset by the difference in growth rate Research on fry foods is in its early stages but some sort of food for newly hatched fry may eventually be adopted by carp culturists throughout the world

Sometime within the first three weeks of life carp fry are transferred to nursery or rearing enclosures From then on supplementary artificial feeding is carried out in all types of intensive culture The sheer variety of feeds used is bewildering, but selection of a feed or feeds will be less confusing if the culturist bears two principles in mind

1 Artificial feeding is a supplement to naturally available food and food organisms produced by fertilization of the water Thus food items selected should not duplicate the contributions of natural food but should compensate for nutrients which are in short supply

2. The goal of feeding is to achieve maximum growth consistent with economic considerations Total costs to the culturist will, of course be higher with feeding than without, but cost per ton may be lower with feeding thus enabling the culturist to realize a greater profit.

A third consideration which is beginning to be taken more seriously at least in countries where the rationale for carp culture is not to compensate for inadequate protein supplies is the effect of a particular feed on the quality of carp flesh produced

A general index of the efficiency of conversion of a feed into fish flesh is a ratio variously called the growth coefficient, food quotient, or nutritive ratio

$$\text{food quotient} = \frac{\text{weight of food}}{\text{increase in weight of fish}}.$$

Table 3 lists the approximate food quotients of 23 types of carp feed.

TABLE 3. FOOD QUOTIENTS OF CERTAIN FEEDS IN CULTURE OF COMMON CARP

FEED ITEM	FOOD QUOTIENT
Fresh silkworm pupae	5.0 – 5.5
Dried silkworm pupae	1.3 – 2.1
Silkworm pupae, pressed dry	1.4
Mysis dry	2.0
Chironomids	2.3 – 4.4
Clam meat	1.3
Meat powder	2.0
Dehydrated blood	1.5 – 1.7
Fish meal	1.5 – 3.0
Soybean cake	2.22
Barley	2.60
Oats	2.60
Wheat flour	7.2
Peas	2.7 – 2.8
Potato	20.0 –33.9
Rice bran	5.08
Wheat bran	4.22
Peanut cake	2.13– 2.7
Lupin seeds	3.0 – 5.0
Soybeans	3.0 – 5.0
Maize	4.0 – 6.0
Cottonseed	2.3
Cottonseed cake	3.0

Merely to feed the food with the highest growth coefficient does not guarantee that production of carp flesh will be maximized. Carp, like most other animals, do best on a balanced diet. The proportions of protein, fat, and carbohydrate in an ideal diet vary according to the age of the carp and availability of nutrients in the form of natural foods.

In general, artificial feeding should concentrate on foods which are high in carbohydrates. The natural food of carp is very high in protein, reaching 60% of dry weight in Chironomid larvae, one of the most abundant food organisms in most carp ponds. In nature, part of this

protein is converted into energy Feeds rich in carbohydrates provide a more efficient source of energy and free all of the protein to provide for growth

It may be necessary to step up the protein intake in growing large carp since the need for protein increases with size Care should be taken not to feed too much protein, however, for excess amounts will be wasted. Ten to fifteen percent by weight of protein in the diet should be adequate for large carp Protein intake of carp may be increased by using feeds rich in protein or by fertilizing the water to increase availability of natural foods The latter method is ofen economically preferable, particularly in countries such as India where all sorts of protein rich materials command prohibitive prices Whichever method of adding protein is chosen, it is worth remembering the general nutritional principle that a diet is likely to be better balanced in amino acids if it contains a variety of protein sources Table 4 lists the percent composition and nutritive value of 37 commonly used carp feeds Other foods sometimes fed to carp, but for which no data are available, include cottonseed, cottonseed cake, sunflower seed meal, soybeans sorghum, duckweed fish roe, fish entrails, fish meal, clam meat, meat powder, and brine shrimp (*Artemia*)

Maximum food consumption by carp is prodigious, at 25 to 27°C a carp is capable of consuming more than its weight in food daily This does not result in great growth, for gorging leads to poor digestion and inefficient conversion of food The optimum rate of feeding is difficult to determine, for it depends on a number of variables, among them the type of feed used, the amount of natural food available, and especially the water temperature. At summer temperatures carp may require 30 times as much food as during the winter Indeed, during the coldest months, long periods of quiescence may occur during which no food whatever is taken Thus in temperate climates feeding is intensified in summer and may be reduced in winter to occasional very light feeding on warm days In the tropics the variation in feeding rate is less, but feeding schedules should still take into account water temperature Tables 5 and 6 are examples of feeding schedules for the temperate climate of Japan and the somewhat warmer climate of South China's Kwangtung Delta

Feeding schedules are usually made out on a per day basis, but greater efficiency can be achieved through several light daily feedings than by one massive application of feed. On the other hand, frequent feeding has the disadvantage of increasing labor costs This problem may eventually be circumvented by use of automatic feeders which can be programmed to broadcast specified amounts of feed at set intervals An improvement on this device is a feeder being tested at Wielenbach, Bavaria, Germany,

TABLE 4. COMPOSITION AND NUTRITIVE VALUE OF PRINCIPAL COMMON CARP FEEDS (% DRY WEIGHT)[a]

NAME OF FEED	CRUDE PROTEIN	FAT	CARBO-HYDRATE	FIBER	ASH
Vegetable products					
Groundnuts	27	45	18	3	2
Groundnut cake	36	10	32	—	19
Coconut oil cake	17–21	7–16	43–44	8–11	5– 6
Mustard oil cake	31	10	29	—	30
Lupin, sweet, yellow	42	6	25	10	2
Cowpea	22	4	71	—	4
Soybean cake	44–50	8–11	33	6	6
Bean meal	51	9	31	5	5
Barley	12–27	2	77	7	3
Rice (hulled)	8	2	77	7	3
Rice, broken, white	8	1	80	<1	1
Rice bran	13–16	4–18	43–47	6– 9	13–15
Wheat	15	2	75	4	4
Wheat flour, white	12	1	87	<1	<1
Wheat bran	15	5	62	12	6
Oats	14	3	74	6	—
Maize (corn)	7–12	5– 6	81	2	2
Maize (fresh)	10	5	70	2	1
Rye	12	2	70	2	2
Italian millet	12	7	75	—	6
Potato	8	<1	84	3	—
Sweet potato	6	2	85	4	—
Ragi	9	9	68	—	14
Animal products					
Silkworm pupae	49	26	7	—	3
Defatted silkworm pupae	83	2	9	—	6
Sardine	71	22	—	—	—
Crustacean (*Mysis*)	74	15	—	—	—
Crustacean (*Daphnia*)	42	7	31	—	—
Small shrimps	66	7	5	—	—
Snail (*Viviparа*)	83	2	—	—	—
Worm (*Limoudrilus*)	48	24	—	—	—
Worm (*Tubifex*)	65	15	14	—	6
Insect (*Notonecta*)	56	4	24	—	16
Insect (*Chironomus*)	60	2	6	—	—
Mixed zooplankton	46	6	23	—	25

[a] Dash = no determination.

TABLE 5 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR COMMON CARP IN JAPAN

MONTH	MONTHLY FEEDING RATE IN PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL ANNUAL QUANTITY	ESSENTIAL FOODS	DAILY FEEDING FREQUENCY	TIME REQUIRED TO FINISH FOOD AT EACH FEEDING
January	0			
February	0			
March	0		1	Within 1 hour
April	1	Wheat, snail pupae, soya sauce waste, earthworms, rice bran		
			1–3	30 min
May	4	Mixed foods	3–6	15–30 min
June	15	Pupae as staple food, also mixed food		
			3–7	15–30 min
July	20	Silkworm pupae	5–9	15–30 min
August	30	Silkworm pupae	5–7	15–30 min
September	20	Silkworm pupae	2–5	15–30 min
October	9	Pupae, wheat, bean meal, vegetable and fish meal		
November	1		Once to once every 2 days	30 min
December	0		Once, or every other day	

SOURCE Hora and Pillay (1962) [adapted by Lin (1966) from Shih (1937)]

which permits carp to learn to release food at any time by pressing against an underwater plate. Using this device, carp soon adjust to taking only as much food as they need.

The central questions in determining what, how much, and how often to feed are, of course, questions of economics. Is it more economic to feed or not to feed? What feeding regime is most conducive to profitable

TABLE 6 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR COMMON CARP AND GRASS CARP IN THE KWANGTUNG DELTA, CHINA

MONTH	APPROXIMATE TEMPERATURE (°C)	ESTIMATED WEIGHT OF FISH IN POND: INCREMENT PER MONTH (KG)	ESTIMATED WEIGHT OF FISH IN POND: TOTAL (KG)	QUANTITY OF FOOD REQUIRED PER MONTH (KG): GRASS	SILKWORM WASTE	FRESH SILKWORM PUPAE	RICE BRAN
February	15	—	70 00	—	—	—	—
March	16	127 80	197 80	1,534	1,022	639	639
April	20	149 10	346 90	1,739	1,193	745	745
May	24	191 70	538 60	2,301	1,534	959	959
June	28	255 60	794 20	3 067	2,054	1,278	1,278
July	30	319 50	1,113 70	3,834	2,556	1,598	1,598
Quantity harvested at the end of July			800 00		—		
New stocking material added			200 00		—		
Stock			513 70		—		
August	31	426 00	937 70	5,112	3,408	2,130	2,130
September	28	319 50	1,259 20	3,834	2,556	1,597	1,597
October	27	149 10	1,408 30	1,789	1,193	745	745
November	23	106 50	1 514 80	1,278	852	533	533
December	16	85 20	1,600 00	1,022	682	426	426

SOURCE Hora and Pillay (1962)

operation? It has already been mentioned that, except in rare cases of extremely fertile water, it is economic to feed carp. The relative merits of feeding versus not feeding can be compared or an economic appraisal of various methods of feeding can be made if the cost of feed and feeding labor and the production of carp per hectare is known. Table 7 gives a sample comparison of costs and production of fed and unfed carp in Israel. This type of analysis may be applied to the comparison of any two feeding schedules simply by plugging in the appropriate data.

TABLE 7 COSTS PER HECTARE AND PER TON OF COMMON CARP CULTURE IN ISRAEL WITH AND WITHOUT FEEDING

	YIELD WITH FEEDING		YIELD WITHOUT FEEDING	
	PER HA	PER TON	PER HA	PER TON
	2,100 KG	—	1,000 KG	—
COSTS	—	0.47 HA	—	1.0 HA
Charges for capital invested in ponds and fishing gear	$ 360	$169	$360	$360
Water	210	99	210	210
Fertilizers	87	41	87	87
Maintenance	106	50	106	106
Feed	370	174	—	—
Labor	286	116	150	150
Marketing costs	32	15	12	12
Interest on working capital	5	2	2	2
General and overhead expenses	10	5	8	8
Total	$1,466	$671	$935	$935

SOURCE: Tal and Hepher (1966)

One other subject that should be considered in a discussion of carp nutrition is food additives. The use of vitamins and other additives in carp culture rests on the same assumption as their use in human nutrition: optimum amounts of these substances are not present in normal diets. Among the classes of additives which have been given to carp are vitamins, antibiotics, minerals, and tissue preparations. Their use is largely in the experimental stage, but results are encouraging.

Addition to carp diets of hydrolyzed yeast, rich in vitamins of the B and D groups, has resulted in experimental yield increases of 16 to 56%

depending on the other components of the diet, while reducing feed expenditure per unit gain in weight by as much as 15%.

The antibiotic terramycin, applied at a dosage of 5000 to 10,000 units/kg of feed, has been shown to increase growth by 5 to 25%, with a 10.5% saving in feed costs and a higher survival rate of stock. Terramycin is particularly effective when the feed has a high vegetable content. However, fish culturists may eventually experience a problem encountered by farmers of cattle and poultry who use antibiotics prophylactically. The eventual evolution of strains of disease microbes resistant to antibiotics has in some cases made disease treatment very difficult and may lead to a net decrease in growth and survival. In all likelihood, those fish culturists who refrain from using antibiotics, except perhaps as a therapeutic measure against specific diseases, will do best in the long run.

Cobalt, a component of vitamin B_{12}, when added to carp diets at a rate of 0.08 mg of cobalt chloride/kg of fish/24 hours, or 3.0 g/ton of feed, resulted in an increase of vitamin B_{12} in the liver with an accompanying rise in growth rate of 30% in fingerlings and 15 to 20% in 2-year-old carp. Cost of feed per unit gain of weight decreased by 20%. Cobalt chloride may also be added to ponds as a fertilizer with similar effects.

Commercial tissue preparations, made from the viscera of slaughtered animals and used as a growth stimulant in warm-blooded animals, may also be added to carp feed. Seven kilograms of tissue preparation per ton of feed when added to the rations of 2-year-old carp increased growth by 12.0 to 13.3%.

STOCKING RATES

The amount of space allotted to carp in ponds varies with the characteristics of the pond, the type and amount of supplementary food given, and the size of the carp. Warm, shallow, naturally fertile ponds are best for all sizes and ages of carp, but fertilizers may be added. Once fertilizer dosages and feed rations have been worked out, the carp culturist's chief concern becomes the regulation of population density. Growth will be greatest at low densities, but space and labor considerations limit the extent to which this principle can be applied.

A suitable population density for newly hatched fry would of course amount to gross overcrowding in adult fish. So it is customary to maintain a series of ponds for raising fish of different ages. Segregation by size not only aids in regulating population density; it equalizes competition for food and assures that the somewhat different food requirements of carp at different ages can be met. Ponds may roughly be divided

into three categories: nursery ponds, rearing ponds, and production ponds.

Nursery ponds are the first stop for the young carp after they leave the hatching pond and are usually the smallest of the three types of pond. Small ponds facilitate ecological control and recapture of the fry. Depth is usually less than 1.5 m, with some ponds as shallow as 0.5 m, to take full advantage of the warming effect of the sun. Rearing ponds are slightly larger in all dimensions but still less than 2 m deep. Production ponds may be of almost any size consistent with efficient feeding and harvest of fish.

In southeast Asia and the Mediterranean area, rice fields are used as rearing or production ponds. This practice is becoming less prevalent as the use of heavy machinery necessitates periodic draining of the fields and as herbicides and insecticides are increasingly used in doses lethal to fish. A further limiting factor in temperate climates is that the maximum size of carp which can be produced in so shallow an enclosure as a rice field is about 500 g. In most European and some Asian countries this is well below the accepted minimum marketable size.

The size, age, and population density of carp stocked in ponds varies greatly. Table 8 gives samples of still water pond or rice field stocking rates for seven countries. Prospective carp culturists are best advised to follow local custom, at least at first.

The factor limiting the number of carp which can be stocked in a pond is not the amount of space available to each fish, but the volume of water per fish. In still water ponds, which account for the majority of carp culture facilities, available space and water volume are virtually identical, but if water is circulated through an enclosure containing fish, the volume of water per fish is effectively increased with no change in the space allotment.

If conditions are such that a flow of water through a pond can be maintained, stocking rates may be far in excess of those employed in still water. For example, in the Philippines running water ponds are stocked with fry at rates of 280 000 to 850 000/ha as compared to 50 000/ha in still water, with comparable yields.

Often conditions do not permit construction of a flowing water pond. A more frequently applicable method of increasing circulation of water in carp culture involves the use of floating cages as rearing or growing enclosures. Small cages submerged in streams have long been successfully used in growing carp in Java and Cambodia. More recently, Japanese and Russian fish culturists have investigated the feasibility of rearing and growing carp in floating cages in lakes (see p. 559 for a discussion of the advantages of cage culture).

In Japan, carp fingerlings are stocked in rectangular bamboo framed nets, 2 m deep and varying in area from 7 to 81 m^2. These nets are floated by means of empty oil drums and anchored to wooden stakes driven into the lake bottom, usually in about 3 m of water. When stocked with fingerlings at rates of 10 to 80/m^2 and heavily fed, carp production may reach 4000 kg/ha.

Russian experiments in growing adult carp at high densities (50 to 250/m^2) in floats have not been as successful, with growth generally less than that obtained at lower densities in still water ponds. Nevertheless, experiments in the use of floating cages in all phases of carp culture are continuing.

RECIRCULATING WATER SYSTEMS

A more sophisticated approach to the problem of water circulation in carp culture involves the construction of closed or semiclosed recirculating systems. This approach to fish culture has the advantages of minimizing the amounts of both space and water needed and of allowing nearly complete control over the fish's environment. On the debit side, elaborate filtration and aeration systems are required to compensate for the heavy oxygen demand and the large amounts of waste products generated by the extremely dense populations of carp. Moreover, although the small size of such systems cuts down on the total amount of labor required, a certain amount of specialized technical aid is necessary.

The first recirculating water system used in commercial carp culture was put into operation in 1951 by I. Motokawa of Maebashi City, Japan. In collaboration with Dr. A. Saeki of the Fisheries Faculty, Tokyo University, a pioneer researcher in the use of recirculating systems in fish culture, he converted a concrete fish pond into a 1-ton tank with a closed recirculating system. Dimensions and working capacity are given in Table 9.

Water is pumped from the fish tank to an adjoining concrete tank for settling out of sediment, then through pipes to one of a pair of filtration tanks. It is filtered through 60 cm of 1.5-cm diameter gravel spread on perforated plastic plate placed 20 cm above the bottom of the filtration tank. The filtration tanks are used alternately; the one not in use is washed periodically by compressed air passed through the pipes. Motokawa later built a 5-ton tank along the same lines as the original. Specifications and results of both systems are given in Table 10. When stocked with fingerlings at 30 to 70% of total fish holding capacity, production of carp per unit of water utilized reached 400 kg/m^2, the highest level ever achieved in Japan by any method.

TABLE 8 STOCKING RATES USED IN CULTURE OF COMMON CARP IN SEVEN COUNTRIES

COUNTRY	TYPE OF POND	AGE OR SIZE OF CARP STOCKED	STOCKING RATE	GROWTH	MORTALITY
India	Nursery, (stagnant, heavily fertilized and fed)	2 days old	1 25 to 2 5 million/ha	*to 25 mm* in 15 days	—
Indonesia	Nursery (or rice field)	3 weeks old	60 000/ha	to 30–50 mm in 3 weeks	40–60%
Nigeria	Rearing	6 weeks old, 30–50 mm	25,000–30 000/ha	to 50–80 mm in 3 weeks	20%
Philippines	Nursery	8– 10 mm	50,000/ha	to 50–60 mm in 1 month, may be grown up to 180 mm in nursery ponds	10–15%
	Rearing	60–180 mm	50 000/ha	to 20–50 g	—
	Rearing (running water)	Fry	280 000–850 000/ha	—	10–20%
	Production (stagnant)	20– 50 g	5,000/ha	—	—

Japan	Rice field	Fry	3,000–15,000/ha	—	—
	Rearing 1	1 month old	300–1,500/m^2	—	—
	Rearing 2	2 months old	30–100/m^2	—	—
	Rearing 3	3 months old	10–30/m^2	—	—
	Rearing 4	4 months old	1–3/m^2	—	—
	Production	2 years old	0 8/m^2	—	—
U.S.S.R. (Ukraine)	Rice field (nursery)	Fingerling	10–80/m^2	—	—
U.S.S.R.	Production (floating cage)	40 g	500,000–2½ million/ha	—	—
U.S.A. (Alabama)	Nursery (experimental)	3–4 weeks	250,000/ha	—	—

TABLE 9 DIMENSIONS AND CAPACITY OF A ONE TON CLOSED RECIRCULATING WATER SYSTEM USED IN CULTURE OF COMMON CARP

Dimensions	
Fish tank	76 5 m^2, 1 3 m deep
Filtration tank	24 8 m^2, 1 9 m deep
Volume of filter	9 2 m^3 (gravel of diameter 1.5 cm)
Head of the two tanks	1 7 m
Total volume of water	205 m^3
Working capacity	
Working area of filtration	15 m^2
Filtration velocity	102 m/day
Pumps	one 2 KW centrifugal and one 2 KW vertical, one 5 HP gasoline engine (for emergency)
Circulation of water	75 m^2/hour
Working oxygen intake	220 liters/day
Filtration	830 g/day as N
Carp reared	up to 1 ton
Carp kept	up to 6 tons

SOURCE Deguchi (1965), quoted in Kuronuma (1966)

Even more spectacular production of carp with water circulation has been achieved experimentally at the Max Planck Institute in Hamburg West Germany There carp have been reared and grown in aquaria at truly incredible population densities As many as 10 carp have been grown in a 40 liter aquarium With rapid water circulation, filtration by activated mud supplemented by a constant inflow of freshwater, temperature control and a daily food ration of 3 5% of the fish's weight, growth rates in aquaria were 500 to 600 times higher than for camparable fish kept in ponds No ill effects due to crowding were observed Comparable results were achieved in the Soviet Union by use of heated water in a similar recirculating system It is believed that if it had been financially feasible to build a larger filtration complex, the German system could have been operated as a closed system with similar results Figure 3 is a diagram of a closed system of the same sort as the semiclosed system used at the Max Planck Institute

SELECTIVE BREEDING AND HYBRIDIZATION

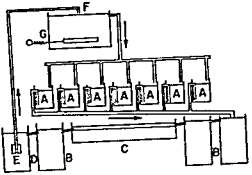
We have thus far covered the techniques of spawning hatching and rearing carp used by fish culturists in maximizing growth, production,

TABLE 10. DETAILS OF COMMON CARP CULTURE IN ONE-TON AND FIVE-TON WATER RECIRCULATING SYSTEMS

	ONE TON	FIVE TON
Total volume of water (m^3)	205	286.3
Volume of water circulation (m^3/hour)	75	135
Oxygen intake (liters/hour)	2.4	3.5
Fish tank		
Surface area (m^2)	76.5	125.1
Depth (m)	1.3	1.5
Filtration tank		
Surface area (m^2)	24.8	47.6
Volume of filter (m^3)	9.2	28.6
Fish harvested (tons)	0.85	4.12
Fish harvested in unit area (kg/m^2)	11 1	30.3
Period (days)	55	57
Temperature of water (°C)	16.3 –27.0	17–27.0
Number of fingerlings stocked	1,216	4,370
Weight of fingerlings stocked (kg)	543	2,250
Food given (kg)	625	1,890
Number of fish harvested	1,182	4,308
Weight of fish harvested (kg)	852.2	4,121
Number of fish died	34	62
Weight increase (%)	57	83
Food conversion	2.02	1.01
Average increase of weight (g)	273	442
Same per day (g)	5.35	7.75

SOURCE: Deguchi (1965), quoted in Kuronuma (1966).

and, ultimately, profit. Another factor which has bearing on carp production is selection of stock. Historically this function has also been the province of the culturist. However, the professional carp culturist rarely has the time or the facilities to carry out large-scale experiments on selective breeding. Such work is most appropriately done by government agencies or other large operators. Further, it is questionable whether any but the largest producers of carp for the market should spawn their own fish, experimentally or for production. It has been shown that mating of sibs, half sibs, or even cousins produces a marked inbreeding depression of growth rate and viability. Given the small amount of brood stock carried by most culturists, inbreeding is virtually unavoidable. Since 1964 this rationale has been put into practice in Israel by the Carp



A Aquaria
B Clearing Basin
C Activated Mud Filter
D Lower Reservoir
E Pump
F Upper Reservoir
G Heater

FIG 3 Closed recirculating system used in culturing common carp at the Max Planck Institute Hamburg Germany (After Meske, 1968)

PLATE 3 Intensive carp culture Ten fish (mean weight, 913 g) reared in 40 liter aquarium (Courtesy Dr Christoph Meske and Bamidgeh Israel)

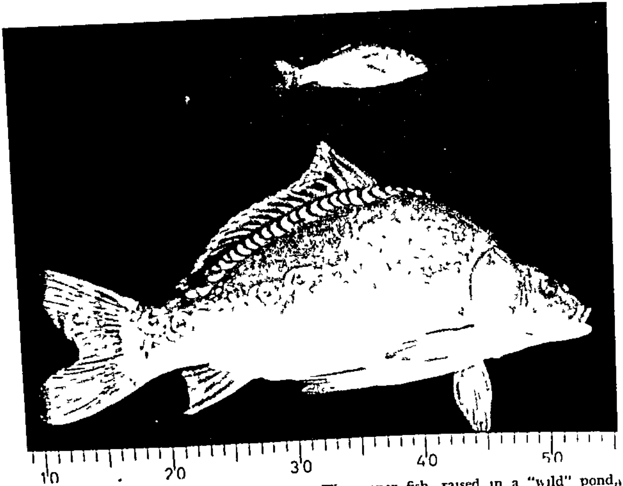


PLATE 4 Two sibling one-year old carp The upper fish, raised in a "wild" pond, weighs 40 g The lower, intensively cultured in an aquarium, weighs 1750 g (Courtesy Dr. Christoph Meske)

Breeder's Union, who carry out research aimed at developing improved strains of carp and supply fry of such strains to production farms, thus allowing the commercial culturist to devote his total effort to the quantitative aspects of production.

By virtue of the ease with which common carp are spawned, their hardiness, and their great fecundity the possibility of selective improvement of the species was recognized very early in the history of fish culture. Selective breeding of carp has gone on for centuries, resulting in the diversity of strains available today. Nevertheless, great differences may still be observed between the progeny of different sets of parents of the same strain, so that selective breeding on this basis is still relevant. Further improvements may be made by crossing established strains to combine desirable traits and to take advantage of heterosis (hybrid vigor). Offspring of such crosses may in turn be bred selectively.

Whatever the means and ends of selective carp breeding, extreme care

should be taken to maintain the purity of selected stocks The very reproductive potential which makes the possibility of selective breeding so inviting enables one unwanted fish to destroy the results of years of careful breeding

Hybridization among strains and subspecies has long played a part in genetic improvement of carp With the development of artificial methods of spawning interspecies hybridization is beginning to enter the picture Most interspecific hybrids of the common carp are sterile, but this is not so disadvantageous as it might at first appear If adult carp are grown in a pond for a number of years, natural spawning may take place Spawning retards growth and may result in the introduction of further generations of fish to compete for food with the original stock Stocking with sterile fish of course eliminates this problem

It should not be surprising to learn that the qualities most frequently selected for are those directly advantageous to the culturist, among them high fecundity, high viability, good food assimilation, and, in particular, rapid growth Mass selection for rapid growth has gone on for so many centuries that there is probably little potential for further improvement and such improvement as might occur could only be expressed under optimum conditions The tendency to rapid growth is linked with the strain known as mirror carp, which has only a few large, scattered scales In Europe and Israel this is the most commonly cultured strain It is relatively difficult to spawn however Recently young of a strain of blue carp (*Cyprinus carpio*, var *cerulea*) developed in Poland have also shown more rapid growth than is normal for cultured carp

One might expect heterosis to be expressed in higher growth rates of hybrids, and this is usually the case when geographically remote varieties and subspecies are crossed Such hybrids are also commonly hardier and more viable than are pure strains. Some interspecific hybrids among them mud carp (*Cirrhinus molitorella*) × *Cyprinus carpio* may grow more rapidly than either parent. Carp × goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) is the only common carp hybrid which regularly occurs in nature, and is an exception to the general rule of sterility in hybrids Backcrosses of carp × goldfish with either parent show somewhat better growth than the parent fish The hybrid of male common carp with female Prussian carp, *Carassius auratus gibelio* is known as the 'Savinsk silver crucian" and is reported not only to grow faster than either parent but to mature one year earlier and to be highly disease resistant This hybrid has the added advantage of feeding almost exclusively on plankton

Hybrid carp are in general more disease resistant than are pure strains Hybridization and selective breeding have also been used to increase

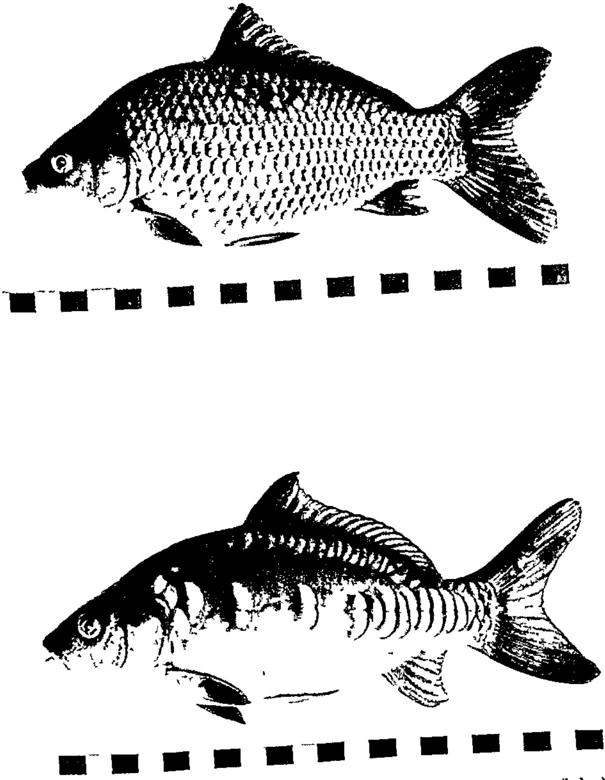


PLATE 5 Regular or wild variety of common carp (above) and mirror carp (below) (Courtesy Dr Christoph Meske)

hardiness relative to environmental factors Mention has already been made of Israeli efforts to develop a more salinity tolerant carp In the Soviet Union cold resistance is of equal importance Crossing European cultured carp (*Cyprinus carpio carpio*) with the wild Amur carp (*Cyprinus carpio haematopterus*) of East Asia produced a cold resistant variety known as the Kursk carp which has made possible the extension of carp culture in the Soviet Union as far north as latitude 60°N

Breeding for quality from the consumer s standpoint has lagged behind selection for characteristics advantageous to the producer The height length ratio has long been accepted as an index of quality applicable by both consumer and producer Carp with a high height length ratio supposedly grow faster and have better quality flesh This belief has sparked the production of such breeds as the German *Aischgrund* which exhibits height length ratios as high as 1 2 compared to the 1 3 to 1 4 ratios typical of wild carp Recently however it has been shown that body conformation has nothing to do with growth rate and little if any connection with quality Thus the only justification for continued selection on the basis of body conformation is on economic grounds If a particular shape is more salable than others it is worth breeding for The efficacy of even this sort of breeding for shape is questionable since environmental conditions exert such a profound influence on body conformation

Recent experiments carried out at the Max Planck Institute with the aim of selectively breeding carp without intermuscular bones (the small often forked bones which make many fish carp included so annoying to eat) might indeed do the consumer a service as well as increasing the market value and salability of carp

The mirror carp has already been mentioned Two other varieties with reduced numbers of scales have been developed the line carp which has one row of scales along the lateral line and the leather carp which is almost devoid of scales Selection for few scales has been rationalized on the basis that nearly scaleless carp are easier to prepare for the table but this advantage is doubtful in a fish which has such large scales in any event Be that as it may in Europe the scaleless varieties of carp are considered superior as food All three varieties bring better prices than scaled carp but most culturists concentrate on the mirror carp which grows faster and is more viable than line or leather carp and unlike them breeds true Scaleless carp were not introduced to Asia until this century Although they have not done well at low altitudes in the tropics they have proven superior to the scaled varieties at high altitudes The Asian consumer however is as prejudiced against mirror carp as his European counterpart is against scaled carp

Before leaving the subject of selective breeding mention should be made

of the fancy and colored varieties of carp which have been developed in China and Japan. Among the colors which have been produced are gold, lemon yellow, orange, rose pink, blue, dark green, and gray. Colored carp are used mainly for decorative purposes, but in recent years some of these colors have been used as genetic markers in experimental carp breeding.

Selection and hybridization for resistance to cold are not the only methods available for increasing carp production in temperate climates. In the Soviet Union carp are reared in floating cages placed in cooling reservoirs of power stations. These reservoirs receive effluents 10 to 15°C warmer than neighboring natural waters. When mixed with river water, the resulting temperatures are often within the optimum range for growth of carp. Even in midwinter the temperature of these reservoirs may be above 20°C. Before this practice was adopted, carp culture in floating cages was limited to the extreme south of the Soviet Union. Now it is practiced wherever thermal waters are available in central Russia. Yields compare favorably with, and in cold summers surpass, those achieved in ponds.

POLYCULTURE

Dramatic increases in yield of carp ponds frequently can be obtained through polyculture (rearing of several species together) to make more efficient use of the total pond environment. Chinese fish culturists, who use common carp as one of a complex of species, have developed this method to an art. (For details see Chapter 3 on Chinese carp culture.) Even when monoculture of common carp is intended, the culturist may find it advantageous to stock one of the Chinese species, the grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*), if dense growth of weeds, which has been shown to adversely affect growth of common carp, becomes a problem.

Polyculture of carp is not as well developed in other parts of the world, but encouraging results have been obtained in the Soviet Union from raising common carp with *Cyprinus carpio* × crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*) hybrids, goldfish, bream (*Abramis brama*), and sterlet (*Acipenser ruthenus*). In Yugoslavia carp are reared together with tench (*Tinca tinca*). Tench compete for food with carp, grow more slowly, and reach a much smaller size, thus although they bring a high price, the economic feasibility of culturing carp and tench together is doubtful. Carp are commonly reared with roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) in France and experimental polyculture of carp with mullet and *Tilapia* is going on in Israel.

An aspect of polyculture that has developed chiefly in Europe is the use

of predatory fish in conjunction with carp raised in ponds which support populations of trash fish or where wild spawning of carp takes place. The predators control the population of potential carp competitors and are eventually harvested with the carp. The traditional fish for this purpose is the pike (*Esox lucius*). The rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) imported from America has two advantages over the pike. Unlike the pike it inhabits the open waters of ponds as well as shorelines and weed beds and it brings a better price than pike. Use of rainbow trout in carp ponds is limited by oxygen supply; they require at least 5.6 ppm of dissolved O_2. Russian fish culturists report 25% increases in carp yield through use of another American predator, the largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) which like the pike is a shoreline dweller. Among the native European fish that have been more or less successfully used as predators in carp ponds are common whitefish (*Coregonus lavaretus*), peled (*Coregonus peled*), brown trout (*Salmo trutta*), English perch (*Perca fluviatilis*), and pike perch (*Lucioperca lucioperca*).

YIELDS OF COMMON CARP CULTURE

Most of the techniques thus far discussed have been developed for the purpose of realizing the carp culturist's primary goal: a high yield of carp per unit area of water. Just what constitutes a high yield varies with locality and type of culture. Table 11 lists actual yields achieved by various culture methods in various countries.

HARVESTING

Carp are harvested by draining the growing pond or by use of a seine or cast net. Cast nets are preferred for harvesting small quantities of fish since they can be operated by one man. Seining requires additional labor and, if the pond to be seined is large, the use of a small boat. Size at harvest varies according to local custom. In Indonesia, carp as small as 0.08 to 0.15 kg are not only accepted but preferred for table use. On the other hand, in most European countries 1.2 kg is considered near the minimum marketable size. In general Asian consumers will accept smaller fish than Europeans, but the carp culturist should ascertain local preference before scheduling for harvest.

It is good practice to periodically harvest the largest, fastest growing fish in production ponds. This not only gives the culturist a constant source of income but serves to thin out the stock, thus improving the

TABLE 11 YIELDS OF COMMON CARP CULTURE IN VARIOUS COUNTRIES

COUNTRY OR AREA	CULTURE METHOD	YIELD (KG/HA)	
Czechoslovakia	Growth in ponds with ducks	500	
Europe	Natural growth in ponds	25–	400
	Growth in ponds with feeding	100–	400
	Intensive culture in ponds	1,500	
West Germany	Growth in sewage treatment ponds, without feeding	500–	900
Guatemala	Intensive culture in ponds	4,000	
Haiti	Government hatcheries	2,300+	
	Farm ponds (subsistence culture), usually without feeding	550	
India	Natural growth in ponds	400	
	Growth in ponds with management	1,500	
Indonesia	Intensive culture in ponds	1,500	
	Growth in cages in polluted streams without feeding	500,000–	750,000
Israel	Intensive pond culture of mirror carp	1,500	
Japan	Growth in irrigation ponds (low fertility)	76	
	Growth in irrigation ponds (medium fertility)	180	
	Growth in irrigation ponds (high fertility)	490	
	Growth in irrigation ponds with very heavy feeding	5,000	
	Intensive culture in ponds	5,000	
	Growth in running water ponds or streams	400,000–2,000,000 (depends on velocity of water)	
	Growth in rice fields	700–	1,200
	Rearing in floating cages	4 000	
	Rearing in closed recirculating systems	4,000 000	
Nigeria	Commercial culture with fertilization and feeding	371–	1,834

TABLE 11 (continued)

COUNTRY OR AREA	CULTURE METHOD	YIELD (KG/HA)
Philippines	Intensive culture in stagnant ponds	5,500
	Intensive culture in running water ponds with heavy feeding	80,000
Poland	*Growth in sewage treatment ponds, without feeding*	1,300
U A R.	Experimental culture in ponds, *with feeding*	2,500
United States (Alabama)	Intensive pond culture with inorganic fertilization, without *feeding*	314
	Intensive pond culture with inorganic fertilization and feeding (not economically feasible)	784–1,930
U.S.S R. (Ukraine)	Growth in rice fields	150–200
U.S.S R.	Experimental culture in ponds *in peat hags (unfertilized)*	50
	Experimental culture in ponds in peat hags (fertilized)	250–300
	Pond culture on collective farms	200–500
Yugoslavia	*Culture in ponds, without fertilization*	780
	Culture in ponds, with manure added	1,500–2,000

conditions of growth for stock remaining in the pond Seines are preferred to cast nets for this purpose, since it is easier to sort fish in a seine

TRANSPORT AND MARKETING

In Asia carp usually are sold live and may pass directly from producer to consumer Iced or dried carp also are sold, but live fish bring a higher price, particularly in tropical areas, where preservation is a problem Marketing may consist simply of displaying the fish in cages placed in the growing pond or in small, shallow ponds nearby

Where it is necessary to transport the fish to market tanks mounted on

vehicles are used Although carp are not as resistant to crowding as certain Asian fish which have accessory breathing organs, they are hardier than most fish and may be transported in closed containers under semicrowded conditions In Israel it is recommended that adult carp be shipped in tank trucks in a 1 1 ratio of carp to water Up to four times as much water may be required at high temperatures If crowding in transport is necessary, aeration by means of a pump or oxygen cylinder is advisable In regions which have extensive inland waterway systems, oxygen problems are solved by transporting carp in streamline shaped cages suspended over the side of boats, thus providing a constant exchange of water as long as the boat is in motion

At the market, carp are usually kept in cement cisterns about 1 m deep, which may be supplied with a crude running water system A 3 m × 2 m cistern with running water is satisfactory for up to 300 kg of carp If the fish are to remain in the cistern for more than one day, they should be fed Thus maintained in clear water and fed regularly, they soon lose any 'muddy taste acquired in pond life

Some carp are sold live wherever carp are caught or cultured for human consumption, but in Europe there is a greater market for processed carp The oldest method of preservation is to salt the fish and dry them in air Dried fish is often sold as a snack, to be eaten without cooking Carp is also sold as fresh or frozen whole fish or fillets or in cans In the case of canned fish, the producer usually sells to a processor rather than to a retailer or consumer Carp destined for canning may be cut up and processed as is, in which case it requires cooking before eating, or it may be fried or smoked prior to canning A common canned fish product is gefilte fish, favored by Jewish people throughout the world The preferred fish for this dish is whitefish (*Coregonus* spp), but as stocks of whitefish have become depleted in many countries, carp has increasingly been used for this purpose

PROBLEMS OF COMMON CARP CULTURE

DISEASES AND PARASITES

We would be remiss in our discussion of culture of the common carp if we did not mention some of the problems the culturist may encounter Some problems have already been discussed, including methods of compensating for a sterile environment and means of controlling or eliminating predators, competitors, excess plants, and *Saprolegnia* on eggs

The carp culturist should also be prepared to cope with a number of

diseases and parasites of carp Among the disease and parasites afflicting carp are *Argulus*, ascites disease, bothriocephalosis, caryophyllosis, chilodonellosis, coccidiosis and coccidiosal enteritis, dactylogyrosis, *Ichthyophthirius* (sometimes known as Ich), infectious air bladder disease infectious dropsy or red spot disease, infectious gill necrosis, philometrosis *Prymnesium*, and sanguinicolosis Some of these are curable and most are susceptible to treatment to prevent their spread (For specifics of diagnosis and treatment, the reader is referred to *Culture and Diseases of Game Fishes* by H S Davis)

The carp culturist wishing to provide an ounce of prevention will do well to use disease resistant strains of fish if they are available, drain ponds which are not in use, maintain good water circulation, handle all carp carefully so as to avoid injury, avoid unnecessary mixing of stock or introduction of wild stock, feed an adequate diet, and to do whatever else is conducive to keeping the stock in good condition In some instances eradication of specific disease hosts may also be undertaken as a preventive measure.

SOCIOECONOMIC PROBLEMS

The feasibility of carp culture in some regions particularly the United States and Canada, is reduced by the presence of a complex of attitudes only partially attributable to the carp Carp were introduced to the United States in 1877 attended by a great brouhaha of publicity anent their value as food fish About that time, high ranking fishery officials went so far as to suggest that the carp was so desirable that it might be advisable to eradicate some "undesirable" native species, for example the largemouth bass and the northern pike The apostles of the carp seem not to have considered the differences between American and European conditions In North America human population density was low compared to Europe, land was plentiful, and farming of mammalian and avian stock together with freshwater and saltwater fisheries provided for a supply of protein far more abundant than that of any European country There was simply no incentive for the intensive culture of carp The enthusiasm accorded the first introductions soon waned, and in 1896 the U.S Fish Commission ceased to import, distribute, and stock carp

But the carp had gained a foothold Escapees from private ponds populated those waters where carp had not been deliberately introduced. Today *Cyprinus carpio* inhabits 46 of the 50 states of the United States as well as the more southerly portions of Canada Left to fend for themselves they quickly reverted to the wild strain without a thought for

the labors of the European fish culturists who had painstakingly developed the breed. Carp caught in North America are usually scaly, extremely bony, coarse-textured fish with a poor height-length ratio. Sport fishermen, who comprise a much larger segment of the population in the United States and Canada than in Europe, found these fish a far less attractive quarry than the native game fish. Neither did they appreciate the table qualities of the wild carp.

As the human population grew, attendant pollution, siltation, and overfishing decimated game fish stocks while the carp thrived. Anglers had noted the carp's habit of raising small clouds of mud while industriously rooting in the botton and in short order the nuisance became a villain, accused of increasing turbidity, destroying aquatic vegetation, and preying on the spawn of game fish. With the designation of the carp as the scapegoat for the sins of man in the decline of sport fisheries its rejection was complete.

Price and prejudice went hand in hand, so that today in North America carp bring only a third the price of such comparable "rough" fish as buffalo fish. Some carp are marketed by commercial fishermen, but sales are virtually limited to the poorest members of society.

With the continued eutrophication of American waters and the predicted narrowing of the gap between protein supply and demand, sport and commercial fishermen, fish culturists, and housewives may all have to reconsider the carp. For the present, however, carp are scarcely considered edible in North America and their culture is not economically feasible.

PREREQUISITES FOR SUCCESSFUL CULTURE OF COMMON CARP

The common carp remains the easiest of all fish to culture intensively. For this and other reasons it is also one of the best fishes for culture in many countries. Commercial culture of carp is likely to be feasible if the following conditions are met:

1. There must be a market for carp. This may be a mass market, as in countries where carp are traditionally eaten, or a specialty market, as in Guatemala where a small European population sustains a successful carp culture enterprise.
2. There must be an economical means of getting live or iced carp to market or a suitable means of preservation for shipping.
3. The carp culturist must begin with stock which is both adapted to

local conditions and suited to regional tastes in such matters as size and scaliness

4 There must be adequate space for ponds While it is possible to raise some carp in a single pond, the competitive advantage goes to culturists who use a number of ponds, each designed for a particular purpose Ideally there should be a separate pond or ponds for spawning, hatching, nursing, rearing, growing, and holding male and female brood stock

5 There must be an adequate supply of reasonably warm water If water is scarce, a recirculating system may solve the problem, but such systems require a very large initial investment of money

6 Ponds used in carp culture either must be naturally fertile or there must be an economical means of fertilizing them

7 Unless the waters to be used are extremely fertile, carp feed must be available at a reasonable price

8 There must be an adequate supply of labor available at moderate cost If induced spawning or a recirculating system is to be used, employees must have some technical training Otherwise unskilled labor will do

9 Sufficient capital must be available to meet the initial expenses for stock, feed, equipment, and so on

COMMON CARP IN SUBSISTENCE AQUACULTURE

Most of the foregoing conditions assume that the carp are to be sold Carp also play a role in subsistence aquaculture, for which all that is absolutely necessary is a source of stock and a fertile body of water where they may be held and harvested Today subsistence aquaculture is being promoted chiefly in Africa and Latin America *Tilapia* spp are the fish most frequently advocated, but in Haiti carp is used Government hatcheries do the actual culturing, attaining yields of 2300 kg/ha and more Young carp are distributed to small farmers who stock them in ponds, usually less than 100 m^2 and 50 cm to 1 m deep, then simply wait until they reach harvestable size Without feeding, this takes 7 to 9 months It would appear that a considerable local enhancement of protein supply is achieved in this manner

PROSPECTUS

Culture of the common carp for subsistence and profit may be expected to increase in importance and efficiency for some time as researchers and

culturists all over the world, particularly in the Soviet Union, Poland, Hungary, West Germany, Yugoslavia, Israel, Japan, mainland China, and southeast Asia, strive to improve their techniques For the foreseeable future the common carp will continue to be one of the chief suppliers of fish protein to man and an increasing proportion of that protein will come from intensively cultured carp

REFERENCES

ALIKUNHI K H 1966 Synopsis of biological data on common carp *Cyprinus carpio* (Linnaeus) 1758 Asia and the Far East FAO Fisheries Synopsis 31 1

ANDRIASHEVA M A 1966 Some results obtained by the hybridization of cyprinids FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/E 10

BARDACH, J E 1957 Marine fisheries and fish culture in the Caribbean Proceedings of the Gulf and Caribbean Fisheries Institute 10th Annual Session, pp 132–137

CLEMENS, H P, and K E SNEED 1962 Bioassay and use of pituitary materials to spawn warm water fishes U.S Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife, Research Rep 61

DAVIS H S 1953 Culture and diseases of game fishes U California Press Berkeley, 332 pp

GRIBANOV, L V, A W KORNEEV, and L A KORNEEVA 1966 Use of thermal waters for commercial production of carps in floats in the U.S.S.R FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E 7

HORA, S L, and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper No 14

KURONUMA, K 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII IV/R 1

LAKSHMANAN M A V, D S MURTY, K K PILLAI, and S C BANERJEE 1966 On a new artificial feed for carp fry FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/E 5

LAVRENSKY, V V 1966 Raising of Rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri* Rich) together with carp (*Cyprinus carpio* L) and other fishes FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E 3

LIN, S Y 1966 General aspect of fish culture in Southeast Asia Paper given at Fish Culture Symposium of the 11th Pacific Science Congress

LING, S W 1966 Feeds and feeding of warm water fishes in ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III–VIII/R 2

MESKE, C 1968 Breeding carp for reduced number of intermuscular bones, and growth of carp in aquaria Bamidgeh 20(4) 105–119

MINTS A G, and E N KHAIRULINE 1966 Intensive forms of rearing fish in ponds in peat bags FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E-6

MOAV, R, and G W WOHLFARTH 1966 Genetic improvement of yield in carp FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/R 2

SARIG, S 1966 Synopsis of biological data on common carp, *Cyprinus carpio* (Linnaeus) 1785, Near East and Europe FAO Fisheries Synopsis 31.2

SCHÄPERCLAUS, W 1965 Lehrbuch der Karpfenerträge in Teichen durch Stickstoff düngung Neue Düngungsversuche mit Karpfen 1965 Deut Fisch 7 13(1) 6–14

SCKHOVERKHOV, F M 1966 The effect of cobalt, vitamins tissue preparations and antibiotics on carp production FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III/E 7

STEFFENS W 1969 Der Karpfen A Ziemsen Verlag Wittenberg Lutherstadt 156 pp.

TAL, S., and B HEPHER. 1966 Economic aspects of fish feeding in the Near East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III/R 1

WOLNY, P 1966 Fertilization of warm water fish ponds in Europe FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/R 7

YASHOUV, A 1966 *Mixed fish culture—an ecological approach to increase pond productivity FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture.* FR V/R 2

Interviews and Personal Communication

PILLAY, T V R Chief, Fish Culture Section, Inland Fishery Branch, FAO

TAL, S Director of the Inland Fisheries, Ministry of Agriculture, Tel Aviv, Israel.

WOHLFARTH, G W Fish Culture Research Station, Dor, Israel

YASHOUV, A Fish Culture Research Station, Dor, Israel

3

Chinese Carp Culture

PLATE 1. Polyculture fish ponds in Kwangtung Province in southern China (Courtesy F. Anderegg)

BASIC PRINCIPLES OF POLYCULTURE

The People's Republic of China leads the world in the production, through culture, of freshwater fish (Plate 1). In 1965 estimates of the harvest ranged from 1.5 million to 3 million metric tons As early as 1959 Chinese authorities claimed an average individual yield from pond culture of 7500 kg/ha. These estimates may be inflated, but yields of that magnitude are achieved in more than a few ponds. In the last 10 years production per hectare has almost certainly increased greatly, for the innovation of artificially induced spawning, which has advanced fish culture throughout the world, was particularly beneficial in the Chinese situation. Thus the great productivity of Chinese freshwater fish culture is in part due to modern technological innovation as well as to the tremendous effort put forth in recent years by the Chinese people But of equal importance is the application some 1000 or more years ago of two

seemingly obvious principles of fish culture. During the Tang Dynasty (A.D. 618–904) the Chinese, who had been in the fish culture business for some 10 or 20 centuries, recognized that:

1. A body of water is a three-dimensional growing space. To treat it like a field, by planting only one kind of crop, is likely to result in wasting the majority of that space.
2. Any fertile pond will produce a number of different fish food organisms. However, most fish are not omnivorous, but rather selective in their diet. Thus stocking single species wastes not only space but food.

In other words, the Chinese greatly increased the efficiency of fish culture by applying to the pond microcosm the science of ecology, for which the Western world is now acquiring a belated concern. To assure efficient use of the pond environment, Chinese fish culturists usually stock four types of fish; two midwater dwellers, one of which prefers phytoplankton as food, the other zooplankton; a fish which feeds mainly on higher aquatic plants; and a bottom-dwelling omnivore. Often a carnivorous bottom dweller will be added to this basic community. If trash fish or excess young fish inhabit the pond, a predator may be included to control them. This latter practice is not general in China, but is quite common in Cambodia and Vietnam.

HISTORY OF THE CHINESE CARPS IN FISH CULTURE

One might suppose that the practice of polyculture, as it is called, would have spread from China or developed independently elsewhere, but this has rarely been the case. The spread of the Chinese carps themselves was effectively blocked by the inability of fish culturists to spawn them. In nature they spawn in rivers and it was long believed that, under the conditions of still water and high population density prevalent in freshwater pond fish culture, their gonads would not mature. It has since been shown that they will mature in ponds, but in captivity natural spawning almost never occurs. Thus culturists were long limited to wild fish as a source of stock and the spread of the Chinese carps was limited by the available means for transporting live eggs and fry. Nevertheless, Chinese farmers who settled on Taiwan 300 to 400 years ago brought with them the practice of pond culture and the Chinese carps, even though there were no rivers large enough to support natural populations, thus fry had to be imported annually, at considerable risk, from the Chinese mainland. Chinese carps were also transplanted throughout southeast Asia, where local adaptations of the Chinese method developed. Some

of the Chinese carps were imported to Japan, but monoculture remained the dominant practice there

Neither Chinese fish nor the concept of polyculture found their way to the West until recent years Perhaps improvements in communications have had something to do with the recent Western interest in polyculture, but two other technological advancements have had great effect

Improved means of transporting fish over long distances were largely responsible for the successful introduction in 1949 of grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*), silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*), and big head (*Aristichthys nobilis*) to the Soviet Union and subsequent successful transplantations

In the 1960s development of techniques of inducing spawning of Chinese carps by hypophysation eliminated dependence on wild stocks Within the decade various members of the Chinese carp complex became the subjects of experimentation and acclimatization in a number of western countries, including Bulgaria, Czechoslovakia, France, Hungary Iraq Israel, Poland, Rumania, the United Arab Republic, the United States, West Germany, and Yugoslavia More important, the ancient Chinese concept of polyculture is being considered wherever fish are cultured

The distinctions as to ecological niche among the Chinese carps are not hard and fast For example, examination of the stomach contents of those species which are considered zooplankton feeders often reveals a preponderance of phytoplankton Nevertheless, there is enough variation in zone of habitation and/or feeding habits to justify the accepted classification of pond fish into groups, even if centuries of experience had not proven it a useful tool

SPECIES USED

PLANKTON FEEDERS

The most commonly stocked phytoplankton feeder is the silver carp which will also accept such artificial feeds as bean meal, rice bran, and flour In Vietnam it is said to be replaced by the ca duong (*Hypophthalmichthys harmandi*) which may be identical Another phytoplankton feeder sometimes grown in Malaysia is the sandkhol carp (*Thynnichthys sandkhol*) The classical zooplankton feeder for pond polyculture *is* the big head, which, although perhaps a more efficient feeder on zooplankton than the silver carp, may take the bulk of its nourishment *from* phytoplankton *Another cyprinid reputed to* be a zooplankton *feeder* is the

ma lang yu (*Squaliobarbus curriculus*), sometimes used in polyculture in South China and the Indochinese Peninsula. A less specialized midwater feeder, which consumes both phytoplankton and zooplankton, is the ca choi (*Labeo collaris*).

There has been some speculation as to how a fish might select a particular type of plankton. The most likely way is by means of the gill rakers, but visual cues or vibration patterns received by the lateral line could also be involved. All plankton feeders have extremely long, fine gill rakers, but these are especially well developed in the silver carp, suggesting that it is capable of more selective filtering than other plankton feeders. Some observers, however, are of the opinion that silver carp do not select for phytoplankton but that zooplankton are crushed by the pharyngeal teeth and digested, so that no trace of them is found when the digestive tract is opened. Whatever the degree of selectivity among plankton feeders, the practice of stocking silver carp and big heads or some similar combination is firmly entrenched in Chinese fish culture and yields good results.

HERBIVORES

Silver carp may also consume some higher plants, and in South China and the Indochinese Peninsula the ca ven (*Megalobrama bramula*) is stocked as an herbivore, but by far the best known and most widely cultivated macrophyte feeder is the grass carp. The grass carp is not an obligate herbivore; indeed it will eat almost anything including decaying clothing, but it does prefer vegetable food. (The U.S. Warm-Water Fish-Cultural Laboratory at Stuttgart, Arkansas, disputes this general assumption, and classifies the grass carp as an "opportunistic" feeder.) Higher plants are usually absent from ponds used in intensive fish culture, but so voracious is the grass carp that even if they are present supplementary feeding is necessary. Offsetting this expenditure somewhat is the nourishment that omnivorous bottom-feeding fishes derive from the partially digested plant remains in grass carp feces.

Despite its extreme voracity, sensitivity to noises (which may lead to such behavior as leaping onto the bank), poor growth in water below 14°C, and bad reputation as a spreader of parasites and diseases, the grass carp is an extremely popular pond fish and the only one of the Chinese carps to find use outside the traditional framework of polyculture. The predilection of the grass carp for vegetable food has led to its use in weed control in ponds. In cold climates, as in Germany, the feeding rate of grass carp is so low that their effect on aquatic plants is negligible. In warmer climates, however, they have been found quite effective in controlling weeds while at the same time adding to the productivity of

TABLE 1 STOCKING RATES OF GRASS CARP FOR WEED CONTROL

COUNTRY	SIZE OR AGE OF GRASS CARP STOCKED	STOCKING RATIO	EFFECTIVENESS
Japan	Yearling	19/ha	None
	Yearling	55/ha	70% eradication of extremely heavy weed growth in 1 year
	Yearling	50/ha	100% eradication of submerged and floating plants in 1 year, no effect on marginal plants
Rumania	Yearling	500–800/ha followed by 200–500/ha in one year if not 100% eradication	100% eradication in 1–2 years
	3 years	80–150/ha	Control
	4 years	30– 50/ha	Control
	3– 4 years	160–240/ha	100% eradication
United States (Arkansas)	30–40 cm	50–100/ha	Control of *Chara* and pond weeds
	30–40 cm	1,700/ha	100% eradication of submerged plants in 6 weeks

ponds containing other species of fish and invertebrates Table 1 lists sample stocking ratios of grass carp for weed control

It can be seen that in warm climates grass carp, if stocked heavily enough are very effective in controlling submerged and floating vegetation but are of doubtful value against marginal plants The Arkansas experiments involved 12 species of plants, all of which were eventually eaten, but there was a definite preference for the softer varieties

The use of grass carp in weed control entails the risk that they may escape into natural waterways and destroy valuable plants However since there are few comparable herbivores among the world s fish fauna and since grass carp are a good deal cheaper than chemical or mechanical methods of weed control, their use will probably become more prevalent. Another fish that may find favor in this regard is the tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*), which, though considered a second rate food fish, is used in polyculture as well as weed control in southeast Asia

BOTTOM DWELLERS

Plankton feeders and herbivores are virtually universal in pond polyculture, but bottom dwelling carnivores and omnivores are not always used. Many Asian ponds are fertilized so heavily that the resulting plankton bloom effectively shades the bottom, so reducing productivity in that zone as to limit greatly fish populations there. Where conditions permit the stocking of benthic fishes the native Chinese omnivore is the mud carp (*Cirrhinus molitorella*), but it is often kept in conjunction with, or supplanted by, the common carp, particularly in northern China. In addition to being more resistant to cold, the common carp is easier to spawn and reaches a larger size. On the other hand, the common carp is a rather energetic feeder and when densely stocked in ponds may substantially increase the turbidity by its actions. High turbidity is never desirable in fish ponds and is particularly unfavorable for silver carp. The mud carp, despite its name, does not root in the bottom like the common carp, but picks its food from the substrate rather daintily. It is also considered a superior table fish to common carp. A third omnivore, the crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*), imported from Europe, is sometimes used. Its principal advantage lies in its extreme hardiness with respect to low temperatures and dissolved oxygen concentrations, it can be bred in ponds where it is impossible to grow other fish. However, in addition to feeding on the bottom it may compete for plankton with silver carp and big head. Since its flesh is of poor quality and the market price correspondingly low, it should not be used if more desirable species are available. Other omnivorous cyprinids cultured in southeast Asia but neither native nor introduced to China include the belinka (*Barbus belinka*), the lampai (*Barbus schwanenfeldii*), the mata merah (*Barbus orphoides*), and the tambra (*Labeobarbus tambroides*).

The usual carnivore for pond culture is the black carp or snail carp (*Mylopharyngodon piceus*). The ca cham (*Mylopharyngodon aethiops*) is also mentioned in the literature in this regard but there is some doubt as to whether or not it is identical with *M. piceus*. Despite the fact that the black carp is the largest of the Chinese carps, reaching lengths of up to 180 cm, it is not highly esteemed as a food fish outside of China. Its inclusion in polyculture in Taiwan, Malaysia, and other nearby countries, is the result of accidental introduction with fry of other species imported from China. The favored food of black carp is mollusks, and Chinese fish culturists sometimes collect snails and clams to feed them, but where conditions are right they require little supplemental feeding. In fact, it has been suggested that black carp could be used to control snail populations in ponds where snails compete for food with herbivorous fishes.

A more generalized carnivore, the bream (*Parabramis pekinensis*) is grown in some ponds. Some authorities consider the bream an omnivore.

PISCIVOROUS FISH

Of the 20 or so species of cyprinids commonly used in polyculture in China and southeast Asia, only the bream, common carp, crucian carp, and lampai (*Barbus schwanenfeldii*) will spawn in ponds without human intervention. If any of these species are present, undesired spawning may occur in growing ponds, in which case a predatory species may be introduced. The same applies to unwanted species such as goldfish (*Carassius auratus*), which often find their way into carp ponds. When predators are used they are usually readily available native fish, such as bass (Serranidae), catfishes (Clariidae and Siluridae) or snakeheads (Channidae). Other predators used in culture of common carp are listed on p. 66.

COLLECTION OF WILD STOCK

COLLECTION OF EGGS AND FRY

The classical method of obtaining stock for pond culture in China involves capture of eggs or fry from rivers, and some wild stock is still distributed. The Chinese carps spawn in the swift waters of large rivers usually in the spring, although grass carp and mud carp may spawn through the summer. Considerable quantities of eggs and fry are often found drifting with the current, particularly during periods of high water, and fry dealers on the Yangtse and West rivers take advantage of this fact. A fry collecting station consists of 10 to 20 rows of wooden frames, 10 m high by 30 to 50 m wide, to each of which are attached 10 to 15 fine mesh conical bag nets about 5 m long, tapering from 4 to 5 m wide at the mouth to 1 to 1.5 m at the cod end, where a receptacle of finer mesh, about 120 cm long, is attached. The entire net is floated by means of a wooden framework around the cod end and a wooden pole inserted into the bag. A semicircular wooden trough may be used in place of the bag net, with the same sort of receptacle at the cod end. Captured eggs and fry are transferred by dip net into live wells suspended from the frame, then taken ashore. Similar methods are used in collecting fry of *Hypophthalmichthys harmandi*, *Labeo collaris*, *Mylopharyngodon aethiops*, and common carp from the Red River of Vietnam.

HATCHING EGGS

If the catch consists of eggs, they are transferred to shallow wood framed cloth hatching boxes, which are anchored in some sheltered spot in the river, often near the mouth of a small tributary, where the water is clearer than in the main channel. Hatching occurs in 2 or 3 days in favorable weather. The newly hatched larvae are kept in the boxes for 3 days, then sorted for distribution or stocking.

SORTING FRY

If the catch consists of fry, they are sorted immediately. The greatest demand in China is for big head and grass carp, but silver carp, black carp, and mud carp are also highly valued. Common carp and bream are less valuable but are usually retained for pond stocking. Goldfish are also kept, not intentionally, but because as fry they can scarcely be distinguished from common carp. Fry of predators and other extraneous fish usually are destroyed.

Sorting the fry is a complex operation carried out by skilled fry experts. A preliminary check of species composition is made at the river. A sample of the catch is placed in a white enamel dish 4 to 6 cm deep and the percentage of each species present is estimated visually. According to Lin (cited in Hora and Pillay, 1962) the characteristics listed in Table 2 are used by fry experts.

Further visual identification occurs at the nursery. Small samples of the catch are placed in bowls of clear water, each type of fry is counted and the percentage composition of the catch calculated. The mixed catch may be sold directly to fish culturists or the fry may be sorted.

The first step in sorting involves pouring the catch through a large net suspended and partially submerged in a pond. There dead fry and debris are picked out by hand. Preliminary sorting is done by passing the catch through a set of 20 or more sieves. At a given time of year fry of a particular species have a characteristic size, so that the sieves have the effect of roughly sorting the catch as to species The fry of most undesirable species are larger than those of cultivated species and may thus be eliminated in the process.

Next the fry are transferred to a tall sorting basket. Within 10 minutes the fry sort themselves out into layers: silver carp and big heads near the surface; grass carp, black carp, and bream in midwater; and mud carp and common carp near the bottom. There may also be tiny fry of *Elopichthys* or other unwanted fish present. These will usually gather at the sur-

TABLE 2 DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF SEVEN SPECIES OF CHINESE CARP FRY, AND THE PREDATOR *Siniperca chuatsi*

Silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*)	always swimming in the upper layer of water with occasional stops while swimming, head small, interorbital space narrow body short with small roundish air bladder color dark gray, not as transparent as the big head
Big head (*Aristichthys nobilis*)	swimming in a slow and steady manner, air bladder roundish, body long and robust, head and eyes large
Grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*)	swimming in the middle layer of water with occasional pauses, color dark, eyes medium, air bladder small, roundish, body short, tail pointed
Black carp (*Mylopharyngodon piceus*)	swimming like the grass carp, air bladder long body long, eyes large, head depressed, triangular shaped
Mud carp (*Cirrhinus molitorella*)	swimming in a sluggish manner near the bottom or along the edge of the dish, eyes small, roundish, body small, slender, pinkish in color, a spot on the tail
Mandarin fish (*Siniperca chuatsi*) (a predator)	swimming at the bottom, usually 10 to 20 mm in length, mouth large, color dark
Common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and goldfish (*Carassius auratus*)	color dark, body short with long dorsal fin, fry 6 or 7 days after hatching 5 mm long with a black speck at the base of the tail fin
Bream (*Parabramis pekinensis*)	swimming in the middle layer of water, color dark, a dark speck on front part of dorsal fin, active fry

face and can be skimmed off separately The reasons for this natural sorting are not clear but apparently involve differences in oxygen requirements Once the fish have sorted themselves out they must be separated rapidly to avoid death of fry due to lack of oxygen

Separation of species which occupy the same layer is difficult at the fry stage, but silver carp and big head are usually sorted out as much as possible This is done by placing them in one part of a partitioned pond for a day Then a seine is dragged over the top 5 cm of water Seining in this manner will produce only silver carp, which are placed in another section of the pond This operation is repeated the next day and so on, until catches in the surface layer are negligible, then repeated at a depth of 15 cm, where the catch will consist of equal proportions of silver carp and big head The remaining fry will be virtually 100% big head The mixed lot of fry taken at 15 cm are reared together and sorted visually when they are larger

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

HISTORY

In the 1930s silver carp and grass carp were spawned in China by means of artificial insemination, using ripe wild fish and hand stripping of eggs and milt. (See p. 400 for a description of this technique.) By the early 1950s fry specialists in some parts of China were supplying millions of artificially produced fry of these species and common carp to culturists. But the supply did not approach the demand and until induced spawning using pituitary extracts became common practice Chinese carp culture was largely dependent on collection of wild fry from rivers, despite the great amounts of labor required, the heavy mortality of fry, the high cost of fry attendant on these two factors, and the impossibility of obtaining pure, one species stock free from predators, parasites, and trash fish.

The practice of hormonally induced spawning of fish was originated in 1934 by Brazilian biologists, but it has found only minor application in South America. The Brazilian innovation has, however, been widely adopted in Asia, Europe, and North America, and ranks among the foremost contributions to the art of fish culture. It has subsequently been found that exogenous hormones (hormones from a donor species other than the one being spawned) may be successfully used in many, if not a majority of, cases. Often even mammalian hormones have been effective. As induced spawning becomes more common and widespread, the techniques used become increasingly diverse. Readers interested in a general discussion of various aspects of induced spawning are referred to Das and Khan (1962), Pickford and Atz (1957), and Sneed and Clemens (1959, 1962). In this text, specific methods will be discussed for each group of fish covered.

The history of induced spawning of Chinese carps begins in 1954 with the spawning ahead of schedule of ripe wild black carp and big head by investigators from the Institute of Hydrobiology, Academia Sinica. Of more significance was the spawning in 1958 by the Fresh Water Section of the South Sea Fisheries Institute of China's Ministry of Aquatic Production of pond reared silver carp and big head, followed by similar success in 1960 with grass carp. Mass production of artificially produced fry of these three species began in 1961, and in 1962 1200 million fry were produced in China. In 1963 black carp were added to the list of mass produced species, and as early as 1964 in Chekiang and Kwangtung provinces 100% of the demand for Chinese carp fry was filled by artificially produced fish.

Mud carp are also spawned by induction in Taiwan, where the process was introduced in 1963 In 1964, 5 million fry of silver carp, grass carp, big head, and mud carp were produced there The first hatchery for grass carp, silver carp, and big head in the Soviet Union was built in 1963 and in 1964–1965 about 90 million larvae were distributed throughout the Soviet Union and in Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, and Bulgaria Although polyculture has not caught on in Japan, fish culturists there are producing fry of grass carp and silver carp for export.

As one might expect from the short history of induced spawning of Chinese carps, the techniques are by no means standardized One generalization that can be made is that the Chinese carps, particularly grass carp and silver carp, are more delicate animals than related species of European or Central Asian origin Therefore for optimum results they should be handled as seldom and as gently as possible

CONDITIONING

Spawners may be specially reared or selected from stock at large There are no hard and fast criteria for selection of brood stock, but in general they should be fast growing, lively fish, among the largest and strongest members of their age group, and free from parasites and diseases

There is no unanimity as to whether brood stock should be segregated by species or kept in mixed aggregations The common practice in Taiwan is to keep brood stock at a 1 1 sex ratio in ponds of 1000 to 4000 m^2 and 1.5 to 2 m deep A normal stocking ratio consists of five pairs each of grass, silver, and mud carp and three pairs of big head per 1000 m^2 This sort of stocking results in the same efficient utilization of food achieved by polyculture of fish destined for market It may also be that large ponds are conducive to proper development of the gonads Yet, since hypophysation and, if the eggs are artificially inseminated, fertilization are quite time-consuming, many of the fish in such large ponds may have to be handled several times a factor which can cause a decline in potency Large ponds are also harder to manage, and for these reasons some breeders prefer to segregate their brood stocks in small ponds, despite the loss in feeding efficiency In China, large ponds are used for mixed brood stock but stocking ratios are weighted in favor of a particular species Ratios cited include 15 10 1, 10 1 10, and 5 10 1 of grass carp, silver carp, and big head, respectively Whatever system is used, two rules obtain Do not stock too heavily, and keep fish of approximately the same size and age together

Ponds used for holding brood stock should, if possible, be drained prior

to use and disinfected with quicklime or teaseed cake. If silver carp or big head are to be raised it is good practice to fertilize the pond and expose it to sunlight for 2 to 3 days before filling, to promote rapid growth of plankton. Water in brood stock ponds should be close to spawning temperature (23 to 29°C) and well oxygenated.

Grass carp spawners should receive heavy feedings of fresh-cut grass or other vegetation—up to 40% of the weight of grass carp per day—to reach prime spawning condition. Other vegetable foods, such as bean meal and rice bran, may be fed, but diets high in fat are to be avoided, since excess fat retards development of the gonads. Other species may be fed peanut cake and soybean cake in conjunction with the light application of organic and inorganic fertilizers.

ATTAINMENT OF MATURITY AND NATURAL SPAWNING CYCLES

Size and age of Chinese carps at maturity varies greatly with climate and environmental conditions, as seen in Table 3.

The spawning cycle is also profoundly affected by climate. In their natural habitat and in other temperate climates the principal species of Chinese carps are all annual spawners. Rising water may play some role in triggering seasonal spawning, but temperature appears to be the most important factor. As is the case with the common carp the spawning cycle breaks down in the tropics, but it cannot be said with certainty that the Chinese carps become perennial spawners, since attempts to spawn them in tropical countries have until recently been largely unsuccessful, no matter what the season. Such information as is available for the tropical counterparts of the Chinese carps suggests that they are seasonal spawners, with rain or rising water replacing temperature change as the triggering stimulus. Grass carp, at least, retain some vestige of their spawning cycle in the tropics. In Malaysia workers at the Tropical Fish Culture Research Institute, although unable to spawn grass carp, were able to obtain infertile eggs in the "summer"; however, there was no reaction whatever to pituitary injections during "winter."

More recently, culturists at the Institute have succeeded in isolating the pituitary hormone and it is now possible, by use of the pure hormone, to spawn all the Chinese carps in Malaysia. Similar techniques have been applied in Thailand, and in 1969 1½ million fry were produced there, along with 500,000 fry of the native *Barbus gonionotus*.

Table 4 lists months and water temperatures associated with sexual maturity and spawning of Chinese carps in eight countries.

TABLE 3 SIZE AND AGE AT MATURITY OF CHINESE CARPS IN DIFFERENT CLIMATES

		♀♀		♂♂	
COUNTRY	SPECIES	AGE AT MATURITY (YEARS)	WEIGHT (KG)	AGE AT MATURITY (YEARS)	WEIGHT (KG)
China					
South	Big head	3–4	5 –10	2–3	—
	Grass carp	4–5	6 – 8	3–4	—
	Silver carp	2–3	2 – 6	1–2	—
Central	Big head	4–5	5 –10	3–4	—
	Black carp	5	10 –15	4	—
	Grass carp	4–5	6 – 8	3–4	—
	Silver carp	4–5	2 – 6	3–4	—
Northeast	Big head	6–7	5 –10	5–6	—
	Grass carp	6–7	6 – 8	5–6	—
	Silver carp	5–6	2 – 6	4–5	—
India					
Wild	Grass carp	3	4 – 8	3	4.5
Pond bred	Grass carp	2	1.5	0	0.9
Malaysia	Grass carp	1–2	2.3– 3.2	1–2	1.2–2.0
Taiwan	Big head	3–4	5 or more	2–3	—
	Black carp	5	10 or more	4	—
	Grass carp	4–5	3 or more	3–4	—
	Mud carp	3–4	1 or more	2–3	—
	Silver carp	2–3	2 or more	1–2	—
U.S.S.R.					
Krasnodar area	Big head grass carp silver carp	5	—	4	—
Turkmenia	Grass carp	3–4	—	2–3	—
Ukraine	Grass carp	8–9	2.7– 3.8	7–8	2.7–3.8
Siberia	Grass carp	8–9	6.5– 7.0	8–9	6.5–7.0
Moscow area	Grass carp	10	—	9	—

SEXING

The first requirement for artificial spawning of any fish is of course to distinguish the sex of the spawners. This presents no serious difficulties with the Chinese carps, at least not when they are ripe. Males of all species betray both their sex and degree of ripeness by releasing milt when handled. Males may also be distinguished by the presence of finely

TABLE 4 MONTHS AND WATER TEMPERATURES ASSOCIATED WITH SEXUAL MATURITY AND SPAWNING OF CHINESE CARPS IN EIGHT COUNTRIES

COUNTRY	SPECIES	TYPE OF SPAWNING	MONTHS	WATER TEMPERATURE (°C)
China				
Central	Grass carp	Natural	April August	26–30
Central	Mud carp	Natural	April May	—
South and central	Big head	Natural	April June	—
Yangtse River	Silver carp	Natural	April June	—
India	Grass carp	No spawning gonads mature	March August	—
Japan	Grass carp	Natural	June July	20–22
Malaysia	Grass carp	Gonads mature	January October	—
Taiwan	Big head	Induced	March September (poor results in July and August)	20–30
	Grass carp	Induced	May July	20–30
	Grass carp	Natural	May September	24–28
	Mud carp	Induced	June September	—
	Silver carp	Induced	March September (poor results in July and August)	—
Thailand	Tambra (*Labeobarbus tambroides*)	Natural	July August (rainy season)	—
U.S.S.R.				
Siberia	Grass carp	Natural	June July	17.5–22.5
Ukraine	Grass carp	Natural	June	22–24
Vietnam	Ca cham (*Labeo collaris*)	Natural	June	—

serrated ridges on the pectoral fin rays Grass carp males may be further distinguished by a thickened first pectoral ray Male grass carp and black carp are reputed to develop nuptial tubercles or "pearl organs on the head at spawning time, but some workers have been unable to discern these

Females are distinguished not by the presence of secondary sexual

characters, but by the absence of the male characters. Ripeness in females may be indicated by a large, soft abdomen, but this is not a sure indication, as fish with excess intestinal fat present the same appearance. Lin (1965) cites a "swelling cloaca, pinkish in front" as an indication of ripeness but this is not always observable.

ESTRUALIZATION

In the process of injection with pituitary materials, or estrualization as it is sometimes termed, as in other operations involving handling of spawners the incidence of injury to the fish may be reduced by transporting each fish individually in a carrying cradle about 15 cm deep made of cloth and attached to a wooden frame of suitable size. Another piece of cloth attached to one side of the frame only is laid over the top of the fish. During transportation this cloth and the cradle itself should be kept wet.

Most of the Chinese carps respond to pituitary preparations from many different kinds of animals, but the most commonly used are common carp pituitary and human chorionic gonadotropin. Grass carp do not respond to human gonadotropin but small amounts of it added to fish pituitary preparations reinforce their effect. Any cyprinid pituitary is likely to be effective on all the Chinese carps, so if the culturist's stock includes goldfish, crucian carp, or other cyprinids of low market value, some economy may be effected by setting these fish aside for use as pituitary donors. The generally accepted dosages for big head, black carp, mud carp and silver carp are 2 to 3 mg of dried cyprinid pituitary, 3 fresh pituitary glands, or 700 to 1000 IU of human chorionic gonadotropin per kilogram of spawner. Grass carp require a slightly higher dosage (3 to 4 mg of dried pituitary/kg) but overdoses should be avoided for all species since they may cause partial or complete infertility. Fractional injection is preferred with ⅛ to $\frac{1}{10}$ the total dosage injected on the first dose and the remainder 6 to 24 hours later. If fractional injection is used, females only should be injected at first, else the males will ripen too soon. Indeed, it may not be necessary to inject the males at all, although injection facilitates the flow of milt.

SPAWNING

Spawners may be placed in the spawning pond as early as 12 hours before injection, or stocking the spawning pond may be deferred until immediately after injection. The spawning pond should be 100 to 140 m^2 in area and 1.5 to 2.0 m deep with a smooth bottom to avert possible injury

to the spawners. The same end may be achieved by placing the spawners in floating cloth cages anchored in the center of the pond. Spawning cages should be about 1 m deep with the bottom extended by weights tied to the corners of the cloth. A net placed over the cage will prevent the fish from jumping out. If the bottom of the pond slopes, it will facilitate draining after spawning is completed. It is helpful, particularly when spawning grass carp, if a current of 30 to 45 liters/sec can be maintained. Water for spawning should be clear, clean, preferably slightly alkaline, and have a dissolved oxygen content of 4 ppm or better. Although natural spawning of grass carp has been observed at temperatures as low as 17.5°C, 20°C is generally considered the minimum for spawning Chinese carps artificially, and 23 to 29°C is regarded as the optimum range.

If, after injection, the fish are to be allowed to spawn naturally, spawning ponds may be stocked at roughly the same density as holding ponds for spawners. Stocking rate is relatively unimportant if artificial insemination is to be practiced. The proper ratio of males to females is 2:1 for natural spawning or 1:1 with artificial insemination. Although natural spawning requires twice as many males, it is usually preferable, since the fish are more likely than the culturist to time their spawning so as to produce maximum fertilization of eggs.

Within 6 to 20 hours after introduction to the spawning pond, and usually within 10 to 14 hours, the males will be seen chasing the females. This time interval should be taken into account by the aquaculturist in deciding whether he prefers to have spawning occur at night or during the day. Daytime spawning is of course more convenient from a human standpoint and may result in lower labor costs. On the other hand, if eggs are laid at night, they will hatch during the day and thus be warmed by the sun and protected from sudden chilling during the most critical hours. If artificial insemination is to be practiced, the spawners should be removed for stripping within 15 min to 1 hour after the start of chasing. Grass carp should be allowed to chase a bit longer than the other species.

Natural spawning takes 30 to 90 min, after which time the spawners are removed. If a separate hatching pond is used, 1 to 2 hours are allowed for the eggs to harden, then the pond is drained and the eggs collected in a floating net placed at the outlet. If a spawning cage is used, a fine piece of netting is attached under and around the coarse net which holds the spawners to prevent eggs from being scattered about the pond.

After spawning the adult fish may be returned to the spawning pond or a similar pond for recuperation. This is especially important when the fish have been stripped for artificial insemination. Recuperating fish

should receive plenty of food, grass carp in particular require an abundance of fresh vegetable matter at this time.

HATCHING

Hatching of wild fry in boxes has already been described Primitive methods of hatching artificial fry employ similar but shallower boxes stocked with eggs at a density of 4 to 5/cm² and anchored in a small stream of moderate flow Hatching boxes may also be placed in standing water provided there is sufficient oxygen available, but under such circumstances the eggs must be gently stirred every 20 to 30 min In either case the empty egg membranes should be removed after hatching

Well-equipped fry farms use various indoor hatching devices which permit control of temperature light, and dissolved oxygen concentration as well as exclusion of predators The original method of indoor hatching involved placing the eggs in flat trays or raceways and maintaining a flow of water over them but better results are now obtained through adaptations of the jar method used in culture of many game fish in the United States A wide variety of apparatus is used, but all are designed so that water enters the hatching container from below Thus water is passed among the eggs rather than over the top of them, assuring a steady circulation of water around each egg and substantially increasing the rate of gas transport by the eggs

One of the most successful versions of this method makes use of a series of hatching baskets constructed of nylon netting A series of these are placed in a trough provided with baffle plates to produce an upward flow of water through the baskets (Fig 1) Baskets near the trough are made of coarser net than those at the tail Thus unhatched eggs are retained at the upper end of the trough, but fry escape and are washed down to be collected in the finer mesh baskets Alternate techniques involve various jars and funnels equipped with hoses at the bottom Fry are either netted out or allowed to escape over the top in which case a device to catch them is attached Density of eggs in the apparatus and current velocity would seem to be important factors in this type of hatching but a survey of successful hatching operations shows a fairly wide range of stocking rates and great variations in the rates of flow used Russian hatcheries stock eggs of grass carp and silver carp in jars at 5000–10 000/liter and maintain a current of 0 6–0 7 liter /min But the Saitama Fisheries Experiment Station in Japan maintains a hatching rate of 90% in nylon baskets where flow is maintained at 20 liters/min and eggs are stocked at approximately 3000 to 6000/liter The variation in current as measured is probably much greater than the

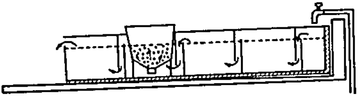


FIG. 1. Hatching trough used in raising Chinese carps in Taiwan. (After Lin, 1965.)

differences in force applied against an individual egg in these devices. Measurement of current takes into account only the volume of water passing a point in a given time. To maintain a certain current through a small space such as a glass hatching jar or its inlet hose requires a great deal more pressure than is necessary to maintain the same current through a large trough. Thus the eggs in a trough receiving a current of 20 liters/min are probably no more liable to physical damage than eggs in a jar with a current of 0.6–0.7 liter/min. It may also be that, in systems where the eggs are tumbled about, the nature of the hatching container has some relation to the optimum water velocity. Certainly, an egg is more likely to sustain damage as a result of collision with the rigid wall of a glass jar than through contact with a resilient nylon net. For the present, it is up to the culturist to determine a rate of flow which will provide adequate circulation without damaging the egg membranes.

Time to hatching and absorption of the yolk sac varies with temperature. In Taiwan, Chinese carps hatch in 24 hours at 28°C and in 30 to 32 hours at 25°C. Within 3 to 6 days after hatching the yolk sac is absorbed and the larvae commence to swim freely and feed actively. Sac fry may be left in the hatching apparatus until this time or they may be placed in shallow net cages or other containers with perforations less than 0.2 mm in diameter. Such cages may be floated indoors in troughs or outdoors in nursing ponds. Ponds used for this purpose must be entirely free of small predatory fish for, although they may not be able to gain access to the cage, some species become adept at sucking larvae through the netting. Wherever the larvae are placed, they require a dissolved oxygen concentration of at least 4 ppm.

FRY REARING

PREPARATION OF PONDS

As soon as the yolk sac is absorbed, the fry are transferred to the first of a series of nursing and rearing enclosures. There is little uniformity in

the size and number of such enclosures or in the techniques used in nursing and rearing but the techniques of preparing nursing and rearing ponds are similar wherever Chinese carps are cultured First the pond is drained as completely as possible, then it is poisoned to remove any potential fry predators After a waiting period of up to a month, the pond is levelled, filled, and fertilized If predatory aquatic insects re establish themselves in the pond after filling a small population of 3-year-old common carp may be stocked to feed on them.

The classical Chinese prescription calls for an initial application of fertilizer which is identical for all species followed by periodic addition of specific types and quantities of manure according to the species being cultured The initial manuring uses odoriferous plants, such as goatweed (*Agertium conyzoides*) with or without an admixture of cow dung at a rate of 1200 to 2000 kg/ha If adequate amounts of goatweed or similar plants are not available, a 7 1 mixture of cow dung with ammonium nitrate or ammonium sulfate may be applied at 800 kg/ha Within a week of fertilization the water should turn greenish brown, indicating an abundance of phytoplankton At this time undecayed bits of fertilizer may be removed and the pond stocked with fry Thereafter, periodic fertilization is carried out as outlined in Table 5

TABLE 5 FERTILIZATION SCHEDULE FOR REARING FRY OF FOUR SPECIES OF CHINESE CARP

SPECIES	FERTILIZER	DOSAGE
Big head Silver carp	Goatweed	100 kg/ha every 3 days
Grass carp	Goatweed and cow dung	200 kg/ha every 4 days
Mud carp	Cow dung	1,200 kg/ha every day

In Malaysia, nursery and rearing ponds are fertilized while dry with 12,000 kg/ha of cow dung which is dug into the bottom. As knowledge of the action of fertilizers increases and synthetic fertilizers become more readily available in Asia, more sophisticated methods may become prevalent, but the traditional methods remain effective.

STOCKING

The size of nursery ponds in China is determined primarily by convenience. The range of sizes in use is from 100 m² to 2 ha. In Malaysia

smaller ponds of about 50 m^2 are usual. No matter what the surface area, nursery ponds should be 0.5 to 1.0 m deep. In regions where ponds are scarce or hard to build, paddy fields may be adapted for nursing fry by levelling them and raising the dikes to 50 to 70 cm. In Taiwan, Chinese carp fry are sometimes kept in aquaria for the first few days of their life. Floating net cages made of nylon cloth with 12 to 16 meshes/cm are in use in Japan. Cages 50 to 70 cm deep are anchored in ponds, and when equipped with a hose to provide a slight current through the cage, they can be used to hold fry at densities of 15,000 to 62,000/m^2, as compared to the usual nursery pond stocking rate of 1400 to 1800/m^2. Whatever the rate at which fry are to be stocked, if they are kept indoors through the yolk sac stage it may be helpful to acclimate them to the nursery pond by occasionally introducing small amounts of pond water into their containers.

SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

Feeding very young Chinese carp fry is secondary to fertilization, as the principal food of all species at this stage is plankton. Nevertheless, supplementary feeding is often undertaken. The considerable diversity of feeding schedules and stocking rates at the nursing stage becomes nothing if not bewildering as the fry approach salable size. The most that can be done by way of explanation is to present data from various countries in tabular form (Table 6). Table 7, which lists the principal natural foods of Chinese carp fry at different sizes, may also be helpful.

The growth rates suggested by Table 6 could easily be improved upon by lowering population density or feeding more protein However, the fry specialist is not interested in raising fish for food but in supplying fry for other culturists to stock in growing ponds. Except in Singapore and Malaysia, where it is customary to rear Chinese carp up to 8 months of age and 150 mm, the most popular size of fry for pond stocking is about 30 mm. However, there is some demand for fish as small as 10 mm and as large as 120 mm. Under normal conditions fry of the principal species reach 30 mm in 2 to 4 weeks, but the enterprising fry farmer attempts to keep at least a few fish of all salable sizes on hand at all times Size control is accomplished by stunting and using carefully controlled diets and stocking ratios. This is a delicate business, because underfeeding can cause malnutrition and a small excess of food in a crowded pond can cause severe oxygen depletion. If fry are being kept in a stunted condition, the culturist maintains a careful watch over them and every 2 weeks or so removes the largest fish for sale or transfer to another pond.

TABLE 6. SAMPLE STOCKING AND FEEDING RATES FOR CHINESE CARP FRY

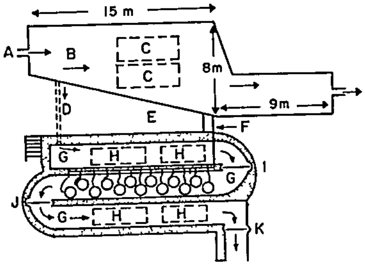
COUNTRY	SPECIES	AREA OF POND	DEPTH OF POND	SIZE OF FISH	AGE OF FISH	STOCKING RATE	FEED	FEEDING RATE
China Rearing for growth	Black carp, big head, grass carp, mud carp, silver carp	—	0.5–1 m	up to 20 mm	—	1 mil[a]/ha	Egg yolk paste or soybean milk, plus pea nut cake after 10 days	1 egg/2,500–7,500 fry/day or milk from 300–500 g beans/50 000 fry/day
	All species	—	0.5–1 m	20–100 mm	up to 1 month	—	Soybean meal	100 lb/5,000 fry/month
	Black carp	—	2.5 m	15–30 cm	1 mo–1 year	100–2,400/ha	Barley, bean cake, small snails	Little food needed
Stunting	Big head, *black carp* silver carp	1 ha	1.5 m	40–100 mm	—	1 mil/ha	Rice bran, soy bean milk or peanut cake oil	0.5–2.0% of wt of fish/day
	Mud carp	1 ha	1.5 m	—	—	2 mil/ha	Rice bran, soy bean milk or peanut cake oil	0.5–2.0% of wt of fish/day
	Grass carp	1 ha	1.5 m	40–100 mm	—	1 mil/ha	Duckweed	3–5% of wt of fish/day
Hong Kong	All species	1,000 m^2	0.8 m	0–8 cm–3 cm, 3 mg–1 g	up to 25–30 days	150/m^2	Soybean milk and peanut cake meal	100 kg soybean milk or 200 kg peanut cake meal/month
	All species	1,400 m^2	1 m	3–12 cm, 1–15 g	30–70 days	35/m^2	Peanut cake, rice bran or soybean cake	Start at 1.5 kg/day, build up to 5 kg/day

Japan	Grass carp, silver carp	—	50–70 cm	10–20 mm	up to 17 days	15,000–62,000/m^2 (net cage) 1,400–1,800/m^2 (pond)	52% egg yolk 18% soybean cake, 14% liver, 9% soybean milk, 5% flour	—
	Grass carp, silver carp	—	50–70 cm	20–30 mm	approx 17 days–approx 20–30 days	as above, minus mortality	38% fish meal, 38% flour, 16% rice bran, 8% silkworm pupae meal	—
Malaysia	All species	50 m^2	45–60 cm	up to 5–7.5 cm	—	40/m^2	Wheat flour and *Wolffia*	Enough to cover surface, twice daily
	All species	15 m^2	60 cm	5–7.5 cm–12–15 cm	—	all survivors from above	Duckweed and *Wolffia*	—
	All species except grass carp	450 m^2	1 m	12–15 cm and up	up to 8 months	500–600/pond	Peanut cake	—
	Grass carp	450 m^2	1 m	12–15 cm and up	up to 8 months	500–600/pond	Grass	—
U.S.S.R.	Grass carp	—	—	up to 5 g	—	40,000–50,000/ha	Pond fertilization only	—
	Grass carp	—	—	5 g and up	—	—	Algae, duckweed, terrestrial plants, animal protein	—

* mil = million

TABLE 7 PRINCIPAL NATURAL FOODS OF CHINESE CARP FRY

SIZE OF FRY (MM)	GRASS CARP	BLACK CARP	SILVER CARP	BIG HEAD	COMMON CARP	MUD CARP
7–9	Protozoa, rotifer, nauplii	*Protozoa,* rotifer, nauplii	Protozoa, rotifer, nauplii	Protozoa, rotifer, nauplii	Protozoa, rotifer, nauplii, *Cladocera*	Protozoa, rotifer, nauplii, *Cladocera*
10–12	*Same as above,* plus small daphnids and *Cyclops*	Same as above, plus small daphnids and *Cyclops*	Same as above, plus small *Cladocera*	Same as above, plus small *Cladocera*	Same as above, plus copepods	Same as above, plus diatoms, minute organic detritus
13–17	Daphnids, copepods, minute benthic animals	Large daphnids, minute benthic animals	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Minute organic detritus, diatoms, phytoplankton
18–23	Same as above, plus organic detritus	Same as above, organic detritus	Same as above, plus phytoplankton	Same as above, plus phytoplankton, zooplankton	*Cladocera,* copepods, minute benthic animals	Same as above
24–30	Same as above, plus phytoplankton, minute algae	Same as above, minute benthic animals, insect larvae	Phytoplankton mostly	Zooplankton, phytoplankton	Same as above, plus insect larvae, organic detritus	Same as above, small blue green algae, minute benthic flora



A Main Water Supply
B Spawning Pond
C Spawning Boxes
D Water Supply Pipe
E Injection Platform
F Water Supply Pipe to the Hatching Funnel
G Hatching and Rearing Tank with Hatching Funnels (Circles)
H Rearing Troughs
I Water Flows Over this First Gate
J Water Flows Under this Second Gate
K Water Flows Over this Third Gate

FIG 2 Schematic plan of the spawning pond and hatching rearing tanks of the Wu Shan Tou Hatchery (Taiwan) (After Lin 1965)

DESIGN OF FRY HATCHERIES

The layout of hatcheries for Chinese carps follows no set pattern, but operations should center around the facilities for spawning, hatching, nursing, and early rearing, since these are the most critical activities in terms of fry production Figure 2 is a diagram of the spawning, hatching, and rearing facilities of Wu Shan Tou Hatchery, a small and unelaborate but efficient operation in Taiwan

The source of water for the hatchery is Wu Shan Tou Reservoir, where temperature averages 16°C in January, the coldest month, and never falls below 10°C Summer water temperatures average 28 to 30°C, so that there is not only an optimum spawning temperature during the summer but enough of a seasonal temperature variation to ensure proper maturation of Chinese carp gonads The water is slightly alkaline, a condition particularly favorable for grass carp and mud carp The suitability of the water supply is perhaps best demonstrated by the fact that Wu Shan

Tou Reservoir is one of the few places in Taiwan where natural spawning of big head, grass carp, and mud carp occurs

Water passes directly from the reservoir to the spawning pond (B), which is 1 5 m deep at the head and 2 m deep at the tail, thus providing a good slope for drainage During use, a flow of 30 to 45 liters/sec is maintained A platform (E) is provided for injection of breeders, which are spawned in anchored floating boxes (C)

Water from the spawning pond is fed into the S-shaped concrete hatching and rearing pond (G) and the hatching facilities, both situated at a slightly lower level than the spawning pond Good circulation in the tank is maintained by having the water pass alternately over and under a series of three gates (I, J, and K) Nylon mesh hatching funnels (designated by circles), each with its own water supply hose attached at the bottom, are suspended in the middle section of the hatching and rearing tank. The surface of each funnel is kept about 10 cm above the water surface The shape of the hatching and rearing tank makes it easy to net out the newly hatched fry and transfer them immediately to floating rearing troughs (H) anchored in the outer portions of the tank.

Other facilities not shown in the diagram include ponds for holding spawners, recuperation ponds, a pond for culture of common carp pituitary donors, and a number of ponds for rearing various sizes and species of fry

The facilities needed to insure economically feasible production of fry vary according to the scale of operation and the number of species to be cultured Lin (1965) suggests, in addition to spawning and hatching facilities, the minimum number and area of ponds as listed in Table 8 He calculates that with these facilities 18 pairs each of big head, grass carp, mud carp, and silver carp can be raised to full maturity and injected With an estimated 50% responses to injection and 67% hatching rate, 7,200,000 fry can be produced annually

TABLE 8 MINIMUM NUMBER AND SIZE OF PONDS FOR A CHINESE CARP FRY HATCHERY

Spawner holding ponds	5 × 1 000 m²	5,000 m²
Common carp donor pond	1 × 1,000 m²	1,000 m²
Fry nursery ponds	10 × 1,000 m²	10,000 m²
Fry nursery ponds	10 × 2,000 m²	20,000 m²
Total	26 ponds	36 000 m² or 3 6 ha

SALE AND TRANSPORT OF FRY

Within the traditional framework of Chinese carp culture, fry are usually sold to culturists in the vicinity of the fry hatchery. In China today, fry are commonly grown to edible size by People's Cooperatives but some are stocked in large reservoirs where they are not cultured further but contribute to fisheries. Transport of fry over long distances is sometimes necessary, but this incurs the risk of heavy mortality. Modern techniques have made it possible for a fry hatchery to supply culturists hundreds of miles away. One of the best methods of fry transport, developed in the Soviet Union, employs hermetically sealed plastic bags filled with water and oxygen in equal proportions. Using such containers it is possible to ship fry at densities of 2000 to 4000/liter.

Some fry hatcheries find it useful to raise their own food supply. For example, the Tsingpu Experimental Freshwater Fish Farm near Shanghai, China, with 12,000 ha of fish ponds, maintains 25,500 ha of fields planted to soybeans and rice, the rice being exchanged for soybeans.

Duckweed for feeding fry may be grown in separate ponds. and in Malaysia *Wolffia* is often cultured in ponds 50 m^2 in area and 40 cm deep. *Wolffia* ponds are initially fertilized while dry with 0.6 kg/m^2 of cow dung and 1/10 that amount of prawn dust, dug into the bottom. After filling, a few *Wolffia* are introduced and the pond is treated with 1/10 the original dose of cow dung and prawn dust every week thereafter.

SPECIALIZED PROPAGATION TECHNIQUES FOR INDONESIAN CARPS

NILEM

In Indonesia, specialized techniques, not involving pituitary treatment, are used in spawning and rearing some of the native cyprinids. In West Java, a series of ponds is used in breeding nilem (*Osteochilus hasselti*). First, breeders are kept for a week in 1-m^2 flowing water conditioning ponds and fed on rice bran, beaten maize, or dried manihot. Males used for spawning are generally 1 year old, about 20 cm long, and 100 g in weight. Females as young as 8 months, and as small as 18 cm and 50 to 60 g may be used, but the best results are obtained with 1½- to 2-year-old, 25 cm, 150 g specimens. At the rate of one spawning every 3 to 6 months, female breeders may be used up to eight times.

In the spawning method used at the Galunggung hatchery, a sediment tank is built above the spawning pond to supply the silt-free water

required by nilem The spawning pond itself measures 2 5 m × 2 m and slopes from 40 cm deep at the inlet to 70 cm at the outlet. Grass is grown on the bottom of the shallow end of the pond, which is the actual spawning area At the Mage hatchery, Indjuk palm fibers, held in place by a bamboo latticework, are substituted for the grass Three or four pairs of spawners are placed in the pond, along with floating leaves or branches of plants to provide shade

Spawning is induced by creating a strong current through the pond, beginning about 2 hours after the introduction of the fish Breeding commences within about 2 hours and is finished in 1 to 2 days

The spawning pond is not provided with a screen at the outlet, rather the eggs are washed down into a 3 to 25-m² hatching pond Like the spawning pond, the hatching pond has a sloping bottom, but in this case the depth increases from 10 to 20 cm at the inlet to 20 to 40 cm at the outlet The bottom is paved with flat stones, covered with 1 cm of gravel, over which the eggs are spread evenly to prevent them from sticking together When spawning is completed, the spawning pond is drained, so that clean water from the sedimentation tank can be supplied directly to the hatching pond

Hatching begins 3 days after spawning, and the first larvae can be cropped, by partial draining, 2 days later Usually cropping of the 50 000 or so fry is completed within a week of spawning, at which time the hatching pond is completely drained and the gravel washed for reuse.

Variations on the Galunggung method exist, but all rely on the creation of a current and/or a rise in water level to induce spawning It is believed that tree leaves trailing in the water also have a favorable effect. Rearing ponds vary in size from 0 5 to 5 ha and may or may not be directly linked with the hatching pond

TAWES

Tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*), like most tropical cyprinids are potentially year round spawners but hatchery operations are usually confined to the beginning of the rainy season, when there is adequate water to supply the strong current necessary Tawes spawning ponds, which are 200 to 500 m² in area, 35 to 50 cm deep and located no more than 700 m above sea level, are prepared by drying for at least 5 days or until there is a crust 4 to 5 cm thick on the bottom In drying, care must be exercised that cracks are not formed, because eggs may drop into them and be lost. A sand bottom, ideal from this standpoint, is, however, infertile, so a mixture of sand and silt is considered best. If sun drying is not adequate to prepare the pond properly, paddy straw may be burned on the bottom.

Water is introduced to the spawning pond, beginning in the morning, and 2-year-old breeders, about 300 g in weight and 25 cm in length, are introduced when it is half full. During the 3 to 4 months between spawnings, brood stock are kept in special ponds and fed on rice bran and soft plant leaves, but they should not be overfed or they will become undesirably fat. For the last 3 to 5 days spawners may be conditioned in running water. Brood stock may be used a maximum of five times. One pair of spawners/50 to 70 m^2 of surface area is a good stocking rate. A strong current of slightly turbid, well-oxygenated water is maintained until spawning is completed.

Mating generally occurs at night and is accompanied by an audible humming noise. Sometimes the fish are reluctant to spawn, in which case the water is beaten with bamboo slats. A similar excitement may be created by tying a stick to one of the fish. If such tricks fail, partial draining and exposure of the pond to sunlight may be effective.

When spawning is over, the current is shut off and the eggs spread evenly on the pond bottom. The spent spawners are left in the pond and fed once or twice a day with as much rice bran as they will consume in 2 to 3 hours. After a week, leaves of such soft plants as *Carica, Colocasia,* and *Manihot* are added to the diet and the quantity of both food items gradually increased.

Hatching occurs within 2 to 3 days; after about 20 days the fry are strong enough that the flow of water through the pond may be restored. Depending on the fertility of the pond, the fry may be reared for 25 or 50 days. In fertile ponds they reach lengths of 2 to 3 cm in about 50 days. Common carp fry, about 10 cm long, may be stocked with the tawes fry, as the agitation of the bottom caused by common carp feeding is believed to be beneficial. Small, 25-day-old fry are collected in the conventional manner, but larger fry have a tendency to swim against the current and are thus not well suited to collection by drainage. Such fry are collected by partially draining the pond, upon which the fry gather in a central ditch, then restoring the flow so that they move upstream and may be collected at the inlet. Average production of tawes fry is 10,000 to 20,000 25-day-old fish or 5000 50-day-old fish/female.

In parts of East Java where a large head of water is not readily available, a different technique of spawning tawes has been developed. A 0.1- to 0.2-ha spawning pond, 0.6 m deep, is constructed near a small stream which is known to swell after rains. In the bottom of the pond is a square pit, 4 m on a side and 0.5 m deep, in which 20 pairs of breeders are stocked at the start of the rainy season. Prior to a storm, the pond is kept dry except for the pit. Following heavy rainfall, the turbid flood water is let in to fill the spawning pond. Once the fish have dispersed,

the pond is beaten with sticks to induce spawning The fry obtained are transferred to rearing ponds a week after spawning, at which time the pond may be prepared for the next spawning Some losses of eggs are experienced as a result of siltation, but yields of 100,000 fry/spawning are not unusual

Tawes were introduced to Malaysia in 1953, and the Fisheries Division of the Ministry of Agriculture and Co-operation maintains stocks at its fry hatcheries A research program has been initiated with the intentions of improving methods of fry production and selecting a fast-growing strain.

MATA MERAH

Artificial propagation of mata merah (*Barbus orphoides*) is a more recent development. Mata merah may be spawned in ponds or rice fields, in either case the water should be 40 to 60 cm deep Current, turbidity and dissolved oxygen concentration should be as described for tawes. The pond bottom, which is dried for 2 to 4 days before use, should be covered with grass or rice stalks, if these are not available, artificial substitutes may be provided.

Breeders, which should be at least 8 months old, 13 to 17 cm long, and weigh 60 to 85 g, are stocked in the morning at 1 pair/24 m² in ponds, or about half that density in rice fields Sometimes combined spawning of mata merah and kissing gourami (*Helostoma temmincki*) is practiced, in which case 1 pair of mata merah/48 m² and 1 pair of kissing gourami/70 m² are stocked

The spawners are fed with rice bran in the afternoon, and nocturnal spawning follows The eggs, which are attached to the grass or rice stalks but never found on mud, hatch in about 2 days Rice stalks, if present, are cut off near the bottom 3 days later The fry are fed on fine rice bran after the first week. Manuring may also be helpful in their nourishment.

Fry are normally reared for 30 to 40 days, but it may be necessary to thin the stock after 20 days Cropping is done as described for tawes If kissing gourami are present, the species are separated by essentially the same method used after combined rearing of kissing gourami with common carp or nilem (see p 224) From 240 to 400 2 to 3-cm fry/pair are obtained in pond culture and 100 to 170 fry/pair in rice fields or in combination with kissing gourami

Breeders are removed and reconditioned on rice bran in separate fertile ponds Under good conditions, they can be spawned every 3 months

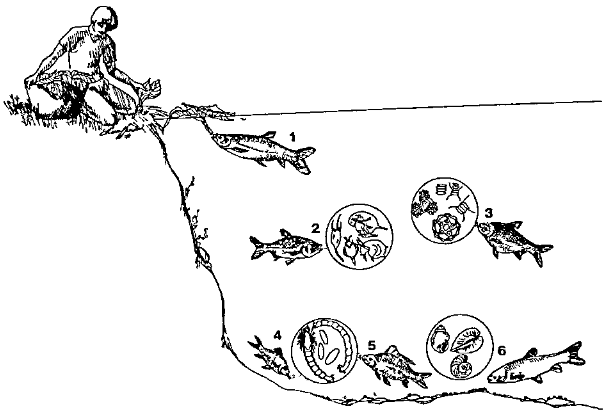


FIG 3 Habitat and feeding niches of the principal species in classical Chinese carp culture (1) Grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*) feeding on vegetable tops (2) Big head (*Aristichtys nobilis*) feeding on zooplankton in midwater (3) Silver carp (*Hypophthalmichtys molitrix*) feeding on phytoplankton in midwater (4) Mud carp (*Cirrhinus molitorella*) feeding on benthic animals and detritus, including grass carp feces (5) Common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) feeding on benthic animals and detritus, including grass carp feces (6) Black carp (*Mylopharyngodon piceus*) feeding on mollusks

GROWING CHINESE CARPS FOR MARKET

Although the techniques used by fry producers are interesting and sophisticated, it is the final stage in Chinese carp culture which is unique. The principles of full utilization of growing space and fish food resources, first worked out long ago in China, are only beginning to find application elsewhere. In practice, polyculture of fish also employs a number of other principles of stocking.

PRINCIPLES OF POND STOCKING

Plankton feeders should usually make up the largest portion of the stock, since plankton is by far the most abundant source of food in most

ponds Phytoplankton feeders such as the silver carp are particularly good basic fish for polyculture since they operate at the very bottom of the food chain

Unless there is an abundance of higher plants in the pond herbivores should be stocked in small numbers or provision should be made for supplementary feeding

Use of bottom feeding omnivores and carnivores depends on the depth and clarity of the pond In a very deep pond or one with a heavy plankton bloom the productivity of the bottom water may be too low to support a good number of these fish On the other hand, in clear, shallow ponds, where benthic insect larvae and the like are abundant, it may be a waste of resources not to stock such fish Bottom feeders may also be stocked if it is economically feasible to provide supplementary food which sinks

Piscivorous fish should be stocked only where uncontrolled spawning occurs in growing ponds or where populations of small fish with little or no market value exist

A suitable population density must be maintained in the pond as a whole and within each ecological niche Understocking may result in underutilization of food For this reason and because at high population densities development of the gonads of many species is retarded thus enhancing growth and eliminating the possibility of undesired spawning heavy stocking is preferred However, if a pond is overpopulated at any trophic level interspecific or intraspecific competition will occur and productivity will decline The precise population density for maximum production in a given pond must be determined empirically through experience

The species cultured must be suited to the environment, one would not attempt to raise mud carp in northern China knowing that they cannot tolerate prolonged exposure to temperatures below 12°C or to place silver carp in a very turbid pond where silt particles would clog their extremely fine gill rakers

Economic factors should also be considered in choice of species for culture For example, goldfish utilize plankton well but one would be foolish to stock goldfish in a pond which will support silver carp or bighead which have many times the market value Regional preferences also enter into the picture as in the case of the black carp a very logical choice as a pond carnivore in China where it is highly esteemed as a food fish, but a poor choice for stocking in Taiwan, where there is little demand for black carp

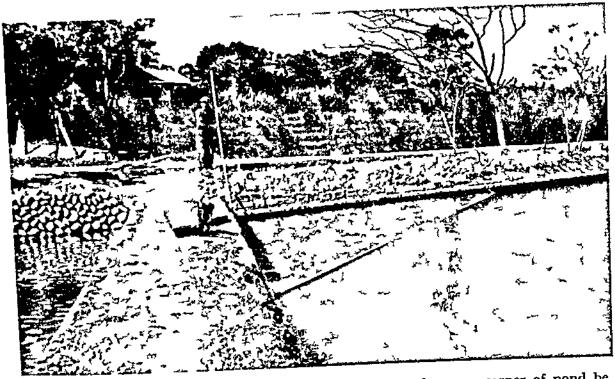


PLATE 2 Feeding grass carp in Taiwan Greens are placed in one corner of pond be hind floating bamboo rod (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii)

SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

In pond polyculture (Plate 2) the key word in feeding is supplemen tary A well managed pond is capable of producing substantial quan tities of edible fish without the addition of food Supplementary feeding should be undertaken only if the resulting increase will more than offset the cost of feed and feeding The general principles of feeding as dis cussed for common carp in Chapter 2 are applicable to Chinese carps as are the data on nutritive value of various feeds

STOCKING AND FEEDING SYSTEMS

These principles find application in many systems of stocking A num ber of the systems used in the Far East and the rationale for each are outlined here along with comments on feeding

Kiangsu Province is in the north of China where temperatures pre clude the mud carp so common carp and bream are substituted as bot tom feeding omnivores Plant growth in ponds is sparse hence grass carp may not be stocked Snails are common inhabitants of ponds and streams in the area thus culture of black carp with or without supple mentary feeding is emphasized (Table 9)

TABLE 9 STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN PONDS TWO TO THREE METERS DEEP IN KIANGSU PROVINCE, CHINA

SPECIES	LENGTH OF FISH STOCKED (MM)	NUMBER OF FRY PER HA SYSTEM I	SYSTEM II	SYSTEM III
Black carp	250–350	1,000	2,000	2,400
Black carp	150–180	2,000	200	—
Grass carp	200–300	—	2 000	—
Silver carp	150–200	3 000	3,000	2,400
Big head	150–200	600	1,600	—
Common carp	150–200	200	200	1,200
Bream	120–150	500	500	—
Total		7,300	9,500	6 000

In deeper ponds in Kiangsu the productivity of the bottom water is substantially reduced and higher plants are virtually absent Therefore, in stocking such ponds herbivores and bottom dwellers are reduced in numbers or eliminated and great emphasis is placed on plankton feeders (Table 10)

In most localities Chinese carps are stocked in growing ponds as fry or yearlings, left there for 3 years, and harvested But in the Tinghai and Shaoshing regions of Chekiang, another northern Chinese province, a 3 year rotation is used (Table 11) Fingerlings are stocked in ponds 1 3 to 1 5 m deep, with a preponderance of black carp to take advantage of the abundant bottom fauna The second year the fish are moved to ponds about 2 m deep and the balance of numbers shifted toward plankton feeders In the final year ponds 2 5 to 3 m deep are used and plankton

TABLE 10 STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN PONDS THREE TO SEVEN METERS DEEP IN KIANGSU PROVINCE, CHINA

SPECIES	WEIGHT OF YEARLINGS (G)	NUMBER OF YEARLINGS PER HA SYSTEM I	SYSTEM II	SYSTEM III	SYSTEM IV
Big head and silver carp	500	4,500	4,500	9,000	9,000
Grass carp	500	600	—	3 000	—
Black carp	500	—	450	—	3 000
Common carp	200	200	200	200	200
Total		5,300	5,150	12,200	12,200

TABLE 11. STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN PONDS IN CHEKIANG PROVINCE, CHINA

	FIRST YEAR		SECOND YEAR		THIRD YEAR	
SPECIES	INITIAL WEIGHT (G)	NO. OF FINGERLINGS PER HA (AGE 3 TO 9 MONTHS)	INITIAL WEIGHT (G)	NO. PER HA (AGE 15 TO 21 MONTHS)	INITIAL WEIGHT (G)	NO. PER HA
Black carp	35	6,000	500	1,300	2,750	240
Silver carp	40	400	600	1,000	600	400
Big head	40	400	600	80	600	300
Common carp	30	400	350	50	350	200
Total		7,200		2,430		1,140

feeders predominate. By this time the black carp are much larger than the other species and some must be removed for marketing. Where this system is used mortality is about 10% during the first 2 years and negligible in the third year.

Further south, in the lower Yangtse River valley, black carp are the principal food fish raised, accounting for 50% of the stock at harvest time. Black carp and grass carp are given supplementary feedings of snails and plants, respectively. Grass carp feces act as a source of fertilizer for plankton to nourish silver carp and big head.

At the same latitude, in Hangchow, a simpler stocking system is employed. Ponds in that region are usually very rich in plankton due to the alluvial soil and ample run-off from urban areas and heavily fertilized fields. Culturists there stock 65% silver carp, 30% big head, and 5% crucian carp Such a community feeds almost entirely on plankton, but the crucian carp will also feed on the bottom and thus probably makes good use of the meager benthic resources of plankton-rich ponds. Since the crucian carp will reproduce in ponds, it might be advisable to include a predator in this association or stock only one sex of crucian carp.

In other coastal regions of China a more complex association is stocked, with heavily fed grass carp as the principal species. Next in numbers are the mud carp and striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*), which make use of algae and detritus on the bottom and in midwater, respectively. Also quite heavily stocked are the plankton-eating silver carp and big head. Small numbers of the omnivorous common carp and the carnivorous sea perch (*Lateolabrax japonicus*) complete the community. The sea perch feed on the prolific gambusia (*Gambusia affinis*), a small American livebearer which has established itself as a pest in coastal ponds in southeast

TABLE 12 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR CHINESE CARP MULLET MILKFISH PONDS IN TAIWAN

	AMOUNTS OF FEEDS (KG)		
MONTHS	GREEN FODDER	AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTS	ANIMAL PRODUCTS
March	50 (*Wolffia* or duck weed)	400	40
April	150 fodder	600	100
May	300 fodder	800	200
June	500 fodder	1,000	300
July	1,000 fodder	1,200	500
August	2,000 fodder	1,200	500
September	3,000 fodder	1,000	300
October	4,000 fodder	600	100
November	2,000 fodder	400	—
	13,000	7,200	2,040

Asia, as well as shrimp, which commonly invade such ponds, and common carp fry

Milkfish (*Chanos chanos*), which feed on fresh and decaying algae are cultured along with striped mullet and Chinese carps in slightly brackish ponds in Taiwan Plankton feeders predominate in such ponds and grass carp are few but heavily fed Table 12 is a feeding schedule for such a community, consisting of 3000 striped mullet, 2000 silver carp and big head, 2000 milkfish, 1000 mud carp, 500 common carp, and 250 grass carp for a total of 8750 fish in a 1 ha pond Total production of such a pond is about 3500 kg/ha of fish

Striped mullet are also stocked in slightly brackish ponds in Hong Kong, where they are readily available When they have reached a length of about 12 cm the stock is thinned by fishing Mud carp are stocked in relatively large numbers since they do not attain as large a size as the other species Bream are sometimes stocked as well.

The customary method of growing carp in Hong Kong is similar to that practiced in Malaysia (discussed earlier) with animal feces used as fertilizer Such culture is still carried on to some extent, but it has run up against the types of difficulties one might expect would be created by such practices in an urbanized area As a result many fish culturists in Hong Kong are switching to fry culture, which does not require the use of animal manures Stocking systems used in growing ponds 1 to 2.5 m deep in Hong Kong are shown in Table 13

TABLE 13. STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS AND MULLET IN PONDS IN HONG KONG

SPECIES	LENGTH OF FRY (CM)	NUMBER OF FINGERLINGS PER HA		
		I	II	III
Striped mullet	2.5– 4.5	12,000	27,360	15,000
Grass carp	5.0–10.0	1,524	300	700
Silver carp	7.5	2,208	2,568	600
Big head	7.5	1,536	524	600
Mud carp	5 0	9,600	3,120	9,000
Common carp	5 0	—	—	4,800
Total		26,868	33,872	30,700

In the West River drainage of South China and North Vietnam, the mud carp, which withstands moderately high temperatures well, is emphasized. The numbers of mud carp and grass carp stocked are dictated by the quantity of supplementary food available. Although snails are available, few black carp are stocked, since they do not grow well in the tropical climate. Silver carp and big head are stocked in greater numbers in the deeper ponds (Table 14).

Some very shallow ponds (about 60 cm) in the West River area are also stocked, although they are not very productive, as shown by the low total number of fish stocked (Table 15). Black carp and mud carp may suffer mortality due to extremely high temperatures and are thus not stocked in such ponds. Shallow ponds are often used to hold surplus fish

TABLE 14. STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN DEEP PONDS IN THE WEST RIVER VALLEY OF CHINA AND NORTH VIETNAM

SPECIES	LENGTH OF FISH (CM)	NUMBER OF FISH STOCKED PER HA					
		PONDS WITH AVERAGE DEPTH OF 1½ M			PONDS WITH AVERAGE DEPTH OF 2 M		
		I	II	III	IV	V	VI
Grass carp	6 0–15.0	1,200	1,200	600	480	1,200	2,400
Silver carp	10.0	300	240	600	1,200	1,800	400
Big head	10 0	300	240	1,200	510	1,800	400
Mud carp	7.5	1,800	4,800	—	2,400	3,600	7,200
Common carp	5.0	1,200	360	3,600	—	1,200	300
Black carp	5.0–10.0	100	24	120	60	—	150
Bream	7.5	—	—	—	600	—	—
Total		4,900	6,864	6,120	5,250	9,600	10,850

TABLE 15 STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN SHALLOW PONDS IN THE WEST RIVER VALLEY OF CHINA AND NORTH VIETNAM

SPECIES	INITIAL WEIGHT OF EACH FISH (G)	NUMBER OF YEARLINGS PER HA	
		I	II
Grass carp	50	240	480
Silver carp	20 – 40	1,200	972
Big head	100 –150	120	240
Common carp	0 4– 0 5	1,680	972
Total		3,240	2 664

in the winter In the summer the stock is removed, those individuals which weigh more than 500 g are marketed, and the smaller fish are used to stock deeper ponds

Pond culture practices in Malaysia and Thailand are based on the Chinese method, but more use is made of supplementary feeding Grass carp in particular are heavily fed, since there is an abundance of suitable vegetable feed in the area With heavy feeding and the help of the warm tropical climate, fish grow rapidly and the culturist may realize two crops per year Most ponds in Malaysia and Thailand are 1 2 to 1 5 m deep and would thus be suitable for culture of mud carp despite the high surface temperatures However, since Chinese carps have only begun to be bred in the tropics, stocks are imported from China It is not economically feasible to import fry of a species which attains such a small maximum size as the mud carp so it is largely excluded from culture in Malaysia and Thailand

Fish culture in this region might benefit from a more thorough investigation of some of the cyprinids native to the region, many of which can easily be bred locally For example, the mata merah is a good table fish accepts a variety of foods, and can be bred in ponds in the tropics but it has only recently begun to see wide use in pond culture

In addition to the stocking ratios shown in Table 16, Gopinath (1950) suggests a 2 1 1 3 ratio of grass carp, big head, silver carp, and common carp for Malaysia

In Singapore, the nursing and rearing period is extended to 8 months for Chinese carps (although not for common carp), at which time the fish are transferred to fattening ponds for 6 months Stocking ratios used in both periods are shown in Table 17 The native tawes, bream or Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) may supplement or replace the grass

TABLE 16 STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN PONDS IN MALAYSIA

SPECIES	INITIAL WEIGHT OF EACH FISH (G)	NO OF FISH STOCKED PER HA			
		I	II	III	IV
Grass carp	350–600	300	320	375	500
Big head	350–600	100	120	75	175
Silver carp	350–600	100	125	75	200
Common carp	30– 60	145	150	120	250
Total		645	715	645	1,125

carp as a herbivore and mud carp or catla (*Catla catla*) may totally or partially fill the omnivore niche usually given over to common carp

The only significant monoculture of cyprinid fishes in the Orient outside of Japan occurs in Cambodia, where *Barbus altus, Barbus bramoides,* and *Barbus gonionotus* are sometimes grown in floating cages (see p 209–210)

POND FERTILIZATION

Pond fertilization is always practiced in Chinese carp culture The type and amount of fertilizer used depend on the characteristics of the soil and water supply and the quantity of plankton feeding fish to be grown An excess of fertilizer may cause oxygen depletion, but short of that point the role of fertilizer in production of plankton eating fish may be stated succinctly The more fertile the water, the more plankton is available The more plankton in the pond, the more plankton eating fish that can be grown However, plankton feeders, although the principal constituents of most pond fish communities, are not the only species

TABLE 17 STOCKING RATES OF CHINESE CARPS IN PONDS IN SINGAPORE

SPECIES	WEIGHT OF FRY PUT INTO THE NURSERY (G)	NO STOCKED PER HA	WEIGHT OF FISH STOCKED IN FATTENING POND (G)	NO STOCKED PER HA
Grass carp	30	1,250	1,500	450
Big head	40	250	2 000	150
Silver carp	40	250	1,800	175
Common carp	30	—	—	225
Total		1,750		1,000

cultured The general effect of fertilizers on other groups of fish may be summarized as follows

Midwater carnivores benefit from fertilization, but not as greatly as plankton feeders for they are several links removed from plankton in the food chain

Herbivores that feed on higher plants are usually dependent on supplementary feeding in pond culture, so they neither benefit nor suffer from fertilization

Bottom feeders are usually adversely affected by the type of fertilization used in polyculture Fertilization may have some beneficial effect on benthos, but this frequently is cancelled by the shading effect of a heavy plankton bloom, which reduces productivity in the bottom layer of the pond

Trash fish are of several varieties, but many of the common species are plankton feeders, in which case they benefit greatly from fertilization

The traditional methods of fertilizing growing ponds in the Far East involve organic fertilizers, usually animal manures However, there is experimental evidence suggesting that inorganic fertilizers are superior Research in Malaysia comparing the two types of fertilizers showed that, once a pond has been treated with the proper amount of lime to establish a neutral *p*H, superphosphate is the only fertilizer needed to enhance fish production As compared to organic fertilizers, superphosphate, applied at 333 kg/ha, produced better growth of blue-green algae, the principal agents of nitrogen fixation in ponds, reduced production of superfluous algae, which limits benthic productivity, lessened the danger of oxygen deficiency due to overfertilization or a sudden phytoplankton die-off, and diminished the need for supplementary feeding which in itself may contribute excess fertilizer

Continued use of organic fertilizers has been justified on the basis of cost, but considering the small amount of labor required to apply superphosphate, the slight expense, and the smaller amount of feed required when it is used, inorganic fertilization may actually be cheaper The use of superphosphate is gradually being adopted by commercial fish culturists though not by subsistence farmers, in Malaysia, but it will take some time before substantial amounts of inorganic fertilizers can be diverted from land use in much of the Far East. The long term effects of inorganic fertilizers on ecosystems have not been investigated, but experience in North America suggests that caution is in order

There are many local methods of preparing and applying organic fish pond fertilizers but the one universally used method, fertilization by the fish themselves, is often not thought of as such. Fertilization by fish is

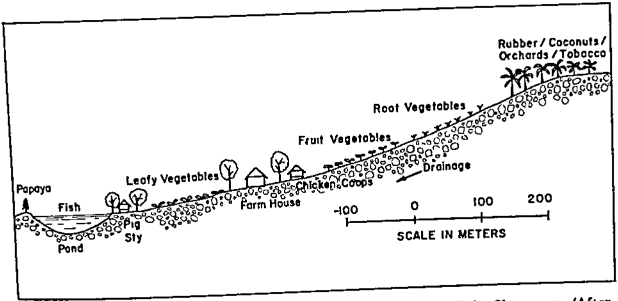


FIG. 4. Profile of integrated aquaculture-agriculture system used in Singapore. (After Ho, 1961.)

particularly effective where grass carp are stocked, because their feces contain partially digested plant remains, which decay to the benefit of plankton.

Compost for pond fertilization may be prepared similarly to that used in terrestrial agriculture. In the Kiangsu and Hunan districts of China, grass, sheep manure, and human manure in a 4:2:1 ratio are placed in a hole in the ground with 1% of quicklime. The hole is then filled with water and sealed with clay, and the contents are allowed to ferment until needed. Compost may also be created in the pond; in Kwangtung and Kwangsi provinces, manure is mixed with rice, legumes, or plants of the chrysanthemum family, placed in the water around the margin of a pond, and turned over daily until consumed. A quicker method of achieving a similar result is to mix manure in a 1:2 ratio with water, strain the resulting soup, retain the liquid portion, and pour it around the edge of a pond daily.

The most interesting and thorough use of organic fertilization in Chinese carp culture occurs in Singapore, where fish, grown for profit by the Chinese or as a subsistence crop by Malays, are an integral part of an operation which also includes fruits, vegetables, and livestock as well as such cash crops as rubber and tobacco. Figure 4 is a diagram of such a farm. Excess fertilizer, compost, and soil minerals from all the terrestrial crops eventually find their way downhill to the fish pond. Chickens and the human inhabitants also contribute their share of organic nutrient, but it is the pigs (or cattle or buffalo in the case of the Malays, who, as Muslims, are forbidden to raise pigs) which are the key to the operation.

Manure from the pig sty is periodically washed into the pond, which usually receives no other direct fertilization In time the pond becomes a dilute solution of fertilizer, which may be applied to land crops Periodically the sludge at the bottom of the pond is dug out and incorporated into vegetable beds

Pigs are also used as a source of fertilizer for Chinese carp ponds in Hong Kong Thailand, and China s Kwangtung province In Hong Kong 100 pigs weighing about 30 kg each or 2500 1 kg ducks kept in pens overhanging the water are considered adequate to fertilize a 1 ha pond Human waste is used in some areas, and in South China and Indonesia latrines are built over fish ponds for this purpose

YIELDS

Reliable data on yields achieved through pond polyculture in the Far East are scarce, but it is known that under favorable circumstances 7500 to 8000 kg/ha may be attained The average yield in intensive operations is estimated at nearly 4000 kg/ha in Malaysia and 3000 kg/ha in China and Taiwan Despite the scarcity of hard data it is certain that yields of freshwater pond fish culture in the Far East are high compared to those normally achieved elsewhere, and that the practice of polyculture has a great deal to do with this success

That it is the technique of polyculture and not the species of fish cultured the type of feed or fertilizer, or some accidental property of the environment which is primarily responsible for high yields has been demonstrated by Russian experiments Polyculture, without feeding of grass carp silver carp, and big head with common carp in ponds formerly used for monoculture of common carp has resulted in production increases of 400 to 600 kg/ha in Central Russia and 600 to 1000 kg/ha in the South With feeding and intensive pond fertilization, increases of 3000 to 4000 kg/ha have been achieved Even in the rather sterile environment of a common carp pond in a peat hag addition of grass carp and silver carp increased total fish production by 127 kg/ha, with a 15% reduction in food expenditures

HARVEST AND MARKETING

A large percentage, perhaps as much as 50% of the pondfish production of Asia is used as a means of subsistence Harvest and marketing of commercially raised Chinese carps generally proceed in the manner described earlier for common carp However, the Chinese carps, particularly silver

carp and grass carp, are much more high-strung than common carp, and great care must be exercised in catching and transporting them or they will injure themselves, often fatally. Containers used in transport should be lined with fine mesh or in some way padded. Fishing and transport should be carried out in well-oxygenated water at the lowest possible temperature; at temperatures of 1 to 6°C Chinese carps are semidormant, but above 10°C they become very excitable. If fish must be transported at high temperatures, anesthesia may be used. A 6.7 to 7.7 μg/liter solution of sodium barbital or a 1 to 4 g/liter solution of urethane is effective in transporting Chinese carps at temperatures of 25.5 to 32°C.

PARASITES AND DISEASES

In addition to injuries sustained as a result of their nervous temperament, Chinese carps are susceptible to the usual array of parasites and diseases. Most of the parasites found on Chinese carps have not been recorded as causing disease in Asian fish, but some of them, notably the tapeworm *Bothriocephalus gowkongensis*, introduced to Russia with grass carp from China, have become serious problems with European cyprinids. At present Chinese carps, or at least the grass carp, have a bad reputation in Europe as spreaders of disease, but they probably present no greater problems in this regard than are occasioned by most introductions of exotic species. Nor are European fish the only ones to suffer, for Chinese carps have been infested with diseases of European fish. The parasitic diseases coccidiosis, lernaeosis, postodiplostomatosis, synergasilosis, and tetracotylosis as well as infectious dropsy have thus far been recorded for big head, grass carp, and silver carp. For information on prevention and cure of these and other diseases the reader is referred to Davis (1953).

PROSPECTUS

RESEARCH IN POND FERTILIZATION

Problems of an esthetic or sanitary nature arise from the traditional practice of using animal manures, and particularly human wastes, in pond fertilization. Research in the use of inorganic fertilizers may eventually result in the elimination of these methods, though the long-range effects on production may be unfavorable and equally undesirable side effects may be incurred. There is a definite need for scientific evaluation of

Asian fish pond fertilization techniques, not only in the hope of increasing fish production, but from a more holistic viewpoint as well

SELECTIVE BREEDING AND HYBRIDIZATION

Another promising area for improvement, through research, of Chinese carp culture comprises selective breeding and hybridization The history of spawning Chinese carps in captivity is too short for selective breeding to have accomplished significant improvement of fish stocks, but work is proceeding in several countries Hybridization has already yielded some interesting results Male silver carp × female big head and mud carp × common carp hybrids (sexes of the parents unknown) produced in Taiwan both show indications of growing faster than either parent The latter cross is especially interesting, for a bottom-dwelling omnivore combining the resistance to cold and large size of the common carp with the superior table qualities and nondestructive feeding habits of the mud carp would be a most desirable fish for pond culture. All possible hybrids of big head, grass carp, and silver carp have been produced at the Tzimljanskoje Hatchery in the Soviet Union, and some of these also show superior growth characteristics as well as high viability The gill rakers of the hybrids are intermediate in size and structure to those of the parents, suggesting intermediate feeding habits, which might prove useful in ponds where the characteristics of the plankton population are known

USE OF NEW SPECIES

New species as well as new hybrids will surely be brought into polyculture Many of the native southeast Asian species, a number of which have been discussed here, may be superior to the true Chinese carps for culture in tropical climates Recently the Department of Fisheries of Thailand has begun to study the pla kaho (*Catlacarpio siamensis*) a river fish native to that country, for possible use in pond culture The Chinese government is also interested in new species for culture, particularly in the northern part of the country Among the cyprinid species currently under consideration are *Elopichthys bambusa, Erythroculter ilishaeformis, Hemiculter leucisculus,* and *Xenocypris argentea*

SPREAD OF POLYCULTURE

Of course Chinese carps, particularly the grass carp which has no phytophagous counterpart in many countries, will continue to be introduced

about the world But in many countries the adaptation of native fishes to polyculture seems at least as promising For instance in South America, where fish culture is scarcely developed, one can visualize an analog of Chinese carp culture using various members of the family Characidae, which rivals the Asian Cyprinidae in number of species and diversity of life habits In fact, while Chinese carp culture in the People's Republic will continue to be vital to the peoples of Asia, the greatest contribution of the Chinese fish culturists may be not to their own people, but to the world, as the contingencies of population excess and protein shortage force us all to apply the principles of ecology as they did centuries ago

REFERENCES

ANDRIASHEVA, M A 1966 Some results obtained by the hybridization of Cyprinids FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/E 10

AVAULT J W 1965 Biological weed control with herbivorous fish Proc 5th Weed Control Conf 18 590–591

DAS S M and H A KHAN 1962 The pituitary and pisciculture in India, with an account of the pituitary of some Indian fishes and a review of techniques and literature on the subject Ichthyologica 1(1) 43–58

DAVIS H S 1953 Culture and diseases of game fishes U of California Press Berkeley, 332 pp

GOPINATH K 1950 Freshwater fish farming in the Malay Archipelago J Zool Soc India 2(2) 101–108

HEPHER, B 1967 Some biological aspects of warm water fish pond management Symposium on Biological Basis of Fish Production Blackwell, London

HICKLING C F 1967 On the biology of a herbivorous fish, the white amur or grass carp *Ctenopharyngodon idella* Val Proceedings of the Royal Society of Edinburgh Section B (Biology) Vol LXX, Part 1 (No 4)

HO, R 1961 Mixed farming and multiple cropping in Malaya Proceedings of the Symposium on Land Use and Mineral Deposits in Hong Kong Southern China, and Southeast Asia Paper No 11, pp 88–104

HORA, S L, and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific Region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper 14 204 pp

HSIEN WEN, W, and C LING 1964 Progress and achievements in the artificial propagation of four farm fishes in China Contributions at the 1964 Peking Symposium, pp 203–218

KONRADT, A G 1966 Methods of breeding the grass carp *Ctenopharyngodon idella* (Val) and the silver carp *Hypophthalmichthys molitrix* FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/E 9

KURONUMA, K 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII IV/R 1

KURONUMA, K, and K NAKAMURA 1957 Weed control in farm pond and experiment by stocking grass carp Proc Indo Pacific Fish Council 7(II) 35–42

LIN, S Y 1954 Chinese systems of pond stocking Proc Indo-Pacific Fish Council, 5th Meeting Technical Paper 1 (mimeo)

LIN, S Y 1965 Induced spawning of Chinese carps by pituitary injection in Taiwan Chinese American Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction, Fisheries Series No 5 31 pp

LING, S W 1966 Feeds and feeding of warm water fishes in ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III VIII/R 2

PICKFORD, G E., and J W ATZ 1957 The physiology of the pituitary gland of fishes New York Zoological Society, New York 613 pp

PROWSE, G A 1966 A review of the methods of fertilizing warm water fish ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/R 2

SNEED, K E, and H P CLEMENS 1959 The use of human chorionic gonadotrophin to spawn warm water fishes Prog Fish Culturist 21(3) 117–120

SNEED, K E, and H P CLEMENS 1962 Bioassay and use of pituitary materials to spawn warm water fishes U.S Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wild Life, Research Report 61 30 pp

SHU, T 1966 Description of Chinese fish culture Vol I

YASHOUV, V 1966 Mixed fish culture—an ecological approach to increase pond production FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 2.

Interviews and Personal Communication

BAILEY, R M University of Michigan Museum of Zoology, Ann Arbor Michigan

HICKLING, C F 95 Greenway, London N20, England

LING, S W FAO Regional Office, Bangkok, Thailand

4

Culture of the Indian Carps

It has become a cliche that the people of India need protein. Even the most socially unaware persons have some grasp of the magnitude of India's problem. One can cite statistics *ad infinitum* to demonstrate that India is in a steadily worsening state of nutritional crisis, but however

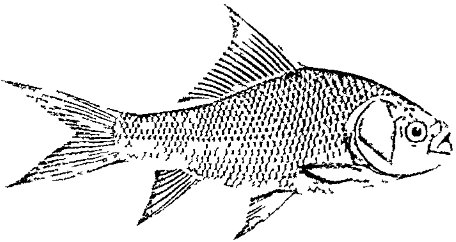


PLATE 1 Catla (*Catla catla*) (Courtesy V G Jhingran Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute Barrackpore West Bengal India)

one defines the problem it is clear that the solution, if there is ever to be one, will not come as any single panacea, but from effective population control coupled with increased and more efficient protein production by many means, including fish culture

Fish culture shows promise in India, for there is a considerable demand for fish (total landings of fish in 1965 amounted to 1331 thousand metric tons) a number of native fish well suited to culture, a tradition of fish culture, and a great abundance of cultivable waters (an estimated 7,307,642 ha of fresh and brackish water) The potential for fish culture in India has not gone unnoticed, and according to R. V Pantulu formerly of the Indian Fresh Water Fisheries Research Institute at Barrackpore, fish culture operations in India have increased sevenfold to eightfold during the last decade Yet large areas of potentially rich waters still lie fallow and, technologically, Indian fish culture lags behind much of the world

Though brackish water culture is practiced in some areas, notably the states of West Bengal and Kerala, freshwater culture is better developed and will probably remain more important Freshwater fish culture is favored not only by the availability of suitable waters and fish, but by the strong preference for fresh fish in most parts of the country, which permits locally raised freshwater fish to compete favorably with saltwater fish in inland areas

As elsewhere in Asia, the most commonly cultured fish in India and

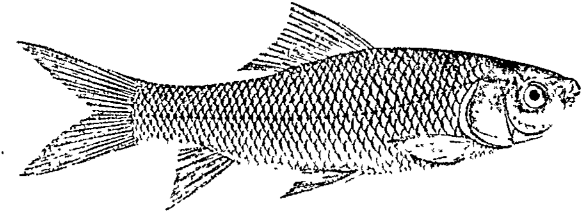


PLATE 2. Rohu (*Labeo rohita*). (Courtesy V. G. Jhingran, Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India)

Pakistan are members of the carp family (Cyprinidae). Indian cyprinids used in fish culture are popularly separated into two groups: the most desirable species are referred to as major carps; the smaller, less desirable species are called minor carps. The minor carps persist in Indian fish culture largely because as fry they are extremely difficult to distinguish from the major carps, and are thus unintentionally stocked. Minor carps may also be deliberately stocked when stocks of major carps are scarce. In the south of India, in the states of Madras and Mysore, a third group, the Cauvery carps, largely supplant the major carps.

Indian carps have not yet become as popular for introduction and culture outside their native habitat as the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) or the Chinese carps, but the catla (*Catla catla*) (Plate 1) has been introduced to Ceylon, experimentally cultured in Israel and the United States, and commercially raised in Malaysia. All the Indian major carps have been recommended for use in the Philippines.

ECOLOGICAL NICHES OF THE INDIAN CARPS

THE MAJOR CARPS

The major carps comprise the catla, the rohu (*Labeo rohita*), and the mrigal (*Cirrhinus mrigala*) (Plates 2 and 3). Some authorities also include the calbasu (*Labeo calbasu*). These three or four species are often grown in polyculture, though their ecological niches are by no means as distinct

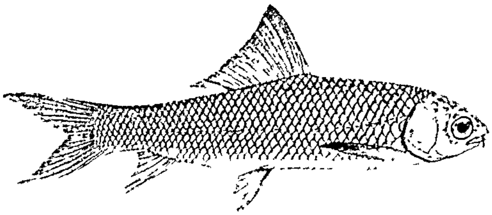


PLATE 3 Mrigal (*Cirrhinus mrigala*) (Courtesy V. G Jhingran, Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India)

and well defined as those of the Chinese carps, nor is Indian polyculture nearly as sophisticated as the ancient Chinese practice. In general, the catla feeds on plankton and decayed macrovegetation on the surface and throughout the water column, the rohu is a column feeder on decayed vegetation with a taste for higher plants, the mrigal a bottom feeding herbivore, and the calbasu a benthic omnivore. Certain of the Chinese carps have been experimentally included in Indian carp polyculture systems and in the future further combinations of Indian carps, Chinese carps, and other fish may be expected in both experimental and practical culture.

THE CAUVERY CARPS

The niches of the Cauvery carps overlap; thus polyculture of these three species could probably be enhanced by introduction of other species. The species association for fish culture in southern India has already been diversified by the introduction of catla. The catla joins the fringe lipped carp (*Labeo fimbriatus*), which consumes mostly filamentous algae and some zooplankton; the white carp (*Cirrhinus cirrhosa*), a plankton feeder with a preference for zooplankton, and the Cauvery carp (*Labeo kontius*), which competes with the fringe-lipped carp for filamentous algae, but also eats pieces of plants and detritus.

THE MINOR CARPS

Minor carps present in fish ponds vary from region to region Among those commonly found in one or another part of India are the reba (*Cirrhinus reba*), which feeds largely on phytoplankton and decayed plants, the nagendram fish (*Osteochilus thomassi*), a benthic and marginal feeder on filamentous algae and diatoms, and the sandkhol carp (*Thynnichthys sandkhol*), which consumes mostly phytoplankton plus some zooplankton, also the bata (*Labeo bata*), the carnatic carp (*Barbus carnaticus*), *Barbus chola, Labeo boga, Labeo dyoechilus, Labeo gonius, Labeo nandina*, and *Barbus sarana*

One more Indian cyprinid should be mentioned the omnivorous copper mahseer (*Barbus hexagonolepis*) Not exactly a "minor' carp, the copper mahseer attains a maximum length of 90 cm It is cultured in some parts of India but is not included in the traditional Indian polycultural scheme

SPAWNING THE INDIAN CARPS

For many years a major obstacle to the development of culture of the Indian carps has been the inability of culturists to consistently breed them in captivity All species spawn naturally in rivers and will not reproduce in standing water, although the major carps may be spawned in specially constructed reservoirs or bunds, where there is enough current to approximate river conditions The copper mahseer will also spawn in running water ponds provided the temperature is about 20°C, or ripe fish may be hand stripped and the eggs fertilized artificially Little or no effort has been expended on hand stripping or reservoir spawning of the Cauvery carps or minor carps

BUND SPAWNING

The technique of bund spawning can be applied only where the drainage from an extensive catchment area can be accumulated in a natural depression The low end of such a depression is blocked off by a strong embankment, so that during the rainy season intermittent streams will inundate the depression Or a dam may be built in the uplands to concentrate runoff in one place, from which it is channeled into the bund During the dry season a minimum of 1 5 m of water is maintained in a pool perhaps 3000 m² in area, which is stocked with catla rohu, mrigal

and calbasu in a 4 2 1 1 ratio at a sex ratio of 2 males per female, males may be distinguished by the rough dorsal surface of the pectoral fin. The exact number of fish stocked depends on the extent of the spawning area, about 1 fish per 15 m² is appropriate The pool is usually fished just before the start of the monsoon, and the numbers of each species and sex estimated, so that losses can be rectified by stocking

The spawning area is a flat piece of land on which grass is grown during the dry season so that the water will not be easily muddied when it is flooded It may comprise the entire bund other than the permanent pool, or it may be just one corner of the bund

When the rains come and flood the spawning ground an outlet channel in the embankment is opened up so that water circulates through the bund The breeders then move out of the pool and begin chasing in the shallow areas Spawning usually occurs at night during the full moon or new moon

When spawning is completed, the eggs are collected by dragging seines about 4 m long × 1 5 m deep, made of mosquito netting, over the spawning ground Unfortunately a large percentage of the eggs is often destroyed by being trampled by the fishermen The eggs are placed in spawning pits dug as near as possible to the bund and supplied with bund water These pits may be 1 to 1 3 m long, 0 6 m wide, and 0.3 m deep and accommodate from 100 000 to 300,000 eggs When the inlet to the pit is closed, the water temperature rises rapidly, accelerating hatching time to 12 to 18 hours, instead of the 36 hours that might be required at lower temperatures

The rate of hatching in these pits is low due to bacterial decay and lack of aeration in the stagnant water Some improvement may be effected by suspending a hatching net or ' hapa" in a hatching pit. The hapa is rectangular in shape and constructed as a net within a net. The eggs are placed in the inner net, which is made of material just fine enough to hold them. The newly hatched larvae pass through into the outer net of fine cloth and are nursed there until they are 4 to 5 days old, by which time they have become fry

ARTIFICIALLY INDUCED SPAWNING

As mentioned the technique of bund spawning may be used only in areas where the topography permits Induced spawning with the aid of pituitary injections is more generally applicable. The first attempts to apply this technique to the Indian carps were made in 1956 but it is only in the last five or six years that consistent success has been achieved. (For a general discussion of induced spawning with pituitary materials,

see p. 85.) Today all four major carps and a number of other Indian cyprinids are bred in this manner. Success has been found to hinge on the quality of pituitary glands used and the correct dosage. Pituitaries used in induction should be taken from fully mature, ripe, or freshly spawned fish of the same species as the fish being spawned, or a very closely related species. Dosage is variable, depending on the stage of maturity of the breeders. Since best results are obtained only with fully mature fish, only dosages for such fish will be described.

Breeders are usually selected from 1.5- to 5.0-kg, 2- to 4-year-old fish stocked in spawning ponds a few months prior to the breeding season, which usually coincides with the southwest monsoon, then segregated at maturity. Maturity of males is easily determined; fully mature specimens ooze milt when the abdomen is gently pressed. Selection of females is more difficult, but fish with soft, rounded, bulging abdomens and swollen, reddish vents are preferred. A catheter may also be used to assess ripeness.

Intramuscular injections are made on the caudal peduncle or near the shoulder region. Females are injected two or three times, while males receive only one injection. The first injection, of females only, consists of 2 to 3 mg of pituitary extract/kg of body weight, after which the sexes remain separated for 6 more hours. Then males are given a dose equal to the first injection administered to females, while the females receive a second dose of 5 to 8 mg/kg.

Following this injection, the fish are placed together in groups of three (two males and one female) in covered breeding hapas, 1.6 to 6.5 m^2 in surface area and 0.9 m deep, fixed on bamboo poles in the marginal waters of ponds. Spawning ordinarily takes place within 3 to 6 hours, but if after 10 to 12 hours no spawning occurs, females only are given a third, slightly higher dosage of pituitary extract.

If the water temperature is near optimum (about 27°C for most species), 60 to 100% success may be expected by this method. Once the eggs have hardened, 8 to 10 hours after spawning, they are transferred, in batches of 75,000 to 1,000,000, to 1.6-m^2, 0.9 m deep hatching hapas set in marginal waters of ponds, where they hatch in 15 to 18 hours at 27 to 31°C. Spawners may be sacrificed to obtain their pituitary glands.

As induced spawning of cyprinids becomes more prevalent in India, selective breeding and hybridization of Indian carps can assume greater importance. Experimental hybridization of Indian carps with each other and with Chinese carps has already been done, but the resulting offspring have for the most part been unpromising if not incapable of survival. One exception is the hybrid ♂ catla × ♀ rohu, which combines the wide body of the catla with the small head of the rohu. These traits would

give it an advantage at the market wherever consumers do not eat the head of the fish while at the same time effectively giving the consumer more nourishment for his money The catla × rohu hybrid is fertile and has produced a healthy F_2 generation

Despite recent improvements in induced spawning methods the main source of stock for culture in India and Pakistan continues to be collections of eggs larvae fry and fingerlings taken from rivers

COLLECTION OF EGGS LARVAE FRY AND FINGERLINGS

COLLECTION AND HATCHING OF EGGS

Eggs are collected only from the Halda River in the Chittagong area of Bangladesh Drifting fertilized eggs are captured 12 to 14 hours after spawning which generally takes place within 3 weeks before or after each full moon from April through July The precise time of peak spawning is determined by test collections at the start of the season The number of eggs caught in these collections enables the collectors to forecast the peak of spawning so that they can fish about that time or shortly after when the maximum number of eggs is available

The net used in egg collecting is simple consisting of no more than a rectangular piece of mosquito netting 11 to 12 m long and 2 7 m wide with a bamboo pole attached at each end Such nets are usually operated by two men in a boat stationed at right angles to the current but they may also be moored in the river or used by men wading

Captured eggs may be placed in a compartment of the collecting boat for some time even up to hatching but this results in high mortality due to congestion and inadequate aeration Better methods of holding and hatching eggs involve nets suspended from a bamboo framework bamboo baskets lined with fine cloth and suspended in the river (Plate 4) or hatching pits dug in the river bank and supplied with water through a system of pipes Suspended nets are more often used as a temporary device to accommodate the eggs immediately upon collection after which the eggs are transferred to pits or baskets which are believed to produce healthier larvae A typical hatching pit was 448 cm long × 244 cm wide × 46 cm deep and could accommodate 120 to 300 kg of eggs (900 000 to 2 200 000 eggs)

The hatching rate in all these traditional devices is usually 25 to 50% Somewhat better results may be obtained using hatching pits in conjunction with the double net device already described in connection with bund spawning

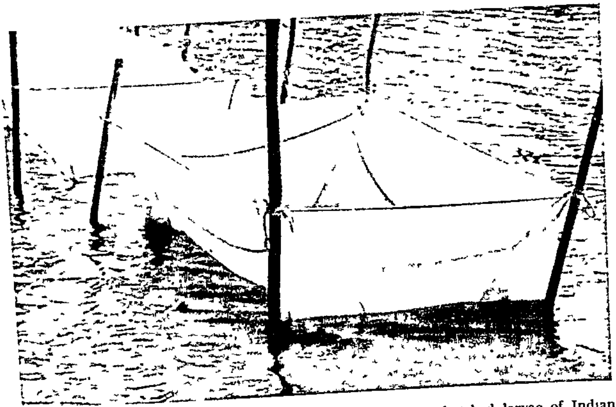


PLATE 4 Hatching enclosure or hapa for eggs and freshly hatched larvae of Indian carps (Courtesy V G Jhingran, Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Barrackpore, West Bengal, India)

COLLECTION AND TRANSPORT OF LARVAE AND FRY

The most commonly collected life stages of the Indian carps are the larvae and fry, which are taken at various times of year, depending on the locality. Favored locations for fry collection are along gently sloping banks of rivers where the current is not too strong and at the mouths of small creeks. In such locations special fry-collecting nets are fixed in 1 to 3 m deep water (Plate 5) These nets are funnel shaped, tapering from 2.5 to 3.5 m wide at the mouth to 20 to 25 cm at the cod end, which is kept open by means of a ring. Two lateral wings may be attached at the mouth so as to cover a wide area. A detachable tail piece, or "gamcha," shaped like a monk's hood, is attached at the cod end. The gamcha may be 1 to 2 m long and 40 to 100 cm wide at the rear end. These and other dimensions of fry nets vary widely according to local need. Equally variable is the mesh of the net, which may be of mosquito netting or nearly any available cloth Experiments conducted by the Allahabad Substation of the Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute have shown that 0.3 cm. netting is much more effective than the materials in general use. Finer netting may be called for where there is a fast current and low turbidity.

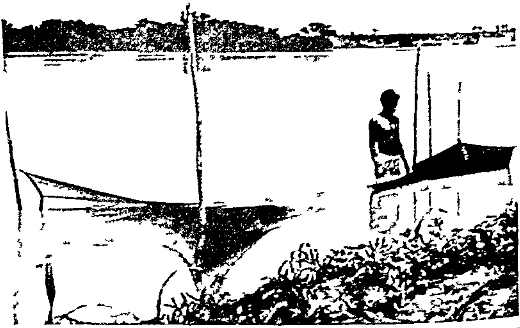


PLATE 5 Net for collecting cary fry in Indian rivers. (Courtesy V G Jhingran Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute Barrackpore West Bengal India)

Fry nets are anchored in the stream bottom by bamboo poles two each at the mouth and middle of the net and one at the tail Usually a battery of 15 to 25 nets owned and operated by a group of 7 to 12 fishermen is placed at each collection site While the nets are in use two fishermen in a boat move from net to net emptying the gamchas every ½ to 1 hour or as often as is necessary to prevent crowding of the catch. Captured fry and larvae are passed through a wire or bamboo sieve to separate them from debris then transported in large earthen basins to rectangular cloth live wells about 2 m long × 1 25 m wide × 0 7 m deep anchored in the river so that the top is just above the water level. The average daily catch from one fry net may be from 300 000 to 750 000 fry and larvae.

The next step is transportation of the fry to market at one of the larger cities where they are sold to owners of nurseries for raising to fingerling size. The classical container for transport is an open earthen vessel of variable size called a hundi The density of fry in a hundi varies according to the time to be spent in transit (Table 1)

However many fry are to be transported it is advisable that the water in the hundies be kept constantly agitated Manual agitation is sometimes necessary as when fry are shipped by rail and the train is stopped in a station Oxygen depletion is further prevented by the addition of 50 to

TABLE 1. NUMBERS OF INDIAN CARP FRY RECOMMENDED FOR TRANSPORT IN EARTHEN HUNDIES OF 27.3-LITER CAPACITY

LENGTH OF FRY (MM)	NO PER HUNDI	MAXIMUM DURATION OF TRANSPORT (HOURS)	PERCENTAGE OF MORTALITY
12–19	1,500	24	2 –5
	1,200	36	2 –5
19–25	1,000	20	2 –5
	800	30	2 –5
25–51	500–800	24	10.0
51–77	200	8	10.0

SOURCE: Alikunhi (1957).

100 g of colloidal earth to each hundi. It has been suggested that the colloidal earth serves as a buffer to maintain proper *p*H, but its principal function is to attract and concentrate in the bottom sludge dead fry and other potential sources of organic pollutants.

In recent years a variety of more sophisticated transport containers made of metal or plastic and equipped with circulating pumps, aerating devices, or a supply of oxygen have started to supplant the earthen hundi, but many fry are still shipped with no means of oxygenation other than agitation of the water by hand or by the motion of the transport conveyance. Even without supplementary oxygenation, metal containers are sometimes preferred to hundis since there is no danger of breakage. The number of fry which can be transported in closed metal containers with and without oxygen is shown in Table 2. As a more general rule of thumb in transporting Indian carp fry, the minimum volume of water per fish has been estimated for different sizes of fry (Table 3).

On arrival at the market the fry are transferred to 70- to 90-liter earthen pots, or "galmas," each containing 150 to 200 g of colloidal earth. After 10 to 15 min, the colloidal earth is removed and with it the dead larvae and fry.

Young fry sold at market are usually a mixture of major and minor carps, for no method of fry sorting comparable to that used for Chinese carps (see Chapter 3) has been developed for Indian carps, although numerous attempts have been made. Catla can be separated from other species with fair success by placing the mixed fry in a tall, narrow container and allowing the oxygen supply to become severely depleted, at which point the catla come to the surface and most of them can be skimmed off, but the other species do not sort themselves out as the

TABLE 2 NUMBERS OF INDIAN CARP FRY RECOMMENDED FOR TRANSPORT IN CLOSED 22 7 LITER METAL CONTAINERS WITH AND WITHOUT OXYGENATION

INITIAL DISSOLVED OXYGEN CONTENT (PPM)	SIZE OF FRY TO BE TRANSPORTED (MM)	NO OF FRY TO BE PUT IN EACH CONTAINER	APPROXIMATE SAFE PERIOD DURING WHICH TRANSPORT CAN BE EFFECTED (MIN)
4	6–7	50,000	19
4	6–7	30,000	31
4	6–7	20,000	47
4	15–20	1,000	40
4	15–20	500	80
4	30	300	120
4	30	150	240
5	6–7	50,000	25
5	6–7	30,000	42
5	6–7	20,000	62
5	15–20	1,000	60
5	15–20	500	120
5	30	300	165
5	30	150	330
6	6–7	50,000	31
6	6–7	30,000	51
6	6–7	20,000	77
6	15–20	1,000	75
6	15–20	500	150
6	30	300	207
6	30	150	414
oxygenated	12–20	1,000–1,250	12 hours
oxygenated	39–51	500	24 hours
oxygenated	25–32	400	16 hours

SOURCE Alikunhi (1957)

Chinese carps do About all that can be done otherwise is to separate and discard young predatory fish, most of which are slightly larger than the carp fry, by sieving Visual identification of advanced fry is possible but excessively tedious

COLLECTION AND CONDITIONING OF FINGERLINGS

Fingerlings as well as fry of catla, carnatic carp, and Cauvery carps are collected in Madras and certain parts of East Bengal, Delhi, and Uttar

TABLE 3. MINIMUM VOLUME OF WATER REQUIRED DURING TRANSPORT BY INDIAN CARP FRY OF DIFFERENT SIZE GROUPS

LENGTH OF FRY (CM)	AV. WT. OF FRY (G)	MINIMUM WATER VOLUME REQUIRED PER FRY (CC)
4–7	1.91	25
3–5	0.92	15
2–4	0.35	8
2–4	0 25	7
1–2	0.076	2

SOURCE: Saha et al. (1956).

Pradesh. Fingerlings are collected from back waters of rivers, paddy fields, irrigation channels, tanks, and so on, which they enter from large rivers. In such confined waters they may be captured with seines, dip nets, cast nets, or, in Madras, with special rectangular basket traps made of palmyra roots, called "mavulu." These traps, 1.2 m long, 30.5 cm wide, and 0.9 to 1.2 m high, are placed in gaps in dams constructed across channels for the express purpose of obstructing the movements of young fish. A number of holes about 15 cm in diameter are located along the side of the mavulu near the bottom. Fish enter the holes and swim into the trap but find it very difficult to leave due to inwardly narrowing funnel-shaped structures connected to each hole. In parts of Andhra Pradesh state, similar traps are used to collect fingerlings of catla, mrigal, and fringe-lipped carp from irrigated paddy fields. Fry of these species enter paddy fields naturally in June and July and are allowed to grow there until September or October, when they are trapped.

In the Cauvery River delta Indian carp fingerlings are captured by regulating the flow of water through irrigation sluices. Fingerlings congregate below the sluices and are stranded when the sluice gates are closed. This operation is carried out at intervals of about 4 hours and the stranded fingerlings easily captured by seining. Since by the fingerling stage Indian carps have acquired adult specific characters, they are easily sorted visually.

If the fingerlings are to be stocked nearby, they may be transported in jars and stocked immediately, but if the rearing ponds are distant, it is considered advisable to "condition" them so as to eliminate all food and excreta in the gut. If fingerlings are transported in crowded containers without conditioning, feces and vomited remnants of food may severely pollute the water. Conditioning basically involves nothing more than starvation for 48 to 72 hours, although it may also help accustom the fish to crowded conditions. Rapid elimination of food and feces may be

achieved by placing the fingerlings in a net basket fixed in a pond, then splashing water on them from all sides, which frightens them so that they pass excreta and vomit immediately. No analysis has been made of the stress factor induced by this practice. It has been suggested that some feeding with animalcules such as cladocerans may be preferable to total starvation in both conditioning and transport.

Practically any container with mesh or perforated sides which can be placed in a pond or stream may be used for conditioning. Conditioning containers should be kept in a shaded area to protect the fingerlings from sudden changes in temperature, an optimum temperature for conditioning is considered to be between 26 and 29°C. Conditioning containers should not be placed where the water will be muddied by the activities of fishermen.

NURSERY PONDS

PREPARATION AND STOCKING

Captured and conditioned fingerlings may be placed directly into growing ponds to fatten them for consumption or stocked in rearing ponds for further intensive care. Fry, however, must be nursed for 12 to 15 days to insure their health and satisfactory growth. Both seasonal and perennial ponds, ranging from 7 m^2 to 0.5 ha in area and 0.9 to 3.6 m deep are used as nurseries. Sample stocking rates for nursing ponds are shown in Table 4.

Perennial ponds have the serious disadvantage of harboring a host of predators, parasites, and competitors of carp fry, which seldom can be entirely eliminated. For this reason, in stocking perennial ponds it is best to scatter the fish, rather than dumping them all in at once. Stocking at night is also advisable, since most fry predators feed visually and the fry are especially vulnerable to predation during the period of acclimatization to a new environment.

Temporary ponds are somewhat better, but the ideal is a pond which can be drained at the discretion of the culturist. In the relatively few modernized nursery units in India, the ponds are drained and sun-dried before use; the bottom is plowed and a short season crop of leguminous plants is grown as a source of nitrogen for the soil. After harvesting the legume crop, the plants are plowed under and the bottom is levelled. Further fertilization may be carried out using various kinds of manure or refuse, mixed with oil cake applied at 200 to 325 kg/ha before the pond is filled. Vegetable manures are usually applied in heaps weighted

TABLE 4. SAMPLE STOCKING RATES OF INDIAN CARPS IN NURSERY PONDS

TYPE AND/OR AREA OF POND	STAGE AND/OR SIZE	APPROXIMATE NUMBER PER HA OF WATER SURFACE	DURATION OF REARING (DAYS)
Shallow, seasonal nurseries, 91–152 cm deep, 1,524 cm × 1,524 cm or 1,828.8 cm × 914 cm in area, and paddy fields with a depth of over 30 cm	Fry up to 8.5 mm	741,300–1,235,500, depending on density of plankton available as food	15–30
Seasonal nurseries 1,524–1,828 cm × 914–1,219 cm × 91–122 cm	Fry up to 8.5 mm	1,235,500–1,976,800	15
Seasonal, shallow nurseries 1,524 cm × 1,524 cm in size and 91–122 cm depth	Fry few hours to 3 days old	222,390 without feeding, 1,235,500 with artificial feeding	15
0 62 ha in size	—	—	30
Seasonal nurseries, 0.9–1.5 m deep, 2.4 × 3 m in size, or perennial ponds 1.8–3 6 m deep and 0.5 ha in area	Fry	7,812,500	12–15
Cement cisterns	Fry up to 19–25 mm	8,401,400 without artificial feeding (must be thinned after 10 days)	—

SOURCE: Jhingran (1966).

down with stones rather than scattered about the pond, so as to reduce the danger of widespread deoxygenation. Animal manure is placed in bags or baskets for the same reason. Dilute sewage is used as a fertilizer in some areas, notably in the Bidyadhuri Spill in Calcutta. In using sewage, care should be taken that the dissolved oxygen concentration in the pond does not drop below 3 ppm. Inorganic fertilizers, though too expensive for use by many culturists, have been used on an experimental basis. They would appear to be especially promising for use in arid areas, where organic manures are relatively scarce and more appropriately used as a source of humus for the soil. Unfortunately, most of the research on inorganic pond fertilization in India has involved use of the N-P-K mix-

tures, with little testing of the individual elements Use of N P K mixtures may be wasteful, as limnological data from many parts of India show an abundance of potassium The nitrogen fixing blue green algae so prevalent in Indian fish ponds, along with the occasional practice of growing legumes in dry ponds, may make the addition of nitrogen superfluous as well There is some experimental evidence that phosphates alone are as effective as or better than N P K mixtures in many situations, but the lack of adequate controls in this research leaves room for doubt In parts of Bangladesh a 3 1 mixture of cow dung and superphosphate is applied to ponds at 555 kg/(ha)(year) Clearly, pond fertilization practices in India and Pakistan can be improved, through research and by greater appreciation of the fact that the waters of the region vary widely in chemical characteristics, so that each body should be treated individually rather than according to some custom or general formula

If the soil is acid, it may also be necessary before filling to treat the pond with lime until a *p*H of 8 or 9 is reached Large perennial ponds are generally acid, but 300 to 500 kg/ha of lime is usually sufficient to correct this situation

In ponds which cannot be drained and dried, pest control is a major preoccupation of the culturist. Predators include fish such as the snake heads (*Ophicephalus* spp) frogs, several varieties of insect, and aquatic birds Competitors of the carp fry include many species of small, commercially undesirable fish as well as tadpoles Fishing is usually inadequate to control predator and competitor fish, and poisoning must often be relied on A number of pesticides of plant origin are used, but the most common is derris root powder Applied at 4 to 6 ppm, it eliminates virtually all fish as well as killing some aquatic insects and tadpoles Larger doses may be more effective but the prescribed dosage is preferred since it initially only stuns the fish and edible predators can be salvaged by quickly transferring them to clear water Further control of insects can be achieved by applying an emulsion of 56 kg of mustard or coconut oil and 18 kg of washing soap per hectare These poisons lose their effectiveness within 2 to 12 days of application at which time manuring or stocking may be initiated Ducks and geese must be fenced out of nursery ponds

Weeds may also cause a problem by competing for nutrients with plankton and by providing hiding places for predators Manual or mechanical removal is preferable to chemical control but the possibility of ecological control using shading or herbivorous fishes should be considered A lengthier treatment of weed control methods follows in the discussion of growing ponds

FERTILIZATION OF NURSERY PONDS AND SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING OF FRY

The fry remain in the nursery 12 to 15 days and are not ordinarily fed, since plankton produced by fertilization is adequate for growth It has been customary to stock nurseries when the water turns bottle green, indicating a heavy growth of phytoplankton Inorganic fertilizers are particularly effective in producing this condition Recent research, however, has shown that early fry of the major carps prefer zooplankton Application of fresh or partially dried cow dung at about 11,000 to 16,000 kg/ha will, after about 10 days, produce a vigorous growth of zooplankton lasting 7 to 10 days Heavier doses are actually less effective in producing zooplankton This sort of manuring should be carried out before stocking If the initial dose does not produce an adequate amount of zooplankton, treatment may have to be repeated at 2500 kg/ha or less every 4 to 5 days until production is satisfactory Fertilizers applied after the pond is filled should be handled in much the same manner as fertilizers placed in dry ponds they should be placed in a heap at one corner of the pond Or a separate culture of zooplankton may be grown in a small, heavily manured pond

The presence of adequate quantities of zooplankton can be tested for very simply If 50 liters of pond water are filtered through a plankton net into a test tube and a few drops of formalin or a pinch of common salt is added to kill the plankton, a layer of sediment about 1 cm deep should develop The color of the sediment, brown or green, indicates the relative proportions of zooplankton and phytoplankton, respectively

If a pond simply does not produce enough food organisms, or if other problems such as deoxygenation or reinvasion of predators develop, the fry may be transferred to another pond This is not necessarily an emergency measure, as a change of environment may accelerate growth in any case

If a heavy bloom of phytoplankton develops, it may be controlled by dissolving cow dung or dye in the surface water to block the penetration of light into deeper water An abundance of duckweed or other small floating plants serves the same purpose

Some Indian carp culturists make use of artificial fry feeding Various types of dried and powdered oil cakes mixed with rice bran are the customary food although water fleas (*Daphnia*) have also been recommended The normal feeding schedule for oil cakes and rice bran is given in Table 5

There has been speculation that oil cakes and rice bran placed in ponds

TABLE 5 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR INDIAN CARP FRY

	ARTIFICIAL FOOD TOTALLING
First five days after stocking	One to two times the weight of the fry at stocking daily
Second five days after stocking	Two to three times the weight of the fry at stocking daily
Third five days after stocking	Three to four times the weight of the fry at stocking daily

function more as fertilizer than as food Extensive feeding experiments carried out at the Central Inland Fisheries Research Substation, Cuttack, India compared the effects on common carp and rohu fry of 19 food items, fed singly or in combinations of two, three, and four items, with the effects of the oil cake rice bran diet In laboratory tests many of the diets studied produced better growth and/or survival than did the normal diet. The best of the diets tested, a mixture of notonectids (aquatic insects) prawns, and cowpeas, was then field tested on nursery fry of catla rohu, and silver carp Although fry of these species are plankton feeders in nature, all showed better growth and survival on the mixture than on conventional diets Mrigal fry also grew well on the mixture but were not compared to mrigal fry fed oil cakes and rice bran

The Biometry Research Institute of the Indian Statistical Institute has been the site of other research on diets for Indian carp fry, in this case involving micronutrients Addition of yeast, vitamin B complex, and ruminant stomach extract with cobalt nitrate to ponds containing 3 to 26-day-old *Daphnia* fed fry of catla and rohu resulted in higher survival and, especially in the case of yeast, better growth Yeast and B complex also reduced density effects on survival Yeast, in particular, may find application in commercial culture of the Indian carps However, while addition of yeast to fry diets enhances growth it also decreases the total protein per gram dry weight of fry

REARING PONDS

When the nursing period is over, at which time the fry have reached a length of 20 to 50 cm they should be left in the nursery pond for about 2 days during which time they are not fed, then captured in a fine mesh seine and transferred to rearing ponds The nursery pond may then be prepared for the next lot of fry

Rearing ponds are poisoned, fertilized, and if necessary limed in the

TABLE 6 SAMPLE STOCKING RATES OF INDIAN CARPS IN REARING PONDS

TYPE AND/OR AREA OF POND	STAGE AND/OR SIZE (MM)	APPROX NO PER HA WATER SURFACE	DURATION OF REARING (DAYS)
Perennial or seasonal rearing ponds, 122–183 cm deep, 0 62–1 24 ha in area, and paddy fields with a depth of 46 cm or more	25–51	49,420–74,130 without feeding, 148,260–197,680 with regular feeding	30–60
Rearing ponds slightly larger than nursery ponds	25–38	98,840–123,550 without feeding, 148,-260–197,680 with artificial feeding	60
Perennial or seasonal rearing ponds retaining water for a long period, but not deeper than 183 cm, long and narrow in shape for easy, inexpensive fishing operations, and paddy fields 45–61 cm deep	19–25	24,710 without feeding 197,680 with artificial feeding	60–90
Rearing ponds	25–51	4,000–5,000	60
Rearing ponds	35	250,000–500,000	—

SOURCE Jhingran (1966)

same manner as nursery ponds Stocking rates for rearing ponds are shown in Table 6

From this time on, artificial feeding is only rarely practiced in the culture of the Indian carps, the plankton production of a fertilized pond providing adequate food for growth

PRODUCTION PONDS

PREPARATION

Production ponds are prepared similarly to nursing and rearing ponds First all bottom deposits are removed, either manually after draining or,

if draining is impossible by use of nets or long handled scoops Lime is added not only to adjust the pH of acidic ponds but also as a disinfectant If a pond has not previously been limed, a heavy dose, perhaps as much as 10,000 kg/ha may be necessary, but in regularly limed ponds 100 to 200 kg/ha is sufficient except where the soil is very acidic or poor in carbonates

Manuring practices vary greatly one recommended dosage for production ponds is 1000 kg or more of cow dung, 560 to 1200 kg of poultry manure, and 5000 kg of green compost/ha Other fertilizers such as oil cakes or commercial inorganic fertilizers are also used Water containing sewage may be used in fattening Indian carps for consumption This practice might seem questionable from a public health standpoint, but at concentrations of sewage great enough that human pathogens are abundant dissolved oxygen levels are too low for high survival of fishes

STOCKING

Stocking practices in Indian carp production ponds seem haphazard when compared with polyculture practices in China and elsewhere This is partly due to the extreme difficulty of distinguishing the various species as fry, but also because the whole question of suitable polycultural techniques for India has not been adequately explored Not only are the numbers and proportions of the different species of fish stocked not standardized neither is the size at introduction to the growing pond All sizes from fry to juveniles 300 mm long are used Table 7 includes a sample of various stocking policies which have proven at least partially satisfactory

Since the characteristics of the bodies of water in which these stocking practices are employed are unknown, it is not possible here to make

TABLE 7 SAMPLE STOCKING RATES OF INDIAN CARPS IN PRODUCTION PONDS

SIZE STOCKED	FISH/HA	SPECIES RATIO
50–100 mm	4 000	catla rohu mrigal, 6 3 1
75–130 mm	ca 11 000	catla rohu mrigal 2 3 4
juveniles	—	catla rohu mrigal, 3 3 4
80–130 mm	6 250	catla rohu mrigal 3 6 1 or catla rohu mrigal calbasu, 3 5 1 1
—	—	catla rohu mrigal, 3 3 4 or catla rohu mrigal calbasu 3 3 3 1

recommendations for pond stocking. In general, the numbers of the major carps stocked should be determined by the relative availability of preferred foods for each. Calbasu are usually added to the basic three species when there are mollusks available in the growing pond, since these are not utilized by the other major carps.

GROWTH AND YIELDS OF INDIAN CARPS

In stocking production ponds, allowance is usually made for an annual mortality of 30% or more. Very large fish bring poor prices, so Indian carps are seldom left in growing ponds longer than 3 years. Most fish are sold after the first year, at which time catla, rohu, mrigal, and calbasu may have attained weights of 900 to 4100, 675 to 900, 675 to 1800, and 450 g, respectively. The Cauvery carps are smaller fish, attaining first-year weights of up to 450 g for the fringe-lipped carp, 330 g for the white carp, and 300 g for the Cauvery carp. In very fertile waters, comparable weights may be reached in as little as 6 to 8 months. Few data are available on yields of Indian carp culture, but they vary widely. In semiwild waters, where the fish are merely stocked and forgotten until harvest, yields seldom exceed 110 kg/ha. With cultivation this expectation may be increased to 300 to 900 kg/ha. With artificial feeding yields as high as 2802 kg/ha have been achieved. In recent experiments at the Central Indian Fisheries Research Station at Cuttack, the unprecedented yield of 3564 kg/ha was obtained by stocking catla, rohu, mrigal, silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*), grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*), common carp, and calbasu in the ratio of 5:10:5:10:4:5:1 at 5000/ha, with fertilization and supplementary feeding.

MARKETING

Indian carps usually are sold fresh, in accordance with the regional preference. Most fish are not sold directly to the consumer, but through various middlemen; sometimes as many as five are involved in handling one lot of fish. Obviously, this greatly increases the price to the consumer and reduces the amount of protein food available to those who most need it. In some states of India, notably Ahmedabad and Maharashtra, cooperatives market a substantial proportion of fishery products at considerable saving to the consumer, a practice which may be extended to aquacultural products.

PROBLEMS OF INDIAN CARP CULTURE

Among the routine problems facing Indian fish culturists is the presence of unwanted plants in growing ponds Depending on the plant species to be dealt with, a diversity of methods, including poisoning, is used in weed control Many of the most effective poisons are chlorinated hydrocarbons such as 2,4 D, which are scarcely to be recommended for introduction into ecosystems or human food supplies Other poisons, such as copper sulfate, sodium arsenite, and anhydrous ammonia gas, lack the long term cumulative effects and the dangers to man presented by the chlorinated hydrocarbons but they may be toxic to fish In all but the most desperate cases therefore, it is safer (and usually cheaper) to use mechanical or ecological methods of plant control For floating weeds outright manual removal is the best treatment Emergent plants may be controlled by cutting of leaves at weekly intervals for about 6 to 8 weeks before fruiting Marginal weeds may be controlled by many methods including plowing under, grazing by livestock, burning during the dry season, or deepening the margin of the pond Rooted submerged weeds may be removed, albeit with considerable labor, by netting with strong nets, by dragging chains, or with the aid of various types of fork and rake

The commonest agents of ecological weed control are herbivorous fish The most commonly used species for this purpose is the grass carp which in addition to destroying or reducing most submerged and emergent plants and adding to pond fish production, contributes to the nourishment of other fish by dropping partially digested plant remains in its feces All four of the major carps and a number of the minor carps although unable to utilize fresh macrophytes as food, consume the partially decayed plant material in grass carp feces However, grass carp are not a panacea for weed problems, since there are some plants, such as *Eichornia* and *Salvinia*, which they eat only with reluctance if at all There is also the possibility that if grass carp find their way into natural waterways they may be destructive of the native flora Another herbivore already introduced to Ceylon for use in weed control, is the tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*) A number of species of tilapia, including *Tilapia melanopleura*, *Tilapia mossambica*, *Tilapia nilotica*, and *Tilapia zillii*, may effectively control certain types of weed However, *T mossambica* has on at least one occasion been found to depress total yield in polyculture involving catla (for details on use of tilapia in weed control, see p 375–376)

Another ecological method of weed control is shading Trees around the border of a pond may provide sufficient shade to discourage marginal weeds but to control offshore weeds in most ponds the culturist must

rely either on floating plants such as duckweed (*Lemna*), individuals of which are small enough not to interfere with netting and routine management operations, or on creation of an algal bloom. A heavy bloom can be induced by repeated application of N-P-K fertilizers, but this may be prohibitively expensive. An unusual combination of effects results from application of superphosphate or urea at 50 ppm or more. These substances at that concentration are toxic to most submerged plants, but they act as fertilizers and produce an algal bloom as well. The desirability of an algal bloom must of course be evaluated in terms of the characteristics of the individual pond and the feeding habits of the fish present.

Other pond management practices used in India and Pakistan include the treatment of foul water by doses of 1.5 ppm or less of potassium permanganate, raking the pond bottom to release accumulated gases, and addition of minute amounts of alum to settle suspended or colloidal matter and reduce turbidity.

Among the diseases reported in Indian carps are gill rot, *Saprolegnia* infection, dye disease, fin rot, Ichthyophthiriasis, costiasis, argulosis, ligulosis, gyrodactylosis, and dropsy. For a detailed discussion of some of these diseases and methods of treatment, the reader is referred to Davis (1953).

PROSPECTUS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The prospectus for culture of the Indian carps is one of growth, as it must be if India's protein crisis is to be abated or merely kept from worsening. Significant growth can be achieved if a greater proportion of India's available waters are brought into fish production. But to even approach the type of production increase that is needed, great scientific, technological, and social strides must be made. Among the steps which must be taken are the following:

1. The ecological niches of the various Indian carps must be better understood, so that pond stocking and management can be carried out on a more rational basis. If research discloses that not all available niches are being filled, additional species, for example some of the Chinese carps, could be introduced to Indian polyculture. More precise knowledge of the ecological role played by the species cultured would also eliminate such unfortunate practices as encouraging a phytoplankton bloom in a pond full of zooplankton feeders.
2. More effective means of spawning Indian carps must be developed. This almost certainly means perfecting existing techniques of induced spawning by hormone injection. Only when Indian fish culturists can

consistently and selectively spawn their stock will Indian fish culture approach its full potential

3 When successful breeding is assured, it will be possible and desirable to proceed with experiments in selective breeding and perhaps hybridization

4 Far better methods of hatching eggs must be adopted A hatching rate of 25 to 50% is simply not satisfactory for a major fish culture enterprise

5 Mortality in transportation of fry must be reduced and transport made more efficient Again the technology exists, but economic considerations restrict its usage Some progress is being made in this area, however

6 As long as river caught fry sustain a major portion of the market, there will be a need for a workable method of sorting fry to species The present inability of culturists to determine what species they are stocking renders current knowledge of suitable stocking ratios useless and results in inadvertent stocking of inefficient protein producers, that is, the minor carps

7 More and more efficient hatcheries and culture stations must be built, using artificial ponds that can be drained and otherwise ecologically controlled Losses to predators and other natural hazards which could be controlled undoubtedly significantly reduce the total yield of Indian fish culture

8 Much more research needs to be done on pond fertilization In conjunction with this research, surveys should be made of the chemical characteristics of Indian soil and waters so that the culturist may know precisely what the effect of a certain dosage of a substance in a given pond will be This would eliminate loss of fish due to fouled water, unutilized phytoplankton blooms, and so on For the present at least, emphasis should continue to be placed on organic fertilizers, for ecological as well as economic reasons, but inorganic fertilizers should not be ignored

9 Ecological means of weed control, particularly those involving herbivorous fish, should be encouraged and use of chlorinated hydrocarbon herbicides discouraged

10 Artificial feeding of all ages of Indian carps should be studied, and if useful and economically feasible foods are found, such feeding should be encouraged

11 Indian fishery and fish culture research should be directed toward potential application of its findings The Indian scientific literature should not be further burdened with masses of needlessly precise data

detailing for example, the lengths of carp fry in hundredths of a milli meter

12 Cooperatives and other schemes to eliminate middlemen and sup ply protein food efficiently and cheaply to those who need it should be encouraged and aided

Though research undoubtedly holds the key to many of the problems of Indian fish culture, given the urgency of the situation development must be given preference Implementation of presently known feasible techniques for increasing protein production in India is of utmost im portance and must succeed if India is to feed her people

REFERENCES

AHMAD N 1948 Methods of collection and hatching of carp ova in Chittagong with *some suggestions for their improvement J Bombay Nat Hist Soc* 47 586–602

ALIKUNHI K H 1956 Fish culture techniques in India in progress of fisheries devel *opment in India Central Inland Fisheries Research Station and Department of* Fisheries Orissa 96 pp

ALIKUNHI K H 1957 *Fish culture in India Indian Council of Agricultural Research* New Delhi Farm Bulletin No 20 143 pp

ALIKUNHI K H H CHAUDHURI and V RAMCHANDRAN 1951 *A possible method for* segregation of species from a mixed collection of carp fry Science and Culture 17 220

BHASKARAN T R 1952 Effect of organic manures on the oxygen budget in fish ponds Proc Nat Inst Sci India (B) 18(4) 257 259

CHAUDHURI H 1966 Breeding and selection of cultivated warm water fishes in Asia and the Far East—a review FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/R 3

DAS B C 1966 Effects of micro nutrients on the survival and growth of Indian carp fry FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/E 13

DAVIS H S 1951 Culture and diseases of game fishes U of California Press Berkeley 332 pp

HICKLING C F 1966 Fish hybridization FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/R 1

HORA S L and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 14 204 pp

JAGANNADHAN N 1947 A note on the collection conditioning and transport of finger lings of Catla in Madras Presidency J Bombay Nat. Hist Soc 47 315–319

JHINGRAN Y G 1966 Synopsis of biological data on Catla *Catla catla* (Hamilton) 1822 FAO Fisheries Synopsis No 32

LAKSHMANAN M A V D S MURTY K K PILLAI and S C BANERJEE. 1966 On a new artificial feed for carp fry FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III/E 5

PAKRASI, B 1953 Preliminary observations on the control of aquatic insects in nursery ponds *Proc Indian Acad Sci* (B) 38 211–213

PROWSE, G A 1966 *A review of the methods of fertilizing warm water fish ponds in* Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR. II/R 2.

SAHA, K C., D P SEN, and P MAZUMDAR. 1956 Studies on the mortality in spawn and fry of Indian major carps during transport. Part II Effect of oxygen pressure, free surface area, water volume and number of fry in the medium of transport *Indian J Fish* 3(1) 127–134

Interviews and Personal Communication

PANTULU R. V Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East

5

Early Attempts at Fish Farming in the South Central United States Using Buffalofish and Paddlefish

RATIONALE FOR SELECTION OF BUFFALOFISH AS A CROP

Fish farming in the United States is centered in the south central states, which are also among the largest producers of a number of agricultural crops including rice The history of commercial fish culture in the region is short, and stems from the institution, in the 1950s, of federal restrictions on the amount of land that could be planted to terrestrial crops Fish farming was thus initiated as a profitable and legal alternative use for farm land Rice farmers who must rotate their crops in order to maintain soil fertility, found the prospect of fish farming particularly inviting

Among the most important commercial fishery products in the area are catfish (*Ictalurus* spp) and a group of large suckers (family Catastomidae) known as buffalofish (*Ictiobus* spp) Both catfish and buffalofish had been experimentally cultured in the early part of the twentieth century, when American fish culturists were still attempting to propagate virtually everything that swam but little had been done with them since that time Although buffalofish bring only half the price of catfish, they were selected for the first attempts at fish rice rotation and other forms of food fish culture. From a biologist s point of view buffalofish seemed the logical choice, since they are low on the food chain, consuming principally plankton, benthos and detritus Theoretically, therefore, more buffalofish than catfish can be produced in a given amount of water Farmers were also more enthusiastic about buffalofish because whereas the catfish fishery was fairly stable, the availability of buffalofish fluctuated seasonally A very crude form of buffalofish culture, consisting of no more than holding fishery-caught specimens in small ponds for sale during the off season, had been tried periodically, but very high mortality due to handling prevented it from being a success It was thought that intensive culture of buffalofish would enable the farmer to more profitably supply the off season demand

SPECIES USED AND HYBRIDS

There are three species of buffalofish, the bigmouth buffalo (*Ictiobus cyprinellus*), the black buffalo (*Ictiobus niger*), and the smallmouth buffalo (*Ictiobus bubalus*) all of which are fished commercially All were cultured experimentally, but the bigmouth buffalo was found to be superior on all counts since it grows faster, matures earlier, and is more prolific than the other species

Ictiobus spp. hybridize in nature, and in 1963 to 1964 all possible hybrids of the three species were produced, under hatchery conditions, at the U.S. Fish Farming Experimental Station at Stuttgart, Arkansas. Most of the hybrids were of academic interest only, but one, ♀ *I. niger* × ♂ *I. cyprinellus*, exhibited 33% better growth in weight than either parent in experimental culture. This hybrid was subsequently recommended for practical culture, but it has not been well evaluated, since its introduction coincided with the decline of buffalofish culture.

HISTORY OF BUFFALOFISH CULTURE

Within a decade of the start of fish farming in the south central states, bigmouth and hybrid buffalo were supplanted as the chief fish crop by the channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) (for details on channel catfish culture in the region see Chapter 6). Table 1 illustrates the change in relative importance of the two types of fish in Arkansas.

TABLE 1. AREA DEVOTED TO CULTURE OF BUFFALOFISH AND CATFISH IN ARKANSAS, 1958–1966

YEAR	AREA OF WATER PRIMARILY DEVOTED TO BUFFALOFISH CULTURE (HA)	AREA OF WATER PRIMARILY DEVOTED TO CHANNEL CATFISH CULTURE (HA)
1958	1,378	0 (some catfish grown as a supplemental crop with buffalofish)
1960	1,434	100
1963	297	428
1966	100	5,800

Today, monoculture of buffalofish is virtually nonexistent. The bulk of the buffalofish on the market is contributed by fisheries, with the rest coming from low-intensity polyculture, or buffalofish stocked as supplemental fish in catfish ponds.

The reason for the wholesale switch to catfish culture was that, as long as the culturist's goal is to make a profit, southeast Asian methods, usually cited as a model for fish culture, are not advantageous in the United States. Under the unusual, and perhaps temporary, economic conditions which prevail in the United States, the farmer can usually afford to feed

fish heavily on a diet rich in animal protein. Under such circumstances he is economically justified in producing the fish that fetches the highest price, regardless of ecological niche. This is demonstrated by the success in catfish farming of a number of culturists who realized low profits, or even net losses, from buffalofish farming.

BREEDING AND REARING THE YOUNG

SELECTION AND CONDITIONING OF BROOD FISH

One of the real advantages for culture of buffalofish is the ease with which they can be spawned. The first step in breeding buffalofish starts well before the spawning season, in February or earlier, when brood stock are selected and stocked in wintering ponds. Brood fish should be 1.3 to 3.4 kg in weight, and among the fastest growing fish of their age group. One-year-old fish, of whatever size, should not be used, because a large proportion of the females are likely to be immature.

Spawners should be free of disease and injuries, but buffalofish are rather delicate, and injuries may occur any time they are handled. This can be guarded against by handling potential spawners a few at a time and covering vessels containing buffalofish to keep the interior dark. If, despite all precautions, some fish are injured, the wounds may be swabbed with a piece of cotton dipped in 20% potassium permanganate. Some culturists routinely disinfect breeders in 10 ppm potassium permanganate for 1 hour, followed by 15 ppm formalin for 12 hours, before stocking wintering ponds.

Satisfactory dimensions for a wintering pond are 0.3 ha in area, and 1 m in mean depth, with some water up to 2 m deep. Buffalofish are among those fish that emit a substance which, in high concentration, inhibits spawning. Culturists take advantage of this fact by stocking wintering ponds as heavily as is consistent with the health of the fish; stocking densities cited in the literature vary from 400 to 2000 kg/ha. Although spawning of even ripe fish can be retarded for up to a month by such heavy stocking, the culturist should nevertheless be prepared to draw the pond down if heavy rainfall occurs, since this may trigger spawning.

Whenever the water temperature rises above 13°C, fish in wintering ponds are fed 1% of their total body weight daily; just prior to spawning, this is increased to 4%. Pellets of Auburn No. 1 fish feed, which contains 35% soybean meal, 35% peanut meal, 15% fish meal, and 15% distiller's

sufficiently important for these techniques to be adopted in practical culture In the event of a large demand for cultured buffalofish, hatchery culture would have been advantageous in that eggs can thus be hatched more efficiently, in larger numbers and, most important, synchronously, so that fry of a uniform size can be produced

Buffalofish used in the previously described hybridization experiments were artificially spawned as follows Spawners, usually 1 3 to 2 7 kg fish, were isolated in 20 gallon aquaria at 24 to 25°C, injected with pituitary extracts, and, when the eggs were free flowing, stripped of eggs and milt (See p 85 for a general discussion of artificially induced spawning) Females were injected with 315 units of human chorionic gonadotropin or 0 9 mg of acetone dried buffalofish pituitary per kilogram of body weight, males received half these dosages Some females spawned within 22 to 24 hours of injection, but others could not be made to spawn with repeated injections

Eggs were hatched in a closed recirculating water system, using the jar method (See pp 92–93 for description of hatching eggs in jars) Hatching rates of 95 to 98% were obtained in 24 hours at 24°C, but uniformly poor rates were observed at 19°C

NURSERY PONDS AND THEIR MANAGEMENT

Ponds similar to wintering and spawning ponds may serve as nurseries, but ponds as small as 0 04 ha have also been used effectively The most important consideration in selecting a nursery pond is that it be absolutely free of predatory fish since buffalofish fry are unusually susceptible to predation Before transfer to nurseries disinfection for 2 to 4 hours in 15 ppm formalin plus 1 ppm acriflavine is advisable

Stocking rates in nurseries vary from 800 to 4000/ha The precise rate is determined by the size of fingerling which is desired the amount of buffalofish of any size which can be produced from 1 ha of water is usually 200 to 400 kg Fingerlings weighing about 0 1 kg or slightly more each were considered adequate for the intensive rice fish rotation originally envisioned, but for the less intensive types of culture currently practiced, a larger fingerling is best because the growing areas commonly contain large predatory fish Another factor that must be taken into account in nursery stocking is mortality, which is highly variable, but may exceed 50%

Fingerlings accept the same artificial feeds as fry and breeders, but feeding is optional at this stage Fertilization is essential however The dosage described above should be applied monthly

The combined stimuli of freshly drawn water and greatly reduced population density should be sufficient to induce spawning within 24 hours of stocking, but it may be delayed if the fish are not fully mature or if a cold snap occurs. If spawning does not occur within a week, the pond may be drained nearly dry and refilled to trigger mating behavior.

HATCHING

Hatching occurs in 5 days at 18 to 21°C, and the fry are free swimming in another 2 days. The newly hatched fry are very delicate and should be left in the spawning pond for some time; the parents are removed to reduce the danger of transmission of diseases and parasites. If the fry are not to starve, an abundant supply of plankton must be available soon after they become free swimming, so spawning ponds are fertilized after the eggs are laid. Commercial 8-8-2 fertilizer applied at 100 kg/ha has been found to produce an adequate bloom.

REARING EARLY FRY

Light feeding with suitable sized particles of the same feeds described above should commence about 10 to 15 days after spawning. The rate of feeding is determined empirically, based on the appearance, growth rate, and behavior of the fry. Underfed buffalofish fry may sometimes be observed swimming in schools around the edge of the pond; at such times they are extremely susceptible to disease.

The only other management measure commonly undertaken is the periodic application of a mixture of kerosene and motor oil to the pond surface to control predatory insects. Details of this technique and its pros and cons will be discussed later.

Fry may be left in the spawning ponds until fall, when they are ready for stocking in growing ponds, but it is preferable to stock them in special nursery ponds when they attain lengths of 12 to 40 mm. Yields of up to 1 million such fingerlings/ha have been achieved, using the methods described, at the U.S. Fish Farming Experimental Station, but commercial culturists have more commonly produced 50,000 to 250,000 fingerlings/ha.

HATCHERY PROPAGATION

Buffalofish have been artificially spawned and the eggs hatched under hatchery conditions, but commercial buffalofish culture never became

Yields of fish this size commonly ran 200 to 1000 kg/ha for the 2 year growing period, whereas yields of more than 1000 kg/ha of 1 kg fish are not difficult to obtain in 18 months. It is also possible that substantially higher yields could have been obtained with fertilization. Fertilized experimental ponds at Auburn University, stocked with bigmouth buffalo fingerlings at 1080/ha, yielded 656.5 kg/ha in a 6 month growing period. These fish, averaging about 1.3 kg, were too small to be profitably marketed, but the implications of the experiment are clear. If consumer habits change and/or if economically feasible methods of pond fertilization consistent with good rice farming practice are developed, practical intensive culture of buffalofish may still be a possibility.

PRESENT USES OF BUFFALOFISH IN FISH CULTURE

At present, the principal aquacultural uses of buffalofish are in very low intensity polyculture and as supplemental fish in catfish culture. The former method is practiced in natural sloughs and backwaters which abound in the lower Mississippi Valley. The principal species stocked is usually channel catfish, and details of stocking are given in Chapter 6.

Buffalofish are sometimes stocked in small numbers with intensively cultured channel catfish, since they will eat smaller particles of food than the catfish and thus may benefit from partially disintegrated food pellets which would be wasted by the catfish. In addition to providing a supplemental fish crop and preventing waste, buffalofish so stocked may actually enhance the production of catfish by reducing pollution of the water by excess food. There are no data available to support this assertion for buffalofish, but Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) and *Tilapia nilotica* have been shown to have such an effect on channel catfish in experimental ponds at Auburn University.

PROBLEMS

DISEASES AND PARASITES

A number of diseases and parasites, including fungus infections, bacterial infections, and the anchor parasite (*Lernaea*), have been observed in cultured buffalofish. Research in disease control was only beginning when buffalofish culture in the United States began to be deemphasized, thus specific remedies have not been developed. Culturists can probably handle most situations by adapting treatments used on catfish and other

RICE BUFFALOFISH ROTATION

As mentioned previously, the type of rice fish rotation originally instituted in the south central states was an economic failure However, it will be described in some detail because it was fairly successful in terms of producing fish and could be greatly improved in that regard In the future, if the abundant supply of protein for human consumption in the United States is not maintained, the economics of American aquaculture may be profoundly altered, and rice fish culture and/or buffalofish culture may again be attempted

Fields used in rice fish rotation were divided by inside levees to create ponds of suitable size Some compromise always had to be reached in this regard since fields 16 ha or more in area are best for rice farming whereas buffalofish culture proved to be most efficient in ponds smaller than 16 ha In practice, ponds of all sizes from 8 to 80 ha were used Whatever their surface dimensions, productive ponds were designed to be no less than 0 5 m deep at the shallowest point and mostly 1 to 2 m deep to discourage rooted aquatic plants provide lower bottom temperatures and reduce predation by birds

Production ponds were stocked at various times from late summer to spring One of the most efficient stocking methods took advantage of the heavy fall rains which usually occur in the south central states Prior to the rains, ponds were partially filled preferably with well water Fingerlings were then stocked in the borrow ditches leading into the catch basin (see the Appendix for a generalized description of such pond construction features) and automatically released into the rest of the pond when the rains filled it

Recommended stocking rates varied from 25 to 250 fingerlings/ha in unfertilized ponds If potential competitors such as minnows were suspected of being present, largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) fingerlings were sometimes stocked at 60 to 125/ha Direct feeding of buffalofish in growing ponds was never done, and fertilization was only occasionally carried out Not only did effective dosages of fertilizer vary greatly from pond to pond but the farmer had to consider the effect on the forthcoming rice crop as well as on the fish

The growing period ordinarily extended for 2 years Midway through the second year of growth, 25 to 33% of the crop was sometimes harvested with nets or traps At the end of the 2 year period, the pond was drained to harvest the remainder of the fish then planted to rice for 2 years Survival of fingerlings was usually high (about 90%) but production was limited by the preference of consumers for fish weighing about 2 5 kg

in polyculture in that country seems to be rising, so it is likely that their use as a supplemental crop in ponds primarily devoted to other fish will increase. But cultured buffalofish will not assume an importance near that which was predicted for them in the 1950s without a major technical breakthrough in culture methods or a drastic alteration of the economy. For the present, American fish culturists would be ill advised to invest heavily in buffalofish.

EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE OF PADDLEFISH

Another fish suggested for culture during the early years of fish culture in the lower Mississippi Valley was the paddlefish (*Polyodon spathula*). Paddlefish, although they reach lengths of up to 150 cm and weights of up to 85 kg, are well suited to traditional pond fish culture in that they feed primarily on zooplankton. Not only is the quality of the flesh excellent, but the roe can be made into a good grade of caviar. At least until recently, paddlefish supported a sizable commercial fishery in the Mississippi-Missouri Basin.

Though sometimes referred to as "spoonbill catfish," *P. spathula,* far from being a catfish, is a member of the primitive fish family Polyodontidae, which contains only one other living species, the huge *Psephurus gladius* of China's Yangtze River. *P. gladius* is reportedly important as a food fish, but it is not known if its culture has been attempted.

The principal disadvantage for culture of paddlefish is that they do not spawn in standing water. In 1962, attempts were made at the United States Fish Farming Experimental Station to hormonally induce spawning. Though fertilization of eggs was not achieved, it was demonstrated that adult paddlefish of both sexes will respond to chorionic gonadotropin. Only large paddlefish responded to the treatment, and sexual dimorphism was observed to be slight. In view of these findings, plus the fact that adult paddlefish do not spawn each year, it was concluded that it would be necessary for practical paddlefish culturists to maintain considerable numbers of large brood fish.

Further experiments were not pursued as first buffalofish, then catfish took over the spotlight in fish culture in the lower Mississippi Valley.

In the last decade, most paddlefish populations have declined rapidly, due to pollution, dam construction, and overfishing. Experimental culture may eventually be resumed as a conservation measure, but the outcome seems dubious, and attempts at commercial culture are most unlikely in the foreseeable future.

commonly cultured fishes One problem peculiar to buffalofish is ulcerations on the gills at spawning time These respond well to the treatment recommended earlier for wounds

ECONOMIC PROBLEMS

It has been standard practice among buffalofish farmers to harvest their crop in summer and winter, when buffalofish fisheries are least productive, but even so they have not been able to compete with fishermen Among the economic problems besetting buffalofish culturists is the large weight loss in dressing these fish While there are local outlets for live or iced whole buffalofish, the bulk of the crop must be cleaned, dressed, and iced or frozen The total dressed weight of bigmouth buffalo so processed averages 53% of their live weight

It has been mentioned that small buffalofish are not favored by American consumers Their poor acceptance is due largely to the many small v shaped bones characteristic of Catastomid fishes, which are particularly irritating in small specimens Workers at the U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Laboratory in Ann Arbor, Michigan, developed a method of processing small (under 1 2 kg) buffalofish that was hoped would enhance their commercial value but, perhaps because buffalofish culture was already close to nonexistent in 1965, when the method was introduced, it has had no effect The processing technique involved smoking the rib section and grinding the bony loin section to produce a variety of frozen, reconstituted products A disadvantage of these products was their tendency to rapidly develop rancid off flavors and odors

PROSPECTUS OF BUFFALOFISH CULTURE

Unless and until the status of buffalofish culture in the United States improves, there is little likelihood of *Ictiobus* spp being cultured elsewhere In the late 1940s and 1950s when Israeli fish culturists were searching for supplemental species to stock with common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), bigmouth buffalo were tested but proved even less suitable for culture than in the United States Among the objections raised were that they grew too slowly did not convert artificial feed well, were very susceptible to infection with *Lernaea*, competed with carp, and brought a low price on the Israeli market

Buffalofish will certainly continue in their relatively unimportant role in low intensity fish culture in the South Central United States Interest

6

Catfish Culture in the United States

REFERENCES

BRADY, L., and A H HULSEY 1959 *Propagation of buffalo fishes* Report of the South East Association of Game and Fish Commissioners 13th Annual Conference, pp 80–89

MEYER, F P, and J H STEVENSON 1962 Studies on the artificial production of the paddlefish Prog Fish Cult 24(2) 65–67

OLDEN, J H 1959 Fish farming industry *U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries* TL 19

STEVENSON J H 1957 Report on rearing buffalofishes and catfishes Trans Am Fish Soc 87

SWINGLE, H S 1957 Revised procedure for commercial production of bigmouth buffalofish in ponds in the southeast Proceedings of the 10th Annual Conference of the South East Association of Game and Fish Commissioners, pp 162–165

(*Ictalurus punctatus*) carried out by Kermit Sneed of the U S Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife and H P Clemens of the University of Oklahoma Applied research on a large scale began with the opening in 1961 of the U S Fish Farming Experimental Station at Stuttgart, Arkansas In 1965 this laboratory merged with similar facilities at Kelso, Arkansas, and Marion, Alabama, to become the U S Warm Water Fish Cultural Laboratories, thus providing a complex of facilities for conducting basic biological investigations and applied research as well as follow up studies of all subjects of concern to catfish culturists The economic aspects of catfish farming have also been evaluated in detail many times so that, despite its virtually overnight development, catfish culture in the United States is one of the most thoroughly documented forms of fish culture and serves as an excellent example of the potentials and pitfalls of intensive fish farming

The real impetus for catfish culture in the United States was the economic failure in the late 1950s and early 1960s of buffalofish (*Ictiobus* spp) as an aquatic crop in rice fields and sloughs (see Chapter 5) In 1960 there were, in Arkansas alone, 1400 ha of water devoted to buffalo fish culture, with only 100 ha in catfish culture By 1966, 1800 ha were devoted to monoculture of catfish, with an additional 2000 ha in polyculture with catfish as a principal crop, buffalofish accounted for a very small portion of fish production in the state Cultured catfish received a further boost as consumers discovered that their flavor was better, or at least more consistent, than that of wild fish

SPECIES USED

CHANNEL CATFISH

At the same time, intensive pond culture began to supplant rice field and slough culture as the most important form of food fish culture in the area One of the first problems in conversion to a new form of fish culture was selection of the most suitable species Catfish, which vie with buffalo fish for importance in freshwater commercial fisheries in the southern United States, were the likeliest choice, but which catfish? All seven of the widely distributed, edible sized North American catfishes (family Ictaluridae) have been tested, if not applied, in fish culture, but by far the most widely used is the channel catfish, which is generally considered the most desirable Ictalurid for table use It is not clear whether the channel catfish really possesses superior table qualities or whether this is an assumption based on the more esthetically pleasing appearance of the

INTRODUCTION AND HISTORY

One of the most highly publicized aquacultural developments of recent years is the growth of the catfish industry in the south central United States Although Ictalurid catfish have been experimentally cultured for 50 years or more and some small catfish farms were operating as early as the 1950s, commercial culture of catfish on a significant scale goes back no further than 1963 when a few thousand kilograms were produced, chiefly in Arkansas By 1966, U S catfish production was up to 9 to 11 million kilograms and by 1969 it was about 30 million Arkansas, Mississippi, and Louisiana account for a large share of the production, but commercial catfish culture on some scale occurs in at least 18 states Though catfish are important contributors to sport and commercial fisheries as far north as Iowa, and markets for catfish exist in all the major northern cities, the southern states will probably continue to dominate catfish culture in the United States, due largely to the longer growing season in that part of the country Some successful operations may eventually be carried out in the north using cooling water from factories and power plants, but the only serious threat to the preeminence of the southern states is likely to come from Central and South America

Catfish farming has been an important source of revenue for the south central states, which constitute the poorest section of the United States As an illustration of its value as an industry, in 1965 in Lonoke County, Arkansas, 44,000 ha were planted to soybeans and yielded a total income of $6 million The following year 3800 ha wholly or partially devoted to culture of catfish produced over $5 million in revenue Although such revenues may have no direct effect on the poorest people of the area and the fish produced make no contribution to their substandard protein intake, the economic effect of such a new industry must eventually be felt at all levels of the local economy

The mushrooming development of catfish farming has been paralleled, and in fact preceded, by a strong supporting program of research, beginning in 1957 with the pioneering work on spawning of channel catfish

ture, for they have much to recommend them. Smaller than channel, blue, or flathead catfish, they occupy a place between these species and the bullheads. Unlike the bullheads, white catfish can be easily grown to a size acceptable to all consumers, although they do not grow nearly as rapidly as channel catfish, and due to the rather large head do not dress out as well as channel or blue catfish. They are fully comparable to other Ictalurids in terms of quality of flesh and are superior in converting food. They are among the hardier Ictalurids, withstanding crowding, low dissolved oxygen concentrations, turbidity, and high temperatures much better than channel catfish. Corollary to the temperature tolerance of white catfish is their tendency to feed voraciously throughout the summer. Finally, white catfish are easier to spawn than any of the larger Ictalurids. It seems likely that in the near future white catfish will see wide use in fish culture.

BULLHEADS

The smallest Ictalurids commonly used as human food are the bullheads. The most frequently used bullhead in experimental aquaculture is the brown bullhead (*Ictalurus nebulosus*), but the yellow bullhead (*Ictalurus natalis*) and the smaller black bullhead (*Ictalurus melas*) have also been tested on occasion. In addition to their small size, bullheads readily reproduce in ponds without specific measures being taken, thus overpopulation and stunting frequently occur. There is a small, steady market for bullheads in some areas, but prices are usually low, and this demand can probably better be filled by fisheries than by fish culture. In other areas, retailers and consumers make no distinction between bullheads and other catfishes, so that although some dealers may profit from passing off bullheads as channel catfish, the culturist would do well to concentrate on larger, faster growing species.

The only real superiority bullheads have over other Ictalurids is their extreme hardiness with regard to the physical environment. On the other hand, they are more susceptible to disease than are channel catfish. Disease is much more of a danger in well-managed intensive fish culture operations than extremes of temperature, dissolved oxygen concentration, and so on, so that this sort of hardiness is no real advantage to the culturist. After an initial flurry of interest among fish culture researchers in the late 1950s, bullheads were overshadowed by the larger Ictalurids, and they are seldom used in fish culture today.

In the accounts of catfish culture techniques that follow, the species referred to is the channel catfish unless otherwise specified. In attempting to raise other Ictalurid species methods similar, if not identical, to those used in culture of channel catfish are likely to be effective.

channel catfish and the fact that it is more highly esteemed than other Ictalurids by sport fishermen Nor is it clear that it is the most practical catfish for culture in all situations However, channel catfish have often yielded excellent results and far more is known about their culture than that of any of the other species Among the demonstrated virtues of channel catfish are their ready adaptation to artificial feeds and their resistance to crowding On the other hand, they have a fairly nervous temperament, which may cause problems, particularly when they must be netted or handled

BLUE CATFISH

The second most frequently used species is the blue catfish (*Ictalurus furcatus*) Although blue catfish at the U S Fish Farming Experimental Station have exhibited much poorer growth than channel catfish, some culturists find that they grow more uniformly and produce fewer 'giants and runts Blue catfish of all sizes dress out better than channel catfish, weight of dressed fish averaging 60 to 62% of live weight as compared to 56 to 58% for channel catfish Unlike channel catfish blue catfish readily learn to feed at the surface, which enables the culturist to inspect his stock for health daily and to determine if they are accepting feed well They are less nervous and easier to seine than channel catfish, and the males are less prone to fight at breeding time, but they exhibit poor survival when shipped live Other disadvantages are poorer conversion of most artificial feeds and greater age at maturity

FLATHEAD CATFISH

The largest of the Ictalurids the flathead catfish (*Pylodictis olivaris*) differs from the rest of the family in being highly piscivorous and cannibalistic It has seldom been used in conventional catfish culture but occasionally finds use as a predator in culture of various other species Rather high mortality has often been experienced in rearing flathead catfish fry, but were as much attention paid to this species as to the channel catfish fry rearing would doubtless prove comparably feasible In some areas the flesh of the flathead catfish is considered, at least by fishermen to be inferior to that of other Ictalurids

WHITE CATFISH

White catfish (*Ictalurus catus*) are native not to the south central states but to streams emptying into the Atlantic Ocean along the east coast of the United States Perhaps this explains their infrequent use in fish cul

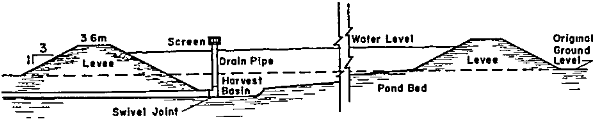


FIG. 1. Typical catfish pond cross section (After Mitchell and Usry, 1967.)

ket. Accordingly, the most important facilities of a catfish farm are the production ponds. Channel catfish have been effectively reared in all sizes of pond from less than 0.4 ha to more than 40 ha. There is little unanimity on the proper size, but most commercial operations are conducted in ponds of 0.4 to 5.0 ha, although there is a trend toward larger ponds, up to 16 ha. In general, smaller ponds are easier to manage and thus preferable for the inexperienced catfish farmer, but there is no "best" size. In deciding on pond size, the culturist should consider the respective advantages of small and large ponds as outlined in the Appendix.

There is somewhat more of a consensus as to what constitutes the proper depth for a catfish rearing pond than there is as to surface area. Most authorities cite depths of 0.9 to 1.8 m for use in the South and 1.8 to 3.0 m in the North, where winterkill is a possibility in shallow ponds. Deep water in a catfish pond is superfluous in the South as it would probably be virtually devoid of oxygen for much of the year.

The preferred type of drainage system for catfish production ponds incorporates a harvest basin containing an L-shaped adjustable drainpipe. These and other features of a well designed catfish pond are illustrated in Fig. 1. Many of the features of Fig. 1 are discussed in more detail in the Appendix.

An alternative to the use of a harvest basin is to harvest fish by opening the drainpipe and draining them directly into holding basins. Such basins may be permanent concrete structures, or made of wood for mechanized loading onto trucks, or they may take the form of small ponds. Holding basins must be sufficiently large that the fish do not suffer mortality from overcrowding while waiting to be loaded on trucks. When large ponds are used, this means that rather large holding ponds are required. For example a 20-ha pond would require at least five 0.4-ha holding ponds. There is a trend toward highly mechanized havesting, which may eventually eliminate the need for harvest basins and holding ponds.

CATFISH FARM SITE SELECTION

The first question a prospective catfish farmer must ask himself is whether or not he has a suitable site for pond construction. His decision must be made on the basis of topography, soil quality, and quality and quantity of water available. The general principles of fish pond location and construction are discussed in the Appendix. Here we shall limit ourselves to factors of special concern to Ictalurid catfish farmers.

The temperatures and chemistry of the water supply must be suitable for the species to be cultured, or be capable of being inexpensively modified to meet its needs. Although all the Ictalurids can survive temperatures down to the freezing point, virtually no growth occurs at low temperatures. Channel catfish grow slowly at 60 to 70°F, but they do better at 70 to 80°F; above 85°F, feeding falls off and growth slows.

In addition to temperature, *p*H and alkalinity should be known. Here the culturist may wish to call upon the Soil Conservation Service for technical assistance, but it is advantageous for the serious catfish farmer to have his own inexpensive *p*H meter and keep daily records, since the *p*H of a pond is not constant. Channel catfish suffer no ill effects in the *p*H range 5 to 8.5, and 6.3 to 7.5 is considered optimal; a *p*H over 9.5 is likely to be lethal. Alkalinity may be measured as total hardness or total alkalinity. Values of these indexes should fall between 20 and 150 ppm or 30 and 200 ppm, respectively. Alkalinity and *p*H may be adjusted artificially to some extent; methods are given in the Appendix.

An aspect of soil quality which is of particular concern to American catfish farmers is pesticide contamination. The lower Mississippi Valley, the Imperial Valley of California, and some other producing regions are among the most heavily sprayed agricultural regions in the world, and the prospective aquaculturist would be reckless and remiss in his duty if he did not consider the possible effects of these compounds on his stock and their consumers. For a more detailed discussion of the dangers of chlorinated hydrocarbons in fish farming see the Appendix or Mc Larney (1970).

GROWING CATFISH FOR MARKET

DESIGN OF PONDS

There is money to be made from the production and sale of fingerling catfish as well as edible sized fish, but most catfish farmers purchase fingerlings from specialists and concentrate on growing adults for mar-

vary with the amount of food and dissolved oxygen available; 3300 to 4400 fingerlings/ha is a good starting rate. Beginners at catfish culture should err on the low side in stocking since overstocking can lead to disease and oxygen depletion. While either of these conditions can usually be corrected with slight loss of fish, the neophyte is less likely than the experienced operator to be sensitive to the early symptoms.

Stocking rates may be increased if it is possible to aerate or circulate the water, as in raceway culture. Research on such techniques is far from complete, but some commercial catfish growers already employ raceways. Mary Porter of Fayetteville, Arkansas, grows channel catfish in a series of 25 to 30 m × 3 m ponds through which water is pumped at 2800 liters/min by a 7½ HP pump. Each pond is separated from its neighbors by a concrete dam with a narrow sluiceway at the top. Just below the sluiceway is a baffle board to reoxygenate the water.

Mrs. Porter stocks each segment with 2000 fingerlings (223,221 fingerlings/ha). Production of 450 kg of catfish per week is claimed. Over a 150-day growing season, this would amount to more than 40,000 kg/ha. It should be noted that experimental raceway culture to date has suggested stocking rates far lower than that used by Mrs. Porter—6600 to 110,000 fingerlings/ha.

Ponds supplied by surface water should be stocked at only 1650 to 2200 fingerlings/ha, since if oxygen depletion occurs during hot dry weather, there may be no way of adding fresh, well-oxygenated water rapidly enough.

In some areas there is a market for large catfish up to 1.8 kg. To produce fish of this size requires at least two growing seasons. It may also be necessary during the second season to reduce the population density to 1540 to 3300 fish/ha, each fish weighing 0.2 to 0.45 kg.

ROLE OF POLYCULTURE

American catfish culture, as contrasted to most forms of freshwater pond fish culture, is largely based on monoculture. While nothing comparable to Asian polyculture is foreseen for the south central United States, it may be that mixed culture of Ictalurids and/or admixture of other species with Ictalurids will become more common. Already some culturists, particularly in Louisiana, find it advantageous to include 10% blue catfish in their channel catfish ponds. Where more or less intensive culture is carried out in natural ponds, largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) are usually added to control trash fish populations. Experiments at Auburn University have demonstrated that addition of tilapia to channel catfish ponds may prove beneficial. Channel catfish stocked

OBTAINING AND STOCKING FINGERLINGS

Catfish farmers who spawn their own stock will need additional facilities It is nearly universal practice to stock growing ponds with fingerlings rather than fry Fingerlings are available from commercial hatcheries in most parts of the South or they may be shipped to culturists in other parts of the country Most catfish farmers prefer to stock fingerlings at least 13 to 15 cm long since they are less subject to mortality and usually result in larger fish at harvest time However fingerlings as small as 5 cm are sometimes available at substantially lower prices

A commercial catfish farming operation can be wiped out before it is fairly started if fingerlings contract disease The best precaution against this is to purchase stock from an established reputable hatchery Most hatcheries treat fingerlings for external parasites and diseases before delivering them to the pond Untreated stock should be treated by the culturist. Two effective prophylactic treatments are

1 Place fingerlings in 10 ppm potassium permanganate for 1 hour then wash with freshwater Follow this with 15 ppm formalin for 5 to 12 hours then 1 ppm acriflavine for 5 to 12 hours

2 Place fingerlings in 15 ppm formalin for 24 hours then treat them briefly in 0 001% acriflavine The second step can be carried out in transit

It is customary to stock growing ponds in the spring when the water temperature is 13°C or higher when mortality is lower than is the case for fall stocking and the fingerlings will start to grow immediately In the early days of catfish culture it was necessary to harvest in the fall but culturists found that this produced a substantial percentage of fish too small for the market It is now customary to grow catfish for 1½ to 2 years at the end of which time virtually all the stock should be marketable

Channel catfish and white catfish at least can withstand any reasonable population density The more of these species stocked per acre the greater the production of fish will be However the catfish farmer does not aim so much for maximum meat production as for maximum dollar production Therefore his desire to maximize total yield is tempered by a knowledge of the size of fish favored by the prospective consumer of his product In most cases the optimum market size for catfish is about 0 45 kg live weight but in the southeastern United States smaller fish may be preferred The best stocking rate to produce 0 45 kg fish in one growing season in ponds supplied with well water will almost always be between 2200 and 6600 fingerlings/ha. The precise optimum stocking rate will

success of any commercial catfish farm Although some of the food consumed by commercially raised catfish is produced within the ponds they inhabit, the bulk of their nourishment is derived from supplementary feeding

Research in nutrition is far from comprehensive, but in general a channel catfish diet should satisfy the requirements outlined in Table 1 A few comments are in order on some of the items listed in the table

TABLE 1 NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR A DIET FOR CHANNEL CATFISH

Protein	Minimum	32%
Crude fat	Minimum	4%
	Maximum	8%
Crude fiber	Minimum	8%
	Maximum	20%
Fish meal	Minimum	8%
Calories	Minimum	540/kg
Protein calories	Minimum	243/kg
Calcium	Minimum	1%
Phosphorus	Minimum	1%
Vitamins and minerals	(see text)	

Protein At least 50% should be animal protein Research at Kansas State University's Agricultural Experiment Station has shown that protein in excess of 25% may be used not for growth but as a source of energy, and could thus economically be replaced by carbohydrates Authorities elsewhere are in disagreement and generally cite 32 to 33% as the minimum protein requirement The role of carbohydrates in protein sparing has not been adequately studied but indications are that inclusion of up to 18 6% carbohydrates in catfish diets is beneficial in this regard

Fish Meal This seems to be the one absolutely essential food item Most of the ingredients of standard catfish feed formulas can be substituted for, but whenever fish meal has been left out of catfish diets poorer growth and food conversion have resulted

Vitamins and Minerals Such additives as methionine, Lyamine 50 and vitamin B_{12} may be individually added to catfish diets, but most culturists use a commercially available vitamin premix originally developed for inclusion in poultry diets Ingredients of the vitamin premix are listed in Table 2

at 4400/ha yielded 1400 kg/ha to monoculture with supplemental feeding When Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) were added at 1250/ha, catfish production increased to 1568 kg/ha Adding to this the 266 kg/ha of potentially marketable tilapia produced gives a total production of 1834 kg of fish/ha, for an increase of 434 kg/ha or 27 3% Efficiency of food conversion by the catfish was the same with or without tilapia Apparently the tilapia fed on plankton, wastes, and excess food intended for the catfish Similar results were obtained when ponds where channel catfish were stocked at 7500/ha were supplemented by Nile tilapia (*Tilapia nilotica*) at 2500/ha

POND FERTILIZATION

Although in catfish farming, as in most systems of fish culture, the fish derive a substantial portion of their nourishment from food organisms produced within the pond, pond fertilization is not emphasized Use of organic fertilizers is especially discouraged, because they are reputed to adversely affect the flavor of catfish

Where catfish ponds are fertilized, it is often done not to increase pond productivity per se, but to produce an algal bloom to shade out rooted plants This may not be necessary in many ponds, as a general rule if a Secchi disk is not visible below 46 cm, fertilization is not necessary

Fertilization is generally done in the winter, well before stocking once fish are present in a pond their wastes, plus unused food fragments, are adequate to maintain productivity Commercial fertilizers high in nitrogen and phosphorus but containing little or no potassium are best, at least for the south central states An initial application of 73 to 90 kg/ha should be adequate, but if Secchi disk visibility remains greater than 46 cm, the process may be repeated

Attendant on fertilization is the danger of a heavy algal bloom developing then dying off resulting in severe pollution This can happen virtually overnight, and the culturist must be prepared to replace a considerable proportion of polluted water with freshwater as rapidly as possible For this reason and because pond fertilization is by no means vital to successful catfish culture, the beginning catfish farmer is advised not to fertilize his ponds unless it becomes apparent that to do so will materially enhance fish production

SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

One of the most extensively investigated aspects of catfish culture is nutrition, and well it might be, for proper nutrition is crucial to the

TABLE 3 VITAMIN DEFICIENCIES OF CHANNEL CATFISH AND THEIR SYMPTOMS

VITAMIN DEFICIENCY	EFFECTS
Pyridoxine	Erratic swimming, tetany, gyrations and muscular spasms when stressed, reduced weight gain, and mortality
Pantothenic acid	"Flabby" body tissues, "mummy" textured skin, excessive mucus on gills, clubbed gill filaments, and eroded gill membranes, lower jaw, fins and barbels, lethargy, reduced weight gain, and mortality
Riboflavin	Opaque lens of one or both eyes, mortality
Thiamine	Reduced weight gain, lethargy, and difficulty in maintaining equilibrium, convulsive spasms, partial paralysis, and curvature of the spine
Folic acid	Lethargy, reduced food consumption, mortality
Nicotinic acid	Tetany and eventual death brought about by stress, lethargy, reduced coordination
B 12	Reduced weight gain
Choline	Hemorrhagic areas in the kidneys and enlarged livers, reduced weight gain
A	"Pop eye," fluid in body cavity, hemorrhagic kidneys, and edema of the body cavity
K	Hemorrhages on body surface

SOURCE Dupree (1966)

which are not included in the formulas just given, are meat meal, blood meal, beef heart, beef liver, animal fat, chicken entrails, chopped fish, cottonseed meal, peanut meal, sesame meal, ground corn, ground sorghum, wheat bran, and vegetable oil

All prepared catfish foods must be in the form of pellets for best results Although catfish are perfectly capable of engulfing large chunks

TABLE 4 GENERAL FEED FORMULATION SPECIFICATIONS FOR CHANNEL CATFISH AT THE U S FISH FARMING EXPERIMENTAL STATION, STUTTGART, ARKANSAS

INGREDIENT	COMPOSITION (%)
Grain by products	45
Protein concentrates	45
Dehydrated alfalfa	4
Distiller s dry solubles	5
Mineralized salt	1

TABLE 2 INGREDIENTS OF THE VITAMIN PREMIX COMMONLY INCORPORATED IN DIETS FOR CULTURED CHANNEL CATFISH

Vitamin A	450,000 USP units
Vitamin D_3	200,000 IC
Riboflavin	300 mg
Pantothenic acid	600 mg
Niacin	3,500 mg
Choline chloride	40,000 mg
Vitamin B_{12}	1 mg
Vitamin E	150 IU
Vitamin K (menadione sodium bisulfite)	100 mg
Ethoxyquin (antioxidant)	6 5 g
Folic acid	40 mg

Use of the vitamin premix and an otherwise balanced diet should eliminate problems associated with vitamin deficiencies If deficiencies do occur, they may be recognized by the symptoms listed in Table 3

Mineralized salt is the most common mineral additive in catfish feeds, but dicalcium phosphate and limestone have also been included

Other ingredients sometimes used include antibiotics such as aureomycin and binders to prevent rapid disintegration of the food in water

The small farmer may find it more convenient and economical to buy prepared catfish feed, but better results are obtained using individually formulated feed If a commercial feed is used, the ingredients should be carefully checked, since many of the products on the market are far too *high in carbohydrates*

If the culturist prepares his own feed, the precise formula will be determined not only by the nutritional requirements outlined above, but by the availability and cost of various ingredients The four feed formulas listed in Tables 4 to 7 are included only as samples and general guidelines

General feed formulation specifications at the U S Fish Farming Experimental Station are listed in Table 4 Another very high protein diet developed at Auburn University and successfully used in Texas has the composition given in Table 5 Table 6 gives a computer-derived formula *based on December, 1966, prices in St Louis, Missouri, and meeting or* exceeding most of the requirements for a catfish diet, though not as high in protein as the above two diets This formula was modified to simplify production and inventory control with no appreciable loss in efficiency The new formula is indicated in Table 7 Similar formulas could of course be derived for any time and place

Among the substances which have been successfully fed to catfish but

not dissolve or disintegrate rapidly in water. Ideally, 90% of a pellet should remain after 10 min in water. Durability of pellets may be enhanced by inclusion of bentonite clay as a binder, by using fairly high amounts of fibrous materials, or by subjecting the feed to high temperature dry steam before pelleting.

The culturist seeking to formulate his own feed will find that local feed mills have access to most of the ingredients and the machinery to do the job. If possible, the mill proprietors should be cautioned to clean the pelleting heads with vegetable oil rather than the commonly used petroleum products, which may contaminate the first portion of feed to pass through the dies after cleaning.

Feeding rates are dependent on the poundage of fish to be fed and the water temperature. Rates are generally expressed as a percentage of the total weight of fish in the pond. This figure will of course be known at stocking time, but subsequent values should be estimated by periodically seining and weighing a sample of the stock.

Suggested feeding rates for channel catfish at various temperatures are outlined in Table 8. At high temperatures these rates may need to be

TABLE 8. SUGGESTED FEEDING RATES FOR CHANNEL CATFISH AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES

WATER TEMPERATURE (°C)	DAILY WEIGHT OF FEED AS A PERCENTAGE OF TOTAL WEIGHT OF STOCK
More than 32	1.5 or less depending on dissolved oxygen concentration
21–32	3
16–21	2
7–16	1
Less than 7	0.5 on warm, sunny days only

adjusted upward in very hot climates such as south Texas, where local catfish stocks may be adapted to hot weather. The listed rates would certainly have to be so adjusted in feeding white catfish. Feeding rates may also be revised upward where there is little chance of seriously depleting dissolved oxygen by decay of uneaten food, for example, in raceway culture.

In feeding catfish over 0.45 kg, expenses can be reduced by stocking fathead minnows (*Pimephales promelas*) at 1 to 5 kg/ha. As the catfish grow and become acclimated to eating minnows the feeding rate of pel

TABLE 5 FORMULA FOR PELLETED CHANNEL CATFISH FEED DEVELOPED AT AUBURN UNIVERSITY

INGREDIENT	BY WEIGHT (%)
Soy bean oil meal (44% protein)	35
Peanut cake (53% protein)	35
Fish meal (60% protein)	15
Distiller's dry solubles (21% protein)	14
Bentonite clay (binding material)	1

SOURCE Hastings (1964)

TABLE 6 COMPUTER DERIVED FEED FORMULA FOR ICTALURID CATFISH, BASED ON NUTRITIONAL REQUIREMENTS AND ECONOMIC CONSIDERATIONS

INGREDIENT	COMPOSITION (%)
Fish meal (menhaden)	13 7
Soybean meal (solvent, dehulled)	22 0
Meat scraps	0 6
Feather meal	6 4
Blood meal	1.3
Alfalfa meal (required)	5 0
Rice bran	42 1
Rice hull fractions	7.9
Vitamin premix (required)	1 0

SOURCE Report by W H Hastings, U.S Fish Farming Experimental Station

TABLE 7 SIMPLIFIED VERSION OF TABLE 6

INGREDIENTS	COMPOSITION (%)
Fish meal	12.0
Soybean meal	20 0
Feather meal and/or blood meal	10 0
Distiller s solubles	8 0
Rice bran	35 0
Rice hull fractions	10 0
Alfalfa meal	4 0
Vitamin premix	1 0

SOURCE Report by W H Hastings, U.S Fish Farming Experimental Station

of food, feeding large particles encourages development of feeding hierarchies, resulting in uneven growth On the other hand, use of dry meal mixes and other small particle feeds reduces the efficiency of food conversion by 50% and heightens the danger of pollution

Newly planted fingerlings do best on 60 mm diameter pellets, pellet size can be gradually increased to 1 2 cm as the fish grow Pellets should

tion can be increased by 12 to 15% over the course of a growing season, but more caution must be exercised.

5. The maximum amount which should be given under any circumstances is 30 kg/ha at one time.

Automated feeding has been explored as a labor-saving device in catfish culture, but since there are so many variables in determining the rate of feeding it is doubtful whether conventional time-regulated feeding devices will find much favor. However, a self-feeding device, which permits fish to release a small quantity of food by pressing on an underwater plate, is becoming popular (Fig. 2). In addition to saving labor, the self-feeder prevents food waste by allowing the fish to determine how much they will be fed, eliminates the guesswork inherent in winter feeding, and enables the culturist to determine whether or not his fish are feeding. The latter attribute is particularly important, since cessation of feeding is one of the most common early signs of oxygen deficiency, disease, or other impending trouble. Self-feeders currently available are not suitable for use with fingerlings under 8 cm because these small fish are not heavy enough to operate the mechanism. It is not yet known whether the rates of feeding chosen by catfish are consistent with the economic priorities of the culturist.

Even if all possible precautions are exercised in feeding, the culturist must constantly be on guard for such symptoms of oxygen depletion as foul odors or dark streaks of decayed matter. It is a good idea to periodically check ponds very early in the morning, when dissolved oxygen levels are usually at their lowest. At this time if inadequate amounts of oxygen are available, fish may be seen at the surface gasping for air.

If for any reason oxygen depletion does occur, the only remedy is to replace part of the water with fresh, oxygenated water. Pond aeration would be a good preventive measure, but it is not as yet widely applied.

LOW-INTENSITY GROWING

There exist in the south central states large expanses of standing water where catfishes and other species could be cultured by methods far less intensive than those just described. Although yields in natural waters without supplemental feeding are unlikely to approach those achieved by intensive pond culture, there is nevertheless a certain amount of untapped potential for fish production in sloughs of up to 40 ha, which commonly occur in river bottoms in that region. A suggested stocking ratio for such waters is 220 channel catfish, 165 buffalofish, 165 crappies (*Pomoxis* spp.), and 100 largemouth bass per hectare. After stocking in the spring little

lets at optimum temperatures can be gradually reduced from an initial 3% of the total weight of stock to 2% and eventually to 1% Proportional reductions may be made at other temperatures

The makers of Purina fish chow suggest a sliding scale of feed weight fish weight for use with their product (Table 9) Adjustments must be made for temperature with this feed as with any other

TABLE 9 FEEDING RATES FOR CHANNEL CATFISH AS SUGGESTED BY THE MANUFACTURERS OF PURINA FISH CHOW

WEIGHT (KG)	FEED PER DAY (KG)
4 5	0 45
9 0	0.54
14 4	0 94
27 0	1 44
41 8	2 30
50 4	2 70
81 0	4 14
147 6	5 40
197.5	7 20
229 1	9 00
295.2	11.25
382 5 and over	13.50

Whenever and however catfish are fed the feed should be scattered so that all fish have a chance to feed rather than being dumped in one spot Another rule applicable to catfish culture is the universal rule of fish feeding too little is better than too much An underfed catfish represents the loss of a certain percentage of potentially marketable meat An overfed catfish may well be a dead catfish—a total loss There are several precautions which can be taken to prevent overfeeding and resultant pollution

1 An easy way to check whether or not feed is being wasted is to use submerged feeding tables which can be removed some hours after feeding and inspected for leftover fragments

2 Feeding should not be carried out in water over 1 5 m deep

3 Feeding should be reduced or discontinued on extremely hot days cloudy days or whenever any environmenal factor such as a heavy blue green algae bloom suggests that dissolved oxygen levels may be lower than normal

4 Most catfish farmers allow themselves a margin of error by feeding only 6 days a week It has been shown that by feeding every day produc

need be done until fall when the fish may be harvested One cannot look to fish culture of this sort as a source of livelihood in itself, but if one happens to own a slough or other suitable natural water, stocking and harvesting fish may yield some supplementary revenue

In the early years of fish culture in the south central states, rice field culture, first using buffalofish, then with increasing emphasis on catfish, was widely touted Today, although fish can be raised to marketable size in rice fields and may in addition improve rice yields by providing fertilizer, rice field fish culture has dwindled in importance in the United States Unlike slough culture, rice field culture requires a certain amount of input in terms of labor, feed, and so on Since catfish production in rice field culture does not compare with that achieved by intensive pond culture, it cannot compete economically This situation, plus the increased use by rice farmers of pesticides and mechanized methods incompatible with fish culture, has led to the virtual disappearance of rice field fish culture in the United States Where it is still practiced, fields are usually stocked in late summer, fall, or winter with 22 to 220 buffalo fish fingerlings and 11 to 165 channel, blue, or white catfish fingerlings per hectare

GROWING BULLHEADS IN PONDS

Though the bullheads are usually scorned as fish for pond culture due to their tendency to reproduce at a very high rate, one series of experiments conducted at Auburn University suggested that brown bullheads could be pond raised in a commercially feasible manner When 265 10 0 cm fingerlings were stocked at 6600 to 13,200/ha in June, a repressive factor developed so that in 13 months of rearing, with initial fertilization and supplementary feeding whenever the water temperature was above 16°C, reproduction did not occur and most of the fish recovered were of marketable size However, when brown bullheads were stocked at lower densities, as in channel catfish culture, reproduction did occur, and 59 to 70% of the fish harvested were only 8 to 10 cm long

HARVESTING

Harvest of catfish crops may be total or partial Partial harvest is indicated when there are so many fish in a pond that total harvest would result in large scale mortality or when there is a ready market for a certain fraction of the stock on hand This market may be composed of anglers As high as 62% of the population of a growing pond has been

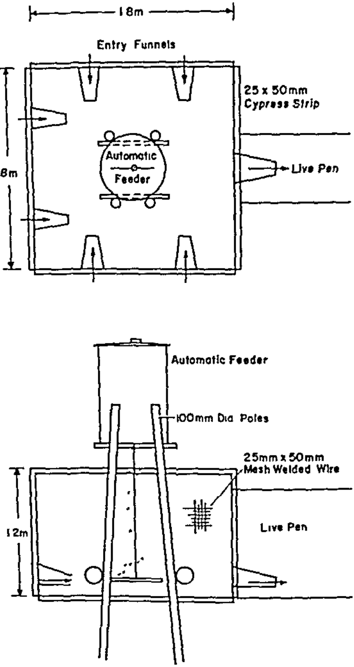


FIG 2 Automatic feeder—live pen catfish trap

man crew using this device was able to harvest 85% (16,300 kg) of the fish in a 16 ha reservoir in a single morning.

Catfish may also be concentrated for harvest by inducing migration. Experimental setups of this sort involve a number of ponds laid out along a central canal. At harvest time runways connecting each pond with the canal are opened and the fish are lured or driven into the canal. The same principle may be used in harvesting from conventional ponds, using traps rather than canals. Recently a trap utilizing an automatic feeder has been shown to permit efficient harvest even in sloughs and other waters which are full of obstacles to conventional harvest equipment (Fig. 2). Methods of inducing migration by noise or artificially created currents are also being studied.

With the fish captured, or at least concentrated, the problems of harvest are still not over. In fact, the most difficult part remains—transferring the fish to trucks. Since many catfish are marketed live and almost all the remainder are hauled to processing plants live in tank trucks, they must be rapidly transferred to trucks or to holding ponds, which create the necessity of subsequent smaller harvests, with additional labor costs. Most of the emphasis in research and development has been placed on methods to rapidly transfer the fish to trucks, but the use of holding ponds has the advantage of permitting the culturist to keep supplies of fish on hand for ready delivery to buyers. If fish have been baited or fed immediately before harvest, they may be placed in holding ponds for 24 hours to void the gut, thus eliminating vomit and excreta as sources of pollution in tank trucks.

A practical size for holding ponds is 0.4 ha. They should be at least 1.2 m deep with a bottom sloping at about 1.3% toward a 15 cm diameter drainpipe. A supply of fresh water should be available for flushing. Stocking and holding ponds should be limited to 1000 fish/ha in summer and twice that in winter.

Among the devices proposed to facilitate transfer from harvest basin or holding pond to truck are a hydraulic boom, a conveyor connected to the mechanical seine puller, and a vacuum pump. The vacuum pump appears most promising. It consists of a 5460 liter vacuum tank mounted on the back of a truck and equipped with a compressor driven by a farm tractor power take-off shaft. A 15 cm diameter hose passes from the tank to the bag of the seine. As air is removed from the tank the intake gate is opened and the tank fills with water and fish in about 5 min. When the tank is full the compressor cuts off automatically. This pump has successfully lifted 300 channel catfish weighing 126 kg without injury, and much greater success is deemed likely.

Use of the conveyor entails pulling the seine onto the conveyor apron

removed by angling If an appropriate fee is charged, the monetary return per surface area of water may be higher than that obtained from conventional harvest and sale of fish More conventional means of partial harvest involve concentration of fish in shallow water by baiting and capture with seines or basket traps Nets used in partial harvest are usually treated with tar to prevent snagging of the pectoral and dorsal spines

Total harvest traditionally involves partial drainage of the pond to concentrate the fish in the harvest basin This is an inconvenience at best, as even with a large-diameter drainpipe, an 8- to 20-ha pond may take several days to drain More important, it imposes a number of restrictions on the culturist, the most severe being the necessity to limit harvesting operations to the cold months, since the danger of concentration of large numbers of fish in the relatively small area of the harvest basin, resulting in severe oxygen depletion, is multiplied greatly during hot weather The problem may be alleviated somewhat by continually pumping fresh, oxygenated water into the harvest basin

The usual method of capturing fish concentrated in the harvest basin is by seining The fish may be further concentrated by feeding in one spot just before seining Baiting is not recommended if fish are to be loaded on trucks immediately upon capture, nor should they be fed the day before harvest, since when live fish are transported the gut should be empty

Seines used in harvesting catfish should be 2 4 to 3 0 m deep, of 2 5-cm mesh to avoid gilling or otherwise injuring the stock, and of appropriate length to cover the entire harvest basin In most ponds it will be found advantageous if seines are constructed with a 30 strand sisal twine rope or a heavy jute rope in place of the usual lead line, as the leads tend to dig into soft bottoms, causing the seine to be partially filled with mud

If the pond to be harvested is regularly shaped and has a smooth bottom seining could theoretically be employed to harvest the entire crop without drawing down the pond However, in practice this would require excessive amounts of time and labor Researchers of the U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries have resolved this problem by employing a modification of the mechanical Lake Erie type haul seine rope puller The unit is powered by a 7½ HP gasoline engine, which pulls a manila tow rope connected to the bottom of the seine by short toggle ropes Seines used with this gear may be 600 m or more long and 3 m deep, with a fish bag 2 5 m wide × 3 m long × 3 m deep in the center Detachable 120-m wings enable the operator to adjust the seine to various pond sizes This seine puller has made it possible to harvest ponds up to 20 ha in size with no drawdown and reduced the time required to concentrate a crop of catfish in the harvest basin from a matter of days to a few hours A three

man crew using this device was able to harvest 85% (16,300 kg) of the fish in a 16 ha reservoir in a single morning

Catfish may also be concentrated for harvest by inducing migration Experimental setups of this sort involve a number of ponds laid out along a central canal At harvest time runways connecting each pond with the canal are opened and the fish are lured or driven into the canal The same principle may be used in harvesting from conventional ponds, using traps rather than canals Recently a trap utilizing an automatic feeder has been shown to permit efficient harvest even in sloughs and other waters which are full of obstacles to conventional harvest equipment (Fig 2) Methods of inducing migration by noise or artificially created currents are also being studied

With the fish captured, or at least concentrated, the problems of harvest are still not over In fact, the most difficult part remains—transferring the fish to trucks Since many catfish are marketed live and almost all the remainder are hauled to processing plants live in tank trucks, they must be rapidly transferred to trucks or to holding ponds which create the necessity of subsequent smaller harvests, with additional labor costs Most of the emphasis in research and development has been placed on methods to rapidly transfer the fish to trucks, but the use of holding ponds has the advantage of permitting the culturist to keep supplies of fish on hand for ready delivery to buyers If fish have been baited or fed immediately before harvest, they may be placed in holding ponds for 24 hours to void the gut, thus eliminating vomit and excreta as sources of pollution in tank trucks

A practical size for holding ponds is 0 4 ha They should be at least 1 2 m deep with a bottom sloping at about 1 3% toward a 15 cm diameter drainpipe A supply of fresh water should be available for flushing Stocking and holding ponds should be limited to 1000 fish/ha in summer and twice that in winter

Among the devices proposed to facilitate transfer from harvest basin or holding pond to truck are a hydraulic boom, a conveyor connected to the mechanical seine puller, and a vacuum pump The vacuum pump appears most promising It consists of a 5460 liter vacuum tank mounted on the back of a truck and equipped with a compressor driven by a farm tractor power take off shaft A 15 cm diameter hose passes from the tank to the bag of the seine As air is removed from the tank the intake gate is opened and the tank fills with water and fish in about 5 min When the tank is full the compressor cuts off automatically This pump has successfully lifted 300 channel catfish weighing 126 kg without injury and much greater success is deemed likely

Use of the conveyor entails pulling the seine onto the conveyor apron

removed by angling. If an appropriate fee is charged, the monetary return per surface area of water may be higher than that obtained from conventional harvest and sale of fish. More conventional means of partial harvest involve concentration of fish in shallow water by baiting and capture with seines or basket traps. Nets used in partial harvest are usually treated with tar to prevent snagging of the pectoral and dorsal spines.

Total harvest traditionally involves partial drainage of the pond to concentrate the fish in the harvest basin. This is an inconvenience at best, as even with a large-diameter drainpipe, an 8- to 20-ha pond may take several days to drain. More important, it imposes a number of restrictions on the culturist, the most severe being the necessity to limit harvesting operations to the cold months, since the danger of concentration of large numbers of fish in the relatively small area of the harvest basin, resulting in severe oxygen depletion, is multiplied greatly during hot weather. The problem may be alleviated somewhat by continually pumping fresh, oxygenated water into the harvest basin.

The usual method of capturing fish concentrated in the harvest basin is by seining. The fish may be further concentrated by feeding in one spot just before seining. Baiting is not recommended if fish are to be loaded on trucks immediately upon capture, nor should they be fed the day before harvest, since when live fish are transported the gut should be empty.

Seines used in harvesting catfish should be 2.4 to 3.0 m deep, of 2.5-cm mesh to avoid gilling or otherwise injuring the stock, and of appropriate length to cover the entire harvest basin. In most ponds it will be found advantageous if seines are constructed with a 30-strand sisal twine rope or a heavy jute rope in place of the usual lead line, as the leads tend to dig into soft bottoms, causing the seine to be partially filled with mud.

If the pond to be harvested is regularly shaped and has a smooth bottom, seining could theoretically be employed to harvest the entire crop without drawing down the pond. However, in practice this would require excessive amounts of time and labor. Researchers of the U.S. Bureau of Commercial Fisheries have resolved this problem by employing a modification of the mechanical Lake Erie-type haul seine rope puller. The unit is powered by a 7½ HP gasoline engine, which pulls a manila tow rope connected to the bottom of the seine by short toggle ropes. Seines used with this gear may be 600 m or more long and 3 m deep, with a fish bag 2.5 m wide × 3 m long × 3 m deep in the center. Detachable 120-m wings enable the operator to adjust the seine to various pond sizes. This seine puller has made it possible to harvest ponds up to 20 ha in size with no drawdown and reduced the time required to concentrate a crop of catfish in the harvest basin from a matter of days to a few hours. A three

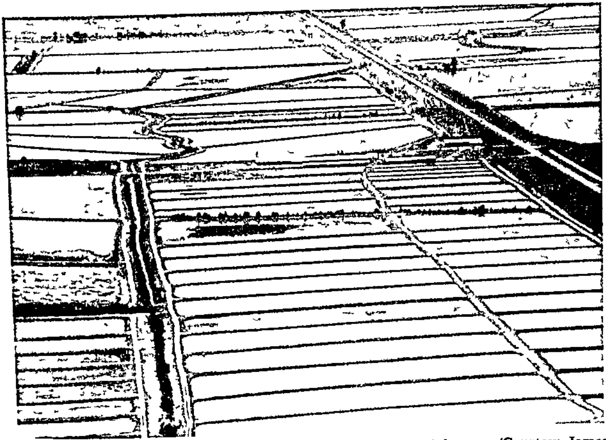


PLATE 1 Aerial view of catfish farm in Lonoke County, Arkansas (Courtesy James White, Ed., *American Fish Farmer*)

bor. As a general rule, culturists who stock less than 100,000 fingerlings annually will find it more economical to buy them

PROBLEMS

Spawning of channel catfish in captivity has become commercially feasible only since 1960 The most severe problems of the early catfish culturists were brought on by the nervous and aggressive temperament of the channel catfish. Fighting between males at spawning time was a particularly unfortunate consequence, but the reluctance of some fish to spawn in captivity was also problematical. Unless wild fish could be captured at the peak of sexual ripeness, the pioneers in the field preferred to acclimate stock for two years in captivity before attempting to breed them This practice has been eliminated by the establishment of hatchery stocks going back several generations Fighting as a source of injury and mortality among brood stock has been virtually eliminated by the development of sophisticated methods of handling and stocking spawners.

Another problem faced by the early culturists was the frequent confusion of channel and blue catfish. Although channel catfish are generally

so the fish can be mechanically loaded onto the truck. By using the conveyor two men have been able to load 1575 kg of fish in 50 min Its use is limited by the fact that many pond levees are structurally unsuited for it.

The hydraulic boom is a very straightforward device which lifts containers of fish from water level to the truck on which it is mounted While this eliminates the drudgery of hauling fish up the levee, there is still the time consuming chore of dipping fish into the container

Up-to-date information on catfish harvesting gear and techniques may be obtained from the National Marine Fisheries Service, P O Box 711, Rohweir, Arkansas 71666

YIELDS OF AMERICAN CATFISH CULTURE

The efficacy of intensive pond monoculture of catfish in the south central states is attested to by the fact that in the 1950s, when rice field culture of buffalofish and catfish was in vogue, the normal range of fish production was 225 to 1170 kg/ha over a 2 year growing period, whereas today the average *annual* production of catfish ponds in Arkansas is 900 kg/ha (Plate 1) Table 10 lists a few of the higher yields obtained and briefly outlines the methods employed in achieving them

BREEDING CHANNEL CATFISH

In 1966 in Arkansas alone the demand for catfish fingerlings was an estimated 8 million Since successful hatcheries can produce 44 000 to 220 000 fingerlings/ha, it can be seen that there is considerable opportunity for profit in large-scale production of catfish fingerlings Some large catfish farmers breed their own stock and thus operate on a completely self sustaining basis but the majority of producers of catfish for the market continue to purchase fingerlings from specialists

Catfish breeding requires more skill and experience than growing fingerlings to marketable size and should not be undertaken by the neophyte (Plate 2) After he has gained a certain amount of expertise, the culturist may wish to expand into production of fingerlings for his own use or for sale if he has sufficient space to accommodate brood stock ponds spawning ponds fry rearing ponds and so on without reducing the acreage devoted to growing fish for market The culturist anticipating breeding his own stock should also determine whether his annual need for fingerlings is large enough to justify the additional expense and la

TABLE 10 (*Continued*)

LOCATION	SPECIES STOCKED	NO STOCKED PER HECTARE	SIZE OF FISH STOCKED	FEEDING RATE	GROWING TIME	SIZE AT HARVEST	PRODUCTION (KG/HA)	TYPE OF CULTURE
Stuttgart Arkansas	Channel catfish	600	15 cm	3% of total body weight when water temperature is above 16°C (6 days a week) 0 75% 1 2 days a week when temperature is lower	210 days	0.57 kg	1,527	Experimental culture in ponds supplied with well water
Stuttgart Arkansas	Channel catfish	2 000	10 g	Unknown	Unknown	0 24 kg	2,206	Experimental culture in 0 04 ha ponds supplied with well water
Stuttgart Arkansas	Channel catfish	2 000	10 g	Unknown	Unknown	0 27 kg	2 621	Experimental culture in 0 04 ha ponds supplied with well water and aerated with compressed air
Stuttgart Arkansas	Channel catfish	2 152	10 g	Unknown	Unknown	0 29 kg	2 864	Experimental culture under semi raceway conditions
Ames Iowa	Channel catfish	about 800	fingerlings	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	3 977	Experimental culture in tertiary sewage treatment ponds

TABLE 10 STOCKING, FEEDING, AND PRODUCTION OF ICTALURID CATFISHES IN DIFFERENT LOCATIONS (EXAMPLES OF REPRESENTATIVE YIELDS)

LOCATION	SPECIES STOCKED	NO STOCKED PER HECTARE	SIZE OF FISH STOCKED	FEEDING RATE	GROWING TIME	SIZE AT HARVEST	PRODUCTION (KG/HA)	TYPE OF CULTURE
Auburn Univ, Alabama	Brown bullhead	1,200	2.5–10.0 cm	Unknown	13 months	0.33 kg or more	2,024 (marketable size fish only)	Experimental culture in fertilized ponds supplied with well water
Auburn Univ, Alabama	Channel catfish	1,184	6.4 g	9,130 kg total for growing period	188 days	Unknown	2,008	Experimental culture in ponds supplied with well water
Dumas, Arkansas	Blue catfish, Channel catfish	5,441 60	5–10 cm 10–15 cm	3% of total body weight when water temperature is above 16°C, 5% on warm days only during winter	251 days	Blues, 0.45 kg Channels, 0.67 kg	Blues, 1,189 Channels, 145 Total, 1,334	Commercial culture in a 2.1 ha pond supplied with well water
Dumas, Arkansas	Blue catfish, Channel catfish	32 736	8–20 cm 8–20 cm	3% of total body weight when water temperature is above 16°C, 5% on warm days only during winter	273 days	Blues, 0.85 kg Channels, 0.54 kg	Blues, 123 Channels, 1,732 Total, 1,855	Commercial culture in a 10 ha pond supplied with well water

their darker coloration and shorter, wider head. The female genital opening is slitlike rather than tubular as in males. As spawning time approaches, males develop areas of dark pigmentation under the jaw and body and the genital papilla becomes enlarged and protrudes. In females, the vent becomes loose, inflamed, and swollen and may pulsate when examined. When, as happens on occasion, the sex of a fish is not apparent on visual examination, a broom straw rubbed longitudinally over the vent will hang on the vent if the fish is a male.

Prominent, reddish genitalia are one of the signs that a fish is ready to spawn, but the principal criterion in selecting breeders of either sex is general condition. Further indications of ripeness in females are soft, distended ovaries, palpable through the body wall, and a full, rounded abdomen, extending posteriorly past the pelvis to the genital orifice. To avoid being misled by a gut distended by food it is best not to feed brood stock prior to selection of spawners.

CONDITIONING OF SPAWNERS

Channel catfish may mature as early as 2 years of age and as small as 33 cm in length and 0.33 kg in weight, but for reliable spawning it is best to use brood stock 3 or more years old. Fish of 1 to 4.5 kg are preferred, since larger fish are hard to handle, require too much space, and are not as reliable spawners as smaller animals.

From December on, spawners are generally kept segregated by sex in ponds of about 0.4 ha in area. Recommended stocking density for 1.0- to 1.5-kg fish is 270 to 360 kg/ha if further growth is desired or twice that if it is not. Feeding of brood stock is one of the most important phases of catfish culture, because it influences time of spawning, number and size of eggs produced, incidence of fighting among the males, and general health of both spawners and offspring. Of course when water temperatures are low, brood stock as well as other fish should be fed only on warm days, but whenever the water temperature exceeds 13°C spawners may be fed 2 to 3% of their body weight 3 or 4 days a week. However much is fed, it is important that a substantial percentage, if not all of the diet be composed of fresh or frozen meat or fish, partly because in cold weather catfish seem to utilize animal protein better than cereal feeds and partly because meat and fish diets enhance the attainment of spawning condition. Some culturists provide brood stock with a ready source of animal protein by stocking their ponds with fathead minnows.

In the spring, after the breeders are transferred to spawning ponds, they may be switched to conventional pelleted dry feeds at 4% of body

PLATE 2 James W Avault of Louisiana State University holding a breeder channel catfish (Courtesy James W Avault.)

lighter in color than blue catfish, some individuals are quite dark and are erroneously called "blue catfish by fishermen This source of confusion has been greatly reduced by the establishment of pure hatchery stocks of both species Should any question arise, examination of the anal fin will reveal the identity of the fish in question In channel catfish this fin has a rounded margin and 24 to 29 rays, in blue catfish the margin is straight and there are 30 to 36 rays

Sexing was also once a source of difficulty for catfish farmers Today, however, experienced workers approach 100% accuracy in determining sex Males may be superficially distinguished from females by

POND SPAWNING

The three types of spawning practiced in channel catfish culture, in decreasing order of similarity to natural spawning, are pond spawning, pen spawning and aquarium spawning Most culturists still use the most primitive method, pond spawning, because it requires minimal facilities as well as demanding the least time, labor, and skill Pond spawning is recommended for all situations where there is insufficient skilled labor for proper application of more sophisticated methods or wherever it will consistently produce an adequate quantity of high quality fry for stocking

Channel catfish have been propagated in ponds as large as 26 ha, but spawning ponds average about 0 4 ha Spawning ponds should be constructed similarly to growing ponds and be no deeper than 2 1 m at any point They should be drained in winter, disked, and, if the soil is acid, limed Spawning ponds should not be filled until 30 to 40 days before spawning is expected to minimize the chance of establishment of predatory insects During this 30 to 40 day interval two or three applications of 16 16 4 (N P K) fertilizer at 45 kg/ha are recommended

Equal numbers of males and females are stocked at 50 to 330 fish/ha and pairing is allowed to occur naturally This entails some fighting among the males but has the advantage of permitting pairs of comparable ripeness to be formed, thus reducing the incidence of intersexual fighting For this reason, pond spawning is to be preferred when brood stock is of marginal ripeness

Spawning receptacles are provided in the form of 45 liter milk cans nail kegs, earthenware crocks, and so on, spaced 9 to 12 m apart with the open end toward the center of the pond There need not be one spawning receptacle for each pair of fish, since spawning will not be synchronous Successful catfish breeders provide anywhere from 50 to 90% as many receptacles as spawning pairs Natural spawning occurs at depths from 15 cm to 1 5 m, but it is best to place spawning receptacles in at least 0 6 m of water to minimize disturbance to the spawners Receptacles placed deeper than arm's length present difficulties in handling and management Nearly any suitable sized container may be used, but milk cans or similarly shaped containers are preferable to kegs since the constricted opening reduces the chance of fry getting out All metal spawning receptacles should be swabbed inside and out with asphalt paint

Each spawning receptacle should be numbered and checked periodically, and records should be kept of spawning and hatching Checking may be carried out by visual examination of the inside of the receptacle if, after frightening the male out of the receptacle it is lifted out of the pond and most of the water gently decanted Less disturbance is occa

weight per day, or more if they will eat it Dry feed should still be supplemented by fresh animal protein, however All feeding is discontinued at the onset of spawning

The State Fish Hatchery at Centerton, Arkansas, has had good success feeding brood stock with cut fish, supplemented by a specially prepared pellet feed, according to the schedule given in Table 11

TABLE 11 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR CHANNEL CATFISH BROOD STOCK USED AT THE STATE FISH HATCHERY, CENTERTON, ARKANSAS

December–February	Small portions of cut fish, fed on warm days only
March	Cut fish gradually increase amount until by April 1 the breeders are fed as much as they will eat
April 1–15	*After stocking in spawning ponds* continue cut fish as a supplement to pellets, feed as much as the breeders will eat, twice a week
April 15–onset of spawning	Cut fish feed as much as the breeders will eat, twice a week

SPAWNING IN NATURE

In nature, channel catfish migrate to the shallows of rivers and lakes to spawn sometime between April and July, depending on latitude Vicious fighting between the males may precede spawning, with severe injury sometimes resulting Not infrequently wounds received in fighting may become infected, resulting in the death of the injured fish

Once a pair is formed, the male chooses a spawning site, usually in a sheltered place, such as under a bank, where he constructs a crude nest by cleaning the bottom removing as much silt and debris as possible He will defend this location against any intruder until spawning is completed, the fry hatched and their yolk sacs absorbed

Spawning takes place at 20 to 23°C If the female is not ready to spawn, she may be attacked or driven away The spawning act consists of the deposition of successive layers of adhesive eggs by the female and individual fertilization of each layer by the male The whole process may require 4 to 12 hours

When the female is spent, the male drives her away and commences guarding and caring for the eggs. In addition to defending the eggs and fry until they are free swimming, the male circulates water through the eggs by fanning them with his fins Fanning is occasionally supplemented by a more vigorous disturbance of the egg mass with the body and pelvic fins.

damaged by the male. Where separate hatching facilities are available, the eggs may also be removed and artificially hatched. Artificial hatching reduces the chance of transmission of disease from parents to young and permits the use of good males in a second, or even third, spawning. Males to be so used should receive at least a day's rest and one large portion of feed between spawnings.

AQUARIUM SPAWNING

Injection with pituitary hormones is only occasionally practiced in pen spawning, but it is an integral part of aquarium spawning. Since it requires a considerable amount of skill, the aquarium method is the least commonly practiced technique of obtaining catfish spawn. On the other hand, it is the most efficient in terms of use of space and producing a high rate of successful spawning. Aquarium spawning also permits very accurate timing of spawning and the production of fry of uniform size and age, as well as eliminating the chance of predation by the parents or transmission of disease from parents to offspring.

Channel catfish respond well to a wide variety of fish pituitary extracts as well as to human chorionic gonadotropin. Females are injected intraperitoneally with three doses of 2.2- to 22-mg of acetone-dried fish pituitary material or a single dose of 600 to 2200 IU of human chorionic gonadotropin per kilogram of body weight. (For a general discussion of induced spawning of fishes by hormonal injection, see Chapter 3.) Males are not injected.

After injection the fish are paired in 23- to 240-liter aquaria provided with running water and tarpaper mats to collect the eggs. As in pen spawning, pairing is crucial. If the male severely bites the female, he should be removed and the female kept by herself until she has received two or three more injections.

Most injected fish will spawn within 16 to 24 hours after the last injection. Upon completion of spawning the eggs may be removed for artificial hatching and a new pair of spawners placed in the tank.

HATCHING

If either the pond or pen method of spawning is used, the eggs may be left in the pond to hatch naturally in 5 to 10 days, depending on the water temperature. Once eggs are found, disturbance should be minimal until the culturist suspects they may have hatched. Excessive handling, activity in the water nearby, or even loud noises such as slamming car doors or discharge of firearms in the vicinity may cause some males to relocate or eat the eggs.

sioned by gently probing inside the container with a rubber hose or some such device. If a stationary, spongy mass is felt, eggs are present. If instead a wriggling mass is felt, the eggs have hatched. The male may leave when a hose or the like is inserted, or he may bite it. In the latter event he may often be pulled out of the receptacle so that another probe can be made. Hands are not recommended for this purpose, as an angry male catfish can deliver a nasty bite. Some culturists eliminate both the necessity of probing and the danger to hands by constructing doors on the tops of spawning receptacles so that the progress of spawning may be visually inspected without moving the receptacle.

PEN SPAWNING

Pen spawning is an advancement on pond spawning in that it permits delaying of the time of spawning to suit the convenience of the culturist, genetic selection of breeding pairs, protection of the spawn from intruders, the immediate removal of spawned-out fish for reconditioning and the treatment of reluctant spawners with hormones. Spawning pens may be constructed of various materials but are usually in the form of three sided enclosures of wire mesh, with the shore of the spawning pond constituting the fourth side. Pens range in size from 1.2 × 2.4 m to 1.8 × 3.6 m and may be up to 1 m deep at the deep end. The sides should be embedded 15 cm into the pond bottom and extend 0.3 to 0.6 m above the water surface to prevent the spawners from tunneling or leaping out. Each pen is provided with a receptacle of the same sort used in pond spawning.

As spawning time approaches, the brood stock are sexed and paired *in the pens*. This is the most crucial phase of pen spawning, since if the female is not ready, she may be killed by the male in only 15 to 20 min time in close confinement. On the other hand, large females may attack small males, thus pairs should be selected so that the male is at least as large as, and preferably larger than, the female. If there is an excess of brood stock, the largest, oldest fish should be spawned first, as they tend to ripen earlier. Excess brood stock are separated by sex and stocked in holding ponds for later use. If sufficient amounts of cold well water can be supplied to such holding ponds so that they remain at 16 to 19°C, the onset of sexual ripeness in fish held therein can be retarded for some weeks. If spawning starts off well, then lags, a 2.5 to 5.0 cm rise in water level has been found to stimulate breeders.

Once spawning has started, the procedure of pen spawning is the same as for pond spawning, except that the female is removed immediately on completion of spawning to prevent her from eating the eggs or being

PLATE 4. Catfish hatching trough with paddle wheels to agitate egg mass, Brawley, California. (Photograph by W. O. McLarney.)

troughs small amounts of a 2 ppm solution of malachite green should be added daily at the head of the trough to control fungus. This treatment should be discontinued as hatching time approaches, as malachite green is toxic to fry.

When the eggs hatch, the fry pass through the sides of the hatching baskets into the trough. Hatching time is about the same as at comparable temperatures in nature, but up to 98% success may be expected.

REARING CHANNEL CATFISH FRY

EARLY REARING IN TROUGHS

It is possible to rear fry to fingerling size in the spawning pond if the adults are removed, but usually the fry are stocked in separate nursery facilities. Fry which have been hatched in troughs can simply be siphoned into tubs for transport to the nursery area. If hatching has been allowed to occur in the spawning pond, the male must be driven out of the spawning receptacle, which is then lifted out of the pond and partially

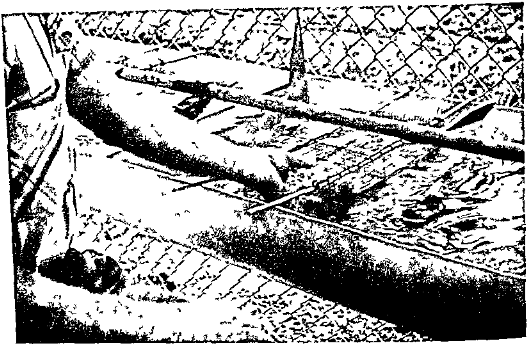


PLATE 3 Channel catfish egg mass, Brawley, California (Photograph by W. O Mc Larney)

Allowing hatching to occur naturally is of course the simplest way of proceeding, but artificial hatching enables the culturist to use his spawning facilities repeatedly, thus attaining higher production If conditions in the spawning pond are less than optimal, artificial hatching will usually also increase the rate of hatching If spawn is obtained by the aquarium method, artificial hatching is of course mandatory The jar method has been experimentally employed in hatching, but commercial operators rely on the use of hatching troughs

Hatching troughs may be of any convenient size, but they should be about 25 cm deep and supplied with running water Eggs are placed in 7.6-cm deep wire mesh baskets hung along the sides of the trough (Plates 3 and 4). Alongside each basket is a paddlelike agitator extending slightly deeper than the bottom of the basket and driven by an electric motor or water wheel The agitation thus provided must be sufficient to move the entire contents of the basket but not to throw the eggs out

Where possible, water should be supplied to hatching troughs by gravity flow, since this system is less liable to failure than pumps and the like If well water is used, it may need to be aerated and heated with a gas or electric heater or by letting it stand in a pond for a few days

When large numbers of eggs are placed close together in hatching

vised by placing each tub on its side in the pond inside a retaining frame of 60 mm mesh hardware cloth or floating cages may be constructed. The fry should be so confined for 1 to 2 weeks or longer, while being fed 4 to 5% of their body weight 6 days a week. The feed already described for conditioning breeders (Table 12) has been found effective in rearing fry when the proper sized particles are provided. Even after the fry have been permitted access to the entire pond, the culturist should continue to feed in the same places.

TABLE 12 COMPOSITION OF THE FEED USED FOR CHANNEL CATFISH BROOD STOCK AT THE STATE FISH HATCHERY, CENTERTON, ARKANSAS

INGREDIENT	PERCENT
Dried milk	10.00
Wheat shorts (best grade)	14.00
Soybean meal (fine grind)	14.00
Cotton seed meal	14.00
Yellow corn (fine grind)	14.00
Meat scraps	16.00
Fish meal	15.75
Vitamin A feeding oil (15,000 units per gram)	0.25
Iodized salt	1.00
Brewers dried yeast	1.00

TM 10 Terramycin is added to the feed at the rate of 0.6% of the total weight

The Texas Agricultural Extension Service recommends a different feeding regime. About 1 kg of meat scraps or tankage per spawn (5000 to 20 000 fry) is to be fed 6 days a week until the fry begin 'topping' or coming to the surface to feed. Once topping begins it will be possible to determine how much feed is being taken and the fry can then be fed as much as they will eat. When they are 5 to 8 cm long the feed is changed to a 1:1 mixture of meat scraps or tankage and pellets of the same sort used in growing ponds. This feed is continued until spring, when the fingerlings are ready for stocking or sale.

The Texas Agricultural Extension Service also recommends that no more than 1 spawn be stocked per 0.1 ha of pond surface and that no more than 3 spawns be placed in a 0.4 ha pond, but fry are sometimes stocked as heavily as 550 000/ha. Of course the more fry are stocked, within reason, the more fingerlings will be harvested, but since large fingerlings bring better prices than small ones the culturist may do better to stock fairly sparsely. Yields of as high as 176 000 10 cm fingerlings/ha have been achieved, with 35% mortality, but the U S Soil Conservation

emptied, and the remaining fry are poured into a tub It is good practice when emptying a spawning receptacle to splash water back into the receptacle while pouring so as to wash all the fry out

Lower mortality of fry occurs if they are started in nursery troughs rather than ponds Troughs used for this purpose may be of wood, aluminum or fiberglass, 2 4 to 3 0 m long, 20 to 50 cm wide, and about 30 cm deep Running water should be supplied at about 23 liters/min One large spawn or two small to medium spawns are placed in each trough Usually the fry are set free in the trough, but some culturists prefer to transfer fry in the spawning receptacle, which is then laid on its side in the trough with the mouth facing into the current

Fry in troughs will start to feed shortly after becoming pigmented and free swimming, or about 3 to 5 days after hatching For the first 4 to 5 days they should be fed sparingly with a good prepared feed, ground suitably fine As time goes on the amount fed can be increased but as long as the fry are in troughs any food uneaten after 2 hours should be siphoned off Some culturists treat fry in troughs with 5 ppm acriflavine for 4 hours twice a week as a prophylactic measure

PREPARATION OF REARING PONDS

Fry may be brought to fingerling size in troughs, but normally they are transferred to ponds within a few weeks of hatching Fry rearing ponds vary in size from 0 04 ha to 2 ha or more, but ponds of 0 4 ha or less are preferred If possible they should be left dry until just before stocking to prevent establishment of predatory insects Many culturists use various insecticides in permanent ponds or even in ponds where water has been standing for a few days before stocking, but the dangers presented by these substances outweigh their benefits Air breathing species, which account for the greater number of piscivorous insects, may be eliminated by treating fry ponds with a 1 20 mixture of SAE-30 motor oil or cotton seed oil and kerosene at 17 5 liters/ha twice a week on days when there is just enough wind to distribute the mixture across the surface of the pond Use of oil on fish culture ponds may, however, contribute to oil pollution of natural waters receiving drainage from the hatchery, for which the culturist could be held liable

STOCKING AND FEEDING

Fry may be placed directly into the pond, but as insurance against predators it is better to stock fry, particularly small ones, in some sort of cage. If they are transported to the pond in tubs, cages may easily be impro-

FLATHEAD CATFISH

Production of flathead catfish fingerlings has proven far more difficult than is the case for other Ictalurids Flathead catfish have been successfully spawned using the pond and aquarium methods, but often captive flathead catfish fail to achieve full sexual maturity This failure is often due to improper feeding, flathead catfish are very piscivorous and may not adjust well to feeds, particularly dry feeds, preferred by the culturist Flathead catfish also require considerably more space than other Ictalurids

Yet another problem in spawning flathead catfish is the difficulty of accurately sexing them Unlike channel catfish, in flathead catfish it is the female which becomes darker as spawning time approaches, but this is not a completely reliable character The best indicators in mature fish are the genital papillae In the mature female these are reddish and slightly raised The genital opening may also be slightly dilated

Female flathead catfish respond as readily as channel catfish to injections of fish pituitary preparation or human chorionic gonadotropin, and if sexing is accurate, no problems are to be anticipated in spawning them in aquaria of appropriate size, say 225 liters or larger

Hatching has been successfully carried out in ponds, and in hatching troughs as described for channel catfish, it occurs at about the same rate and presents no special problems

Most of the difficulties in attempting to produce flathead catfish fingerlings for the trade have occurred in rearing the fry Reported survival rates from fry to fingerling stage have been as low as 4 to 6% Among the problems encountered have been predation, cannibalism, diseases and parasites but remedial and/or preventive measures are known for all these causes of mortality A more fundamental difficulty has been the failure of very young fry to accept food One successful technique for starting fry on feed is to spread a paste of liver, powdered milk, and egg yolk on a board floated in the nursery trough The fry, which tend to hide in the shade of the board, are thus able to immediately detect the odor of the food Feeding should commence when the fry first exhibit food seeking behavior by circling the trough

Egg yolk alone is successfully used as a first food in a feeding schedule employed to rear flathead catfish fry up to the age of 7 weeks in troughs at the U S Fish Farming Experimental Station (Table 11) The eggs are first boiled for 15 min then the yolks are pulverized in a small amount of water

Originally fresh carp flesh was not supplemented by beef liver, but fry fed trout chow and carp flesh without liver developed an apparent

Service is considerably more conservative in its recommendations The SCS suggests stocking rates of 2 5 to 5 0 cm fish to reach various sizes in one growing season as given in Table 13

TABLE 13 RECOMMENDED STOCKING RATES FOR CHANNEL CATFISH FINGERLINGS AT DIFFERENT SIZES

		ESTIMATE AT END OF SEASON			
NO STOCKED (PER HA)	GROWING PERIOD (NO OF DAYS)	NUMBERS[a]	TOTAL WEIGHT (KG)	AVERAGE WEIGHT (G)	AVERAGE LENGTH (CM)
88,000	180	30,000	270	9	10
66 000	180	22 500	324	14	13
44,000	180	15 000	405	27	15
33,000	180	11,250	471	42	18
22,000	180	7,500	378	50	20
11,000	180	3,750	338	81	25

[a] Assuming a 25% loss

SOURCE Grizzell et al (1968)

Some culturists have had success in growing very large (23 to 25 cm), robust 'fingerlings' using a 2 year rearing schedule The first year fry are crowded in ponds at 110,000/ha, then they are thinned the following year to 22,000 to 26,400/ha

BREEDING AND REARING FRY OF OTHER ICTALURIDS

BLUE CATFISH

Blue catfish have been experimentally spawned using all of the methods described but, since male blue catfish are less prone to fighting among themselves than are male channel catfish, most commercial producers use the pond method Brood stock is wintered in ponds at 450 kg/ha and fed pelleted feed supplemented with cut fish, beef liver, and small live fish, then stocked in spawning ponds at 44 pairs/ha in the spring Spawning ponds are prepared in the same manner as described for channel catfish Spawning occurs soon after the water reaches 22°C

Blue catfish fry may be reared in the spawning pond with or without the parent fish but better results are obtained by stocking 2 5 to 5 0 cm fry in separate nursery ponds at 88,000/ha In either case fry are fed 3 to 5% of their total body weight in prepared dry feed, 6 days a week

albino fish, which are a light golden color, are also more attractive to consumers when marketed with the skin on and are said to be resistant to Ichthyophthiriasis. They possess additional value as a novelty fish for stocking in pay fishing ponds. The albino strain breeds true and is being cultured in some areas. However, the survival rate of albino channel catfish fry is significantly less than that for normal fish. Other goals pursued by selective breeding include resistance to low dissolved oxygen concentration and more efficient feed conversion.

Hybridization is another means to the same ends sought by selective breeding. Many Ictalurid hybrids have already been produced experimentally, including virtually all the possible crosses involving channel catfish. All hybrids with one channel catfish parent have shown better growth than either parent. The most promising hybrid thus far appears to be ♂ blue catfish × ♀ channel catfish, which has not only shown 11 to 65% better growth than the parents under a variety of stocking and feeding regimes, but also grows more uniformly.

In recent years, the incidence of deformities and other hereditary disorders in cultured channel catfish has increased considerably, and inbreeding has been implicated in this problem. Intraspecies hybridization of different strains may therefore be emphasized in the future.

PROBLEMS

PESTS AND COMPETITORS

Among the pest organisms sometimes found in catfish ponds, the most common are tadpoles of various species, which compete for food with fry. Properly constructed ponds, with no shallow areas along shore, are the best prevention but frogs and tadpoles can never be completely excluded from ponds. If tadpoles are numerous enough to create a problem, partial control may be achieved by shooting or spearing adult frogs and by removing frog egg masses whenever they are found. There is also a commercially available tadpole poison, called Tad-Tox, which can be used in severe cases.

Two crustacean pests, the fairy shrimp (*Streptocephalus texanus*) and the tadpole shrimp (*Apus longicaudatus*), occasionally form dense clouds in fish ponds. Fairy shrimp compete for food with catfish fry, while tadpole shrimp cause excessive turbidity. Both species seriously interfere with visual detection and capture of fry. At present, the only known methods of eradication entail the use of chemicals which are even less desirable than fairy shrimp or tadpole shrimp.

TABLE 11 FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR FLATHEAD CATFISH FRY

AGE OF FRY (DAYS)	COMPOSITION OF FEED	FREQUENCY OF FEEDING
1–7 (or until the yolk sac is absorbed and feeding behavior is first observed)	None	—
8–9	Pulverized boiled egg yolk	Hourly during the day, one night feeding
10–12	Pulverized boiled egg yolk and live *Daphnia*	Hourly during the day one night feeding
13–17	Frozen shrimp and live *Daphnia*	Hourly during the day one night feeding
18–49	Equal parts of finely ground commercial trout chow, fresh carp flesh, and beef liver	As above, but discontinue the night feeding trout chow should be presented 15 min before the carp flesh and beef liver to encourage acceptance of dry food

thiamine deficiency, which may have been responsible for 27% mortality before it was corrected

WHITE CATFISH AND BULLHEADS

Reproduction of white catfish has not been extensively studied, but they respond to the same general techniques used for channel catfish Any fish culturist wishing to raise bullheads will find that fry production is the least of his problems, as bullheads placed in a pond will successfully reproduce with or without the culturist's blessings

SELECTIVE BREEDING AND HYBRIDIZATION

Selective breeding of Ictalurid catfishes is in its infancy One of the chief goals is the development of fish with smaller heads in proportion to body size Success in this endeavor would benefit both producer and consumer Albino channel catfish, which occasionally crop up in the course of ordinary breeding operations, are said to possess this characteristic The

tions on the use of a number of chemicals which have been proven effective remedies. Although many of these chemicals are commercially available, their use can result in the culturist's fish being condemned by the FDA for sale for human consumption. It is small consolation to the culturist faced with the loss of part or all of his crop, but these restrictions are not a matter of caprice, and are designed to prevent serious damage to human health and ecosystems by as yet untested chemicals.

OFF-FLAVOR

Another problem occasionally encountered by catfish farmers is off-flavor. Since most causes of off-flavor can be corrected and the flavor improved before marketing, it is best to capture and cook a few sample fish shortly before harvesting. Off-flavor has several possible causes.

Heavy Algal Bloom. If sufficient supplies of water are available, algal blooms can be eliminated by thorough flushing with well water. Otherwise, treatment with copper sulfate is indicated. Consult the Soil Conservation Service for details. Flavor of fish should improve within a few days after treatment.

Benthic Algae. A type of strong-smelling benthic algae commonly known as musk grass may develop and impart a musty taste to fish in ponds which are too shallow or underfertilized. Copper sulfate is the only effective treatment.

Overfeeding. Pollution by spoiled food may affect the flavor of fish. If this occurs, cease feeding and flush the pond, drawing the water off the bottom if possible.

Other Decaying Organic Matter. Fallen trees, leaves, animal manure, and so on, may cause a musty flavor. Such substances should be prevented from entering ponds. If problems occur, it will probably be necessary to hold the fish in clean water for several days before sale.

Chemicals. Various agricultural chemicals, particularly those applied as sprays, may find their way into ponds from nearby agricultural operations. If chemicals are suspected as a source of off-flavor, the first step is to determine the possible sources of contamination. If chlorinated hydrocarbon insecticides or other substances hazardous to human health are suspected, the fish should not be marketed.

ECONOMICS

PRESENT SITUATION

Probably no branch of aquaculture has been subjected to as much economic analysis as the catfish industry in the United States. However,

DISEASES AND PARASITES

The catfish culturist is more often called on to deal with diseases and parasites than with pest or competitor organisms Fry and small fish are particularly susceptible to protozoan diseases which, due to the schooling habit of small catfish, may spread like wildfire and cause losses of epizootic proportion Adults are less susceptible to protozoan diseases, with the exception of ichthyophthiriasis or ich, but they suffer from a number of major and minor parasites

Among the commonest health problems of adult Ictalurids are bacterial infections and fungus The most important preventive measure against these and all diseases and parasites is to maintain the fish in good condition This means proper feeding suitable temperatures and especially, a good supply of dissolved oxygen at all times It has been estimated that the latter condition is not met in 90% of all catfish ponds Even healthy fish may be damaged in handling, though the damage may not be apparent, and the slightest injury may give bacteria or fungus a foothold Therefore it is a good idea when handling or transporting catfish to add an antibiotic to the water

Some diseases and parasites may be readily detected and treated by even the inexperienced culturist Among these are ich, fungus infections, *Pseudomonas* and *Aeromonas* (bacterial infections), and gas bubble disease Details on diagnosis and treatment of these and other diseases may be found in Davis (1953)

If signs of poor health (reluctance to feed, wasting away, sluggishness, visible parasites, sores, or inflammation on any part of the body, etc.) are seen but none of the foregoing problems are apparent, the culturist is advised to call the local representative of his state conservation department immediately Most diseases and parasites of catfish can be controlled if diagnosed in time, but diagnosis often requires the services of a trained fishery biologist Among the important disease producing or parasitic organisms which fall into this category are the protozoans *Chilodon, Chilodonella, Costia, Scyphidia, Trichodina,* and *Trichophyra,* the copepod crustaceans *Achtheres, Argulus, Ergasilus,* and *Lernaea,* and various monogenetic trematodes (flukes) and acanthocephalans (spinyheaded worms) Digenetic trematodes, tapeworms roundworms, and leeches are ordinarily less dangerous but may reduce weight gain, produce unsightly fish, or even cause losses in heavily infested fish The experienced culturist may become able to diagnose and treat many of the difficult diseases and parasites

It has been a source of annoyance to some catfish farmers that treatment of diseases and parasites must often be carried out using antiquated methods due to Food and Drug Control Administration restric

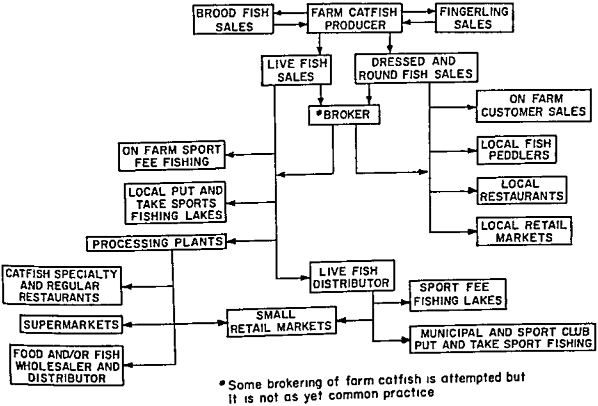


FIG 3 Farm catfish marketing opportunities and options 1969 (After Greenfield 1969)

spp) captured by American commercial fishermen have been falsely represented as channel catfish Most of these species are reputed to be inferior to channel catfish as food, so that in addition to competing with cultured catfish they present a potential threat to the image of cultured catfish as a high quality food

Further competition may eventually come from channel catfish cultured in Latin American countries Attempts have been made in Mexico to rear catfish for the American market, but to date operations there have not been efficient enough to compete with catfish grown in the United States As the market expands, however, incentive will also increase and Latin American catfish farmers, who already have the competitive advantage of cheap labor, may be expected to become a serious force in the U S market

In brief, the economic prospectus for catfish culture is one of levelling growth, if not decline, after the boom of the 1960s As the market matures, fewer and fewer culturists will realize more and more of the profits The successful minority will increasingly be composed of the largest and/or most efficient growers and their economic success will continually enable them to enhance their position by taking advantage of biological and technological advances in the field

due to the youthfulness of the industry, a good deal of what was published as recently as 1967 seems irrelevant or inapplicable to the present and future catfish farmer About all that can be predicted with certainty is that the most efficient producers will be rewarded and the least efficient will fail This is of course an economic truism, but in catfish culture the need for efficiency has been obscured by the lack of direct competition characteristic of an industry in the first stages of expansion and by the optimistic tendency of culturists and market analysts alike to think not in terms of average but of superior farm management Thus there has been considerable unfortunate speculation in the catfish business and there will continue to be if prospective catfish culturists are not advised of the risks as well as the potential for profit Perhaps the situation can be brought into focus by pointing out that J E. Greenfield, an economist of the U S National Marine Fisheries Service, has asserted that, of the operators who have entered the catfish business to date, less than 25% have made a profit Even if it is assumed that the remaining 75% include a substantial number of recently established farmers who had not counted on showing a profit in their first year or two, it can be seen that the deck is stacked against all but the most thoroughly aware and prepared entrants Present indications are that the economic prognosis for new catfish farmers is getting poorer

Before making any commitment of resources or labor, the prospective catfish farmer must assess the demand for catfish and the price they will bring in whatever markets are available, as well as calculate all the costs he will incur in starting and maintaining his business and thus determine whether he will make a profit and what sort of income he can expect He must also attempt to foresee future trends in costs, prices, and demand, realizing that cultured catfish is essentially a new product, therefore the best informed forecasts rest on a shaky foundation of generalities and assumptions Finally, he must temper his judgment with the knowledge that it takes time to acquire the skills of a superior catfish grower, and that beginners almost always make less money than experienced hands

Figure 3 illustrates the marketing options currently available to a catfish farmer in the United States Readers interested in a detailed economic analysis of the catfish industry are referred to Greenfield (1969) and Jones (1969)

PROSPECTUS

A serious threat has recently been posed to the U S catfish industry in the form of competition from various other species of fish Various cat fishes from Mexico and Brazil, as well as marine wolffish (*Anathichus*

used in marine fish culture in Japan, has been receiving considerable attention. This method has already been applied by such pioneer catfish farmers as Roy Prewitt of Lonoke, Arkansas, who has been able to grow 675 kg of marketable size channel catfish in a cage 3 m × 1.5 m × 1.4 m deep. (See Chapter 29 for a discussion of the unique advantages of floating cages as enclosures for fish culture.)

GEOGRAPHICAL SHIFTS

Temperature control has been considered as a means of increasing catfish production. It has been found that, using present techniques, about 180 growing days are required to grow average size fingerlings to marketable size. However, in the principal catfish growing areas, the effective growing season (total growing season less excessively hot days, cloudy days, etc.) is approximately 150 days. Clearly there would be application for some sort of pond water heater which could add 30 days onto either end of the growing season. To date no economically feasible device of this sort has been developed. Thus there has been a trend toward 1½- or 2-year growing periods. Catfish farmers in southern Mississippi, Louisiana, and southeast Texas, however, are favored by a longer growing season, so that they can produce nearly 100% marketable fish from fingerlings in one summer. The greatest concentration of catfish farms is presently in northeast Arkansas, but the competitive edge enjoyed by culturists further south is causing a southward shift in production acreage. This may be partially offset if efficient techniques of growing catfish in thermal effluent are developed.

Another geographic shift, into the southeastern states, may occur if the catfish fisheries there decline. The decline of wild catfish populations in the south central states has played a positive role in encouraging catfish culture there. Similar fishery declines in the upper Mississippi Valley, the lower Great Lakes, and the Chesapeake Bay region have expanded the market for cultured catfish. The southeastern states presently support the only major catfish fishery which is fully capable of supplying local demands. If overfishing, pollution, and so on, eventually take their toll on wild catfish stocks in that area, there will be considerable impetus for the development of catfish culture in Georgia, Florida, and South Carolina, where it is presently of little or no importance.

ADVERTISING AND MARKETING

An area of research which is seldom considered by most culturists, but which has great effect on their success, is that of advertising and market-

PLATE 5 Cage culture of channel catfish in White Oak Lake, Arkansas (Courtesy Arkansas Game and Fish Commission, photograph by Dick Lawrence)

FUTURE OF THE INDUSTRY

INCREASED PRODUCTION

The chief effect of most biological and technical advances will be to increase production per hectare. Average production is expected to level off by 1978 at about 5400 kg/ha, but individual producers will certainly exceed this level. Technological advances in such areas as harvesting and processing, while having no direct effect on production, will increase the amount of catfish reaching the market by making higher per hectare and total production feasible for the culturist. Improved methods of processing which facilitate use of presently discarded portions of the fish could serve to make catfish culture more profitable.

CAGE CULTURE AND OTHER MEANS OF INCREASING STOCKING RATES

Among the areas of research which may yield significant results are nutrition, disease control, hybridization, and selective breeding, but at the moment the greatest potential for increasing production appears to lie in methods of increasing the dissolved oxygen content in waters used for catfish culture, thus raising the number of fish which can safely be stocked in a given area of water. Aeration and raceway culture have already been mentioned, but have yet to find commercial application. More recently, culture of catfish in floating cages (Plate 5), such as are

GRIZZELL, R A 1967 Pond construction and economic conditions in catfish farming Paper presented at 21st Meeting Southeastern Association of Game and Fish Commissioners, New Orleans La September 25-27, 1967

GRIZZELL, R A 1969 Use of self feeders in fish farming Am Fish Farmer 1(1) 13

GRIZZELL, R A, E G SULLIVAN, and O W DILLON 1968 Catfish farming—an agricultural enterprise U.S Department of Agriculture 4 26433

HASTINGS, W H 1964 Catering for channel catfish Feedstuffs 36(23)

JONES, W G 1969 Market Alternatives and Opportunities for Farm Catfish Paper given at Fish Farming Conference, Texas A&M University, College Station Texas October 7-8, 1969 13 pp

MCLARNEY, W O 1970 Pesticides and aquaculture Am Fish Farmer 1(10) 6-7, 22-23

MITCHELL, T E, and M J USRY 1967 Catfish farming—a profit opportunity for Mississippians Miss Research and Development Center, Jackson, Miss 83 pp

STRAMEL, G 1970 Trapping catfish can be successful Am Fish Farmer 1(3) 17-18

SWINGLE, H S 1954 Experiments on commercial fish production in ponds Proc S E Ass Game Fish Commissioners 8 69-74

SWINGLE H S 1957 Commercial production of red cats (speckled bullheads) in ponds Proc S E Ass Game Fish Commissioners 10 156-160

SWINGLE, H S 1966 Biological means of increasing productivity in ponds FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 1

Texas Agricultural Extension Service and Department of Wildlife Science, Texas A&M University 1967 Proceedings of the Commercial Fish Farming Conference February 1-2 1967

TIEMEIER, O W, and C W DEYOE 1967 Production of channel catfish Kansas State University of Agriculture and Applied Science, Agricultural Experiment Station Bulletin 508

Interviews and Personal Communication

JONES, W G U S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Ann Arbor, Michigan

MEYER, F P, Director, Fish Culture Station, U S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, Stuttgart, Arkansas

OWENS C Little Rock Chamber of Commerce, Little Rock, Arkansas

PREWITT, R King Prewitt Farm, Lonoke, Arkansas

ing One signal success in this area has already been scored, in the last decade the image of catfish has been considerably improved While there are still segments of the population which are repelled by the whiskery appearance of catfish or consider them scavengers and thus unfit for human consumption, there is a greatly increased market for catfish advertised as such A significant factor in the increased appeal of catfish to housewives has certainly been the circulation of recipe booklets by various state and federal agencies The image of catfish in the restaurant trade has also improved Not only are there catfish specialty restaurants, but other restaurants no longer find it necessary to use such meaningless terms as tenderloin of trout" on their menus In fact, the situation has been reversed, it is now common practice to falsely label various other fish as ' catfish '

Current research in marketing, conducted primarily by the U S National Marine Fisheries Service, is aimed at getting farm raised catfish to markets they have yet to reach, for example, the grocery chains and the heat and serve food packagers Progress in this areas depends not only on the success of marketing research, but on the increased ability of processors to economically produce a uniform product and the capability of culturists to meet the demands of processors for a year round dependable supply of high quality, uniform size catfish Hopefully, the combined efforts of culturists, biologists, technologists, and economists will succeed in further expanding both the supply and demand for catfish

REFERENCES

Clemens H P and K E Sneed 1962 Bioassay and use of pituitary materials to spawn warm water fishes U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Research Rep 61

Davis, H S 1953 Culture and diseases of game fishes University of California Press Berkeley 332 pp

Davis J T and J E Hughes No date Channel catfish farming in Louisiana Louisiana Wild Life and Fisheries Commission Wildlife Education Bull 98

DuPree H K 1966 Vitamins essential for growth of channel catfish Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Tech Papers No 7

Giudice J 1966 Growth of a blue × channel catfish hybrid as compared to its parent species Prog Fish Culturist 28(2)

Greenfield J E 1969 Some economic characteristics of pond raised catfish enterprises U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Division of Economic Research Working Paper No 23

Greenfield J E 1970 Economic and business dimensions of the catfish farming industry U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Ann Arbor Mich Offset publication.

Grizzell, R. A 1966 Commercial production of blue catfish in ponds and reservoirs J Soil Water Conserv 21(3) 104–106

adapt well to heavy stocking and artificial feeding Many are also extremely hardy with respect to environmental conditions and can be grown where few other fishes will survive Their only serious drawback from a fish culturist s point of view is their great voracity, which makes supplemental feeding a must This expense is compensated for somewhat by their catholic taste

CULTURE OF PANGASIUS *SPP IN ASIA*

CAPTURE OF WILD FRY AND SPECIES USED

Though channel catfish farmers in the south central United States may be the most highly publicized growers of catfish, they were by no means the first The history of catfish culture probably began on the Indochinese peninsula, where a number of members of the genus *Pangasius* (family Siluridae) have been grown in ponds since ancient times The most important species is *Pangasius sutchi* (pla swai), which reaches a maximum length of 150 cm The smaller *Pangasius larnaudi* (pla tepo), which reaches 70 cm, is less important, but it is economically significant *Pangasius micronemus* (pla sangawad), which grows to only 50 cm, is less esteemed as a species for culture, but it is sometimes mistakenly stocked with the two preferred species *Pangasius sanitwongsei* (pla thopa) considered a good food fish, is also excluded from culture where possible, because it is too large—up to 250 cm

As is the case with many forms of Asian fish culture, culture of *Pangasius* spp was originally dependent on the capture and rearing of naturally produced fry, and a substantial proportion of the total production still originates in this way Natural spawning occurs in large rivers at various times between June and November, and it is then and there, particularly in the Chao phya River, the Sakakrong River, and the Kreang Kri Canal of Thailand, and the Mekong River in Cambodia, that 3 to 8 cm fry are captured in 1 cm mesh seines Juvenile fish, weighing 80 to 150 g each, are also collected, with dip nets, from the Tonle Sap and Grand Lac of Cambodia during February to April

Inadvertent stocking of *Pangasius micronemus* is due largely to the difficulty of distinguishing between fry of that species and those of *Pangasius sutchi* and *Pangasius larnaudi* The identifying morphological and behavioral characteristics of these three species have been worked out by officers of Thailand s Department of Fisheries (Table 1) Less is known about the fry of *Pangasius sanitwongsei*, which has a somewhat limited distribution, and is apparently commonly cultured only in Vietnam

7

Culture of Catfishes Native to Australasia and Europe

Recent progress in the culture of the channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) in the United States has served to focus attention on the potential for culture of other catfishes The suborder Siluroidei is large and varied but, in general, its larger members, which are represented in the inland and coastal waters of every continent, are of high quality as food fish and

feeding commences about 12 hours later Zooplankton is the chief natural food of the early fry, but small insect larvae and worms also may be taken When availability of these foods is poor, cannibalism may occur Fry are maintained in the hatching tanks for 16 to 21 days, by which time they attain lengths of 2 to 6 cm and may be stocked in rearing ponds The best survival of very young fry (32 2%) has been achieved by feeding live *Daphnia* After the fry attain a length of about 2 cm, *Daphnia* may be supplemented with small pieces of mollusks, worms, and cooked fish

GROWING FOR MARKET IN PONDS IN THAILAND, CAMBODIA, AND VIETNAM

In Thailand, *Pangasius* spp are stocked alone in ponds, or in combination with tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*) or sepat siam (*Trichogaster pectoralis*) When stocked at about 25/m^3, and fed on kitchen waste, bananas, cooked broken rice, rice bran, and soft aquatic and terrestrial plants, *Pangasius larnaudi* fingerlings may attain weights of 0 45 kg at the end of 1 year, and 1 kg in 2 years *Pangasius sutchi* grows more slowly initially, but may reach 4 kg in 2 years When fish wastes are added to the diet, as is common in Vietnam, weights of 1 0 to 1 2 kg may be reached in 8 to 10 months

Data on the yields obtained by pond culture of *Pangasius* spp in Thailand, Cambodia, and Vietnam are lacking, but there are verbal reports that far higher yields are obtained through culture in floating cages set in series along the edges of rivers, where there is a gentle current Very high yields are also obtained when *Pangasius* spp are used as one component of a pig poultry fish farming complex similar to that described for Cyprinid fishes in Malaysia (see Chapter 3)

GROWING FOR MARKET IN FLOATING CAGES IN THAILAND AND CAMBODIA

The floating cage technique, which is traditional in Cambodia, has been practiced in Thailand for only a little over 50 years Fry and fingerlings are initially stocked at 150 to 300/m^3 in cages 1 to 9 m^2 in surface area and no more than 1 5 m deep, made of bamboo poles or wooden planks, covered with mosquito netting In each cage a food plate is suspended about 10 cm under the water surface The fry are fed once or twice daily with ground trash fish mixed with boiled rice or rice bran As soon as they reach 15 cm in length, the young catfish are stocked in larger cages

Cages used for growing *Pangasius* for market are more commonly built of 25 mm planks than of bamboo, and they may incorporate living quarters for the culturist A gap of about 25 mm is left between planks to

TABLE 1 DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF FRY OF *Pangasius* SPP

	P sutchi	*P larnaudi*	*P micronemus*
Mixing of shoals	With or without *P larnaudi*	With or without *P sutchi*	Without both species
Movement of caudal fin	Fast movement splashing water at the surface	Faster movement than *P sutchi*	Slow movement of caudal fin no water splashing
Ratio of head width to body length	1 8	1 6	1 7
Angle of insertion of dorsal fin base	Parallel to body axis	Parallel to body axis	At about 30° to body axis
Number of ventral fin rays	8–9	6	6
Mouth cleft	Wide	Wider	Narrow
Number of gill rakers	More than 12 long gill rakers	12 short gill rakers	More than 12 long gill rakers
Dorsal and pectoral fin color	Greyish black	Absolutely black	Colorless
Color of upper and lower lobes of caudal fin	Greyish black	Absolutely black	Colorless

SOURCE Pongsuwana and Varikul (1962)

SPAWNING AND FRY REARING IN CAPTIVITY

In the 1960s in Thailand at least, the effects of overfishing, pollution, and destruction of spawning grounds began to be felt in the scarcity, and consequent high price, of *Pangasius* fry Accordingly, in 1966, Thai fishery authorities began to apply the results of earlier experiments with the induction of spawning in *P sutchi* by means of pituitary injection Both sexes receive fractional injections of *P sutchi* or *Clarias batrachus* pituitary, followed by fertilization by the dry method (see p 400) Proper dosages and time intervals for injections have yet to be worked out, thus the range of hatching rates is extremely wide, from 0 to 85%

Immediately following fertilization, the eggs are placed in fine mesh hatching nets containing fine fibrous materials—either aquatic plants or such artificial substitutes as palm and jute fronds—and allowed to attach Hatching occurs 24 to 33 hours after the nets are placed in clear water at 26 5 to 31 0°C

The mouths of the larvae open about 36 hours after hatching, and

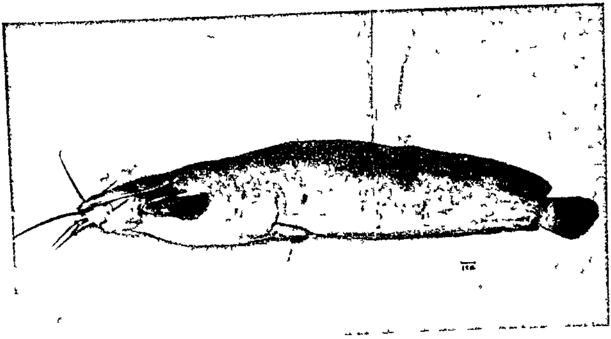


PLATE 1 *Clarias batrachus* (Linnaeus) (Courtesy Royal Thai Department of Fisheries)

tinent, and Africa, as well as in parts of the Near East. The Clariid catfishes are distinguished by the possession of an accessory air breathing organ, which enables them to exist for hours at a time out of the water, or indefinitely in oxygen-poor waters and even moist mud. They may take further advantage of their versatility by coming ashore at night in search of food. The extreme hardiness of the Clariids renders them well suited to culture in arid regions such as tropical east Africa, where their use has been promoted in the last decade (see Chapter 12).

Interest in culture of Clariid catfishes outside of tropical Africa is even more recent, but already spectacular success has been achieved in Thailand, where *Clarias batrachus* and *Clarias macrocephalus*, two of the most highly valued native fish, support a thriving industry which is becoming progressively more efficient. *C. macrocephalus* is preferred by consumers for its more tender flesh, but culturists favor *C. batrachus* because it grows faster, and it has become the dominant species.

COLLECTION OF WILD FRY

The major source of fry of both species is natural spawning *C. macrocephalus* spawns during the rainy season in nests constructed on the bottom of paddy fields in 20 to 50 cm of water. *C. batrachus* spawns at a similar depth in a horizontal hole in the bank. Hatching requires 20 hours at 25.0 to 32.2°C.

permit passage of water Growing cages vary from 2 to 16 m long, 1 to 6 m wide, and 1 5 to 2 5 m deep, the most popular size is 4 m × 3 m × 2 m Normally bamboo poles are used as floats in order that the top of the cage, which is provided with 1 m × 1 m holes so the fish may be fed, remains about 30 cm above the water surface Though the cages themselves last 10 to 12 years, the bamboo floats must be replaced every 2 years

High stocking rates (20 to 60 kg/m²) are employed to offset the usual high mortality in cages Trash fish is the basic feed during times of year when fish are plentiful, the daily feed ration is 10 to 15% of the weight of catfish When trash fish are scarce, maize, broken rice, rice bran and aquatic vegetation in large amounts substitute for or supplement the fish diet

Pangasius spp in cages may be reared from 0 08 to 1 kg in 8 to 10 months If the growing period is extended to 2 years, weights of 2 kg may be reached

CULTURE IN LAOS, MALAYSIA, AND INDIA

Pangasius spp are not limited in their distribution to Thailand, Cambodia, and Vietnam but range throughout southeast Asia, from East India to the Malay Peninsula, Indonesia, and neighboring islands Over much of this area they are not cultured, in some regions perhaps because of the lack of suitable grounds for collecting large numbers of fry or fingerlings This may be the case in Laos where *P larnaudi* and *P sutchi* fingerlings are imported from Thailand in January and stocked at 25/m³ in ponds 0 2 ha in area and 3 m deep Laotian culture techniques are generally the same as those employed in Thailand and Cambodia, but fish are not used as food Fertilization with pig and chicken dung is carried out, and it is believed that the fish consume some of the resulting plankton The growing season is limited to 8 months, and growth is relatively poor with fish averaging only 200 g in weight when harvested

The only known instances of culture of *Pangasius* spp outside Indochina occur in Malaysia where *Pangasius micronemus* may be stocked in combination with lampai (*Barbus schwanenfeldii*) and sepat siam, and, in the Indian state of West Bengal, where *Pangasius larnaudi* and/or *Pangasius sutchi* are cultured on a limited scale

CULTURE OF CLARIAS *SPP IN THAILAND*

One of the most widely distributed catfish families is the Clariidae, members of which are found throughout southeast Asia the Indian subcon

FRY REARING

The larvae absorb their yolk sacs after 5 days at which time they are transferred to earthen ponds about 3 m² in surface area Ponds up to 1 m deep may be used for fry rearing, but best results are obtained in water 10 to 18 cm deep Fry may be stocked very heavily—5000 to 6000/m²—for the first few weeks of life The best early food is zoo plankton, after 2 or 3 weeks, boiled fish may be added to the diet When the fry reach 1 5 to 10 0 cm in length, they are ready to be stocked in production ponds

GROWING FOR MARKET

Ponds used in growing *Clarias* spp for market are 100 to 1000 m² in area and 1 to 3 m deep They are prepared for stocking by firming the banks to discourage climbing or burrowing, and by erecting a fence about 50 cm high around each pond If a small amount of water is allowed to continually run into the middle of the pond at the surface, the fish may be discouraged from digging into the bottom

Fry in production ponds are stocked at about 180/m² and fed on ground trash fish, mixed with rice bran at a ratio of about 9 1 For the last 15 days of growth the feed formula is changed to a 17 2 1 mixture of ground trash fish, broken rice and rice bran Fertilization, with about 30 kg of farmyard manure per 100 m², is carried out only if growth is poor

By use of these methods, three crops of *C batrachus* may be annually grown to marketable size (about 26 5 cm and 145 g) Thai culturists thus achieve an average survival rate of 37%, a 5 to 6 1 food conversion ratio, and the tremendous annual yield of 97,000 kg/ha

CULTURE OF CLARIID, PLOTOSID, AND SILURID CATFISHES ELSEWHERE IN AUSTRALASIA

CLARIIDS

In Cambodia, *C batrachus* is grown in cages like *Pangasius* spp, but on a smaller scale *C batrachus* is sometimes stocked as a minor component of polyculture systems in ponds and rice fields in India, Pakistan, Malaysia, Vietnam, and the Philippines. Only in the Philippines is it occasionally fed, on trash fish and small shrimp and in none of these countries is it intensively cultured

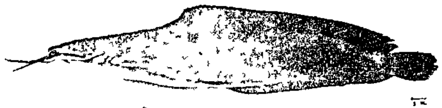


PLATE 2 *Clarias macrocephalus* (Gunther) (Courtesy Royal Thai Department of Fisheries)

Fry are collected in hand nets from May to October, generally 2000 to 15,000 fry are collected from a nest. About 50 million fry are collected annually in this manner

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Collection of naturally produced fry, extensive though it is, cannot provide enough stock for commercial culture Accordingly, Thai fishery officials have undertaken, with considerable success, to spawn *Clarias* spp in captivity As early as the mid 1950s it proved possible to spawn *C batrachus* by methods similar to those used in spawning channel catfish in the United States In place of the metal or wooden containers used to spawn channel catfish, horizontal holes, 20 to 35 cm in diameter, were dug in the bank a little over 1 m apart, and aquatic plants were provided nearby. About 80% of the pairs stocked near such holes spawned within 7 to 10 days, yielding 2000 to 5500 fry per spawning

C macrocephalus was induced to spawn by means of pituitary injection Single intramuscular injections of 100- to 190-g fish with 13 to 26 mg of pituitary extract per kilogram at 25 to 32°C produced spawning within 14 to 16 hours in 60 to 80% of cases, even when the breeders were placed in small aquaria

Fertilized eggs are placed in shallow troughs and jars, where hatching takes place within 20 hours at 26 to 33°C The water should be changed twice daily and fungused eggs removed as soon as they are detected.

sexed by observing the shape of the urogenital papilla, but details of sexing are not known to us

SILURIDS

Traditional Chinese fish culture methods make no use of catfish, but the native Silurid catfish *Parasilurus asotus* is sometimes included in pond communities in Taiwan, and the possibility of its culture, as well as that of the Bagrid catfish *Pseudobagrus fulvidraco*, is being studied in main land China

Another Asian Silurid, *Wallagonia attu*, sometimes called ' freshwater shark" because of its high dorsal fin, is sometimes used in low intensity fish culture in reservoirs and swamps in Pakistan *W attu* is not stocked in ponds because of its extremely voracious and piscivorous feeding habits *Ompok bimaculatus*, which is occasionally stocked in ponds, has been artificially spawned by means of injections of cyprinid pituitary extract

CULTURE OF SILURIS GLANIS *IN EUROPE*

A Silurid catfish which has been more thoroughly studied is the sheatfish (*Siluris glanis*), native to many of the large rivers of Europe Sheatfish have occasionally been used as predators to control excess reproduction in pond culture of various fishes in Europe, but it is only in the last few years that they have been bred on a large scale, first in Hungary, then in Yugoslavia and Czechoslovakia

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Sheatfish spawners may be obtained from rivers or they may be overwintered in running water in 300 to 800 m² storage basins 1 0 to 1 5 m deep In the latter case, 30 to 40 kg of small fish must be provided monthly as food for each 100 kg of sheatfish The storage basins may double as spawning ponds, but the fish must be segregated by sex in the spring, before the spawning season, as soon as the water temperature reaches 12 to 14°C The sexes may be distinguished externally by the shape of the genital papilla, which is narrow, pointed, and nipplelike in males and wide and rounded in females

When the water temperature reaches 20°C, the basins to be used for spawning are filled to a depth of 1 0 to 1 2 m and artificial spawning nests are constructed The first step in constructing a sheatfish spawning nest is to bind three 1 8 to 2 0 m sticks together to form a tripod, whose

The highly productive culture of *Pangasius* spp and *Clarias batrachus* in Thailand and Cambodia along with the recent culture of the channel catfish in the United States has already sparked interest in culture of catfishes native to other regions In the United Arab Republic, biologists at the Fish Culture Research Station at El Kanatir, El Khairia, are experimenting with culture of *Clarias lazera* They have solved the problems of large scale spawning and have developed an artificial feed, made of dried liver, dried vegetables, yeast, and other ingredients which has enabled them to rear substantial numbers of fry past the stage where cannibalism is a serious threat At present they are capable of producing fair amounts of edible sized fish, but only with high rates of stocking and feeding Experiments conducted at the Serrow Fish Farm indicate that polyculture of *C lazera* with common carp and *Tilapia* spp would result in better yields than are presently achieved through monoculture of carp, the prevailing mode of fish culture in the UAR

Another member of the Clariidae, *Heteropneustes fossilis*, has been cultured for some time in Pakistan Indian biologists have recently shown an interest in the species, and have had some success with artificially induced spawning

PLOTOSIDS

Two estuarine species of the Australasian catfish family Plotosidae, *Plotosus anguillaris* and *Plotosus canius*, occur as incidental fishes in Indonesian tambak culture of milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) (see Chapter 17), and another Plotosid, the freshwater *Tandanus tandanus*, is sometimes marketed as a food fish in Australia There are no established fish culture enterprises of any magnitude in Australia, but when the possibility of freshwater pond culture is suggested *T tandanus* always figures in the speculations Experiments carried out at the Inland Fisheries Research Station Narrandera New South Wales, indicate that this catfish can easily be kept and bred in small ponds It is a nest building species, and for this purpose gravel should be provided though it will spawn, with much less success on a mud bottom It seems to be necessary that the water temperature be at least 24°C for the fish to engage in reproductive behavior Spawning which has been observed in 0 5 to 1 2 m of water, may be accelerated by a slight rise in the water level but this is not a necessary condition A subsequent drop in the water level will cause the abandonment of nests One or both parent fish guard the nest until after hatching but it is likely that, as is the case with many species exhibiting similar behavior in nature, parental care would prove unnecessary in intensive culture, where predators are excluded It is said that *T tandanus* can be

will be suggested One accidental introduction has already occurred in Florida, where *Clarias batrachus*, the albino form of which is commonly brought into the United States as an aquarium fish, has become acclimated Ecologists and sport fishermen tend to view the "walking catfish" as a destructive force in the Florida ecosystem and hope to limit its spread Local fish culturists, who have on occasion seen their channel catfish undersold by imported catfishes, also have a negative opinion of *C batrachus* However, recently Fred Meyer of the United States Fish and Wildlife Service has admitted that "Exotic fish such as *Clarias* and *Pangasius*, African and Asian catfishes, though in disrepute at the moment, could conceivably replace the channel catfish "

The fears of sportsmen and ecologists seem well grounded, and it is recommended that introductions of exotic catfishes, in the United States and elsewhere, be undertaken cautiously, if at all On the other hand, there is no reason not to follow the example of the Hungarian sheatfish culturists and proceed energetically in exploring the possibilities of culture of native catfishes throughout the world

REFERENCES

BOONBRAHM, M W TARACHALANUKIT and W CHUAPHOHAK 1966 Induced spawning by pituitary injection of pla sawai, *Pangasius pangasius* (Hamilton) in captivity Kasetsart J 6(3 4) 97–110 (In Thai with English summary)

HORA S L, and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook of fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper, No 14 204 pp

INOUE, K and S SWEGMAN 1970 Economic survey on cat fish culture in Suphanburi Province, Thailand Thai Fisheries Gazette, Dept of Fisheries Bangkok Thailand 23(2) 251–269

LAKE, J S 1967 Rearing experiments with 5 species of Australian freshwater fishes Aust J Mar Fresh Water Res 18 137–153

LING, S W A SIDTHIMUNKA, and S PINYEYING 1965 On the induced spawning of Pla Sawai, *Pangasius sutchi* Proc Indo Pac Fish Comm 12(II) 244–252

MEYER F 1969 Where do we go from here? Am Fish Farmer, 1(1) 25

PONGSUWANA U, and V VARIKUL 1962 Morphological differences among the fry of 3 species of catfish *Pangasius sutchi*, *Pangasius larnaudi*, and *Pangasius macronemus* Proceedings of the Indo Pacific Fisheries Council 10th Session Section II

SIDTHIMUNKA, A J SANGLERT, and O PAWAPOOTANEN 1966 The culture of catfish (*Clarias* spp) in Thailand FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E 1

WOYNAROVICH, E 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in Europe FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII IV/R 3

Interviews and Personal Communication

ZELDAM U T Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East Mekong Committee Bangkok, Thailand

legs are inserted in the pond bottom Roots of willow or alder or twigs or pine or thuya are suspended from these frames to collect the adhesive eggs Mats made of reeds are placed under the collectors to salvage eggs that fail to attach The number of nests placed in each spawning basin, usually 2 to 4, corresponds to the number of pairs of sheatfish stocked The spawners are placed in the basin the same day it is filled, and spawning usually occurs within a few days, if not the following night

The nests are checked daily from a small boat Those that contain eggs are removed and the twigs and mats, with eggs attached, are hung on wires and suspended in covered hatching crates 150 cm × 50 cm × 60 cm deep, made of 0 5 to 0 8 mm mesh perlon The loaded crates each containing 30,000 to 50,000 eggs, are affixed next to the inflow pipe in storage basins similar to those used in overwintering and spawning Hatching occurs in about 60 hours at 20 to 22°C The population density of the newly hatched fry is adjusted to 50 to 70/m² Basins containing young fry are provided with ample cover in the form of twigs, reeds, and bricks

REARING FRY AND GROWING FOR MARKET

When, 4 to 5 days after hatching, the fry attain the length of 12 mm they begin feeding At this time it is necessary to provide large amounts of plankton At the age of 10 to 12 days the fry may be switched to a diet of ground fish and scrapings of liver and spleen These foods are presented by smearing them on a black tray or the side of a flowerpot In addition to provision of shelter and heavy feeding, periodic removal of the fastest growing fish is necessary to forestall cannibalism

At the age of 30 to 35 days the 5 to 6-cm sheatfish fingerlings are stocked in ponds at 1500 to 2000/ha A ready supply of food can be assured by spawning common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and tench (*Tinca tinca*) in the pond 15 days before stocking it with sheatfish At the end of their first summer, the young sheatfish weigh 50 to 100 g and are ready for stocking in carp ponds at 50 to 150/ha Most sheatfish are harvested along with the carp at the end of the following summer, at which time they weigh 0 5 to 1 4 kg In some cases enough 2 year olds are left to populate the pond at 35 to 60/ha. These fish are harvested the following fall as 1 5 to 2 0-kg specimens

WORLDWIDE PROSPECTUS OF CATFISH CULTURE

As the success of Asian catfish culturists receives more publicity, it is certain that the transplantation of some of the Asian catfish in other areas

solved oxygen. Indeed, so dependent have they become on the labyrinth that if denied access to atmospheric air and forced to rely entirely on their gills for respiration, they will "drown."

The anabantids are also unusual among freshwater fish by virtue of producing floating eggs Typically, the eggs are deposited in a nest built of air bubbles produced by the male and preserved by a hardened secretion of the mouth. Some labyrinth fishes, including three of the five cultured food species, do not construct bubble nests but indiscriminately scatter their eggs or construct nests solely of plant materials.

THE GOURAMI

NATURAL HISTORY AND DISTRIBUTION

The largest, and probably the most important of the anabantids is the gourami (*Osphronemus goramy*), which reaches a maximum length of about 65 cm. The gourami builds a submerged nest of pieces of plant material in about 30 cm of water. The eggs are of approximately the same specific gravity as water and remain in the nest, which is sealed by the parents after spawning. Hatching time is variously reported in the literature at from 30 hours to 30 days. Certainly the shorter time periods seem more likely for a tropical animal. The larvae float belly up for 5 days before feeding begins. In large bodies of water, gouramis apparently breed mostly during the dry season, but in ponds they may spawn at any time of year.

The gourami is an excellent food fish, which has attracted the attention of European fish culturists and has been introduced unsuccessfully to France. Introductions nearer to its native Indonesia have proven more successful, and *O. goramy* is now cultured throughout southeast Asia and in China, India, Ceylon, and the Philippines.

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Very simple breeding techniques are used in India and the Philippines. Ripe breeders are simply stocked in large ponds, 1.5 m or more in depth, with a good marginal growth of such plants as *Typha*, and nature is allowed to take its course. Ripe fish may be distinguished by their full, rounded bellies, the reddish color of the fins, and, in males, thickened lips.

More specialized spawning methods are used in Indonesia, particularly in western Java. In many cases, gourami spawning ponds double as

8

Culture of Labyrinth Fishes (Family Anabantidae)

Several species of labyrinth fishes (family Anabantidae) are widely cultured in Asia, often in conjunction with freshwater shrimp or other fishes Monoculture of anabantid fishes also occurs, and this practice, along with their unique environmental adaptations and spawning behavior, dictate that they be treated separately

The Anabantidae are differentiated from all other fish by possession of a unique accessory air breathing organ, the labyrinth, located on either side of the gill chamber As is the case with other air breathing fish the labyrinth fishes are capable of surviving in waters nearly devoid of dis-

Changing the water involves holding down the eggs with a fine sieve and bailing from above This is exceedingly laborious, particularly when many jars are involved, so labor saving methods have been sought Several adaptations of the jar method, involving circulating water in the hatching chambers, have been suggested but, as far as is known, not applied

Fish farmers in Singaparna, Java, have successfully applied a circulating system which completely dispenses with hatching containers Nests are opened and the contents, along with the nest fragments, scattered on the surface of small, flowing water ponds similar to those used in spawning nilem (see pp 101–102) Straw is also scattered over the pond surface to prevent the eggs from sticking together About 6 m² of pond surface are required for each nest

FRY REARING

The young gouramis feed on zooplankton, which develop naturally in the decaying nest, until they are about 10 days old and 1 cm long At this time, they are captured, usually by draining, and stocked in rearing ponds at rates of 1 nest/40 to 200 m² The best food at this stage is white ants, which are given at the rate of 1 teacup/(nest)(day), twice as much peanut waste is an acceptable substitute Fry about 3 cm long may be thus obtained in about 3 months Such fish may be sold for stocking, but if the fry must be transported long distances, lengths of 5 to 8 cm are desirable For growing to this size, the fry are transferred into larger rearing ponds, allowing about 3200 m² for the progeny of one nest The primary food at this time is the floating plant *Azolla pinnata*, supplemented after the second month by minced plant leaves The desired size may thus be reached in about 5 months

The methods described could be improved For example, at the Jabasso fish hatchery in West Irian, Indonesia, a floating fry chamber has been designed and tested The combination of this chamber and intensive fertilization of rearing ponds with cattle manure has enabled workers there to achieve a reported 100% survival of larvae Methods of induced spawning of gourami are also being perfected

SEPAT SIAM AND THREE-SPOT GOURAMI

In Indonesia the word "gurami" is applied only to *Osphronemus goramy*, and properly speaking, the term in all its variant spellings, should

rearing ponds for fry of nilem (*Osteochilus hasselti*) tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*) and common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), which may be stocked before or after spawning Such ponds are at least 700 m² in surface area and planted with *Hydrilla verticillata* to bind the bottom soil and provide shelter for the fishes *H verticillata* is not suitable as a nest building material so artificial substitutes for marginal plants are provided by driving branching stems of bamboo into the pond bottom where the depth is 70 cm or more Bunches of indjuk palm (*Arenga saccharifera*) fibers or bamboo sticks are loosely fastened in the crotches of the stems about 20 cm below the surface, for use by the fish Stems are placed about 5 m apart, with one being provided for each female gourami stocked

Before being introduced to spawning ponds, brood fish are stored in ponds about 50 cm deep and conditioned on soft plant leaves, soft fruit, and rice bran Leaves of *Carica* and *Colocasia* are believed to be especially good for this purpose

Female spawners are stocked at 1/100 to 150 m² of water surface Generally two males are provided for every three females, but this ratio may be altered if significant numbers of very large males are present Although both sexes of gourami are believed to reach maturity at about 1½ years of age, the preferred age for spawners varies locally from 4 to 8 years

Nest building, followed by spawning, usually occurs within a few days of stocking The first indications of spawning are a fishy smell and an oily substance emanating from the nest

Smaller ponds about 100 m² in area, stocked only with gourami, may be used for both conditioning and spawning Nest building materials are provided as described and 10 females and 5 males stocked per pond The breeders fed on leaves of *Carica, Colocasia*, and other soft plants at 5 kg/(pond)(day) plus 4 liters of rice bran twice weekly, generally begin nest building in about 10 days and spawn 3 days later

In some parts of Java the nests are removed from the ponds and the eggs hatched artificially This has the advantage of permitting more frequent utilization of the spawning pond by fresh brood fish Nests are opened underwater in 10 liter earthenware jars, filled to 75 to 80% of capacity which serve as hatching chambers Each nest contains 3000 to 4000 eggs which are distributed among 3 or 4 jars Jars of eggs are kept cool by placing them in the shade or floating them in the pond At first the water in the jars must be changed very frequently to remove all the oily substance from the eggs, even after this has been eliminated there should be one complete change of water daily Hatching reportedly takes about 10 days

KISSING GOURAMI

The kissing gourami (*Helostoma temmincki*) so named because of its habit of puckering its thick lips and kissing other individuals of its species as well as other fishes plants, and inanimate objects, is native to Thailand, Vietnam, the Malay Peninsula, and the western islands of the East Indies The kissing behavior apparently has no sexual function, some observers believe it to be a threat display The kissing gourami has been introduced and cultured in Celebes, Ceylon, and the Philippines It reaches a maximum length of about 30 cm and matures at 20 cm, or 12 to 18 months of age

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Spawning this species which scatters free floating eggs rather than building a nest, is a bit more difficult than breeding bubble nest builders Kissing gouramis are bred in special ponds and in modified rice fields Spawning ponds are 50 to 80 cm deep and 30 to 100 m^2 in surface area, the larger sizes are preferable The best results are obtained at elevations of 200 to 700 m above sea level but kissing gouramis are also spawned at low elevations Wherever they are located ponds must be supplied with an abundance of clear water so that dead and decaying plankton can be flushed out The outlet must be supplied with sieves to prevent eggs being washed out during such operations

Before introducing the spawners, ponds are drained and dried for a week and the bottom or, in the case of large ponds selected parts thereof covered with damp paddy straw When the pond is filled, the straw floats and protects the eggs and larvae from rain and sun

While the spawning pond is being prepared, brood fish are held in 4-m^2 conditioning ponds about 60 cm deep Each such pond contains about 40 fish, which are held for 30 to 40 days and fed regularly with rice bran

Kissing gouramis are spawned as soon as they reach sexual maturity and at 6 month intervals thereafter They are short lived fish and can generally be bred only about five times Breeders are stocked at about 1 pair/30 to 50 m^2, when the pond is about ⅔ full If the males are appreciably smaller, more may be stocked so that the total weights of the sexes are approximately equal The start of spawning is indicated by a characteristic fishy odor, it usually takes place within 18 hours of stocking most often in the early morning Sometimes some of the eggs are eaten by the parents an abundance of vegetable food in the pond may be of value in reducing the incidence of such behavior Pond spawning may

probably be used only to refer to that species Aquarists, however, designate a number of Asian anabantids, belonging to at least six genera, as "gouramis" Three of these species the snakeskin gourami (*Trichogaster pectoralis*) the three spot gourami (*Trichogaster trichopterus*), and the kissing gourami (*Helostoma temmincki*), are also cultured as food fishes The snakeskin gourami is better known among food fish culturists as Sepat Siam, and we so refer to it, the other two species will be designated by the names just given

DISTRIBUTION AND IMPORTANCE

Both species of *Trichogaster* are typical bubble nest builders, and thus spawn chiefly during the dry season Of the two, the Sepat Siam, native to Thailand, South Vietnam, and the Malay Peninsula, is the larger, attaining a maximum length of about 25 cm, and the more important It has been introduced and cultured to some extent in the Philippines, Indonesia, Burma, Pakistan, and Ceylon, but it is still much more prevalent in its native lands The natural distribution of the three spot gourami, which reaches only 15 cm in length, covers roughly the same area as that of the Sepat Siam, plus some of the western islands of Indonesia A blue subspecies *Trichogaster trichopterus sumatranus*, native to Sumatra, is popular among aquarists, who refer to it as the "blue gourami," but is not grown as a food fish Unlike the Sepat Siam, the three spot gourami is almost never reared as a principal crop, it is a species of secondary importance in Thailand, Vietnam, and Malaysia

PROPAGATION

Breeding of Sepat Siam is simple, all that is necessary is a well oxygenated pond containing a rich growth of aquatic vegetation, particularly *Hydrilla verticillata* The natural spawning season in Thailand is April to October, but it may be bred in ponds at any time as long as the water temperature is 26 to 28°C Conditioning of the 100-g breeders in the manner described for *Osphronemus goramy*, is desirable but not essential Hatching occurs in 24 to 48 hours, and within 3 to 7 days the fry have absorbed the yolk sac The fry are reared in the spawning pond where they feed on plankton

Three spot gouramis are not intentionally bred by culturists but are allowed to reproduce naturally in ponds and rice fields where other species of fish are cultured There are reportedly two spawning seasons in western Java, one each at the beginning and end of the rainy season but some authorities state that it spawns in every month

CLIMBING PERCH

The climbing perch (*Anabas testudineus*), native to India, all of southeast Asia, Indonesia, the Philippines, and southern China, makes particularly extensive use of its air breathing apparatus It may leave the water, particularly during rainstorms, and prowl about on land, aided by the stiff edges of its opercula If its home pond dries up, it may walk to another body of water or burrow into the mud and remain dormant through the dry season

As one might expect, fish farmers take no particular pains to care for a species that may walk away Although climbing perch are of minor importance in fresh and brackish water fish culture in Cambodia, Viet nam, and the Philippines, particularly in areas where low temperatures are a problem, nowhere are they bred by culturists Natural spawning, which proceeds as described for the kissing gourami, requires temperatures of 25 to 29°C and is reportedly confined to the rainy season, although several spawnings are said to occur each year in Ceylon

USE OF ANABANTIDS IN FOOD PRODUCTION

MONOCULTURE

As mentioned, the chief uses of labyrinth fishes are in polyculture, but some monoculture occurs, particularly in stagnant waters which will not support other fish Monoculture of kissing gourami in manured ponds has resulted in average annual yields of 500 kg/ha, that of Sepat Siam, 250 to 350 kg/ha *Osphronemus goramy* is a very slow growing fish, often requiring 2 to 3 years to reach marketable size, thus it yields only about 200 kg/(ha)(year) The low yield is, however, partially compensated by its high price The climbing perch is occasionally stocked alone in cages in Cambodia (see p 209 for a description of this technique), but yield data are not available

Recently, higher yields have been effected in rice field fish culture in Smudprakarn province, Thailand, through monoculture of Sepat Siam Fields are prepared by excavating a ditch 3 m wide and 1 m deep along the dikes and manuring the field with cut grass Sepat Siam breeders are stocked at 375/ha and fed periodically with cut grass Breeders and young are harvested 9 to 10 months later, with yields of 600 to 1600 kg/ha

POLYCULTURE

Polyculture must, of course, be based on a knowledge of the foods of fish Among the cultured anabantids, the climbing perch is the only

be carried out in conjunction with spawning of Mata Merah (*Barbus orphoides*) (see p 104)

Rice field propagation of kissing gouramis is done shortly after the rice is harvested, in fields where the dikes have been reinforced so that the water can be maintained at a depth of 30 cm The procedures followed are basically the same as for pond spawning, but paddy straw need not be added, since it is present naturally

FRY REARING

The eggs hatch in about 2 days and the larvae float on the surface for 3 to 4 days, after which they move into deep water Starting 7 to 10 days after hatching, the pond is manured with decaying plants, animal manure, or a mixture thereof Green manures are applied at about 0 5 to 2 0 kg/ha, animal manures at half this rate Half of the total quantity is applied on the eighth day after the eggs hatch, the remainder is added in 5 to 10 kg lots every 2 to 3 days The culturist must be careful not to overfertilize and pollute the pond If this is inadvertently done, part of the water must be drained off and replaced immediately The water should be bright green and the fry move vigorously at all times, brown water and sluggish fry are danger signals Some culturists stock fry of common carp or nilem after the kissing gouramis have hatched as an additional barometer of water quality, the pond then doubles as a cyprinid rearing pond Abnormal mortalities of cyprinid fry indicate that partial replacement of the water is imperative Usual stocking rates are 5 to 10 2 week-old common carp or 15 to 50 5-day-old nilem/m^2

Month-old fry are harvested, by draining, for sale or stocking to grow for market. Where common carp or nilem fry are present, a special technique is employed to separate them from the kissing gouramis With the pond partially drained, a ditch about 50 cm wide and 10 cm deep is dug from the inlet to a 4 m^2 sump near the outlet When drainage is resumed all the fry are collected in the sump Then a second sump is dug in the center of the pond, and a small amount of water let in The carp or nilem fry swim upstream and congregate in the second sump, while the kissing gouramis stay in the original sump The few carp or nilem fry which remain with the kissing gouramis will come to the surface when the water is stirred and may then be skimmed off

Spawned-out breeders are stocked in large ponds at 1 to 4 fish/m^2 to recuperate If the population density is relatively low, fertilization with animal manure may be all that is necessary to provide food for the convalescent fish but if it is high, an amount of rice bran equivalent to 1 kg for each 24 fish should be given twice daily

9

Culture of Pikes and Perches

The larger members of the pike family (Esocidae) and the perch family (Percidae), though not related, are similar in being elongate, largely piscivorous fishes of holarctic distribution. From an economic point of view, they are all valued as sources of food and sport, with the perches of somewhat higher quality as food, while the pikes offer superior sport. Representatives of both families are thus cultured in Europe and North America, both for sale and for stocking to augment sport and commercial fisheries.

PIKES

SPECIES CULTURED

The pikes yielded sooner than the perches to the efforts of culturists to artificially propagate and rear them, and thus have a longer history of

habitual carnivore, deriving about 70% of its nourishment from animal matter, mostly invertebrates. It is somewhat of an opportunist, however, and in captivity has been observed to accept a wide variety of food, from lettuce and rice to white ants and dead fish. The gourami browses in nature on floating plants and overhanging leaves of terrestrial plants. In culture, it is fed chiefly on soft leaves of aquatic and terrestrial plants, with occasional helpings of animal food. The Sepat Siam and three-spot gourami feed on both phytoplankton and zooplankton, as well as decayed algae and higher plants; supplemental feeds are exclusively vegetable, consisting chiefly of aquatic plants. The kissing gourami is by nature a surface and midwater plankton feeder, but will accept such artificial feeds as rice bran and starch of cassava roots.

Anabantids are most often stocked as minor components of polyculture systems based on Chinese carps in southeast Asia (see Chapter 3) or Indian carps in India, Pakistan, and Ceylon (see Chapter 4). In Malaysia and Thailand, kissing gouramis, Sepat Siam, and three-spot gouramis are also stocked together with fresh water shrimp (see Chapter 32). The only important polyculture system based largely on an anabantid fish is applied in Malaysia and Singapore, where a combination of Sepat Siam, common carp, Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*), and lampai (*Barbus schwanenfeldii*) or tawes is an alternative to the usual Chinese carp complex.

Experimental polyculture involving labyrinth fishes is proceeding in a number of Asian nations. For instance the College of Fisheries, Kasetsart University, Thailand, has obtained good preliminary results with 1:1 and 2:1 ratios of Java tilapia and Sepat Siam. Such experiments may eventually result in expansion of the role of the labyrinth fishes in Asian aquaculture.

REFERENCES

Esox, P. 1931. Vom "Sepat" (*Trichogaster trichopterus*). Blatt Aquar-Terrarienk. 42(1): 4–7.

Hofstede, A. E., R. O. Ardiwinata, and F. Botke. 1953. Fish culture in Indonesia. Special Publication of the Indo Pacific Fisheries Council, No. 2. 129 pp.

Hora, S. L., and T. V. R. Pillay. 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo-Pacific region. FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper No. 14. 204 pp.

Sterba, G. 1966. Fresh Water Fishes of the World. Viking Press, New York.

9

Culture of Pikes and Perches

The larger members of the pike family (Esocidae) and the perch family (Percidae), though not related, are similar in being elongate, largely piscivorous fishes of holarctic distribution. From an economic point of view, they are all valued as sources of food and sport, with the perches of somewhat higher quality as food, while the pikes offer superior sport. Representatives of both families are thus cultured in Europe and North America, both for sale and for stocking to augment sport and commercial fisheries.

PIKES

SPECIES CULTURED

The pikes yielded sooner than the perches to the efforts of culturists to artificially propagate and rear them, and thus have a longer history of

habitual carnivore, deriving about 70% of its nourishment from animal matter, mostly invertebrates It is somewhat of an opportunist, however, and in captivity has been observed to accept a wide variety of food, from lettuce and rice to white ants and dead fish The gourami browses in nature on floating plants and overhanging leaves of terrestrial plants In culture, it is fed chiefly on soft leaves of aquatic and terrestrial plants with occasional helpings of animal food The Sepat Siam and three spot gourami feed on both phytoplankton and zooplankton, as well as decayed algae and higher plants, supplemental feeds are exclusively vegetable, consisting chiefly of aquatic plants The kissing gourami is by nature a surface and midwater plankton feeder, but will accept such artificial feeds as rice bran and starch of cassava roots

Anabantids are most often stocked as minor components of polyculture systems based on Chinese carps in southeast Asia (see Chapter 3) or Indian carps in India, Pakistan, and Ceylon (see Chapter 4) In Malaysia and Thailand, kissing gouramis, Sepat Siam, and three spot gouramis are also stocked together with fresh water shrimp (see Chapter 32) The only important polyculture system based largely on an anabantid fish is applied in Malaysia and Singapore, where a combination of Sepat Siam, common carp Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*), and lampai (*Barbus schwanenfeldii*) or tawes is an alternative to the usual Chinese carp complex.

Experimental polyculture involving labyrinth fishes is proceeding in a number of Asian nations For instance the College of Fisheries, Kasetsart University, Thailand, has obtained good preliminary results with 1 1 and 2 1 ratios of Java tilapia and Sepat Siam Such experiments may eventually result in expansion of the role of the labyrinth fishes in Asian aquaculture

REFERENCES

ESOX P 1931 Vom "Sepat (*Trichogaster trichopterus*) Blatt Aquar Terrarienk 42(1) 4–7

HOFSTEDE A E R. O ARDIWINATA and F BOTKE 1953 Fish culture in Indonesia Special Publication of the Indo Pacific Fisheries Council No 2 129 pp

HORA S L. and T V R. PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper No 14 204 pp

STERBA G 1966 Fresh Water Fishes of the World Viking Press New York

It is at this stage that the culturist's problems begin. Young pike are carnivorous and voracious from the start, and an abundance of food must be available to them at all times. For the first few days, zooplankton is satisfactory, but once the fry reach a length of 4 to 5 cm, smaller fish must be constantly supplied. Even with a great abundance of food, cannibalism is so prevalent as to be the chief economic limiting factor in pike culture. Under good conditions, the survivorship of fry stocked in the spring at the rather conservative rate of 2000 to 2500/ha may be expected to amount to only 2 to 5% by fall.

STOCKING NORTHERN PIKE IN POLYCULTURE

As indicated, when pike are stocked by culturists it is always as predators in a polyculture system. This function is especially important in such countries as France and Yugoslavia, where such small cyprinids as the roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) and the tench (*Tinca tinca*) are commonly cultured in ponds where common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) are the chief crop. Stocking rates and yields representative of French practices are given in Table 1.

TABLE 1 STOCKING RATE OF NORTHERN PIKE AND CYPRINID FISHES IN POLYCULTURE PONDS IN FRANCE

SPECIES	WEIGHT AT STOCKING (G)	STOCKING RATE PER HECTARE	YIELD (KG/HA)
Common carp	150–240	250	60
Roach and/or tench	100	200	55
Northern pike	100	15	10
Total			125

The roach and tench may be eliminated, but even in carp-pike ponds, pike seldom exceed 10% of the total fish population. Growth of pike in ponds is generally good; in the Ukraine they may reach a weight of 800 g at the end of the first summer.

In most European countries, the pike is gradually being replaced as a pond predator by other fish which are more economical to propagate and rear to fingerling size and, in some cases, bring better prices. Among these are the sheatfish (*Siluris glanis*), the largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*), the rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) and the common pike perch or zander (*Lucioperca lucioperca*). Another percid fish, the European perch (*Perca fluviatilis*), has on occasion been stocked, but it is not large

culture By far the most commonly cultured pike is the northern pike (*Esox lucius*), which may reach weights of more than 20 kg in nature Although, as mentioned the Esocidae and Percidae are holarctic, the northern pike is the only holarctic species in either family, ranging as far south as Iran in the Eastern hemisphere, and Missouri in the Western hemisphere In North America it is cultivated almost exclusively as a game fish but in Europe pike have long been stocked in carp ponds to control excess reproduction

An even larger pike, the muskellunge (*Esox masquinongy*), which has a rather limited distribution in the eastern United States and Canada, is cultured as a sport fish but is unsuited to pond life and will probably never be important as a food fish

Another American pike, the chain pickerel (*Esox niger*), though of considerable importance to anglers is not presently cultured However, as it is by nature a pond dweller and attains relatively small sizes (maximum 5 kg average taken by anglers less than 1 kg), it should be considered by American fish culturists for a role similar to that played by the northern pike in Europe

Yet another pike, the Amur pike (*Esox reicherti*) is presently being considered for use as a predator in fish ponds in China *E reicherti* is presently confined to the Amur River basin and Sakhalin Island, but in 1968 it was imported by the United States Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife from the Soviet Union for purposes of breeding Its habits are little known but it is difficult to see what niche it could occupy, in nature or culture that is not already satisfactorily filled by one of the three large American species of *Esox*

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION AND REARING OF NORTHERN PIKE

An ancient European method of pike culture involves the artificial flooding of alpine meadows in the spring Pike enter and spawn naturally, after which the meadows are left flooded until the young reach fingerling stage Then they are captured and used for stocking Modern techniques of propagation of the northern pike have been largely standardized and vary little from place to place Essentially the same methods are used with muskellunge and presumably they could be adapted to other pikes

Brood stock are collected, usually from the wild, in the spring when water temperatures reach about 10°C Eggs and sperm may be extruded without application of hormones and they may be fertilized using the dry method (see p 400) Without exception the jar method (discussed in Chapter 3) is used in hatching, this requires about 2 weeks As soon as the fry are washed out of the jars they are collected and stocked in ponds

Some culturists in East Germany and Yugoslavia are able to produce fingerlings at a profit through natural spawning in ponds. One female and 1 or 2 male pike-perch/ha are stocked in the spring and left untended.

In some instances pituitary injection may be resorted to (see p. 85 for details of this technique), in which case smaller concrete spawning basins may be used. Both sexes are injected, and spawning follows in 1 to 3 days after stocking in the basins.

Pike-perch eggs in nests may be covered with a wet cloth and transported overland for several hours, if necessary. When packed in crates with wet moss and ice, the travel time may be extended to several days.

The old method of hatching involves suspension of the nests in ponds at a depth of 0.5 m with the covered egg surface facing downward. Nests may be so suspended directly into ponds containing one- and two-summer-old carp, in which case they should be covered with a fine mesh wire shield to prevent predation. The number of eggs in a pike-perch nest reportedly varies from 20,000 to 200,000, although natural fecundity ranges from 200,000 to 1 million. Enough nests should be stocked so that there are 1000 to 2000 eggs/ha.

Better hatching rates may be obtained by use of the Woynarovich method in which the nests are placed in chambers and exposed to a continuous foglike spray of water at 1 to 4 atm. From 30 to 60 nests can be placed in each cubic meter of sprayed space; at 10° the eggs hatch in 11 days.

Walleye spawners used in culture are usually captured and stripped during their spawning migrations; pituitary injection is seldom or never used. The jar method of hatching is employed and requires 7 to 8 days at 17 to 20°C, or 14 days at 10°C.

FRY REARING

Pike-perch may be stocked in carp ponds at the egg stage. Some culturists, however, prefer to stock fry or fingerlings. Although young pike-perch are not as prone to cannibalism as pike, in general they present the same problems to the culturist. In addition, they are quite fragile with respect to handling. Rearing is carried out in ponds so fertilized as to produce an abundance of zooplankton. Under optimum conditions fingerlings reach 12 to 25 cm in length and weigh 30 to 100 g at the end of their first summer. Culturists in West Germany aim for more and smaller (6 to 10 cm) fingerlings.

European techniques of pond fertilization for rearing pike-perch fry and fingerlings are far from perfected, and experiments conducted with walleye by the Minnesota Department of Conservation at Waterville,

enough to be a really effective predator thus despite its excellent quality as a food fish its future in aquaculture is doubtful

PIKE PERCH AND WALLEYE

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Pike perch and the very similar walleye (*Stizostedion vitreum*) of North America have been artificially propagated since the late nineteenth century but spawning and rearing were inefficient processes until the 1960s when methods especially suited to these species were developed Today pike perch fry and fingerlings are readily available in many European countries and fish farmers are stocking them increasingly in place of northern pike In addition to being better food fish pike perch are somewhat preferable to pike by virtue of having a smaller gullet thus enabling the culturist to plant them earlier in the season or at a larger size without danger to his main crop On the other hand pike-perch are less tolerant of high temperatures than are northern pike. They are also reputed to be very intolerant of turbidity but fish farming experience in Hungary long ago indicated otherwise

Advances in the culture of the pike perch in Europe have been paralleled by improvements in walleye culture in North America Walleye are not used in pond culture but are stocked in lakes and streams to augment sport and in a few waters commercial fisheries Pike perch are similarly stocked in East Germany France and the Soviet Union

Spawning of pike perch in captivity usually entails the use of artificial nests As originally developed in Hungary these nests are made of willow or alder roots collected during winter and tied in thin layers onto a 50-cm × 50-cm frame The frame is weighted to sink it and lines are tied to the four corners so that the nest may be removed from the water in a level position In recent years synthetic materials have begun to supplant the willow and alder roots In recent experiments in Czechoslovakia the best substrate for spawning was found to be nylon shearings with a diameter of 0 2 mm

Pike perch spawning basins are usually 300 to 1000 m^2 in surface area and 1.2 to 1 8 m deep In the spring the basins which have previously been supplied with one nest for each pair of spawners are stocked at the rate of 1 pair/2 to 5 m^2 Breeders are normally 3 years old or older Stocking is not usually done until the water temperature has reached 8 to 9°C and a considerable drop is unlikely

Both lesser and greater amounts of manipulation may be carried out

for two summer olds Thereafter, management is negligible until harvest time

There is no difficulty in harvesting pike-perch separately from carps and other fishes in drainable ponds They are very sensitive to currents and will attempt to escape the pond prior to other species Three-summer old specimens, 37 to 55 cm long, weighing 500 to 1500 g, are normally retained for marketing, while smaller individuals and selected breeders are overwintered

Pike perch which are to be overwintered must be transported and handled carefully in fresh, clean water They should not be stored or carried in the same containers as carp, since their oxygen demands are much greater. Food, in the form of small fish, must be provided through the winter so that cannibalism does not occur; 150 to 250 kg of fish will support 100 kg of pike-perch through the winter

We do not foresee great expansion of the roles of any of the pikes or perches in aquaculture

REFERENCES

DOBIE, J 1966 Experiments in the fertilization of Minnesota fish rearing ponds FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/E-16

STEFFENS, W 1960 Ernahrung und Wachstum des jungen Zanders (*Lucioperca lucio perca*) in Teichen Z Fisch 9(¾) 161–272

UNGER, E 1939 Die Zucht des Zanders in Karpfenteich Wirtschaften und in Freien Gewässern Handb Binnenfisch Mitteleurop 4 723–742

WOYNAROVICH, E 1959 Erbrütung von Fischeiern in Spruhraum Arch Fischwiss 10(3) 179–189

Minnesota may have some bearing on the subject Traditional walleye rearing methods in Minnesota involve fertilization in the spring with organic materials usually barnyard manure The bacteria thus produced are more than sufficient to support an abundance of cladocerans which are the primary food of walleye fry and small fingerlings Growth and survival are thus very good in May and June The single dose of fertilizer is not however adequate to maintain dense populations of the copepods and benthic organisms required by larger fingerlings Manuring through the summer is not the answer as it results in dense growths of algae and other aquatic vegetation Walleye culturists were thus faced with a choice between tolerating a high percentage of cannibalism and premature stocking of small (10 cm) fingerlings which are believed to be significantly more susceptible to predation than 15-cm fish

A large variety of combinations of organic and inorganic fertilizers were tested to see whether pond fertility could be sustained and fingerlings reared through the summer without undesirable side effects or cannibalism Very good results were obtained with a single spring application of dried sheep manure in a quantity sufficient to supply 1 1 kg of nitrogen per 1000 m³ of water Higher rates of fertilization were effective but also resulted in an overabundance of phosphorus Manuring was not repeated but starting in mid June weekly applications of brewer s yeast at 112 kg/ha were made This treatment supported large populations of copepods and benthic animals through late summer The Michigan Department of Conservation is currently attempting to rear walleye fry in sewage ponds which may offer a similar environment

The methods developed in Minnesota would of course have to be adapted to local conditions wherever they were applied Further problems would be presented by the excessive amounts of phosphorus released and the high cost of brewer s yeast. The latter problem might be circumvented if it were known which constituents of brewer s yeast are effective

Minnesota biologists have also been experimenting with alternative means of feeding walleye fry Attempts to confine fry in tanks and pump through water containing large amounts of zooplankton resulted in no feeding whatsoever Attempts to induce walleye fry to accept artificial feed were similarly unsuccessful until 1968 when hatchery workers at New London Minnesota were able to induce feeding on commercial trout pellets by confining 5 to 10 cm fingerlings in small cribs and starving them for 10 days

STOCKING PIKE PERCH IN POLYCULTURE

Pike perch may be stocked in carp ponds at greater densities than pike common rates are 50 to 100/ha for one summer-old fish and 30 to 60/ha

reproduction, and black bass and sunfish are seldom propagated in hatcheries for liberation in streams and lakes. The only important use of Centrarchids in fish culture in North America is in "farm ponds," which are common throughout the United States and in southwestern Ontario, Canada.

The purposes of the farm pond program, which reached a peak of popularity in the 1950s, are to conserve water and wildlife and provide food and recreation for residents of rural areas by encouraging farmers to build small ponds on their property and stock them with fish obtained free of charge from state or federal government agencies.

STOCKING RATES IN FARM PONDS

The traditional farm pond stocking scheme involves only Centrarchids. By far the most commonly stocked species are the largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) and the bluegill (*Lepomis macrochirus*). Bluegills, which are normally stocked at rates varying from 220 to 2200/ha, feed chiefly on invertebrates, but they may also derive some nutrition from algae. Largemouth bass are higher on the food chain and feed exclusively on other animals, usually larger ones than those eaten by bluegills. Bass are stocked at 100 to 200/ha, as necessary to provide fishing and control the bluegill population. In recent years, fishery biologists in a number of locales have begun to recommend the redear sunfish (*Lepomis microlophas*), which has a very low reproductive potential, as a supplement or substitute for the bluegill. In a few ponds, channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) are stocked as an additional source of food and sport. A number of other fish species have been experimentally or accidentally stocked in farm ponds, usually with poor results.

MANAGEMENT AND YIELDS

After construction, stocking, and perhaps an initial dose of fertilizer, management of American farm ponds is virtually nil unless and until it is decided to poison and restock a pond. In practice, most ponds are inadequately fished and otherwise neglected and soon become poor fish producers. Even in ponds which are properly fished, recreation, not food production, is usually emphasized, thus farm ponds are sparingly treated in this volume. (In some ponds in the southern United States, where bluegill are intensively fished by women and children, food and recreation are of approximately equal importance.) Readers seeking more detailed information should consult or contact local sources, such as state conservation departments and university agricultural extension services.

10

Black Bass and Sunfishes (Family Centrarchidae) in Fish Culture

THE FARM POND PROGRAM

The black basses and sunfishes (family Centrarchidae), indigenous to North America, are of virtually no value in commercial fisheries but are extremely popular with sport fishermen, so much so that in some areas their sale as food is forbidden Since most Centrarchids have extremely high reproductive potentials and in fact tend to overpopulate small bodies of water, sport fisheries are sustained mainly on the basis of natural

TABLE 1 AVERAGE GROWTH OF LARGEMOUTH BASS, BLUEGILL, AND REDEAR SUNFISH IN FARM PONDS IN ILLINOIS

SPECIES	AGE (YEARS)	LENGTH (CM)	WEIGHT (KG)
Largemouth bass	1	16.0	0.1
	2	22.9	0.2
	3	29.5	0.3
	4	34.3	0.5
	5	40.1	0.9
	6	44.2	1.1
	7	48.0	1.4
	8	50.3	1.8
	9	51.6	2.2
	10	52.6	2.5
Bluegill	1	8.1	0.01
	2	11.7	0.04
	3	14.5	0.07
	4	16.8	0.09
	5	18.8	0.14
	6	21.3	0.21
Redear sunfish	1	13.2	0.06
	2	16.3	0.11
	3	18.0	0.13
	4	19.8	0.19
	5	23.4	0.28
	6	23.6	0.29
	7	24.1	0.30

largemouth bass fingerlings per hectare to control trash fish. With the development of better methods of excluding trash fish and the almost total replacement of the bigmouth buffalo by the channel catfish, culture of largemouth bass became less important, though some marginal operators may still stock them in catfish ponds.

Largemouth bass and crappies are still stocked, along with channel catfish and bigmouth buffalo, as part of a very low intensity form of culture practiced in natural sloughs (See Chapter 6.) This practice, however, accounts for only a tiny percentage of the annual cultured food fish production of the south central states.

The only centrarchid which has been widely introduced outside North America is the largemouth bass. Today it is much more common in commercial fish culture in Europe than in its native land. It has also been stocked in Latin America and Africa, and in 1965 experimental culture was initiated in Tunisia.

The last decade has seen the formation in the United States and Canada of a considerable number of communes, experimental communities, and other groups which attempt to be more or less self sufficient in terms of food production The great majority of these groups have not attempted fish culture but where it has been considered, polyculture of Centrarchids has been the method proposed, if only because stock is available free of charge It is thus possible that the next decade may see the first attempt to manage largemouth bass bluegill communities or the like as a food resource. Perhaps if this occurs there will be some yield data available for this crude sort of polyculture It has been estimated that average annual production of fish in North American farm ponds is 250 to 450 kg/ha but it is not known how these figures are related to the weight of food fish which could be harvested on a sustained basis A few commercial fish hatcheries particularly in Arkansas, raise edible size centrarchids including largemouth bass bluegill white crappie (*Pomoxis annularis*) and black crappie (*Pomoxis nigromaculatus*) for sale to operators of fee fishing ponds they are able to produce only 44 kg/ha of these fish

GROWTH OF FISH

Growth data for centrarchids are much more readily available than data on production and yield in fact there is an overabundance of such information in the sport fishery literature. Table 1 shows the average growth rate for the three principal farm pond species in Illinois. Growth is affected not only by pond management but by the length of the growing season hence one could generally expect growth to be more rapid south of Illinois and slower to the north

THE LARGEMOUTH BASS AND CRAPPIES IN COMMERCIAL FISH CULTURE

The centrarchids have not been totally neglected by practical and experimental fish culturists in the United States, but the results achieved have thus far been unspectacular In the 1950s when fish culture was just beginning to become a significant industry in the south central states several centrarchids were considered for commercial culture. On the basis of experiments conducted at Auburn University, the bluegill and the flier (*Centrarchus macropterus*) were rejected as unsuited for culture, but interest was retained in the crappies and the largemouth bass

During the period when bigmouth buffalo (*Ictiobus cyprinellus*) were the fish most commonly farmed, it was general practice to stock about 125

would be even more difficult except during the breeding season, when males of most species display brilliant coloration. Fortunately for tilapia culturists, certain hybrids produce all or nearly all male offspring. Not so much attention has been paid to hybridization of *Lepomis* spp.; nevertheless, many of the possible hybrids of the edible size species have already been produced. Of the twelve crosses made thus far, only one, ♀ redear sunfish × ♂ green sunfish (*Lepomis cyanellus*), has produced young with a near-normal sex ratio. The following crosses have produced F_1 generations highly skewed toward males:

♂ green sunfish × ♀ pumpkinseed (*Lepomis gibbosus*)
♀ green sunfish × ♂ pumpkinseed (*Lepomis gibbosus*)
♂ green sunfish × ♀ bluegill
♀ green sunfish × ♂ bluegill
♂ green sunfish × ♀ longear sunfish (*Lepomis megalotus*)
♀ green sunfish × ♂ longear sunfish (*Lepomis megalotus*)
♀ green sunfish × ♂ redear sunfish
♂ bluegill × ♀ redear sunfish
♀ bluegill × ♂ redear sunfish
♂ bluegill × ♀ pumpkinseed
♀ bluegill × ♂ pumpkinseed

Many of these hybrids are of low fertility, if not sterile, rendering them even more suitable for intensive pond culture. It is possible to sterilize bluegills, without otherwise harming them, by means of low doses of radiation, and this technique may also find application in practical fish culture.

CULTURE IN FLOATING CAGES

Culture in floating cages does not prevent tilapia from spawning, but, since the eggs drop through the bottom of the cage, it does prevent the fish from exercising the parental care necessary for successful reproduction. Parental care is as necessary for eggs and fry of centrarchids as for tilapia, but to our knowledge cage culture of centrarchids has not been attempted. In the spring of 1970, the editors of Farm Pond Harvest magazine announced their intention to attempt intensive cage culture, with supplemental feeding, of bluegills. Results are not yet available.

Although the small-scale use of crappies and largemouth bass in catfish culture in the United States and the stocking of the latter species as a predator in European policulture ponds are the only current instances of commercial culture of centrarchids as food fish, the members of the family, particularly *Lepomis* spp., present possibilities which have yet

In Europe, largemouth bass occupy the niche traditionally accorded to the northern pike (*Esox lucius*), as a piscivore to control trash fish and excess young of other cultured species It is a hardy fish, and generally well suited for the purpose, but it possesses one serious disadvantage for pond culture it can successfully spawn in most ponds and may produce an abundance of young so that it may actually contribute to the problem it was intended to alleviate This situation is further complicated by the fact that it prefers soft rayed fishes to its own spiny finned young as prey Nevertheless, it is widely stocked, particularly in France and the Soviet Union

POSSIBILITIES OF CULTURE OF SUNFISH AS FOOD FISH

Although largemouth bass spawn readily, their reproduction is difficult to control Anyone can spawn them by simply placing pairs in ponds in the fall and letting nature take its course in the spring but to date bass culturists are totally dependent on natural spawning and cannot produce fertile eggs on demand The normal way of achieving this result would be through treatment with pituitary hormones, but largemouth bass and most other centrarchids do not respond well to this technique Spawning has, however, been successfully induced in white crappie and rock bass (*Ambloplites rupestris*) at the Southeastern Fish Cultural Laboratory, Marion Alabama, and it is expected that the methods developed there could eventually be adapted to largemouth bass

Those American fish culturists who are still interested in centrarchids presently concern themselves less with such largely piscivorous fishes as the black basses and crappies and more with *Lepomis* spp, most of which feed mainly on invertebrates Not only are such fish more readily trained to take artificial feeds (although there are more than a few reports of crappies eating catfish pellets) they are the finest food fishes among the Centrarchidae The principal obstacle to their commercial culture in the past has been their high rate of reproduction, which often leads to stunting Similar problems have been encountered by growers of *Tilapia* spp, and they have found at least two ways to cope with them—monosex culture and cage culture

MONOSEX CULTURE

Monosex culture, as the name implies involves growing of only one sex. To visually sort tilapia by sex is not easy, to do so with centrarchids

11

Miscellaneous Asian Pond Fishes

SNAKEHEADS OR MURRELS

In no other part of the world are so many varieties of fish cultured as in Asia. Most of the cultured Asian species have been dealt with in preceding chapters, but members of the families Channidae (snakeheads or murrels), Eleotridae (sleeper gobies), and Cobitidae (loaches) have not been covered and are treated here.

The snakeheads, only Asian species of which are discussed here (see Chapter 12 for information on snakeheads in African fish culture), are voracious and, except for the young, usually exclusively piscivorous. For this reason, they are considered undesirable in many forms of fish culture and are sometimes the objects of eradication measures. On the other hand, they are excellent food fish and are thus often selected for stocking where a predatory fish is needed in polyculture ponds.

Snakeheads possess an accessory breathing organ similar to, though not as highly developed as, that of the labyrinth fishes (Anabantidae), and they are thus able to withstand very low concentrations of dissolved

the dojo (*Misgurnus anguillicaudatus*) are stocked in rice fields, are they cultured.

REFERENCES

HORA, S. L., and T. V. R. PILLAY. 1962. Handbook on fish culture in the Indo-Pacific Region. FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper, No. 14. 204 pp.

oxygen Not only are their oxygen requirements low, but snakeheads are extremely hardy with respect to all other environmental parameters

The most widely distributed of the snakeheads is *Ophicephalus striatus,* which is native from India to China, Indonesia, and the Philippines, and reaches a maximum length of more than 90 cm In addition to being used in polyculture over most of its range, *O striatus* is grown in floating cages in Cambodia as is *Ophicephalus micropeltis* Next to catfishes of the genus *Pangasius,* snakeheads are the most important fishes for this purpose (See Chapter 7 for a full description of cage culture)

A larger species, *Ophicephalus marulius* (maximum length 120 cm) and a smaller one, *Ophicephalus punctatus* (maximum length 30 cm), are cultured in India and Pakistan not only in ponds and rice fields but also in irrigation wells, where few other fishes will survive Some Indian investigators are of the opinion that *O punctatus* is primarily insectivorous

The northern representative of the Ophicephalidae is *Ophicephalus argus,* which ranges well into Manchuria The extent of utilization of this species in Chinese fish culture is not known, but it is known that it has been artificially spawned by means of pituitary injection at the Tsingpu Experimental Freshwater Fish Farm of the Shanghai City Fisheries Bureau This is a rather unusual practice, as most fish farmers in southeast Asia stock snakeheads in very small quantities, and find natural reproduction quite adequate to supply their needs

SLEEPER GOBIES

The sleeper gobies are fully as voracious as the snakeheads, but most of them including the cultured species feed at a lower trophic level consuming mainly invertebrates The only sleeper goby currently stocked by practical fish culturists is the sand goby (*Oxyeleotris marmoratus*), which attains weights of about 900 g in 1 year when reared in ponds in Malaysia Singapore, Cambodia, and Vietnam It is also used in cage culture in Cambodia *O marmoratus* spawns in ponds without any attention on the part of the culturist

LOACHES

The loaches distributed throughout Europe and Asia, as well as in Morocco and Ethiopia are a fairly large family of mostly small often eel like, benthic carnivores Only a few of the loaches are large enough to be valuable as human food and only in Japan, where *Cobitis* spp and

portedly contains more species of fish than any other body of freshwater in the world However, proportionately few African food fish have been cultured, even experimentally There is, in fact, no native tradition of aquaculture in Africa south of the Sahara Such fish culture as currently exists was largely initiated by Europeans who, probably for reasons of familiarity, have concentrated on exotic species, plus the easy to breed members of the genus *Tilapia* (family Cichlidae) (See Chapter 18 for a discussion of *Tilapia* culture) A few of the native fishes other than *Tilapia* spp have been cultured, in some cases with good results, and these are the subjects of this chapter

The African fish farmer is confronted with a set of socioeconomic factors which are unique and rather limiting Unlike the Asian peoples, Africans have no tradition of fish culture, but are accustomed to obtaining wild fish with hooks or nets Thus an African who will energetically care for a vegetable garden must acquire a new set of habits before he can be effective as a fish culturist As a consequence, fish culture programs in Africa have a history of enthusiastic beginnings and a quick deterioration, except in countries where considerable government supervision occurs A consequence of inadequate maintenance of fish ponds may be stunting, which is a more serious matter in Africa than in similar situations in Asia, since Africans, unlike Asians, have a strong bias for large fish Africans, in general, are also unlike Asians in their reluctance to use manure, particularly human waste, in pond fertilization Finally, the African fish culture scene is further complicated by the political instability of much of the continent

POTENTIALLY USEFUL NATIVE SPECIES

The prospective fish culturist in Africa must consider all the preceding factors and more, but we shall concentrate on the biology, status, and potential of those African freshwater fish which have thus far been studied by fish culturists Table 1 summarizes the ecology, distribution, and status of propagation of the species which have been used or are being considered for use

There is a preponderance of piscivorous fishes in Table 1 Fish culture in Africa is largely based on the prolific *Tilapia* spp, which have a pronounced tendency to overpopulate ponds and produce stunted populations Among the possible means of coping with this problem is to stock predatory fish of suitable size to eliminate or thin out the young tilapia, thus piscivorous fishes are being carefully studied While the attention of African fish culturists is still chiefly focused on tilapia predator stocking

12

Culture of African Freshwater Fishes Other Than *Tilapia* spp.

HISTORY AND STATUS OF FISH CULTURE IN AFRICA

The African freshwater fish fauna is very large and diverse, reaching an apex of complexity in the Stanley Pool of the Congo River, which re-

TABLE 1. (*Continued*)

FAMILY	SPECIES	RANGE	FOOD HABITS	OTHER OUTSTANDING CHARACTERISTICS	PROPAGATION
Citharinidae	*Citharinus citharus*	Tropical central Africa, cultured experimentally in Nigeria			Males, at least, mature in ponds, and milt may be readily obtained, but none of the family have been artificially propagated, *C. citharus* spawns in the rainy season (August–September) in Gambian swamps, the other two species spawn in winter in the Congo
	Citharinus congicus	Upper Congo River Basin, Stanley Pool, cultured experimentally in the Congo	Little known, accept dry foods	Grow very rapidly, *C citharus* reaches 0.5 kg in ponds in 1 year	
	Citharinus gibbosus	Congo and Rwanda, cultured experimentally in the Congo			
Cyprinidae (carps and minnows)	*Barbus occidentalis*	Has been experimentally cultured in Nigeria	Omnivorous?	Very delicate with respect to handling, and highly vulnerable to predation	Breeds freely in ponds
	Barbus sp	Experimentally cultured in Rwanda	Omnivorous?		Not bred in captivity
	Labeo forskali	Nile River Basin and tributaries of Blue Nile, suggested by M Huet for culture in the Sudan	Omnivorous, fond of algae	Resistant to low temperatures	Breeding in captivity not attempted

TABLE 1. CHARACTERISTICS OF NATIVE AFRICAN FRESHWATER FISHES (OTHER THAN *Tilapia* SPP.) USED IN PRACTICAL OR EXPERIMENTAL FISH CULTURE

FAMILY	SPECIES	RANGE	FOOD HABITS	OTHER OUTSTANDING CHARACTERISTICS	PROPAGATION
Lepidosirenidae (lungfishes)	*Protopterus dolloi*	Congo River Basin; cultured on a subsistence basis in the Congo	Young worms, insect larvae, small crustaceans, adults' fish, snails, etc	Due to its air breathing capabilities, can tolerate not only water devoid of dissolved oxygen, but complete dryness	Breeding in captivity not attempted, spawns during dry season in a hole dug among marginal plants, eggs and young guarded by male
Heterotidae	*Heterotis niloticus*	Tropical Africa; cultured in Cameroon, the Congo, Gabon, the Ivory Coast, Madagascar, and Nigeria	Omnivorous, filters plankton during dry season, but can also consume larger food items, accepts prepared food in captivity	Aerial respiration possible through use of swim bladder	Bred in captivity and distributed to farmers in a number of countries, spawns in large nests in swamps—in July in Gambia, eggs and young guarded by parents
Gymnarchidae	*Gymnarchus niloticus*	Upper Nile River, Lake Chad Basin, West Africa from Senegal to Niger, cultured experimentally in Nigeria	Small fish	Navigates by means of weak electrical impulses	Not bred in captivity, spawns in large floating nests at start of rainy season, eggs and young guarded by parents

TABLE 1 *(Continued)*

FAMILY	SPECIES	RANGE	FOOD HABITS	OTHER OUTSTANDING CHARACTERISTICS	PROPAGATION
Channidae (snakeheads or murrels)	*Ophicephalus* spp	Africa south of the Sahara to the Congo and Kenya cultured on a subsistence basis in Congo	Young earthworms, tadpoles and young fish, adults almost exclusively fish, up to and including fish as large as themselves appetites insatiable	Extremely hardy	Several spp bred in aquaria, lay floating eggs, males often care for eggs but do not build a bubble nest, habits of Asiatic species are better known than those of African forms
Serranidae (sea perches)	*Lates niloticus* (Nile perch)	Nile Senegal and Congo River Basins cultured in Nigeria and Uganda	Fish	Reaches huge sizes—up to 180 cm long very sensitive to oxygen depletion and turbidity	Easily sexed and bred in small ponds, in Nigeria, 90% of pond bred young are females
Cichlidae (cichlids)	*Astatoreochromis* sp	West Africa, being considered for use in snail control in Cameroon, the Congo, Gabon and the Central African Republic	Snails and perhaps other foods		
	Haplochromis spp, including *H carlottae* and *H mellandi*	Most of Africa	Probably varied, *H mellandi* is very fond of snails and is stocked to control them, but also consumes insect larvae		Mouth breeders, tendency to overpopulate ponds

TABLE 1. (*Continued*)

FAMILY	SPECIES	RANGE	FOOD HABITS	OTHER OUTSTANDING CHARACTERISTICS	PROPAGATION
Bagridae	*Auchenoglanis occidentalis*	Widely distributed, from Lower Nile River to Congo and Senegal, experimentally cultured in Togo	All kinds of animal matter, including fish	Nocturnal, requires cover during day	Not bred in captivity
	Bagrus docmac	Nile River Basin; experimentally cultured in Uganda	All kinds of animal matter, including fish	Nocturnal, requires cover during day	According to Uganda Fisheries Department "breeds freely in ponds"; spawns in May in shallow water in the White Nile River; not bred in captivity
	Chrysichthys spp., including *C nigrodigitatus*	Congo River Basin and Atlantic drainages to the north, experimentally cultured in Nigeria and Togo, suggested for culture in Cameroon and the Congo	All kinds of animal matter, including fish	Nocturnal, requires cover during day	Not bred in captivity; *C furcatus* and *C nigrodigitatus* spawn in Gambian rivers during the dry season
Clariidae	*Clarias* spp., including *C lazera*	All of Africa; cultured on a subsistence basis in the Congo and Rwanda, suggested for culture in Cameroon	Any sort of animal matter; some species, at least, accept plant matter; very voracious	Very tolerant of low dissolved oxygen concentrations, due to accessory air-breathing structure; may voluntarily travel across land	*C. mossambicus* eggs have been artificially fertilized; otherwise not bred in captivity, spawning usually takes place in temporary waters after rains

other types of polyculture are beginning to develop. Of particular interest in African pond polyculture is the extremely adaptable *Heterotis niloticus*, which can apparently occupy any of a number of ecological niches. In regions where tilapia grow poorly, as in the western Congo, culture systems based on native fishes with habits similar to those of tilapia are beginning to be developed.

ECONOMIC BASIS OF AFRICAN FISH CULTURE

Fish culture in Africa is generally carried out on a subsistence basis, with a family or village operating a pond or ponds. Although most of the early ponds were too small, with the result that most ponds were either overharvested or subject to stunting of the stock, this approach has made real contributions to the nutrition of small groups of people and should be encouraged as part of a program to provide more protein for the people of Africa. Family or village ponds have little impact on the urban African, however. Therefore a number of African governments, often with the aid of FAO and/or the former colonial governments, are experimenting with methods suitable for commercial fish culture, often incorporating more sophisticated techniques than are feasible for most subsistence farmers. At present, commercial fish culture is poorly developed in most African countries, but this may not be the case for long. A country by country survey of existing fish culture practices in Africa follows.

EXPERIMENTAL AND PRACTICAL FISH CULTURE IN SEVERAL AFRICAN COUNTRIES

CAMEROON

The basic species for fish culture in Cameroon are, in order of importance, the plankton feeding *Tilapia nilotica*, the omnivorous *Heterotis niloticus*, and the predatory *Hemichromis fasciatus*, all of which can be bred in ponds with little difficulty. The government is promoting a subsistence culture system involving all three species in the eastern part of the country.

Elsewhere, commercial culture, using only *Tilapia nilotica* and *Heterotis niloticus*, is being encouraged with some effect. A number of subsistence farmers are now selling part of their crop while continuing to retain an adequate amount for home use. Fish-rice rotation, on a 9

TABLE 1 (*Continued*)

FAMILY	SPECIES	RANGE	FOOD HABITS	OTHER OUTSTANDING CHARACTERISTICS	PROPAGATION
Cichlidae (cichlids)	*Hemichromis fasciatus* (five spot cichlid)	Central West Africa cultured in Cameroon Rwanda and experimentally in the Congo and Togo	Live animals *including* small fish	Aggressive toward its own and other species	Spawn on cleaned stones parents guard eggs and young tendency to over populate ponds
	Pelmatochromis robustus	East Africa	Snails may be stocked to control snails	Often enter brackish water	May breed like *Hemichromis fasciatus*, or may be mouth breeders
	Serranochromis angusticeps S macrocephalus, S robustus, and *S thumbergi*	Congo River Basin and East Africa from Zambia to Okavango Swamp cultured in Zambia and experimentally *in the* Congo	Young insects adults live animals including small fish	*S robustus* grows faster and attains largest size	Mouth breeders easily bred and raised adults may be cannibalistic on fry but nevertheless may overpopulate ponds breed August–January in Zambia each female produces more than *one* brood annually
	Tylochromis lateralis	Cultured experimentally in the Congo			May be mouth breeders

GABON

The government maintains six fry production centers, where *Tilapia* spp and *Heterotis niloticus* fry are raised for distribution to farmers Commercial and subsistence farming are expanding, and average annual production is estimated at about 500 kg/ha

IVORY COAST

The Centre Technique Forestier tropical fish culture station in Bouaké functions as a training and research center for all the former French colonies in west Africa, including Dahomey, Togo, and Upper Volta Emphasis is on pond fertilization and culture of *Tilapia* spp and *Heterotis niloticus* Fertilization with 60 kg/ha of calcium superphosphate and 50 kg/ha of ammonium sulfate doubled production in experimental ponds

The main problem in culture of *H niloticus* in the Ivory Coast has been high mortality due to disease Proper feeding is of course important in promoting survival as well as growth, and experiments have been carried out with three feeds, crushed cottonseed, peanut oil cake, and rice bran Any of these feeds enabled young *H niloticus* to reach sexual maturity up to a year before unfed fish Of the three foods, peanut oil cake and crushed cottonseed produced more rapid growth than rice bran, and peanut oil cake was superior to the other two in terms of survival, but only rice bran was economically feasible The maximum yield of fry attained with peanut oil cake was 2500 kg/ha

MALAGASY REPUBLIC

Heterotis niloticus fry are produced by the Forestry and Fish Culture Station at Ivoloina for use in stocking, and at the arboretum of Menagisy for experimental polyculture with common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and goldfish (*Carassius auratus*)

NIGERIA

Freshwater fish culture facilities in Nigeria are in the process of reconstruction after that country's Civil War Prior to the war, experimental fish farming was carried on in a number of places notably the government-operated Panyam Fish Farm on the Jos Plateau in the northern part of the country and an experimental fish farm on the Island of Buguma in the Niger Delta Encouraging preliminary results were obtained at the

month–3 month cycle, is sometimes practiced At least one commercial culturist in Cameroon has cut down costs by allowing local women to soak cassava tubers in his ponds This process, necessary to prepare cassava for human consumption also provides food for the fish

Yields attained by commercial and subsistence culturists in Cameroon are not known, but in 1969 experimental culture of *Tilapia nilotica* and *Heterotis niloticus* in five ponds at the Regional Fish Culture Center at Bangui produced 980 to 3225 kg/ha, depending on the amounts of brewery waste added as food

The Regional Fish Culture Center is also the scene of a great deal of research which may result in the expansion, diversification, and improvement of fish culture not only in Cameroon but in the Central African Republic, the Congo, and Gabon Among the topics under study are

1 Combined culture of tilapia and *Hemichromis fasciatus*
2 Biology and culture of *Heterotis niloticus*
3 Possibility of culturing the local catfishes *Clarias* spp and *Chrysichthys* spp
4 Pond fertilization with locally available manures
5 Preparation of feed from locally available ingredients
6 Use of *Astatoreochromis* sp for bilharzia control
7 Pond management techniques suitable for the region
8 Economic aspects of fish culture

DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF THE CONGO

Tilapia nilotica and *Heterotis niloticus* are nearly universal in culture, but some subsistence culturists add predatory fishes such as *Clarias* spp, *Ophicephalus* spp, and *Protopterus dolloi* Fry of the predatory species are captured in rivers *Heterotis niloticus* fry are principally purchased from the federal hatchery at Djoumouna, while tilapia are bred by the culturists themselves The cichlids *Haplochromis mellandi, Hemichromis fasciatus, Serranochromis robustus, Serranochromis thumbergi*, and *Tylochromis lateralis* have been experimentally cultured in the past but are not presently used to any great extent.

In the acid waters of the western Congo, where tilapia grow poorly, the native fishes *Citharinus congicus* and *Citharinus gibbosus* are being cultured experimentally

The most commonly used method of feeding pond fish in the Congo is by soaking cassava tubers in the pond, but manioc leaves and brewery waste are also fed

Personnel at the Djoumouna hatchery are pursuing the same research goals outlined for Cameroon.

TOGO

The United States Peace Corps has been instrumental in the development and improvement of fish culture in Togo. At the Ná Fish Culture Station at Sokode, good results have already been experienced with supplemental feeding of *Tilapia* spp., stocked together with the piscivorous *Hemichromis fasciatus*, on millet, brewery waste, mill sweepings, cottonseed meal, spoiled corn meal, and manioc and ignam peels. The combination of polyculture and supplementary feeding has resulted in annual yields of 3000 to 10,000 kg/ha with food conversion ratios of 4 to 8:1. Attempts are being made to culture the native catfishes *Auchenoglanis occidentalis* and *Chrysichthys* sp.

UGANDA

Subsistence fish culture, mostly of *Tilapia* spp., is widespread and the Fisheries Department is trying to promote commercial culture as well. A demonstration farm has been set up for that purpose. Nile perch are spawned at the demonstration farm and have been found effective in controlling tilapia populations. More recently, *Bagrus docmac* has been found as effective a predator as Nile perch. Unlike most African catfishes, it breeds freely in ponds. *B. docmac* has exhibited quite satisfactory growth when stocked at different ratios with *Tilapia nilotica* or *Tilapia zillii*.

ZAMBIA

Pure commercial culture of *Tilapia* spp. is practiced to a small extent, but subsistence polyculture is more important. Generally two or three species from among *Tilapia andersoni*, *Tilapia macrochir*, *Tilapia melanopleura*, and *Tilapia mossambica* are stocked together with *Haplochromis mellandi*. *H. mellandi*, which feeds largely on mollusks, is stocked not only for its contribution to fish production, but for reasons of health. The human disease bilharzia, caused by a parasitic worm whose intermediate host may be any one of a variety of snails, is a serious problem in Zambia, and *H. mellandi* is an effective biological control against snails. *Haplochromis carlottae* and *Pelmatochromis robustus* are less commonly stocked for this purpose.

Procedures recommended by FAO biologists for polyculture of *Tilapia* spp. and *Haplochromis mellandi* in Zambia are as follows:

1. Drain the pond and treat the bottom with 1500 kg/ha of agricultural lime, then fill with water.

Buguma farm with brackish water fishes and invertebrates, *Tilapia melanopleura*, common carp, and the indigenous catfish *Chrysichthys nigrodigitatus*. Recent experiments in brackish water ponds involve stocking of *C. nigrodigitatus* in ponds which fry of tilapia and mullet (*Mugil* spp.) enter with the tide.

The original goal of the Panyam farm was to raise *Tilapia* spp., but results were poor and, starting in 1954, emphasis was placed on common carp, imported from Europe. Tilapia proved impossible to eradicate, and since they preyed on carp eggs and larvae and competed with fingerlings for food, they came to be regarded as pests. Experimental culture of native predatory fishes was therefore initiated.

The indigenous fish fauna of the small streams in the immediate vicinity of the Panyam Fish Farm is depauperate, consisting of four cyprinid species too small for culture as food fish. The piscivorous species *Gymnarchus niloticus* and *Lates niloticus* (Nile perch), both endemic to other parts of Nigeria, were therefore introduced. The Nile perch presently appears the more suitable for use in pond culture. *Gymnarchus niloticus* functions well as a predator and reaches marketable size rapidly, but it has yet to be bred in captivity, and collection of fry from rivers has proven uneconomic. Nile perch seem ideal on almost all counts. The only apparent limitation on their use is their low tolerance for deoxygenated or turbid water. An adequate stock can be maintained by simply placing one male and two females in a small breeding pond and periodically harvesting the 15- to 30-g fingerlings from the series of spawnings which ensues. A population of two to four Nile perch per hectare is adequate to control tilapia in carp ponds. Care must be taken that the Nile perch are smaller than the carp fingerlings, as they appear to prefer carp to tilapia. In ponds with large numbers of tilapia, Nile perch reach weights of 0.5 to 0.6 kg in 6 months.

Experiments were also conducted with nonpiscivorous native fishes. Best results were obtained with *Heterotis niloticus*. *Citharinus citharus* grew well, reaching 0.5 kg in a year, but as yet cannot be bred in captivity. *Barbus occidentalis* bred readily in ponds but proved to be so delicate to handle that intentional culture was discontinued, though small populations persisted in the carp ponds.

RWANDA

Common carp, *Tilapia* spp., and *Clarias* spp. have been successfully grown together at the government station at Butare. There is at present little if any commercial fish culture in Rwanda, but indications are that there is a ready market for cultured fish.

countries have been omitted because no information was available or because fish culture, of any sort, has barely been started

PROSPECTUS

Most of the fishes discussed are lowland, warm water species Fish culture could make an important contribution in the cool highlands of Africa, as well as the tropical lowlands, but outside of culture of trout for sport fishing in South Africa and Togo, virtually nothing has been done in these regions Perhaps some of the species discussed would be suitable for upland culture, but there are probably other species, native to the high lands, that would reward the inquisitive fish culturist

As mentioned, with the exception of *Tilapia* spp, most of the African fishes currently used in practical and experimental culture are high on the food chain It is axiomatic that, to obtain the highest per hectare yields, pond fish culture should be based on plankton feeders, algae feeders and/or omnivores Recent successes in a number of countries with *Heterotis niloticus* will hopefully remind fish culturists that Africa is no different from the other continents in harboring an abundance of such fishes Certainly fishes of the family Citharinidae, whose culture has been sporadically attempted in the Congo and Nigeria, should be more thoroughly investigated The same applies to the many African species belonging to the Cyprinidae and Characidae, which have been virtually ignored by fish culturists

It is impossible to foresee the directions fish culture will take in Africa, but it is virtually certain than an increasing number and diversity of indigenous species will be cultured

REFERENCES

BREDER C M and D E ROSEN 1966 Modes of reproduction in fishes Natural History Press Garden City N Y 941 pp

MAAR A M A E MORTIMER and I V DER LINGEN 1966 Fish culture in Central East Africa FAO 158 pp

NIGERIAN FEDERAL FISHERY SERVICE 1963 Carp farming on the Jos Plateau Bull I Ifan XXV, série A

REIZER C 1966 Influence de la distribution de nourriture artificielle sur la mortalité des jeunes alevins la croissance pre adulte et la maturité sexuelle d *Heterotis niloticus* FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III/E-1

STERBA G 1966 Fresh water fishes of the world Viking Press New York

2 Stock the pond with a variety of sizes of fish at 200 kg/ha, using about the same amount of each species stocked A piscivorous fish may also be added, in small numbers, to crop excess tilapia fry The American largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) was the first species stocked in this capacity, but the native *Serranochromis* spp, particularly *S robustus*, are now preferred

3 Thereafter spread 150 kg/ha of agricultural lime over the surface every month One week after each liming add 50 kg/ha of double superphosphate or 100 kg/ha of single superphosphate or basic slag

4 Feed the fish once a week. Most Zambian fish culturists use plant foods, including grass, napier fodder, and chopped leaves of banana, cassava, papaw, sweet potato, cabbage, lettuce, spinach, carrots, or kale Conversion ratios of these feeds are as high as 48 1 and, when possible, grain foods, including maize, rice, and brewery wastes, should be used instead Household scrapings may also be fed If feeding is not feasible, further fertilization with 1000 kg/ha of pig manure or 150 kg/ha of poultry manure per week is advisable

The ideal size pond for subsistence culture using these methods is considered to be 0 04 ha With good management, yields of 3000 to 6000 kg/ha may be obtained from such ponds but in practice 1000 to 1500 kg/ha are more often produced

Monoculture of fry for distribution to fish farmers is also practiced in Zambia The fishes bred are *Tilapia* spp, *Haplochromis* spp, and *Serranochromis* spp *Tilapia* spp and *Haplochromis* spp are spawned in 0 08 to 0 20 ha ponds well fertilized with phosphate Adult fish weighing 0 17 to 0 45 kg, preferably less than 2 years old, are stocked at 100 to 125 pairs/ha and allowed to spawn naturally The young may be removed from the smaller ponds with nets and stocked in rearing ponds Otherwise they are left in the spawning pond until after the breeding season *Serranochromis* spp are spawned in the same way but, unlike their relatives, are prone to cannibalize their fry once the period of parental care is over Protection may be afforded by dividing the pond with wire mesh fine enough that the young but not the parent fish can pass, or by encouraging dense growths of vegetation

OTHER COUNTRIES

It will be noticed that no mention has been made of countries south of the Congo in west Africa and Zambia in east Africa To date, fish culture in these countries has involved almost exclusively tilapia and exotic species The same applies to the Sudan, the Mediterranean countries and some of the other nations not mentioned in this account Other

in the culture of native Latin American freshwater fishes, and to suggest possible future avenues of investigation. Culture of carp and tilapia in Latin America will not be treated here, but are discussed in Chapters 2 and 18, respectively.

PRESENT PRACTICES

COMMERCIAL CULTURE OF PEJERREY IN ARGENTINA

The only successful commercial fish culture enterprise based on a fish native to Latin America exists in the lowlands of Argentina. There the pejerrey (*Odonthestes basilichthys*), a member of the family Atherinidae, is cultured by methods reportedly similar to those used in trout culture. Pejerrey are marketed as a luxury food and have virtually no effect on the protein supply in the area.

In 1967, pejerrey were introduced to Israel, as part of an attempt to diversify that country's production of cultured fish. The species has adapted well to local conditions and has been spawned in small experimental ponds at the Fish Culture Research Station at Dor, but commercial culture has barely begun. Pejerrey have also been introduced to Chile and Japan, where they are artificially propagated and stocked in lakes.

EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE OF *Chirostoma* SPP. IN MEXICO

The Mexican Department of Fisheries has recently begun experimental culture of two atherinids of the genus *Chirostoma,* locally known as "whitefish." One of these species, *C. estor,* reaches a length of 35 cm, can be bred in ponds, and is highly favored as a food fish. Thus the future of culture of *C. estor* and similar species in Mexico and elsewhere in Latin America looks promising.

HATCHERY PROPAGATION OF NATIVE FISHES IN SOUTH AMERICA

Of all the Latin American countries, Brazil has been by far the most active in fish culture. The first successful attempts to artificially propagate fish with the use of pituitary hormones were carried out in Brazil in the 1930s, but application of the technique in Latin America has been scant and unimaginative. The Brazilian federal fish culture stations confine themselves largely to induced spawning of various fishes for stocking, as alevins, in reservoirs, in the northeast part of the country. Whether or not this extremely low-intensity approach to fish culture materially

13

Culture of Native Freshwater Fishes of Latin America

Despite the severe protein problems of the peoples of Latin America, freshwater fish culture is almost unknown in that part of the world. Most of the attempts that have been made have involved exotic fishes, principally the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and *Tilapia* spp. However, South America, and to a lesser extent Central America, support a diverse fish fauna, among which are certainly some species suitable for culture. The purpose of this treatise is to discuss the small progress made to date

prising plankton feeders, benthos feeders, herbivores, and predators—all native South American characins However, South American biologists complain that they are unable to spawn these fishes This seems strange, since many of the smaller characins are popular among North American and European aquarists and, while a few are challenging to breed in captivity, many are regarded as being easy to spawn, yielding readily to such simple manipulations as a partial change of water or an increase in temperature Even if it turns out that all the edible species of characins present insurmountable difficulties to culturists seeking to spawn them naturally, the technology is at hand to induce spawning It is difficult to see why Brazilian fish culturists dismiss artificially induced spawning as being inapplicable to practical fish culture when this technique, pioneered in Brazil, is being successfully and economically applied by fellow culturists throughout the world

CICHLIDAE

The Cichlidae are only slightly less diverse than the Characidae and present no problems to the culturist seeking to breed them Indeed, many cichlids are too prolific, and tend to overpopulate ponds until they become stunted The only careful studies of the aquacultural potential of native American cichlids were carried out in Guatemala in the early 1960s It was concluded that the eight species of *Cichlasoma* studied grew more slowly than imported African cichlids of the genus *Tilapia*, and were generally inferior for use in pond culture The Guatemalan experiments by no means exhausted the possibilities for culture of American cichlids It may even be that some of the eight species dismissed are suitable for culture After all fairly efficient methods of culturing *Tilapia* spp had been worked out prior to the start of the experiments, whereas the researchers were forced to start from scratch with *Cichlasoma* spp Certainly the American Cichlidae deserve further study by fish culturists At present, Costa Rican biologists are planning experimental culture of *Cichlasoma* spp native to that country but elsewhere the native Cichlids are completely neglected

OTHER FAMILIES

Another large group of fishes which contribute to freshwater fisheries in Latin America comprises the several families of catfishes (suborder Siluroidei) As noted, catfishes of the genus *Trachycorystes* (family Doradidae) are propagated and stocked in Brazil, but Latin American fish

augments the supply of fish available to the populace is open to debate. The fishes so spawned and stocked are mostly members of the family Characidae, including species of *Curimatus, Leporinus, Prochilodus,* and *Triportheus* At least one intergeneric hybrid of *Leporinus* and *Prochilodus* has been produced with the aid of pituitary injections, but for what purpose is not known

The characins propagated in Brazil are herbivores or low-order carnivores, but some more or less piscivorous fishes are also cultured, particularly doradid catfish of the genus *Trachycorystes* In recent years, three species of carnivorous cichlids—*Astronotus ocellatus* (the 'Oscar' of aquarists), *Cichla ocellaris,* and *Cichla temensis,* plus *Plagioscion surinamensis* and *Plagioscion squamosissimus,* two fresh water representatives of the predominantly salt water family Sciaenidae—have been bred, without hormone treatment, at the government stations These fishes are stocked not only in reservoirs but also in tilapia ponds to control excess reproduction *Cichla ocellaris* has been employed in this manner for some time in Colombia, but the practice may be deemphasized as use of sterile strains of *Tilapia mossambica* becomes more prevalent

The Peruvian government maintains three fish culture stations devoted to spawning of the Pirarucu (*Arapaima gigas*) one of the world's largest freshwater fishes Alevins of *A gigas* are released into rivers of the upper Amazon River basin The stocking program is similar to that of the Brazilian government, both in intent and in the doubtfulness of its efficacy

POTENTIAL FOR AQUACULTURE OF LATIN AMERICAN FISHES

The two dominant families of fishes in the freshwaters of Latin America are the Characidae and the Cichlidae Representatives of both families are found in all but the extreme northern and southern portions of the region and their culture has been the subject of much speculation and some effort among local fishery biologists

CHARACIDAE

The 1350 or so known species of Characidae include perhaps the greatest diversity of species of any family of fishes and the great majority of these species are native to Latin America. One can easily envision an analog of southeast Asian pond polyculture, with a community of fishes com

14

Experimental Fish Culture in Australia

INTRODUCTION AND HISTORY

There is no commercial fish culture in Australia apart from some salt-water trout farms in Tasmania, and little has been done by way of experimental fish culture. One might suppose that brackish water pond culture similar to that practiced in Indonesia would be attempted along the northeast coast, but it has not been. To date Australian experimental fish culture has concerned itself almost entirely with freshwater fish.

A number of North American and European freshwater fish have been introduced to Australia. Among the Cyprinidae, the crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*), the goldfish (*Carassius auratus*), and the tench (*Tinca tinca*) have become widely established, while somewhat less success was

culturists have inexplicably ignored not only other doradids but members of the widely distributed Pimelodidae and the Bunocephalidae of the upper Amazon River basin.

Other Latin American freshwater fishes with aquacultural potential include members of the widely distributed families Eleotridae (sleeper gobies), Synbranchidae (synbranchoid eels), Rhamphichthyidae (knife fishes), and Gymnotidae (gymnotid eels), plus *Lepidosiren paradoxa* of central South America, the only lungfish native to the western hemisphere

PROSPECTUS

It is clear that the freshwater fishes of Latin America could make a much greater contribution to the nutrition of the inhabitants of the region than they presently do It is equally clear that with the exception of the work mentioned here and incipient polyculture projects by the United States Peace Corps and the New Alchemy Institute in Costa Rica, nothing is being done to bring this about Perhaps eventually culture of indigenous fishes will assume something approaching its potential importance, but no major advances are to be expected in the immediate future

REFERENCES

DE MENEZES R. S 1966 Cría y Selección de los Peces Cultivados en Aguas Templadas en América del Sur y Central FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture. FR. IV/R 5

LIN S Y 1963 El Fomento de la Pesca Continental Informe al Gobierno de Guatemala FAO *Informe* (1719) 16

the two, the callop appears more promising for pond culture due to its somewhat smaller size and less piscivorous feeding habits.

Artificial propagation of callop dates back to 1916. Early experimental culturists did not attempt pond breeding, but stripped and artificially fertilized eggs, using the "wet" method formerly popular among trout culturists (see p. 400). Hatching requires a little over 48 hours at temperatures of 15 to 23°C.

Essentially natural spawning has been carried out at Narrandera, using female fish which failed to respond to stripping. (Sex is indicated by distention of the ripe female's abdomen and inflammation of the cloacal area.) While the callop is mainly a river fish, it was found to ripen normally in ponds with no current. Two factors are necessary to induce spawning in ponds; an increase in temperature to at least 23.6°C, and a concurrent rise of the water level by 15 cm or more, with flooding of dry ground. The latter condition produces abundant plankton blooms to nourish the young. It is not necessary that the fish be present when the water level is raised; ripe fish stocked in a recently filled pond will respond by spawning. Spawning may be retarded for several months and then induced by meeting these two conditions, but if ripe fish are held at temperatures above 23.6°C and the water level remains constant, the eggs will eventually be resorbed.

It was found possible to induce spawning in 1-m-deep ponds as small as 36 m² in surface area, but most of the experiments were carried out in 0.1-ha ponds, 2.4 m deep throughout most of their extent, and 1.2 m deep along one side. Ponds were stocked with 1 to 20 pairs of callop. Greater numbers of young were produced in the more heavily stocked ponds, but after 5 months of rearing, without supplemental feeding, the juvenile fish were more numerous, larger, and in better condition in ponds which received only 1 or 2 pairs.

Egg retention was a common problem; the only females which shed all their ova were some of those over 3 kg in weight. It is believed that egg retention may be associated with the extent of flooding; slight rises in water level resulting in partial ovulation, whereas larger floods produce complete ovulation.

Spawning of callop in nature is usually associated with high turbidity, but this was not found to be an important condition. There was no difference in spawning success between ponds with Secchi disk readings ranging from 12 to 240 cm. Spawning invariably occurs at night.

Male callop in the Murrumbidgee River, the source of the stock used at Narrandera, mature sexually at about 33 cm long and 0.5 kg in weight, females at about 43 cm and 1.3 kg. The maximum weight obtained may be over 25 kg, but most of those taken by fishermen weigh 1.3 to 1.8 kg.

achieved with acclimatization of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) None of these species is highly valued as food by Australians, although the many European immigrants to the country purchase substantial amounts in the markets Despite the prevalence of these fishes, particularly the common carp in European and Asian fish culture, no attempts have been made to culture them in Australia

The European perch (*Perca fluviatilis*) is better liked by Australians but since it is not only high on the food chain but is provided at low cost by conventional fisheries there is little incentive for its culture

Rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) and brown trout (*Salmo trutta*) were introduced to provide sport for Australian anglers and they have been more or less successfully acclimatized in much of the southern part of the country In most regions hatcheries are employed to maintain the stocks, but to date there has been no freshwater commercial application of hatchery techniques

In the second half of the nineteenth century, when most of the introductions of fish were made there was great enthusiasm in Australia for such projects and Fish Acclimatization Societies were formed in some districts In this century, Australians have become more appreciative of the uniqueness of their native fish fauna and efforts are being made to preserve it All of the introduced species have been implicated, probably with some degree of justification, in the decline of populations of native fishes Thus while sport fishermen will surely see to it that the trout hatcheries are maintained, current emphasis in fishery management and fish culture is on native species

EXPERIMENTAL PROPAGATION OF NATIVE FISHES

Experimental propagation of the Australian freshwater catfish (*Tandanus tandanus*) has been described in Chapter 7 Other freshwater fishes which have been considered for culture include the Murray cod (*Maccullochella macquariensis*) the callop (*Plectroplites ambiguus*) and the silver perch (*Bidyanus bidyanus*) all of which along with *Tandanus tandanus*, have been bred in ponds at the Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Narrandera New South Wales

CALLOP

The most highly prized of these species are the Murray cod and the callop The appellation 'cod is a misnomer, for both are freshwater members of the largely marine family of sea basses (*Serranidae*) Of

was unintentionally spawned at Narrandera when water was added to a pond to compensate for evaporation. Subsequent experiments suggest that the spawning requirements are similar to those of callop, but that the minimum temperature for spawning silver perch is 23.3°C, and that this temperature need be exceeded only to a depth of 90 cm. Unlike callop, silver perch may spawn in the late afternoon as well as at night.

POTENTIAL NEW SPECIES FOR CULTURE

A number of other native Australian freshwater fishes might be considered for culture. Foremost among these is the Australian bass (*Percalates colonorum*), a Serranid which occupies a niche similar to that of the black basses (*Micropterus* spp.) in North America. In nature, *Percalates colonorum* usually migrates downstream to estuarine waters to spawn, but, when denied access to salt water, it will spawn in freshwater.

Other possible pond fishes include yet another Serranid, the Macquarie perch (*Macquaria australasica*); a smaller congener of the murray cod called the trout cod (*Maccullochella mitchelli*); and the river blackfish (*Gadopsis marmoratus*), a cold water species which has fared poorly in competition with trout.

PROSPECTUS AND SPECIAL PROBLEMS

All of the species discussed are normally spring spawners. The crucial stimulus, however, is in most cases not an annual rhythm, but a rise in water level and temperature. In fact, the silver perch, and possibly some of the other species, will on occasion spawn in the fall if these conditions occur. Even Australian stocks of the European perch, which, in its native habitat, spawns in the early spring, regardless of water level, have been shown to respond positively to the addition of water to ponds. It appears that, under Australian conditions, flooding of dry ground has a more or less universal favorable effect on reproduction of freshwater fishes. Certainly manipulation of the water level should be attempted as a possible simple means of inducing or retarding spawning in any Australian fish species considered for culture.

The same factor which has made it necessary for Australian fishes to adapt to sudden changes in water level, namely irregular rainfall, creates problems for would-be fish culturists. Some areas of the country are subject to more or less annual droughts, while others are regularly flooded to the extent that entire river valleys become lakes. It may be

Callop would apparently prove adaptable to pond culture, as specimens held in deep and shallow ponds which did not fulfill the conditions described above thrived but did not reproduce In nature, callop feed mainly on invertebrates, but there are indications that they would respond favorably to supplementary feeding

MURRAY COD

Culture of the Murray cod (*Maccullochella macquariensis*) dates back somewhat further than callop culture, artificial propagation of the former species having been carried out at least as early as 1906 The details of sexing and artificial spawning of Murray cod do not differ from those given for callop Hatching, which has been experimentally accomplished on gauze trays placed in floating cages anchored in a river, requires 8 to 9 days at 20°C The larvae absorb the yolk sac in 4 to 7 days, after which time they will accept finely ground fish, fish eggs, or shellfish

Although the Murray cod is a large fish, reportedly reaching a maximum weight of over 65 kg, mature specimens weighing as little as 2 kg may be obtained It was found possible to spawn 2 3–6 8 kg specimens in a 0 6-ha pond at Narrandera, and natural spawning has on occasion occurred in smaller ponds As with the callop, a rise in the water level, with flooding of dry ground, seems necessary to trigger reproductive behavior It appears that a very slight change in water level may be sufficient, but in other respects the spawning requirements of Murray cod are more rigorous than those of callop Of particular importance is temperature, flooding should coincide with the attainment of a water temperature of 20°C, but if 21° is exceeded, the eggs will be resorbed A long exposure to warm water is not necessary to damage the ova, it is thought that even handling ripe fish, for example, in sexing, may constitute a thermal stimulus sufficient to effect resorption Murray cod have been described as building nests, but it is likely that the 'Murray cod nests' which have been observed were in fact old nests of *Tandanus tandanus* At Narrandera, each female attached her eggs to the inside of a single fibro-cement pipe, 20 cm in diameter

SILVER PERCH

The silver perch (*Bidyanus bidyanus*) is a representative of another predominantly salt water family, the Theraponidae Its habits and distribution closely resemble those of the callop, but it is a smaller fish, reaching a maximum weight of less than 3 kg, and is less important in fisheries Artificial fertilization of silver perch eggs has not been attempted, but it

15
Frog Culture

"FROG FARMS" IN THE UNITED STATES

The status of commercial frog culture is nebulous On the one hand, United States government publications repeatedly advise prospective frog farmers that intensive commercial culture of frogs as food animals has yet to be achieved On the other hand, one continually encounters individuals who claim to be operating profitable "frog farms" Such estab

argued by some that such hydrological irregularities render fish culture unfeasible One need only consider the importance of fish culture in, on the one hand, Israel, and on the other, Southeast Asia, to see that this defeatist attitude is not necessarily justified If freshwater fish culture techniques are eventually adapted to Australian conditions and fishes, the results could be most beneficial to the Australian diet, particularly in inland areas

REFERENCES

LAKE J S 1967 Rearing experiments with 5 species of Australian fresh water fishes Aust J Mar Fresh Water Res 18 137–152

ROUGHLEY T C 1961 Fish and fisheries of Australia Angus and Robertson London 343 pp

to incorporate any form of control over breeding but have allowed the frogs to spawn as they would in the wild. The resulting tadpoles have sometimes been reared separately from adult frogs, and adults have been segregated by size in the belief that extensive cannibalism would otherwise result. However, some researchers have found cannibalism rare or nonexistent among well-fed bullfrogs of all ages.

FEEDING

Feeding is the key not only to averting cannibalism, but to health and satisfactory growth of frogs. Frogs and tadpoles maintained outdoors will obtain some food naturally, but at commercially feasible population densities, the natural food supply must be supplemented.

Tadpoles, while primarily herbivorous in nature, will accept any soft animal or vegetable matter. Among the feeds which have been employed are boiled potatoes, meat scraps, and chicken viscera. An especially attractive idea is the use of the viscera and other scraps from butchered frogs as tadpole feed.

Once metamorphosis to the frog stage is complete, feeding becomes much more difficult. Adult frogs feed exclusively on moving animals. Japanese researchers have reportedly been able to induce frogs to ingest stationary silkworm pupae by mixing them with live nightcrawlers, then removing the nightcrawlers when the frogs have become accustomed to the pupae. Another Japanese method of eliminating dependence on live food involves the use of wooden trays containing about 12 mm of water. Dead silkworms or other food items are placed in the trays, which are anchored in shallow water near shore. A small motor keeps the trays oscillating slowly, so that the silkworms roll back and forth.

So far as is known, these Japanese techniques have not been tried with bullfrogs in the United States. Most American frog culturists have relied on stocking or attracting live food animals. One farmer, located near the ocean in Florida, stocked his ponds with marine fiddler crabs (*Uca* spp.), which are abundant on Florida beaches. Smaller species of frogs and their tadpoles may be eaten by bullfrogs and are sometimes stocked as food. Aquatic plants may be encouraged as shelter and food for tadpoles, crayfish, and other potential food animals. Terrestrial flowering plants serve a similar function by attracting flying insects, which are hunted by frogs on shore. More insects may be attracted by illuminating the shore of the pond at night with 100- to 200-W clear lamps. No combination of these methods has yet proven entirely satisfactory, and the difficulty of supplying adequate amounts of food remains the principal obstacle to successful bullfrog farming.

lishments generally turn out to be slightly modified shallow ponds or swamps, where frogs are harvested in much the same manner as wild frogs In some cases, husbandry is limited to erecting a fence to retain the frogs and exclude predators, and the chief market is other would-be frog farmers Other such farms, however, are more sophisticated and sell to restaurants and other food outlets Intensive indoor culture methods have also been developed for several species, but at present they are applied only to the production of laboratory frogs, and opinions differ as to whether modifications of these methods could economically be applied to the culture of frogs for human consumption

SOURCE OF STOCK

Most attempts at frog culture have been made in the United States, where frogs are among the most expensive luxury foods Numerous species are harvested from the wild and are generally not discriminated among by buyers or consumers except on the basis of size. The largest and the most widely used in attempts at culture is the bullfrog (*Rana catesbiana*) Bullfrogs lay their eggs in shallow standing water during April in the South and May or June in the North. Hatching requires 4 days to 3 weeks, depending on temperature. The aquatic larvae, generally known as tadpoles, feed chiefly on benthic algae. In 5 months to 2 years they metamorphose into the semiaquatic and exclusively carnivorous adults, which may reach lengths of up to 20 cm.

Prospective frog farmers may obtain bullfrog stock from commercial sources, or eggs or tadpoles may be taken from the wild. Bullfrog eggs (and those of a few other large frogs) may be distinguished from those of small, undesirable species by the size of the floating egg mass, which covers about 0.5m^2 Size is also the distinguishing characteristic of bullfrog tadpoles, which are much larger than most other tadpoles of the same age.

STOCKING

Whichever life form is taken, they should be distributed around the perimeter of the body of water to be stocked. Although this method may be suitable for new operations, the culturist should endeavor to breed his own stock as soon as possible. In addition to the taxonomic uncertainty in collecting wild stock, wild tadpoles often harbor pathogenic organisms and suffer high mortalities in the late stages of metamorphosis

All known attempts at frog farming in the United States have failed

niques if successful commercial pond culture of frogs is to become a reality.

Data on the commercial status of frog culture in the United States are few and sometimes contradictory. Most of the reports of success have come from Florida and Louisiana, where the growing season is very long, if not year-round, but commercial suppliers of frogs are located as far north as Vermont and Wisconsin.

INDOOR CULTURE OF FROGS

SPECIES CULTURED

A newer approach to frog farming, and one which largely eliminates climatic considerations, is indoor culture. Practical methods of indoor propagation and rearing of frogs for use as laboratory animals were first worked out by T. Kawamura of the University of Hiroshima, Japan. Kawamura's methods were subsequently adapted for use with American species by George W. Nace of the Department of Zoology, University of Michigan. Nace's methods have been the model for several other institutions which have undertaken to produce their own experimental animals, but to date no one has attempted indoor commercial culture of frogs as food animals. However, the species routinely cultured at Michigan include the green frog (*Rana clamitans*), the pickerel frog (*Rana palustris*), and the leopard frog (*Rana pipiens*), all commonly marketed as food, and there is no reason to believe that any of the larger American frogs could not be similarly cultured. Thus the possibility of indoor commercial production of frogs for human consumption cannot be ignored.

WATER SUPPLY

As might be expected in an indoor culture system, pains had to be taken to provide a suitable water supply for the University of Michigan Amphibian Facility. Based on the experience of Nace and his associates, there are four requirements for maintenance of a self-perpetuating frog colony:

1. The water supply must be abundant at all times; the Michigan facility uses up to 90 liters/min.
2. Line pressure should be adequate to permit individual fine control of flow through each container.

DESIGN OF PONDS

Another problem faced, and largely overcome, by early experimental frog culturists is territoriality. A large bullfrog may require about 7.5 m of shoreline as a feeding territory, a trait which severely limits the number of bullfrogs in most natural environments. Natural bodies of water, however, usually include large expanses of deep, open water which are of little use to bullfrogs during the growing season. Culturists are therefore able to maintain frogs at population densities much higher than those usually observed in nature by reducing the amount of open water in their ponds, while increasing the length and irregularity of the shoreline through construction of islands and peninsulas extending into the centers of the ponds. If natural ponds suitable for such modification are not available, the shoreline of artificial ponds may be maximized by constructing them as a series of narrow trenches. Such trenches should run north and south insofar as possible, so that vegetation on the banks will serve as shade for the frogs.

Whatever form of pond is used, a small portion of it should be deep enough to protect frogs and tadpoles from extreme heat or cold. In the South, 30 to 45 cm is adequate, but in the North, deeper water may be necessary to insure the survival of hibernating frogs. In any location, a large portion of the pond should be only 5 to 15 cm deep to facilitate the feeding behavior of frogs and tadpoles.

Predators of frogs and tadpoles are numerous, and some tadpole predators, such as large aquatic insect larvae, are virtually impossible to exclude from frog ponds. Some terrestrial predators may be kept out by enclosing ponds with a small-mesh wire fence about 1 m high, sloping outward at an angle of 35°. Birds are more difficult to exclude, but a wire net stretched above the shallows may be partially effective. No predator control method developed to date is 100% effective, and the culturist should allow for some loss.

HARVESTING

Harvesting of bullfrogs from ponds as just described is extremely inefficient. The methods employed are the same used in hunting wild frogs—fishing with hook and line, spearing, and hand capture. Live bait is occasionally used in fishing for frogs, but a more common practice is to dangle a crude lure, made of red cloth or yarn, in front of the frog to simulate a hovering insect. Spearing and hand capture are done at night with the aid of a bright spotlight, which dazes and immobilizes the frogs. Clearly, these methods must be supplanted by mass harvesting tech

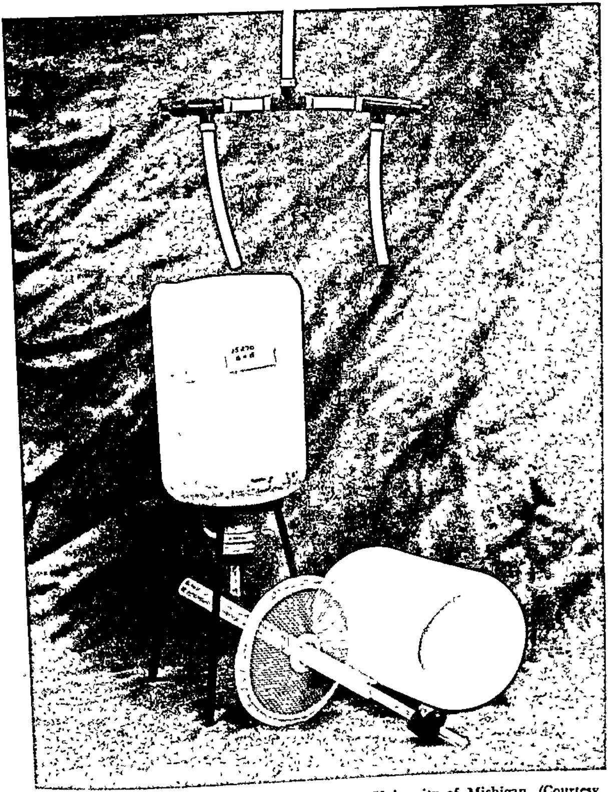


PLATE 1. Tadpole bottle used for frog culture at University of Michigan. (Courtesy University of Michigan News Service.)

3 The pH should be slightly acid
4 The water temperature must be constant at 20 to 22°C

The source of water at Michigan is the city of Ann Arbor municipal system, which is unsatisfactory on the last three counts Booster pumps, pressure regulating valves, and carefully designed plumbing have been installed to compensate for irregular main pressure, pH is maintained at 6 to 7 by the monitored introduction of acetic acid, and the temperature is regulated with the aid of heaters and industrial capacity mixing valves A commercial culturist would of course seek to locate so as to avoid these expenditures if possible

Ann Arbor city water is chlorinated, which would seem to present yet another problem, as it does for tadpoles It has proved necessary to install an industrial activated charcoal dechlorinator to provide safe water for tadpoles However, while chlorine is toxic to tadpoles at concentrations well below the 0 6 ppm found in Ann Arbor city water, adult frogs can stand chlorination up to 4 ppm In fact, mild chlorination serves as a prophylactic measure against bacterial diseases Adults are thus kept in water provided by lines which bypass the dechlorinator

TADPOLE BOTTLES

Differences in water quality requirements, along with other aspects of the life history of frogs, dictate that separate housing facilities be provided for each life stage Fertilized eggs and very young tadpoles are held at low density in shallow enamel pans Dead embryos are removed regularly, and the water is changed at least every third day When vigorous swimming commences, the tadpoles are transferred to special tadpole bottles (Plate 1)

A tadpole bottle is constructed by removing the bottom of a conventional 1 gal glass or plastic bottle, stoppering and inverting it Water is supplied from below through a 10 mm glass tube and removed through a 15 mm plastic siphon tube extending to the stopper In this manner a constant flow is maintained, and the oldest, "stale" water is removed Flow through each bottle is adjusted so that the water is exchanged about three times daily, yet dangerous currents are not created A circular stainless steel screen inserted over the inflow and siphon tubes prevents tadpoles from becoming trapped in the neck of the bottle Tadpole bottles each containing 25 to 75 tadpoles, depending on size and species, are held in racks provided with waste troughs to dispose of the water which is siphoned out.

In nature, certain individuals of each batch of tadpoles grow most

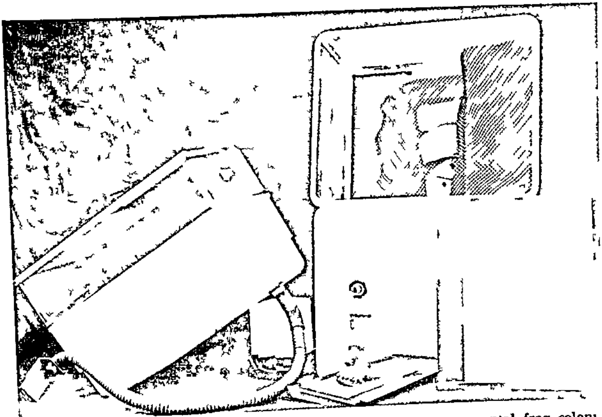


PLATE 2 Cages for adult frogs at University of Michigan experimental frog colony (Courtesy University of Michigan News Service)

that each cage can be individually withdrawn for inspection, cleaning and so on The overflow tubes are connected to a telescoping drain so that circulation need not be interrupted during such operations

A simpler device for holding adults which may be more readily adaptable to commercial culture, is a 5 m long trough, equipped similarly to the cages just described, but not incorporating the two story structure Such troughs may be divided into compartments, without losing the desirable feature of easy flushing, by simply leaving a 6 mm open space under each divider

Separate housing facilities are maintained as a quarantine for newly received frogs Such animals are first held 10 min in water containing enough calcium hypochlorite to produce a chlorine concentration of 6 ppm Following this treatment they are placed in isolated containers and provided with an excess of food until their health is assured

FEEDING

Feeding is critical to the success of all forms of frog culture, and Nace's system is no exception Tadpoles may be fed a variety of greens but boiled romaine or escarole lettuce has been found best Spinach is

rapidly at first These large individuals release a growth inhibiting substance which acts upon the smaller tadpoles The result is that tadpoles metamorphose and emerge as frogs in waves rather than all at once While in nature this helps avert mass mortality due to predation or unfavorable conditions in the terrestrial environment, commercial culturists would not be likely to find this arrangement advantageous Fortunately, the use of continuously flowing water, as described here, prevents the accumulation of the growth inhibiting substance and results in relatively uniform growth and more or less simultaneous metamorphosis

CAGES FOR METAMORPHOSED AND ADULT FROGS

Metamorphosis is considered to have occurred when the forelimbs erupt, at which time the young frogs are transferred to rectangular plastic containers lined with rubber mats and containing a few pieces of broken clay flower pots to serve as cover These cages are placed on racks at an incline so that one end contains water while the other is dry The containers are cleaned and the water is changed every third day

Transformation into the frog form need not be complete for the young to be treated as adults Rather they are transferred to adult containers as soon as their vigor is assured Housing for adult frogs should have the following characteristics

1 Both aquatic and terrestrial areas
2 Flowing water and facilities to permit flushing
3 Construction design which permits ready access and allows cleaning with minimal handling of the frogs
4 Closures which are strong enough to prevent the escape of frogs fine enough to retain insects presented as food and open enough to provide adequate ventilation

These conditions are met by the rather elaborate two-story plastic cages used at Michigan The opaque bottom section of each cage contains not only water but ledges so that the frogs may remain dry but secluded Nested into the bottom sector is a dry, transparent cage with a rubber mat and clay shelters like those used in containers for newly metamorphosed frogs A hole in the bottom of the upper section permits the frogs to move from level to level Water is supplied through a tube in the rear of the bottom compartment and leaves via a 25-mm high overflow tube Tops are made of stainless steel wire cloth and incorporate an access port.

Adult cages (Plate 2) which are either 48 3 cm × 26 7 cm × 16 5 cm deep or 50 8 cm × 40 6 cm × 21 6 cm deep are mounted on racks so

containing ten vitamins, as well as calcium, magnesium, and various trace elements.

BREEDING AND SELECTION

Laboratory breeding procedures for frogs have been standardized and are well described in a number of embryology texts, thus need not be repeated here. (See references at end of this chapter.) Commercial adaptations have yet to be worked out.

Frogs have been selectively bred for some time, a process which has been greatly enhanced by the discovery that the skin markings of each frog are unique and may be used like human fingerprints as a means of individual identification. All frogs in the Michigan colony are routinely identified at metamorphosis and a complete breeding record kept for each individual, a procedure which could easily be applied by commercial culturists to selected breeder frogs (Plate 3).

POSSIBILITY OF INDOOR COMMERCIAL CULTURE

Obviously, the methods just described will have to be simplified somewhat if frogs are to be commercially cultivated indoors. The first to attempt to adapt Nace's and Kawamura's techniques to commercial culture, and also the first to culture bullfrogs indoors, is Dudley D. Culley, Jr., of the Department of Forestry and Wildlife Management, Louisiana State University. The principal difference between Culley's procedure and that used at Michigan is the source of food. Tadpoles are fed on commercially available rabbit pellets or trout chow. Adult bullfrogs have been found to prefer fish to other food organisms, thus experimental animals at Louisiana State are maintained on a diet of mosquito fish (*Gambusia affinis*) and sailfin mollies (*Mollienisia latipinna*), both of which are easily bred and maintained in captivity. Bullfrogs are also fond of tadpoles, and experiments are being conducted with excess tadpoles as food. The principal obstacle to total biological success in indoor bullfrog culture is the difficulty of breeding them, but Culley is optimistic that this problem will eventually be solved.

DISEASES

Diseases present a relatively small problem in frog culture. The most commonly reported "disease" is "red-leg," usually attributed to overcrowding. Actually there are two conditions which may give rise to a

avoided, as it may cause formation of kidney stones A good deal of judgment is required in feeding for, although tadpoles consume great amounts of food and must be fed twice daily, they may be killed by overfeeding The basic lettuce diet is supplemented two or three times weekly with cubes of raw or boiled liver It should be noted that a number of other forms of food may be equally suitable from the tadpole's point of view, but that the nature of the tadpole bottles dictates a number of the properties of the food Specifically, it must not float to the surface, produce a scum which inhibits gas exchange, or be fine enough to settle through the screen into the neck of the bottle or be flushed out

As in outdoor culture methods, feeding presents more of a challenge once metamorphosis is reached So far, optimal growth and rapid attainment of sexual maturity have been attained only when the frogs are fed on live insects Nace has settled on three species, the meat fly (*Sarcophaga bullata*) the greenbottle fly (*Phoenicia sericata*), and the field cricket (*Acheta domestica*) Crickets are obtained commercially and maintained on a diet of chick mash and water, but the flies are raised in the laboratory

Adult flies are maintained on water, sugar, and a sugar solution and allowed to deposit their eggs on a moistened mixture of sawdust and dog food, topped with several thin slices of raw liver, placed in a plastic tray After 24 hours in a breeding cage each such tray is placed in a 31 0 cm × 28 5 cm × 8 1 cm deep stainless steel pan, lined with paper toweling Escape of maggots is prevented by means of a nonlethal "electric fence created by running a 10 V current through a copper strip mounted on insulation affixed around the lip of the pan Upon reaching full growth, the maggots migrate from the food tray into the pan, where they pupate Pupae may be stored at 4°C for as long as 3 to 4 months, then warmed to 30°C for hatching After hatching the flies may again be chilled or anesthetized with CO_2 and fed to the frogs while in a torpid state

The entire fly culture operation, which produces 25,000 flies daily is confined to a 2 4 m × 3 0 m room The species raised both require elevated temperatures for reproduction thus escapees cannot become a nuisance in the Michigan climate Potential frog culturists in tropical and subtropical climates, where meat flies and greenbottle flies might become established, might consider the possibility of relying entirely on crickets or some other species of insect.

The diet of flies and crickets has proved satisfactory for green frogs and leopard frogs, but pickerel frogs and some smaller species apparently develop a vitamin deficiency and do not survive well Ultraviolet lighting has been found to help but it is more efficient and equally effective to dust the food animals with powdered Pervinal, a commercial preparation

be effected by isolating the infected individuals and treating them with such antibiotics as chloramphenicol and sulfadiazine In severe cases, it is also advisable to keep the frogs in a salt solution approximating 25 to 30% frog Ringer's solution

GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT

Growth and development of well fed frogs in both outdoor and indoor culture systems compares favorably with that observed in nature The chief determining factors are food supply and length of the growing season On the average, two years are required from metamorphosis to maturity in the South and four years in the North Similar variations exist in the growth rates of tadpoles

Of perhaps more interest to the culturist is the time required from metamorphosis to marketable size The only reliable data of this sort come from Culley s experiments Taking a length of 20 cm (including the outstretched legs) and a weight of 130 g as minimal for marketing in Louisiana, almost all of Culley s bullfrogs reached commercial size within 12 months of metamorphosis The fastest growing individuals reached this size in 8 months Through selective breeding, Culley hopes to reduce the average time required to less than 8 months

UTILIZATION

A serious obstacle to the development of commercial frog culture in the United States is the American attitude that only the hind legs are useful as food There is in fact an ample portion of meat on the back and front legs of any large frog, but its utilization would increase the cost of pro cessing Even if the back and front legs are eaten, there is still a large amount of waste In certain Oriental cultures frogs are prepared so that the bones become soft and digestible, or even cooked with the entrails and skins intact, but it is doubtful that such practices would find favor in the United States at this time

Culinary practices aside, if markets or uses could be found for presently wasted parts of the frog frog culture in the United States would be closer to the threshold of economic feasibility Mention has already been made of the practice of feeding frog entrails to tadpoles It is also possible that frog wastes could be processed into a product similar to the marine pro tein concentrate (MPC) made from fish, and used as an animal feed or

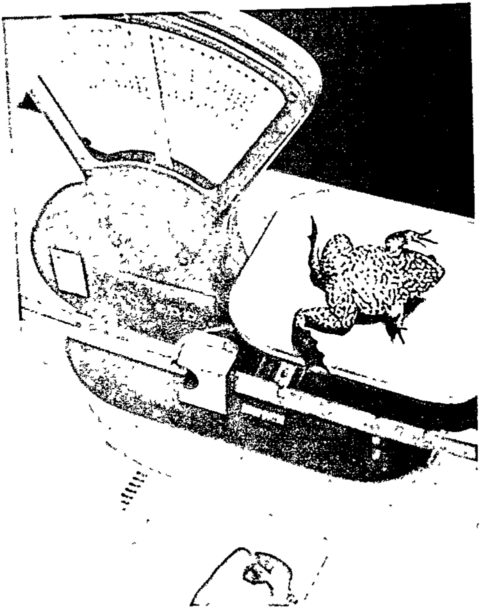


PLATE 5. Large bullfrog showing distinctive ventral markings used to identify individuals for genetic selection. (Courtesy Dudley C. Culley, Louisiana State University.)

reddish discoloration of the legs. Red-leg in recently transported frogs most often indicates simple irritation of the skin caused by prolonged contact with a dry surface. Such irritation may, if not treated, afford access to infectious microbes, but it is not a disease symptom in itself. Infection by certain bacteria, most frequently *Aeromonas,* produces a similar response. The best preventive measure is adequate nutrition. Cures may

dose of progesterone The natural rate of fertilization of *R tigrina* is poor, so stripping of eggs and artificial fertilization have been employed Nearly 100% fertilization has been obtained using the dry method

There appears to be no basis for fear that either species will be a serious predator in fish ponds Preliminary observations indicate that they feed primarily on worms, gastropods, and aquatic insects, with small fish constituting only an incidental item in the diet If submerged weeds are encouraged by fertilization, a frog pond should produce an ample food supply

POLYCULTURE WITH FISH

Indications are that the combination of frogs and fish would be more profitable than frog monoculture Experimental yields obtained when small frogs were stocked with fingerlings of the Indian major carps catla (*Catla catla*), rohu (*Labeo rohita*), and mrigal (*Cirrhina mrigala*) are shown in Table 1

TABLE 1 STOCKING RATES AND YIELDS OF FISH FROG CULTURE IN INDIA

FROG SPECIES STOCKED	STOCKING RATE/HA	STOCKING RATE OF MAJOR CARPS PER HECTARE	YIELD OF FROGS (KG/HA)	YIELD OF FISH (KG/HA)	TOTAL YIELD (KG/HA)
R hexadactyla	2,000	none	259 0	0 0	259 0
R tigrina	2 000	none	235 6	0 0	235 6
None	—	3 705	0 0	886 1	886 1
R hexadactyla	2,000	3,705	234 8	1,611 0	1,845 8
R tigrina	2,000	3,705	218 3	1,093 1	1,311 4

No explanation has been advanced for the higher yields of fish in ponds stocked with frogs, and they may or may not be related to the presence of frogs

PROSPECTUS

Experimental frog culture has thus far dealt almost exclusively with the production of frogs for laboratory use or as a luxury food If the commercial status and prospectus of such culture is uncertain, even less can be predicted about the eventual role of frogs in supplying human nutritional needs Whatever form of frog culture one considers, an authority can be found to support any prognosis, from glowing optimism to a "can't be

nutritional supplement Efforts have also been made, with some success, to tan frog skin and use it in the manufacture of leather items

In addition to the economic and gastronomic incentives, frog culture should be encouraged as a conservation measure Wherever there are large populations of frogs in the United States, they are sought by hunters not only as a source of food but for sale to schools and research laboratories Intensive hunting, along with drainage of wetlands, continues to reduce already depleted populations and some authorities foresee the disappearance of the wild frog industry within 10 years Already American educators and scientists must import large quantities of frogs

Disappearance or drastic depletion of frogs would mean the loss not only of an industry but of an important component of the ecosystem Adult frogs are among the most effective insect predators, and both adults and tadpoles are important in the diets of many fish, birds, reptiles, and mammals Tadpoles occupy a unique position in the food chain by virtue of their benthic feeding habits, which result in their recycling nutrients that might otherwise be trapped in the substrates of ponds It is thus to be hoped that aquaculturists in the United States will make increased efforts to propagate and rear frogs for both laboratory and table use

EXPERIMENTAL FROG CULTURE IN INDIA

Frogs support industries of some value in many of the Latin American and Asian countries but only India maintains an extensive frog culture program, although small scale experimental culture is reportedly being carried out in China and Cuba. The main center of experimental frog culture in India is the Pond Culture Substation of the Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Barrackpore, Cuttack, but preliminary work is also being done at the Freshwater Biological Station Bhavanisagar, Madras In both cases the species cultured are *Rana hexadactyla* and *Rana tigrina,* both of which are in high demand for export as frog legs Officials at Cuttack are not generous with information but it is known that some of the studies conducted concern induced spawning, food and habitat requirements, and polyculture with fish

SPAWNING

Both species of frog which spawn naturally during the northeast monsoon (September to November), can be induced to spawn throughout the year by the administration of frog pituitary hormones with a priming

16

Culture of Mullets (Mugilidae)

Of all the species of fish that inhabit estuaries, probably none is so widely distributed as the striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*), found in tropical and semitropical waters around the world Not surprisingly, it and several of its congeners are among the principal products of brackish water fish culture in regions as widely separated as Taiwan and Italy However, the keen interest of fish culturists and fishery scientists in mullet is occasioned not merely by the present status of mullet culture but by the promise of even greater significance in the future

Until recently mullets, like the milkfish (*Chanos chanos*), the only other important food fish routinely cultured in brackish water, could not be spawned in captivity Commercial mullet culture as practiced today is thus a low intensity operation, dependent on unpredictable natural supplies of fry, involving other species of fish, many of them anything but

done' attitude Rather than add to the confusion, let us simply acknowledge that attempts at commercial frog culture will continue, and state that its future is in the hands of a few biologists and adventurous entrepreneurs

REFERENCES

CULLEY, D D, and C T GRAVOIS 1970 Frog culture Am Fish Farmer 1(10) 5–10

DIBERARDINO M A 1967 Frogs *In* F H Witt and N K Wessels (eds), Methods in developmental biology T Y Crowell Co, New York, pp 53–74

NACE G W 1968 The amphibian facility of the University of Michigan BioSci 18(8) 767–775

RUGH, R 1965 Experimental embryology techniques and procedures Burgess Publishing Co, Minneapolis, Minn

U.S Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife 1965 Frog Raising Fishery Leaflet 436

Interviews and Personal Communication

NACE G W Department of Zoology, University of Michigan.

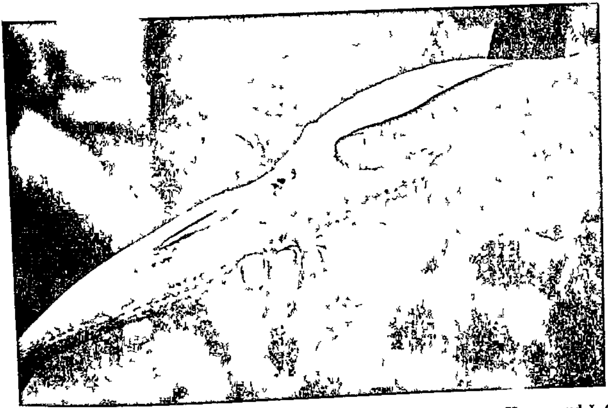


PLATE 2 Ripe male (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii and I C Liao, Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center, Tunkang Taiwan)

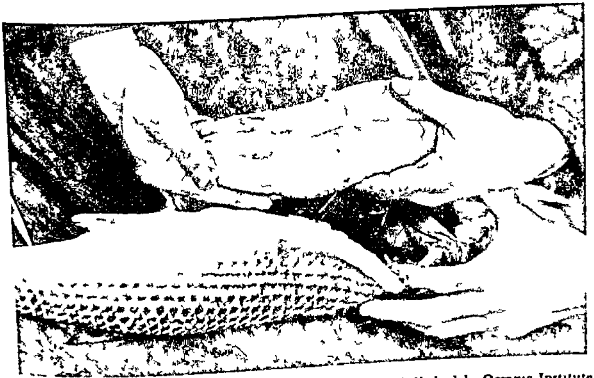


PLATE 3 Ovaries in ripe 2 kg female (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii and I C Liao, Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center, Tunkang Taiwan)

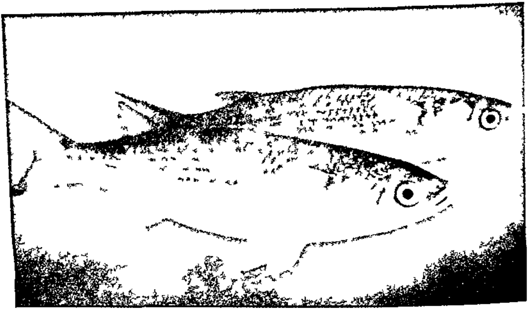


PLATE 1 Male striped mullet (above) and female (below) (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii and I C Liao Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center Tunkang Taiwan)

beneficial to mullet stocks and offering no opportunity for domestication or selective breeding

ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Artificial spawning of mullet was first achieved with striped mullet in Italy in 1930 by the use of methods similar to those employed in stripping trout in hatcheries (see Chapter 20) The implications for practical culture of this accomplishment were slight however, since in most regions it is very difficult to capture ripe mullet

A more important breakthrough was achieved in 1964 by Yun An Tang of the Taiwan Fisheries Research Institute Tang succeeded in inducing ovulation and successfully spawning striped mullet by injecting ripening fish with *M cephalus* pituitary extract and the synthetic hormone synahorin In each subsequent year, Taiwanese biologists have endeavored to improve their techniques Current practices produce about 70% spawning of females within 20 to 24 hours of injection

Taiwanese biologists are still dependent for experimental fish on fishermen who are able to capture a few ripening mullet as their spawning run passes the southwest coast of the island in December or January Females selected for induced spawning are 4 to 6 years old and average

PLATE 5. Intramuscular injection of females with mullet pituitary, synahorin (25 RU), and vitamin E, as practised in Taiwan. (Courtesy Dr. Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii and I. C. Liao, Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center, Tunkang, Taiwan.)

In 1968, biologists at the Fish Culture Research Station, Dor, Israel, had some success in spawning striped mullet using three fractional injections of common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) pituitary, collected from April to July, at the peak of its potency. After the first injection with 1.6 pituitaries/kg of female mullet, the fish, which came from freshwater ponds, were placed in freshwater in 1.65 m × 1.25-m concrete tanks. The second and third injections, each of 2.0 pituitaries/kg of mullet, were given 7 and 14 hours after the fish were placed in the concrete tanks. The third injection was supplemented by 2.0 IU of luteinizing hormone. After the mullet had been in the tanks 1 to 2 days, they were transferred to similar tanks containing half strength sea water, which was gradually increased over 12 to 24 hours to full strength. Spawning occurred 17 hours later in the tank.

The eggs were placed in specially designed incubators and hatched in 36 to 44 hours at 22 to 23°C. For the first 22 hours they floated, but with the development of the embryo (visible as a darkening of the egg), they sank.

The significance of the Israeli achievement is that mullet culturists

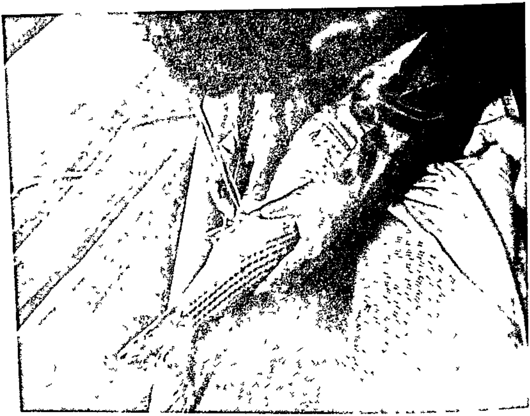


PLATE 4 Suction of oocytes from female to ascertain state of maturity prior to injection (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii and I C. Liao, Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center, Tunkang, Taiwan)

55 cm in length and 2 kg in weight. Males used are 4-year-olds, averaging 50 cm long and 1.2 kg in weight. It has not been found necessary to inject males, but females receive a total of 2 to 4 pituitaries and 10 to 20 rabbit units of Synahorin, injected intramuscularly Fractional injection is used, with 1/3 of the dosage administered at once and the rest 20 to 24 hours later. After allowing 20 to 24 hours for ovulation in holding ponds at 19 to 23°C and 32.5 to 33.0‰ salinity, fertilization is done artificially, using the "dry" method.

Eggs have been incubated in baskets suspended in large plastic tanks or in the tanks themselves with either aeration or constant circulation or both, with no difference in results. Plate 8 illustrates a hatching arrangement successfully used at the Oceanic Institute, Waimanalo, Hawaii Raising the temperature to 22 to 24°C reduces the time required for hatching to 50 to 60 hours. In either case, hatching rates have ranged from 40 to 90%. Most of the eggs that have failed to hatch have been found to be either overripe or premature.

PLATE 7 Belly of female after two injections 24 hours apart (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii and I C Liao, Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center, Tunkang, Taiwan)

nique for coelomic administration of hormones via a polyethylene catheter implanted in the coelomic cavity and secured internally by means of a "feathered" sleeve. The free end, used to administer the injections, is a buoy

By using this device three times a week to administer one mullet or salmon (*Oncorhynchus*) pituitary plus 30 rabbit units of synahorin per 800 g of female mullet, it was possible to produce egg release spontaneously or manually within 2 weeks Fertilization was done artificially, using noninjected males, and the eggs hatched at 26°C and 32‰ salinity.

The only mullet species other than *M. cephalus* to be spawned in captivity thus far are *Mugil capito* in Israel, and *Mugil macrolepis* and *Mugil troschelli* in India. All have been spawned with the aid of pituitary injection, but in 1969, workers at the Directorate of Fisheries, Orissa State, India, captured and stripped fully mature specimens taken from the mouth of Chilka Lake (a brackish lagoon) Fertilization was successful, and hatching occurred 22 to 24 hours later at temperatures of 21 to 29°C The hybrid ♀ *Mugil cephalus* × ♂ *Mugil capito* has been produced in Israel.

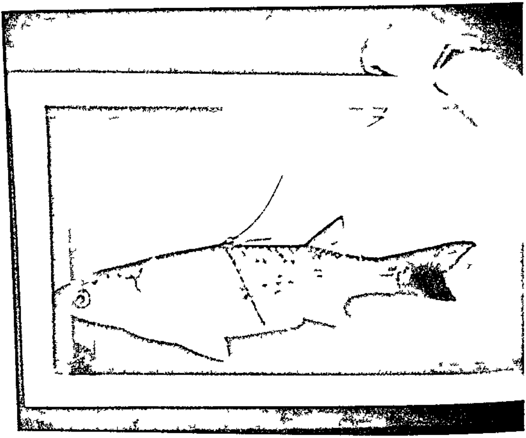


PLATE 6 Hormone injection through polyethylene catheter (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii and I C Liao Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center Tunkang Taiwan)

need not be dependent on wild fish captured during the spawning run The mullet used in the experiment were captured as fry from a Mediterranean estuary and reared in freshwater ponds at Dor To ensure ripeness specimens used in the experiment were stocked in newly filled ponds at 600 to 800 fish/ha in August 2 months prior to the spawning season One of the obstacles to selective breeding of mullets has been the difficulty of obtaining adequate amounts of potential spawners but, from now on Israeli workers should have large numbers available The work at Dor has also been useful in that it demonstrates that common carp pituitaries which are available nearly everywhere can be used to induce ovulation in mullet thus eliminating the need to sacrifice mullet for that purpose

Another problem experienced by mullet culturists in Israel and elsewhere is the fragility of *Mugil* spp with respect to handling The necessity for handling during pituitary injection has been reduced by researchers at the Oceanic Institute Hawaii, who have developed a tech

PLATE 9 Plastic stripping from which mullet graze periphyton (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii and I C Liao Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center Tunkang Taiwan)

of chironomid larvae which the late A Yashouv cultured at Dor It is possible to keep 40 000 to 50 000 larvae in a flat tray 1 m in diameter and several centimeters high filled with soil and manure covered with water Production is maintained during the winter by covering the trays with plastic screen to simulate a greenhouse Using these simple techniques it is possible to harvest 0 5 kg of nourishing fish food daily from a single tray It is theorized that these metamorphosing insects may contain some sort of growth enhancing substance which is extraordinarily effective on cold blooded vertebrates Yashouv attempted to determine the minimum amount of these larvae needed to supplement the basic fish and algae diet, in the hope that it would be part of the key to successful rearing of mullet fry

A method currently being tested at the Oceanic Institute in Hawaii utilizes buoyant plastic strips to increase the grazing surface area available to the fish Diatoms will grow on the plastic, but improvement is hoped for as a result of imbedding nutrients in the plastic

The greatest success in rearing mullet fry has been achieved at the Marine Fish Culture Laboratory, Tungkang Taiwan There I C Liao

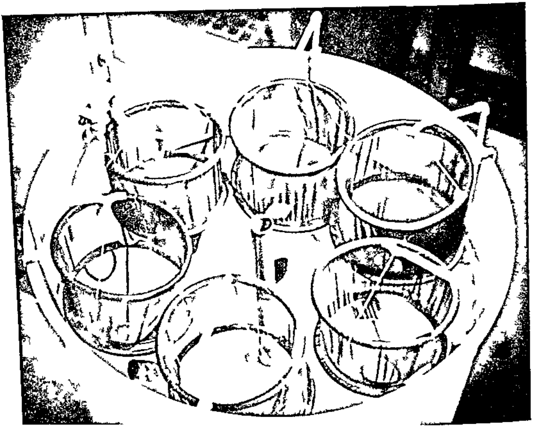


PLATE 8 Hydrodynamic hatching baskets for mullet (Courtesy Dr Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii and I C Liao Tunkang Shrimp Culture Center Tunkang Taiwan)

FRY REARING

It appears that induced spawning of mullets is well on its way to perfection but another formidable obstacle to intensive culture remains—rearing the minute planktonic fry Striped mullet fry commence to feed on the third day but their dietary requirements are not well known and it is believed that failure to provide proper food has been responsible for the universal failure until recently to rear them

Most culturists count themselves lucky if they can rear newly hatched mullet fry for longer than a week Israeli culturists have been somewhat more successful with fry of the golden gray mullet (*Mugil auratus*) captured from estuaries at weights of 0 2 to 0 5 g Researchers at Dor have been able to raise these tiny fry to 2 0 g on a diet of fish flesh and fish flour extruded through a plastic plate with tiny perforations Survival was greatly enhanced by fortifying this diet with algae collected from mullet ponds Further improvement was achieved by the addition

Several males and a single female spawn at sea during the cold months, laying pelagic eggs which hatch within two days The minute, heavily pigmented fry move into estuaries and coastal tide pools in late winter or early spring, to remain there until moving offshore the following fall or winter Mullet of all ages prefer warm, brackish water but, as mentioned, they are tolerant of a wide range of environmental conditions

Fry feed principally on plankton and are believed to prefer diatoms and epiphytic *Cyanophyceae* Fry of at least one predominantly fresh water species, *Mugil corsula* of India, Pakistan, and Burma, are said to prefer copepods and small insects Adults of all species are primarily benthic feeders, consuming algae and vegetable detritus, with an incidental intake of small animals, which may be essential Decayed higher plants are readily accepted when available *Mugil cephalus* reaches lengths of 50 to 55 cm and weights of 1 2 to 2 0 kg in 4 to 6 years Most of the other species are slightly smaller, although *Mugil tade* of the Indo Pacific region reaches a maximum length of about 70 cm

CULTURE IN ISRAEL

The most sophisticated use of mullets in fish culture is developing in Israel, where *Mugil cephalus* and, to a lesser extent, *Mugil capito* and *Mugil auratus* are used in polyculture, with common carp as the primary crop Interest in mullet in Israel began in the late 1940s, when it was postulated that production of fish by intensive pond culture, with fertilization and supplementary feeding, as practiced in Israel at that time, could be augmented by fuller utilization of the pond environment through polyculture A number of species were tried and rejected, but only mullet and several species of *Tilapia*, notably *Tilapia galilea* and *Tilapia nilotica*, have thus far found practical application Today 50% of the fish farms in Israel grow mullet and/or tilapia together with carp Nevertheless, the practice is still considered experimental, and few guide lines exist as to proper management practices

Mullet cultured commercially in Israel are obtained as advanced fry from Mediterranean estuaries and reared alone in fertilized ponds to the second year, at which time they weigh 30 to 70 g Stocking rates are by no means standardized, but mullets are usually stocked at 500 to 800/ha One system successfully used in commercial culture involved 1200 carp 1050 *Tilapia nilotica*, and 600 mullet/ha. Stocking is timed so that the mullet and tilapia reach marketable size 120 to 150 days after stocking at the same time as the carp

Tilapia have fitted into the Israeli scheme of fish culture very well, but success with mullet has been less than was anticipated They seem

and his associates reared 500 *Mugil cephalus* from the egg to a length of 19 cm As larvae they were housed in two neon lighted concrete tanks, 20 m × 10 m × 2 m deep, with greenhouse tops Food was provided in the form of *Brachionus*, oyster trochophore larvae, and copepods harvested from brackish water ponds, supplemented with mixed cultured diatoms The water was static and never changed, but was aerated

Large scale breeding and, ultimately, selection of mullets are still not commercial realities, but it appears almost certain that major break throughs in this area are only a few years away When they are made, the striped mullet, and perhaps other species, will become the first marine counterparts of such truly domesticated freshwater food fish as the com mon carp and the rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*)

MULLET IN PRACTICAL FISH CULTURE

DESIRABLE CHARACTERISTICS

Mullet now play an important role in fish culture in a number of places, notably the Mediterranean and southeast Asia Their popularity is no accident, they possess several characteristics desirable in a fish for pond culture

1 High quality of flesh

2 Extreme salinity tolerance, a characteristic particularly desirable in a fish to be kept in intertidal ponds Striped mullet have been grown at salinities of 0 to 38‰, in other words, from completely freshwater to strong sea water

3 Wide temperature tolerance Striped mullet survive temperatures of 3 to 35°C

4 Low position on the food chain Mullet are herbivores, feeding on plankton, benthic algae, and, in ponds, decaying higher plants They thus respond well to inexpensive methods of fertilization They also readily accept supplemental foods such as rice bran and peanut meal or cake

SOURCE OF STOCK AND NATURAL HISTORY

Since they are not yet able to spawn mullets routinely, culturists must take advantage of the natural habits to obtain stock. The natural history of the striped mullet, which applies, with noted exceptions to other spe cies of *Mugil*, is as follows

separating the two, but for our purposes simply trapping a number of fish in a blocked-off estuary and waiting for them to grow will not be considered as "culture." If, however, certain species or individuals are selected and stocked in an estuary, or if feeding or fertilization is resorted to, it will be considered to be within the scope of this treatise.

Of the Mediterranean countries, the only one with large areas of brackish water which are so exploited as to fall under our definition of "culture" is Italy. Some of the Italian "valli," as the modified estuaries are called, produce primarily eels (*Anguilla anguilla* and *Anguilla vulgaris*); but mullet are the principal crop in the most advanced valli, located in the lagoon of Venice. Four species are commonly stocked, according to the season. The first species available in the spring is *Mugil capito*, fry of which enter the lagoon as early as February. In April, *Mugil chelo* becomes available. From July to September *Mugil saliens* is stocked, and finally, from October to December, the largest and most valued species, *Mugil cephalus*, is found in the lagoon. *Mugil auratus* may also be taken in the early spring, but is relatively uncommon, as it rarely enters waters of less than 20‰ salinity. Other fishes stocked include eels in the fall and gilthead bream (*Sparus auratus*) and "bass" (*Dicentrarchus labrax*) in the spring. The latter two species are of dubious value, as they are predators and may seriously deplete stocks of mullet fry. On the other hand, they bring the highest prices of any fish grown in the valli.

Mullet and other fish stocked in the valli are for the most part not captured by the valli operators themselves, but are purchased from specialized fry fishermen. Fry are usually not stocked directly into open water, but are placed in a "seragio," a series of parallel trenches (Fig. 1) so located as not to be exposed to the full force of the wind and accessible to supplies of both fresh and brackish water. Fry are left in the seragio until they are large enough and well enough acclimated to get along in open water. *Mugil cephalus* fry, in particular, need the shelter afforded by the seragio to protect them from the cold waters of late fall and early winter. A similar series of trenches, called a "conserva," is included on the opposite side of the valle as a wintering ground for slightly larger fish.

Still larger fish may be wintered in a "canale raccoglitore" located along that side of the valle which is best protected from wind and storms. The canale raccoglitore is wide, deep and up to several kilometers long. The banks should be heavily planted with trees as an added protection from wind. Like the seragio and the conserva, the canale raccoglitore should open into both the valle proper and a source of freshwater.

Yet another structure of similar nature is the "fossa circondaria," a peripheral canal at least 2 m deep. Sluice gates leading to all these

to occupy a niche which overlaps those of both carp and tilapia, and may depress the yields of both these fishes, although the total yield of carp-tilapia ponds is usually increased by 13 to 35% if mullet are added. Moreover, mullet bring a higher price than carp or tilapia, thus many Israeli fish farmers find it advantageous to stock them, even in the rare cases where the total yield is depressed. In 1960, 116 tons of mullet, or 1.4% of the total farm fish crop, were harvested from ponds in Israel. In 1966, mullet accounted for 430 tons, or 4.6% of the crop. The general trend of mullet production is upward, although yields are poor in some years, due to low availability of fry.

In 1964, Israeli biologists began to experiment with mullet farming in the vicinity of the Dead Sea, where soils are too alkaline for agriculture and waters too saline for conventional carp culture. A series of experiments showed that these areas might be brought into food production by stocking ponds with a salinity of 36 to 145‰ with various combinations of *Mugil cephalus* and *Tilapia nilotica*. Much research remains to be done, but the best results thus far obtained were from an 0.8 ha pond stocked with 50-g mullet at 214/ha and tilapia of the same size at 139/ha. Carp were also stocked in this pond but failed to grow. The total yield of the pond at the end of a 109 day growing season was 1155 kg/ha, of which 512 kg/ha, or 44.3%, was mullet. Fish pond stocks may also profitably be skewed away from carp and toward mullet where dissolved oxygen concentrations are low, or when it is not economically feasible to feed heavily. Thus it appears that, even if breeding of mullets in captivity does not become prevalent, their importance in fish culture in Israel will continue to increase.

CULTURE IN ITALY

Methods of culture of mullets similar to those practiced in Israel are barely beginning to be developed in other Mediterranean countries, but mullet are an important food fish throughout the region. The methods used in their exploitation vary from place to place, but most take advantage of the tendency of young mullets and other fish to perform annual inshore-offshore migrations. Shoreward migrating fishes, attracted by the high temperatures, oxygen content, and fertility of shallow, brackish waters are attracted to, and frequently spend months in estuaries. Many Mediterranean estuaries can be totally or partially blocked off to facilitate capture of the fish or, in some cases, to hold them for growth. This is done with various degrees of sophistication and in attempting to describe the techniques used one is confronted with the question "Where does fishing leave off and fish culture begin?" There is no distinct line

Valle management proceeds roughly as follows Cogolere are removed in late February and left off through mid April or May During this time the sluice gates are left open constantly to take full advantage of fry which enter the valle naturally During most of May, the sluice gates are left open only at high tide, to fill the valle as full as possible Incoming fry are channelled off into the seragio, where purchased fry or fry captured in the lagoon are also stocked (An exception is made for fry of gilthead bream, which are stocked in the valle proper) The natural ascent of fry usually ceases in May, at which time the cogolere are reinstalled During the summer, the sluice gates are opened at high tide as often as necessary to replace water lost by evaporation Salinity is thus increased until the temperature begins to fall off in September, at which time preparations are made for fishing

First, the water level is lowered by evaporation or, if necessary, by opening the sluice gates at low tide Then the lavoriero is fitted to the main gate A supply of freshwater is admitted to the conserva, which has been cleaned and weeded during the summer The pass between the conserva and the valle proper is then opened and the mullet, attracted by the influx of freshwater, try to enter the conserva Nets designed to permit the passage of fish too small to be marketed, are placed across the pass The first fish to respond to the freshwater are usually yearlings, and they are permitted to enter the conserva Eventually marketable specimens appear, in this order *Mugil capito, Mugil chelo, Mugil cephalus,* and *Mugil saliens* Young *Dicentrarchus labrax* are also strongly attracted by the freshwater Insofar as possible, they are separated and placed in a special conserva to prevent heavy predation on the mullet in the spring Marketable sized fish may be retained or placed back in the valle proper, to be harvested later by taking advantage of their tendency to swim against the current

Harvesting is done by opening the main sluice gate at high tide, particularly at night when there is a full moon (Eels are harvested on moonless nights) Such operations continue into December, by which time all the fish usually have been captured Nets are placed in the open waters of the valli only in exceptional circumstances

The sluice gates are usually left open and both stocking and fishing are suspended during January and February, especially if the weather is cold

The total annual yield of valli ranges from 90 to 200 kg/ha of fish Though mullet are the principal crop and gilthead bream and bass the most valuable, it is the number of eels harvested which makes the difference between productive valli and poor ones Further south on the Adriatic coast of Italy, lagoon fisheries, which are managed in much less elaborate fashion than valli, yield an *average* of 200 kg/ha of fish annu

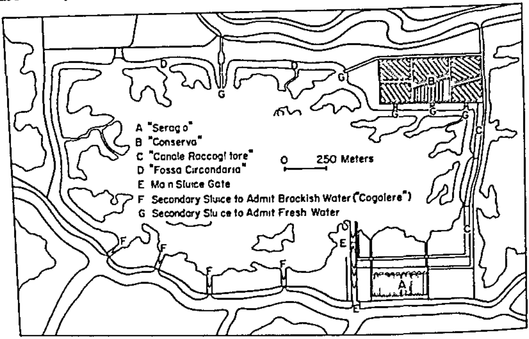


FIG 1 Valle used for brackish water fish culture in the lagoon of Venice Italy (After de Angelis 1960)

shelter areas may be opened during storms or exceptionally cold weather The deep fossa circondaria also functions as a shelter during very hot weather In addition, it serves as a trough to divert muddy water away from the valle proper following storms

Some valli are not as elaborately constructed as just described and may not be abundantly supplied with freshwater However, maximum efficiency in valle culture depends on skillful manipulation of tempera ture and salinity, which can be accomplished only in valli abundantly supplied with freshwater and containing shelter areas for large and small fish The best valli—those which permit maximum control of environmental parameters—are essentially ponds, entirely surrounded by earthwork Such valli, including all the 300 to 500 ha structures in the Venice area, are often located above the high tide line and connected with the sea by long canals, from which brackish water is pumped at high tide, creating essentially an artificial tide

Whether brackish water enters tidally or is pumped in, it does so through a series of sluice gates The main gate only is equipped with a catching device called a "lavoriero" consisting of a series of V shaped screens, open at the apex, which eventually funnel fish leaving the valle into a catch pond Secondary gates are provided with similar screens called "cogolere," which are not open at the apex, to block the escape of fish without impeding the flow of water

have been aimed at monoculture, though *Tilapia* spp., *Anguilla vulgaris*, *Synodontis schall*, and *Chrysophrys auratus* have turned up in most of the harvests. Preliminary results have not been encouraging; in no case have yields approached the levels routinely achieved in commercial culture in Israel. In tests conducted at the Mex Fish Farm in the U.A.R., the best yield achieved by stocking 22 mm *Mugil cephalus* at $2/m^3$ was 350 kg/ha. Total fish production, including the extraneous fishes mentioned previously, was 521 kg/ha. This was achieved with the aid of 30 kg/ha of phosphate fertilizer. Similar ponds left unfertilized or treated with nitrates or manures yielded considerably less. The bottoms of the ponds at Mex Fish Farms are largely composed of cockle (*Cardium*) shells, and it is possible that the resulting high lime content interfered with the action of the fertilizers. It is further possible that fertilization, by increasing the production of plankton, shaded out the benthic organisms, which are the primary source of food for mullet. H. S. Swingle of Auburn University has suggested that ponds used for culture of benthic feeders be fertilized only during the coldest times of the year, when plankton production is usually at its lowest. This technique seems worthy of trial in Mediterranean waters.

It is interesting to note in connection with mullet culture experiments in the United Arab Republic that, while *Mugil cephalus* suffered mortalities of 46.2 to 83.4%, *Mugil capito*, tested on a smaller scale, experienced no more than 33.3% mortality, suggesting that the latter species is less sensitive with regard to handling.

Another approach to low intensity mullet culture being tested in the Mediterranean basin is the stocking of sea caught fry in such brackish water lakes as Lake Kelbia in Tunisia, Vrana Lake in Yugoslavia, and the North Delta Lakes in the U.A.R. The type of fish community depends on the salinity. In Vrana Lake, where the salinity varies from 2 to 8‰, common carp are the principal species exploited, accounting for 87.0% of the annual fish production of 23 kg/ha. *Mugil* spp., the only fish stocked in the lake, account for 8.7%, while *Anguilla anguilla* make up the remainder. Attempts are being made to increase the productivity of this lake by fertilization with superphosphate at 40 kg/ha.

The North Delta Lakes, which reach salinities of up to 22‰, are better suited to a tilapia mullet fishery. In these lakes, annual production of *Tilapia* spp. varies from 136 to 678 kg/ha. *Mugil* spp., which again are the only fish stocked, contribute 18 to 62 kg/ha, depending on the amount stocked, while eels account for 0.7 to 5.2 kg/ha.

At present, the only threat to mullet fisheries and culture in the Mediterranean appears to be pollution, which has caused the curtailment of some plans for brackish water fish culture in France and may be responsi

ally Productive valli are more lucrative than lagoon fisheries, however, since the fish produced are more uniform and because the culturist can time his harvest to coincide with the periods of greatest demand

EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE IN OTHER MEDITERRANEAN COUNTRIES

The total brackish water area of the Mediterranean, excluding Albania and the African coast west of Egypt, is approximately 10 million ha Most of this water is naturally productive of mullet and other fishes, but very little of it has been developed for fish culture as has the lagoon of Venice This is in part due to the fact that most of the Mediterranean coast does not experience the extreme tidal variation characteristic of the northern Adriatic, and essential for valle fish culture Another reason for the lack of development of fish culture in much of the Mediterranean is simply that fisheries have been successful in supplying the demand for fish in the area Nevertheless mullet culture should be developed in preparation for future population increase

Topography and availability of mullet fry would appear to permit valle type culture in Cyprus northern Yugoslavia, and much of Greece, but at present the only area outside of Italy in the Mediterranean basin where estuarine fish culture is practiced on a commercial scale is the Porto Lago Lagoon in Greece The Porto Lago Lagoon is a 5000-ha complex comprising fresh, brackish and salt waters The principal fishery product is common carp, caught in the freshwater portions, but fry of *Mugil cephalus, Mugil chelo, Mugil capito,* and *Mugil saliens* are collected in brackish water and stocked throughout the area by a fishermen s cooperative

Adoption of more sophisticated brackish water fish culture techniques similar to those employed in the lagoon of Venice, has been suggested for the Agoulinitsa Lagoon of the western Peloponnesus, presently slated for reclamation for agricultural purposes a dubious plan at best Experimental stocking of mullet, eels, and sole (*Solea vulgaris*), occasionally augmented by shrimp, is already under way in a number of estuaries in the United Arab Republic.

Efforts are also beginning in Yugoslavia, the United Arab Republic, and France to emulate Israeli techniques of pond culture of mullet In Yugoslavia it is hoped that mullet will be a satisfactory substitute for tench (*Tinca tinca*) in polyculture with common carp Tench are in fairly high demand in a number of European countries, but they grow rather slowly and may compete with common carp more severely than mullet

Experiments with pond culture of mullet in the United Arab Republic

have been aimed at monoculture, though *Tilapia* spp., *Anguilla vulgaris*, *Synodontis schall*, and *Chrysophrys auratus* have turned up in most of the harvests. Preliminary results have not been encouraging; in no case have yields approached the levels routinely achieved in commercial culture in Israel. In tests conducted at the Mex Fish Farm in the U.A.R., the best yield achieved by stocking 22 mm *Mugil cephalus* at 2/m³ was 350 kg/ha. Total fish production, including the extraneous fishes mentioned previously, was 521 kg/ha. This was achieved with the aid of 30 kg/ha of phosphate fertilizer. Similar ponds left unfertilized or treated with nitrates or manures yielded considerably less. The bottoms of the ponds at Mex Fish Farms are largely composed of cockle (*Cardium*) shells, and it is possible that the resulting high lime content interfered with the action of the fertilizers. It is further possible that fertilization, by increasing the production of plankton, shaded out the benthic organisms, which are the primary source of food for mullet. H. S. Swingle of Auburn University has suggested that ponds used for culture of benthic feeders be fertilized only during the coldest times of the year, when plankton production is usually at its lowest. This technique seems worthy of trial in Mediterranean waters.

It is interesting to note in connection with mullet culture experiments in the United Arab Republic that, while *Mugil cephalus* suffered mortalities of 46.2 to 83.4%, *Mugil capito*, tested on a smaller scale, experienced no more than 33.3% mortality, suggesting that the latter species is less sensitive with regard to handling.

Another approach to low intensity mullet culture being tested in the Mediterranean basin is the stocking of sea caught fry in such brackish water lakes as Lake Kelbia in Tunisia, Vrana Lake in Yugoslavia, and the North Delta Lakes in the U.A.R. The type of fish community depends on the salinity. In Vrana Lake, where the salinity varies from 2 to 8‰, common carp are the principal species exploited, accounting for 87.0% of the annual fish production of 23 kg/ha. *Mugil* spp., the only fish stocked in the lake, account for 8.7%, while *Anguilla anguilla* make up the remainder. Attempts are being made to increase the productivity of this lake by fertilization with superphosphate at 40 kg/ha.

The North Delta Lakes, which reach salinities of up to 22‰, are better suited to a tilapia mullet fishery. In these lakes, annual production of *Tilapia* spp. varies from 136 to 678 kg/ha. *Mugil* spp., which again are the only fish stocked, contribute 18 to 62 kg/ha, depending on the amount stocked, while eels account for 0.7 to 5.2 kg/ha.

At present, the only threat to mullet fisheries and culture in the Mediterranean appears to be pollution, which has caused the curtailment of some plans for brackish water fish culture in France and may be responsi

ally Productive valli are more lucrative than lagoon fisheries, however, since the fish produced are more uniform and because the culturist can time his harvest to coincide with the periods of greatest demand

EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE IN OTHER MEDITERRANEAN COUNTRIES

The total brackish water area of the Mediterranean, excluding Albania and the African coast west of Egypt, is approximately 10 million ha Most of this water is naturally productive of mullet and other fishes, but very little of it has been developed for fish culture as has the lagoon of Venice This is in part due to the fact that most of the Mediterranean coast does not experience the extreme tidal variation characteristic of the northern Adriatic, and essential for valle fish culture Another reason for the lack of development of fish culture in much of the Mediterranean is simply that fisheries have been successful in supplying the demand for fish in the area Nevertheless mullet culture should be developed in preparation for future population increase

Topography and availability of mullet fry would appear to permit valle type culture in Cyprus northern Yugoslavia, and much of Greece, but at present the only area outside of Italy in the Mediterranean basin where estuarine fish culture is practiced on a commercial scale is the Porto Lago Lagoon in Greece The Porto Lago Lagoon is a 5000-ha complex comprising fresh, brackish, and salt waters The principal fishery product is common carp caught in the freshwater portions, but fry of *Mugil cephalus, Mugil chelo, Mugil capito,* and *Mugil saliens* are collected in brackish water and stocked throughout the area by a fishermen s cooperative

Adoption of more sophisticated brackish water fish culture techniques, similar to those employed in the lagoon of Venice, has been suggested for the Agoulinitsa Lagoon of the western Peloponnesus, presently slated for reclamation for agricultural purposes a dubious plan at best Experimental stocking of mullet, eels and sole (*Solea vulgaris*), occasionally augmented by shrimp, is already under way in a number of estuaries in the United Arab Republic

Efforts are also beginning in Yugoslavia, the United Arab Republic, and France to emulate Israeli techniques of pond culture of mullet In Yugoslavia it is hoped that mullet will be a satisfactory substitute for tench (*Tinca tinca*) in polyculture with common carp Tench are in fairly high demand in a number of European countries but they grow rather slowly and may compete with common carp more severely than mullet

Experiments with pond culture of mullet in the United Arab Republic

salinity of 5‰ every 4 hours has been shown to prevent mortality of 1.5- to 4.0-cm fry.

Fry to be stocked in the state-owned mullet farms in southern India are harvested from adjoining swamps by means of manually operated purse nets. Such nets are rectangular, about 12 m × 6 m × 1 m deep. The size of the mesh diminishes from 2.5 cm at the mouth to 6 mm at the posterior end. In use the net is kept open by two men, one holding each of the wings. The top of the net is buoyed with wooden floats about 60 cm apart, while the bottom is kept flush with the substrate by the fishermen standing on it. Fry are driven into the net by means of a scare line about 30 to 60 m long, with palm leaves attached to it. When the scare line is brought up to the net, the two fishermen bring the wings together and enclose the fry.

Brackish water ponds in Bengal and Bangladesh may be stocked by simply opening the sluice gates on high tide. In some cases, additional temporary gaps may be created in the embankment so as to admit more fry.

Separate fry rearing enclosures, so common in other forms of fish culture in Asia, are rare in mullet culture in India, although in some of the brackish water farms near Calcutta young mullet are placed in isolated ponds for their first year.

Mullet are generally cultured together with other fishes, mainly pearl spot (*Etroplus suratensis*) and milkfish in southern India, and cock-up (*Lates calcarifer*) further north and in Bangladesh. Various species of prawns are often stocked in mullet ponds in both regions. Feeding is anything but intensive, consisting of no more than a small amount of rice bran every few days.

Most Indian mullet ponds are fertile enough to provide for fairly rapid growth. Table 1 illustrates average growth rates for the four most commonly cultured species. Annual yields vary from 150 to 1500 kg/ha, depending on fertility, stocking rate, and the amount of food given. Mullet may be harvested in the same year they are stocked, or allowed to grow for three years or more.

In Hawaii, the ancient techniques of mullet culture, involving chiefly *Mugil cephalus*, were similar to those practiced in brackish waters in India. A number of other species invariably entered Hawaiian ponds, the most important being milkfish, tarpon (*Megalops cyprinoides*), and ten pounder (*Elops machnata*).

In Indonesia, where the principal commercial mullet species are *Mugil dussumieri*, *Mugil engeli*, and *Mugil tade*, spawning occurs during the west monsoon, and fry are available in coastal waters from October to April. Females of *Mugil dussumieri* and *Mugil tade* with well-developed roe have been found inland, suggesting the possibility of intensive culture

have brought mullet culture to its highest development in Asia. Mullet have always been of secondary importance to the Chinese carp complex in fish culture in mainland China although the government of the People's Republic of China is currently looking into means of better utilizing mullets. Mullet culture has, however, long been of great importance in Hong Kong and Taiwan.

Basic fish culture techniques in Hong Kong evolved from those practiced in the adjacent regions of mainland China but farmers in Hong Kong early added mullet to the pond ecosystem because of their ready availability, as well as to take advantage of the brackish character of local waters. Since the communist revolution in China, supplies of Chinese carp fry have become more difficult to obtain in Hong Kong and the importance of mullet has increased. The political factor is even more important in Taiwan but, even when Taiwan was politically united with China, the difficulty of shipping Chinese carps (which seldom reproduce naturally in the small rivers of Taiwan) from the mainland made it necessary to substitute locally available fish to some extent. Recent success in artificially inducing spawning of Chinese carps has reduced the severity of this limitation on Taiwanese fish culture, but mullet are popular food fish and are firmly entrenched in local practice.

The only mullet species cultured to any extent in China, Hong Kong and Taiwan is *Mugil cephalus*, 25 to 45 mm fry of which are available in coastal waters in late fall and winter. Fry are captured at low tide by the use of large dip nets or 2 to 4 m square umbrella nets with a mesh size of 6 mm or less. Dip nets are usually operated by pairs of fishermen, who wade against the tide and drive fry into the nets with their feet. Umbrella nets are operated from shore with the aid of an 8 m bamboo pole. Captured fry may be stocked directly into growing ponds without acclimation or nursing or they may be overwintered in special ponds and stocked in the spring, at which time they will be about 75 mm long and weigh 2 to 4 g each.

Two types of stocking system are practiced in Hong Kong. One in which mullet are secondary to the Chinese carp complex has already been described under Chinese Carp Culture (Chapter 3). In brackish water ponds, 10,000 to 15,000 75 mm mullet fingerlings per hectare may be stocked in February to April, along with 1000 to 2000 Chinese carp fingerlings per hectare. Smaller numbers of larger mullet may be added in the late spring and again in the fall. The species of Chinese carps used vary according to the availability of different types of food in the pond (see pp. 105–113). The mullet stock is thinned to 3500/ha whenever they reach individual weights of 140 g. Mullet of this size may be sold or used to stock other ponds.

TABLE 1 AGE AND GROWTH OF MULLETS CULTURED IN INDIA

SPECIES	AGE (YEARS)	AVERAGE LENGTH (CM)	AVERAGE WEIGHT (KG)
Mugil cephalus	1	14	—
	2	24	—
	3	33	—
	4	39	—
	6–7	50	1.5
Mugil corsula	3	35	—
	3	45 (maximum)	—
Mugil dussumieri	1	15–19	—
	—	25 (maximum in culture wild fish attain 30 cm)	—
Mugil tade	1	21–25	—
	2	31–36	1.4–1.8
	—	70 (maximum)	—

entirely in freshwater or, failing that, the feasibility of the Israeli method of artificially inducing spawning

Nevertheless most Indonesian fish culturists continue to specialize in common carp or milkfish, depending on the salinity of their ponds Mullet, which are to some extent competitive with milkfish, are usually considered an extraneous fish in brackish water ponds in Java the principal fish culture island of Indonesia They are important, however, in ponds which are in the process of construction or which have weakened dikes While construction or repair proceeds rather than risk the loss of expensive milkfish fry, the culturist may let in a stock of 'wild fish, which usually turn out to be mostly *Mugil engeli* Total annual yield of such operations is 100 to 150 kg/ha

Similarly, in the Philippines fish culturists concentrate on milkfish and perforce, Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) Where mullet are utilized as other than an incidental component of the pond ecosystem, the intensity of operations is low, comparable to that in India or Hawaii Annual yields average 336 kg/ha A sophisticated polyculture system, based on Philippine conditions and using mullet, milkfish, and silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*) as the principal components has been proposed but so far as is known, not attempted on a commercial scale (Table 2)

As is true in so many forms of fish culture, it is the Chinese people who

TABLE 2. *(Continued)*

FOOD ORGANISMS	SPECIES	CROPPING				
		APPROXIMATE DATE	AVERAGE WEIGHT OF FISH (KG)	MORTALITY (%)	SURVIVAL (NO OF FISH)	TOTAL WEIGHT (KG)
Phytoplankton	Silver carp	Last week of February	1 0	5	1,900	1,900
	Milkfish	First week of July	0 3	5	1,425	427
	Mullet	Last week of February	0 5	50	1,500	750
Macrophytes	Grass carp	Last week of February	2 0	5	570	1,140
Zooplankton	Bighead	Last week of February	2 5	10	270	675
Benthos	Common carp	Last week of February	0 6	40	300	180
Nekton	*Lates calcarifer* (apahap)	Last week of February	0 6	10	90	54
Total					6,055	5,126

TABLE 2 STAGGERED STOCKING AND HARVESTING SYSTEM SUGGESTED FOR POLYCULTURE IN A ONE HECTARE BRACKISH WATER POND IN THE PHILIPPINES

FOOD ORGANISMS	SPECIES	STOCKING APPROXIMATE DATE	STOCKING SIZE (NO OF FISH/KG)	STOCKING NUMBER TO BE STOCKED	STOCKING WEIGHT OF STOCK (KG)
Phytoplankton	Silver carp	First week of March	200–300	2 000	8 0
	Milkfish	First week of March	300–400	1,500	4 3
	Mullet	First week of March	400–500	3,000	6 7
Macrophytes	Grass carp	First week of March	100–200	600	1 0
Zooplankton	Bighead	First week of March	100–150	300	2 0
Benthos	Common carp	First week of March	400–500	500	1 1
Nekton	*Lates calcarifer* (apahap)	First week of June	200–350	100	0 3
Total				8,000	26 1

rassius auratus), and Crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*) A few mullet are still grown in rice fields, but this practice is declining, due to the increasing reliance of rice farmers on insecticides, to which mullet are extremely sensitive

Stocking practices vary widely, a 'normal' regime for a 1 ha pond from which tilapia can be excluded might include 3000 mullet, 2000 milkfish, 1000 silver carp, 1000 big head, 1000 mud carp, 500 common carp, and 250 grass carp, stocked in early spring

A feeding schedule for such a pond might require 2000 kg of rice bran, 500 kg of soybean cake, and 36 kg of peanut meal, distributed as indicated in Table 4

TABLE 4 FEEDING SCHEDULE IN MULLET MILKFISH CHINESE CARP PONDS IN TAIWAN

February–April	Small amounts of rice bran primarily as a fertilizer
May	Begin intensive feeding with rice bran
June	As soon as the rainy season begins and supplies of natural food begin to be diminished as a result of the decreasing salinity of the pond, add soybean cake in small pieces continue heavy feeding with rice bran
July–September	Add small amounts of peanut meal to the ration, this is believed to stimulate growth

Fertilization is also practiced, at the culturist's discretion Manures may be used, but superphosphate is increasingly popular The usual dose is 1000 kg/ha, which amounts to 60 kg/ha of $P_2O_5^-$ However, production of mullet in experimental ponds has been shown to increase in linear fashion with dosages of P_2O_5 up to 180 kg/ha, what would happen beyond this point is not known It is very likely that Taiwanese mullet growers would find it economically advantageous to increase the dosages of superphosphate in their ponds

As one might expect, growth and production of mullet in Taiwan and Hong Kong are much better than in other Asian countries, where culture methods are not so intensive Striped mullet attain weights of 0 3 kg after 1 year of growth, 1 2 kg at the end of 2 years, and, if left in ponds for 3 years, may be grown to 2 0 kg The highest verified yield is 2508 8 kg/ha in a 300-day growing season from a pond in Hong Kong, but yields of up to 3500 kg/ha have been claimed, and probably achieved, in the most intensively managed ponds

TABLE 3 FEEDING SCHEDULE IN INTENSIVELY CULTURED FISH PONDS IN HONG KONG, WITH MULLET AS THE PRIMARY CROP

NUMBER OF DAYS AFTER STOCKING	KIND OF FEED	AVERAGE DAILY RATION (KG/HA)
1– 10	—	—
11– 30	Rice bran	1 0– 1.5
31– 60	Rice bran	1.5– 3 0
16– 90	Rice bran	3 0– 5 0
	Peanut cake	2 0– 5 0
91–150	Rice bran,	5 0– 8 0
	Peanut cake	5 0–10 0
151–210	Rice bran,	8 0–12 0
	Peanut cake	10 0–16 0
211–300	Rice bran,	12 0–16 0
	Peanut cake	16 0–24 0

SOURCE Ling (1966)

Intensive feeding is carried out in ponds where mullet is the primary crop, according to the schedule given in Table 3 Total amounts of feed required over the 300-day growing period are 2500 kg/ha of rice bran and 3000 kg/ha of peanut cake, sometimes supplemented with soybean cake Additional small amounts of rice bran and peanut cake, along with human and pig manure, are added every 2 to 5 days for the purpose of fertilizing the pond, but may also be utilized as food Emphasis on manuring, particularly with human waste, is declining due to the health problems engendered by the practice in the increasingly overpopulated area that is Hong Kong

In Taiwan, where 1,425,217 kg of mullet were produced in 1965 stocking systems are complex Some mullet are raised in freshwater ponds in the foothill regions, where the primary fish crop is the eel *Anguilla japonica* (see Chapter 19), while others occur as a secondary crop in milkfish ponds, along with the shrimps *Penaeus carinatus* and *Metapenaeus ensis*, but most mullet are raised in the 6000 ha of very rich brackish water ponds on the coastal plain For reasons which are partly beyond the fish culturists control, Java tilapia are increasingly the primary component of the harvest in some of the most fertile ponds In the Tainan and Kaohsiung areas, tilapia account for 50% of the crop, mullet for 12%, and silver carp for 10% Other species stocked in mullet ponds in Tainan Kaohsiung and elsewhere in Taiwan include eels milkfish, big head, grass carp, mud carp common carp, goldfish (*Ca*

in fertilized ponds used for experimental monoculture of striped mullet at Marineland Laboratories, Marineland, Florida

Higher yields of mullet were obtained, albeit inadvertently, at the Florida Board of Conservation Marine Laboratory in St Petersburg The body of water involved was an oblong 5 6 ha brackish water pond, averaging 1 7 m deep, originally intended for experimental culture of pompano (*Trachinotus carolinus*) (see Chapter 27 for details), fry of which were stocked and fed on ground trash fish The yield of pompano was disappointing, but the yield of extraneous fishes was high Silver mullet (*Mugil curema*) and striped mullet constituted the majority of the fish population and yielded 767 kg/ha over a 2 year growing period

Mullet culture is not developed at all in the remainder of the Western hemisphere, although its potential for alleviating the serious protein problems of Latin America is obvious The same applies to tropical Africa except that experiments in brackish water fish culture which were begun in 1962 on the Island of Buguma in the Niger River delta Nigeria, included, among other fishes *Mugil falcipinnis* and *Mugil grandisquamis* Preliminary results were encouraging but the Nigerian civil war caused the interruption of this project

One of the few serious objections to mullet as a food fish is that *Mugil cephalus*, at least, carries a fluke (*Heterophyes heterophyes*) dangerous to man Under truly intensive culture conditions it should be possible to control this parasite

Looking at all aspects of mullet culture, one must conclude that even if it does not become possible to institute controlled breeding the spread of the best techniques practiced today—those used in Israel Hawaii Taiwan and Hong Kong—would greatly increase the importance of mullet as a source of food for man If, as seems inevitable, researchers succeed in unlocking the secrets of spawning and rearing *Mugil* spp on a large scale mullet could well become the most important human food product of the estuarine environment

REFERENCES

DE ANGELIS R 1960 Mediterranean brackish water lagoons and their exploitation General Fisheries Council For the Mediterranean studies and reviews (12)

ELLIS J N 1969 Hydrodynamic hatching baskets Prog Fish Cult (April 1969) 114–117

EL ZARKA S E and F K FAHMY 1966 Experiments in the culture of the grey mullet *Mugil cephalus* Linn in brackish water ponds in the UAR FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E 9

PROSPECTUS

Mullet are mainly tropical and subtropical fishes, but a few species have ranges which extend well into the temperate zones, and interest in their culture in temperate climates is increasing. Culture of striped mullet is occurring on a small scale in Japan, and the pioneer British fish culturist C. F. Hickling is seeking ways to cultivate the thick lipped mullet (*Crenomugil labrosus*), in the United Kingdom. Little is known about the thick lipped mullet, which ranges as far north as Plymouth in England, but it has the broad salinity tolerance and predominantly herbivorous food habits which have made *Mugil* spp. so popular with fish culturists. Ripe female thick lipped mullet are found off England from fall through early spring, but the time of spawning is not known. Hickling plans to conduct experiments with artificially inducing spawning of thick lipped mullet by the methods which have been so successful with *Mugil cephalus*.

The potential of mullet culture in the United Kingdom is great, for there are no cultured seafood products which meet with wide acceptance in that country today. Carp are not popular and trout are strictly a luxury item, but mullet are both well liked by British consumers and potentially capable of being produced in large volume at low cost.

Biologists in the Soviet Union are having considerable success with artificially induced spawning of *M. cephalus* which, along with *Mugil auratus* and *Mugil saliens*, is important in both fisheries and fish culture in the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea, and the Sea of Azov.

There are still large areas of warm water where mullet culture, while not practiced on a commercial scale today, is potentially feasible, and some experimental culture is occurring. For example, in 1969, Iraq emulated its Mediterranean neighbors by inaugurating the culture of *Mugil capito*, *Mugil cephalus*, and *Mugil oligolepis* in the brackish water lake of Abbu Dibis.

Encouraging results have been achieved, with little effort, in the culture of mullet in the southeastern United States, but prospects for future development of commercial mullet culture are not bright, since mullet are not normally regarded as food fish in the United States, with the exception of Hawaii. Their aquacultural potential is shown by results obtained in South Carolina and Florida. An 0.6-ha brackish water pond, 1 to 2 m deep, at Bears Bluff Laboratories, Wadmalaw Island, South Carolina, stocked by natural processes and virtually unmanaged, yielded 85 to 227 kg/ha of fish, of which 47.5 to 74.2% were *Mugil cephalus*, during five 6- to 13-month growing seasons. Similar yields were obtained

17

Milkfish Culture

The milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) is one of the fishes best suited for culture in brackish water ponds. In addition to being very euryhaline, disease resistant, of high quality as a food fish, and growing rapidly, it feeds near the bottom of the food chain, mostly on algae, so that large amounts of

FISHELSON, L., and D POPPER 1966 Experiments on rearing fish in salt waters near the Dead Sea Israel FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/E 7

GANAPATI, S V, and K H ALIKUNHI 1952 Experiments on the acclimatization of salt water fish seed to fresh water Proc Indian Acad Sci 35 93–109

HORA, S L., and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo-Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper No 14 204 pp

JOHNSON, M C 1954 Preliminary experiments on fish culture in brackish water ponds Prog Fish Cult 16(3) 131–133

LIAO, I C 1969 Artificial propagation of grey mullet, *Mugil cephalus* Linnaeus J C R R Fisheries Series No 8, pp 10–20

LING, S W 1966 Feeds and feeding of warm water fishes in ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III VIII/R 2

LUNZ, G R. 1951 A salt water fish pond Contributions from Bears Bluff Laboratories No 12 Bears Bluff Laboratories, Wadmalaw Island, South Carolina

PILLAI, G T 1962 Fish farming methods in the Philippines Indonesia, and Hong Kong FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 18 68 pp

TANG, Y 1964 Induced spawning of striped mullet by hormone injection Jap J Ichthyol 12(1/2) 23–28

YASHOUV, A 1966 Mixed fish culture—an ecological approach to increase pond productivity FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR. V/R 2

YASHOUV, A 1969 Mixed fish culture in ponds and the role of Tilapia in it Bamidgeh 21(3) 75–82

YASHOUV, A 1969 Preliminary report on induced spawning of *M cephalus* (L.) reared in captivity in freshwater ponds Bamidgeh 21(1) 19–24

Interviews and Personal Communications

DELMENDO M Philippine Fisheries Commission

HICKLING, C F 95 Greenway, London N20 England

LIN, S Y Professor of Fish Culture National Taiwan University

MOZZI, C Institute of Hydrobiology, University of Padua, Italy

SHEHADEH, Z Oceanic Institute, Waimanalo Hawaii

YASHOUV, A Fish Culture Research Station, Dor, Israel

colonial government began to register fish ponds, the area devoted to aquaculture in the coastal regions has more than doubled, but the methods used in milkfish culture have remained rather primitive.

FRY COLLECTION INDUSTRY

In Java, some fry may be captured in coastal ponds or "tambaks" by merely opening the sluice gates on the incoming tide, but this is not an adequate means of obtaining stock for culture, so most milkfish farmers there, as elsewhere in Indonesia, purchase fry from dealers. The chief fry collecting areas are the north shore of Java and the coasts of Madura. Postlarvae and juveniles 15 to 25 mm long are abundant in these areas from March to May and again from September to December. October and November are the best collecting months. In addition to seasonal variations there are definite lunar and tidal periodicities in occurrence of milkfish fry; the best collections are usually made at high tide during full and new moons. Preferred locations are gently sloping sandy beaches with clear water. Collections are never made over clay bottoms, since the turbid water usual in such regions obscures the fry. For the same reason, collectors prefer calm water.

The mouths of tidal creeks are particularly favorable collecting sites, as are the leeward sides of bars, and so on, where fry often seek cover. Where there is no naturally occurring cover, collectors may lure fry by constructing low rock walls at right angles to the beach. A more common and convenient form of artificial cover is the "blabar." A blabar consists of a long palm fiber rope with strips of coconut palm, sugar cane, or banana leaves or grasses plaited into it in such a way that long garlands about 10 to 20 cm in diameter are formed. Milkfish fry may be attracted to blabars simply floated on the surface at right angles to the beach, but where fry are few a different technique is employed. One end of the blabar is tied to a wooden post driven into the beach, and 20 m or so, held by a fisherman, are paid out in a wide circle near shore. When fry are observed under the blabar, the fisherman slowly narrows the circle until the fry are concentrated in a small central space.

The actual collecting gear is primitive, consisting of no more than a net of coarse fabric, with which fry are dipped out of the sea. Good collections may also be made on ebb tides by fishermen standing in rows across creek mouths.

Captured fry are immediately transferred to earthenware jars. Acclimatization to brackish water may begin at this stage, as some collectors dilute the sea water in the jars with up to 10 parts of fresh water. Such dilution also serves to kill most unwanted invertebrates. The milkfish fry must, however, still be separated from other fishes, an operation

milkfish can be supported in a restricted area. Milkfish are found in warm offshore waters of the Red Sea, the Indian Ocean from East Africa to southern Australia, and the Pacific Ocean from southern Japan to Australia on the west and San Francisco Bay to southern Mexico on the east Despite their many desirable qualities, wide distribution, and the fact that adults are difficult to harvest by conventional fishing methods, milkfish are cultured on a large scale only in Indonesia, the Philippines, and Taiwan Small-scale or experimental culture occurs in a few other Asian countries and in Hawaii

NATURAL HISTORY

Milkfish spawn annually or biannually in the sea near the coast in about 25 m of water Each female broadcasts up to 5 million pelagic eggs, which hatch in about 24 hours The larvae seek out clear coastal and estuarine waters at least 23°C in temperature, with 10 to 32‰ salinity and an abundance of phytoplankton On occasion they may ascend into freshwater lakes After about a year of inshore life the young, by then about 20 cm long and 200 g in weight, move out to sea, to mature about the sixth year of life Adults, which feed on both phytoplankton and zooplankton, reach weights of up to 20 kg

BASIC CULTURE METHODS

Though milkfish may attain lengths of up to 1 m in ponds, they do not mature sexually in confined waters and it has not thus far been possible, even by means of pituitary injections, to spawn the species in captivity Culture thus remains dependent on fry captured in coastal and estuarine waters Certain areas are fortuitously located for fry collection, and localized fry industries have developed in all three of the major milkfish producing countries Fry are acclimatized to brackish water or freshwater and reared to market size in a series of ponds Supplementary feeding is sometimes practiced, but the primary source of nutrition for all ages in culture is a complex of benthic algae, protozoa, and detritus encouraged by specialized pond management techniques, particularly fertilization.

MILKFISH CULTURE IN INDONESIA

Milkfish culture probably originated in Indonesia, where fish farming in saltwater ponds dates back at least to 1400 Since 1821, when the Dutch

More than a little art is involved in supplying fry of high quality, and some dealers are more successful than others. Their methods are understandably not publicized, but they involve storage and transport at low densities and special diets. All other things being equal, Indonesian milkfish culturists prefer fry captured nearby to those which have been transported long distances. Fry collected in the September to December season are believed to be of higher quality than those taken in March to May, but since the annual demand for fry is 20 million, all live fry are salable. Since there is demand for fry at all times, some fry dealers maintain stocks temporarily stunted by minimal feeding for year-round sale.

CONSTRUCTION AND OPERATION OF TAMBAKS

Milkfish culture in Indonesia is centered on the island of Java. Most of the culture ponds, or tambaks, are located within 1 to 3 km of the sea, except in East Java where they may be up to 20 km from salt water. Most receive water from the sea, not directly, but via tidal streams, canals, and ditches, 59% are dependent on an irrigation system. Freshwater also enters the tambaks, particularly during the rainy season, with the result that the range of reported salinities is incredible: 0 to 260‰.

Tambaks may have originated on the island of Madura in connection with an ancient salt industry, but now they are constructed specifically for aquaculture by clearing and excavating mangrove swamps. Milkfish culturists may derive supplementary income from the sale of firewood obtained in the clearing process. Tambaks are usually constructed on emerging coastlines and represent a transitional stage between mangrove swamps and agricultural land, but it is nevertheless necessary to guard against erosion, so a dense plantation of mangroves along the ponds is encouraged. Such trees may also be periodically harvested for firewood, and leaves and twigs are used as green manure in the tambaks.

Ideally, a tambak should be so situated that salinity averages 10 to 35‰. For ease in drainage and general maintenance, the bottom of the tambak should be just slightly lower than high tide. The best soils for milkfish culture are soft, jellylike, hydrophilic, and biologically active muds containing about 4% humus and large amounts of clay. Such mud, which fortunately is usual in mangrove swamps, encourages the blue green algae preferred as food by milkfish and discourages green algae, which are not only less digestible by the fish, but are associated with the malaria carrying *Anopheles* mosquito. Maintenance of a gentle current or oscillation in water level is also conducive to development of a suitable algal flora.

The structure of tambaks varies considerably. In its simplest form, as

PLATE 1 Catching milkfish fry on the coast of East Java (Courtesy *Science*, photograph by R U D Sterling)

requiring considerable skill and experience. Characteristics used in identification include two black spots on the head, another in the center of the body and characteristic movements. Fry may be sold on the beach to peddlers or taken to the storage houses of fry dealers

Flat, water-tight 15-liter baskets made of interwoven strips of bamboo coated on the inside with cement or tar are used for long-distance transport of fry. Methods used in keeping fry in good condition during transport vary widely among dealers Generally, the baskets are filled with dilute sea water to a depth of a few centimeters and fry are stocked in densities varying with the length of the journey, but averaging 20,000 to 40,000/basket. No artificial aeration is used, but the water is changed every other day. When traveling away from the sea, salinity is maintained by adding unrefined sea salt in amounts determined by taste. On long journeys and during storage the fry are fed on rice flour, which may be slightly roasted, or finely mashed hard boiled egg yolk

Fry may pass through several middlemen on their way to the farmer and must be counted each time they change hands. This is usually done by individually counting a sample lot, then proceeding on the basis of volume.

to afflict milkfish is described as a "cold." Following sudden chills, milkfish may become lethargic, cease to feed, and develop a milky discoloration of the skin which disappears after 2 to 3 days. The "cold" itself is seldom fatal but does result in weight loss and probably increased vulnerability to predators.

Predatory fishes, crabs, and so on, may present some problems but can be controlled by adequate screens on sluice gates and by occasional draining of the tambaks. In east Java, this is done up to four times a year, not only to control predators but to increase the fertility of the tambak and to harvest juvenile prawns for culture.

A common pest in tambaks is the snail *Cerithidea*, which has been observed at densities of up to $700/m^2$. *Cerithidea* is reputed to compete for food with milkfish and may deplete the calcium content of tambak water in the process of shell formation. Fertilization with molasses has been recommended as a control measure, but this is uneconomic and functions only by promoting the growth of blue-green algae, which should be abundant in any event. In tambaks which are properly managed so as to maintain blue-green algae blooms *Cerithidea* populations seldom reach problematical levels. Another pest is the polychaete worm *Eunice*, which by its burrowing activities causes tambak soils to become excessively porous. No preventive or remedial measures have been devised specifically for *Eunice*, but poisoning with teaseed cake is effective in control of the related *Nereis* in Taiwan.

Despite the lack of the disease and parasite problems which beset many other fish culturists, Indonesian milkfish farmers generally experience poor survival of their stock. Normally 20 to 50% of the fry stocked are harvested, but some Chinese culturists, who are generally more skilled and meticulous than the native Javanese farmers, achieve 60 to 80% survival. So far as is known, the chief causes of mortality are increasing salinity and pollution through decay of organic detritus. Proper tambak management, as described above, will control the latter, while salinity may be held down by occasional draining and/or flushing of tambaks with freshwater.

Milkfish are occasionally grown to weights of 1 to 3 kg, but most are harvested at 300 to 800 g. The time required to reach this size depends on the skill of the culturist, but also on the location of the tambak. Porrong type tambaks in east Java may yield three crops a year, whereas in inland tambaks up to 10 months are required for growth to marketable size.

Around 1952 a new system of milkfish culture in freshwater, which may have application in inland tambaks of low salinity, was developed in central Java. Fry are stocked directly into shallow production ponds

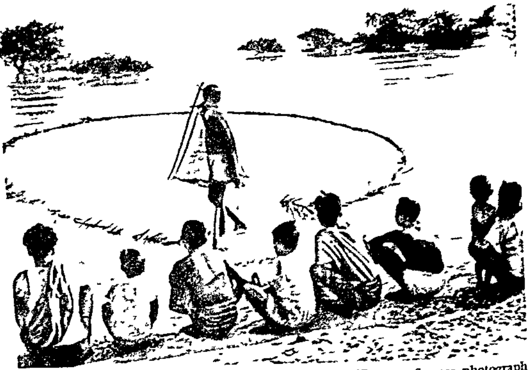
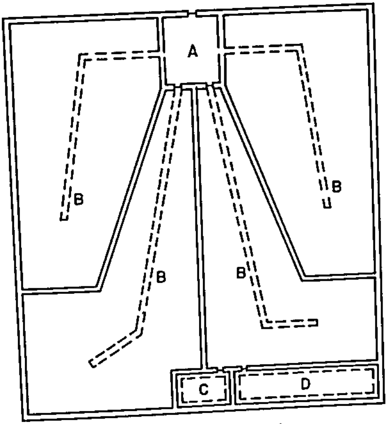


PLATE 1 Catching milkfish fry on the coast of East Java (Courtesy *Science*, photograph by R U D Sterling)

requiring considerable skill and experience Characteristics used in identification include two black spots on the head, another in the center of the body and characteristic movements Fry may be sold on the beach to peddlers or taken to the storage houses of fry dealers.

Flat, water tight 15-liter baskets made of interwoven strips of bamboo coated on the inside with cement or tar are used for long-distance transport of fry. Methods used in keeping fry in good condition during transport vary widely among dealers Generally, the baskets are filled with dilute sea water to a depth of a few centimeters and fry are stocked in densities varying with the length of the journey, but averaging 20,000 to 40,000/basket. No artificial aeration is used, but the water is changed every other day When traveling away from the sea, salinity is maintained by adding unrefined sea salt in amounts determined by taste. On long journeys and during storage the fry are fed on rice flour, which may be slightly roasted, or finely mashed hard boiled egg yolk.

Fry may pass through several middlemen on their way to the farmer and must be counted each time they change hands. This is usually done by individually counting a sample lot, then proceeding on the basis of volume.



A Division Pond C Fry Pond
B Production Pond D Nursery Pond
—— Dike ‒ ‒ ‒ Ditch
Scale 1 2,000

FIG 2 Improved porrong type tambak (Indonesia) (After Schuster 1949)

NURSING FRY AND EARLY FINGERLINGS

The depth of the compartments used for fry and early fingerlings should be less than 10 cm Older fish are adaptable as to depth, but water less than 30 cm deep is most conducive to growth of desirable forms of algae In ponds of low salinity the slope of the bank should be steep to discourage rooted plants Water temperatures in tambaks vary from 24 0 to 38 5°C, *p*H varies from 7 1 to 7 9

The first step in preparing for fry stocking is to drain the fry compartments and dry them for a week or more When the bottom soil is dry it is loosened and leveled by tilling and raking Wet, foul smelling spots are treated with lime to prevent anaerobic decay and the production of hydrogen sulfide Drying, tilling, and liming are usually sufficient to kill potential predators and provide an adequate growth of blue green algae when the compartment is filled Manuring is usually not carried out in

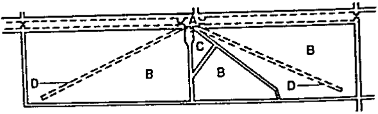


Fig 1 Taman type tambak (Indonesia) (After Schuster 1949)

found in west and central Java a tambak consists of a rectangular 0 5- to 3 0 ha pond 0 3 to 0 7 m deep with a small wooden or bamboo sluice gate to regulate the inflow and outflow of water The high ridges of soil frequently observed in the center of such tambaks have no function other than saving the trouble of carrying excavated mud to the embankment

In east Java tambaks are larger and more complex and have more elaborate sluice gates The structure of the gates is partly a reflection of the higher degree of sophistication of milkfish culture in east Java than elsewhere in Indonesia but heavier gates would be needed in any event to cope with the higher tides in that region Since concrete construction is not feasible in the soft swamp soils the gates are made of teak wood

Tambaks constructed on elevated sites in east Java are of the Taman type (Fig 1) The division pond (A) is connected to the main sluice gate and through a system of secondary gates to the fry pond (C) and production ponds (B) so that each can be individually drained and filled During the dry season such tambaks may partially dry up and fish must be kept in the ditches (D)

The most advanced tambak design is the Porrong type used in coastal east Java (Fig 2) As in the Taman type each compartment can be individually drained but the division pond is larger, drainage is more efficient and a 100- to 1000 m² nursery pond (D) is added Some Porrong type tambaks may be even more complex than the one illustrated comprising up to 10 compartments A further refinement is the inclusion of shallow baby boxes 1 6 × 1 8 m in which newly acquired fry may be placed for the first few days Overall size of Porrong type tambaks averages 7 6 ha but may reach 30 ha.

to afflict milkfish is described as a "cold" Following sudden chills, milkfish may become lethargic, cease to feed, and develop a milky discoloration of the skin which disappears after 2 to 3 days The "cold" itself is seldom fatal but does result in weight loss and probably increased vulnerability to predators

Predatory fishes, crabs, and so on, may present some problems but can be controlled by adequate screens on sluice gates and by occasional draining of the tambaks In east Java, this is done up to four times a year, not only to control predators but to increase the fertility of the tambak and to harvest juvenile prawns for culture

A common pest in tambaks is the snail *Cerithidea*, which has been observed at densities of up to 700/m² *Cerithidea* is reputed to compete for food with milkfish and may deplete the calcium content of tambak water in the process of shell formation Fertilization with molasses has been recommended as a control measure, but this is uneconomic and functions only by promoting the growth of blue green algae which should be abundant in any event In tambaks which are properly managed so as to maintain blue green algae blooms *Cerithidea* populations seldom reach problematical levels Another pest is the polychaete worm *Eunice*, which by its burrowing activities causes tambak soils to become excessively porous No preventive or remedial measures have been devised specifically for *Eunice*, but poisoning with teaseed cake is effective in control of the related *Nereis* in Taiwan

Despite the lack of the disease and parasite problems which beset many other fish culturists, Indonesian milkfish farmers generally experience poor survival of their stock Normally 20 to 50% of the fry stocked are harvested, but some Chinese culturists, who are generally more skilled and meticulous than the native Javanese farmers, achieve 60 to 80% survival So far as is known, the chief causes of mortality are increasing salinity and pollution through decay of organic detritus Proper tambak management, as described above, will control the latter, while salinity may be held down by occasional draining and/or flushing of tambaks with freshwater

Milkfish are occasionally grown to weights of 1 to 3 kg, but most are harvested at 300 to 800 g The time required to reach this size depends on the skill of the culturist, but also on the location of the tambak Porrong type tambaks in east Java may yield three crops a year, whereas in inland tambaks up to 10 months are required for growth to marketable size

Around 1952 a new system of milkfish culture in freshwater, which may have application in inland tambaks of low salinity, was developed in central Java Fry are stocked directly into shallow production ponds

nursery ponds, for a sudden die-off of the resulting heavy algal bloom might lead to heavy mortality of the fry (Nursery ponds are manured in Taiwan, but perhaps algal blooms are less of a problem in that country's temperate climate) As a final step, large palm leaves may be stuck in the banks around the perimeter to provide shade for the fry

Stocking of nurseries is carried out in the cool hours of early morning or evening Temperature and salinity in the fry container are equalized with conditions in the tambak by immersing the container in the tambak and periodically replacing a small portion of the water with tambak water Fry are stocked at densities of up to 55/m^2

Fry in baby boxes may be fed mashed hard boiled egg yolk, wheat starch, or fine rice bran Older fry usually subsist on naturally occurring phytoplankton, but their diet may be supplemented with rice bran fed once or twice a day Except for occasional feeding, management of nurseries is usually limited to changing the water twice a month on high tides

The fry are considered ready for transfer to rearing ponds when the food supply in the nursery begins to be depleted, usually after about 30 days, at which time the fry are 5 to 7 cm long and weigh 1 4 to 3 7 g

GROWING FOR MARKET

Production ponds are stocked at a maximum of 600 kg/ha (2000 to 10,000 fingerlings/ha) Preparation for stocking is similar to that practiced in nurseries, but manuring at about 2000 kg/ha is also carried out Green manures only are used, as inorganic fertilizers have not been found useful The usual fertilizer is mangrove (*Avicennia*) leaves and twigs of which are readily available, but occasionally rice straw is used Although after milkfish pass 20 cm in length they become progressively more capable of consuming such comparatively tough foods as green algae and higher plants, blue-green algae are encouraged in rearing ponds as well as nurseries The bottom of a well managed production pond will be covered by a thick mat of such blue green algae as *Oscillatoria, Lyngbya, Phormidium, Spirulina, Microcoleus, Chroococcus,* and *Gomphosphaeria,* as well as diatoms, including *Navicula, Pleurosigma, Nastogloia, Stauroneis, Amphora, Nitzschia,* and *Gyrosigma* These constitute the main food of cultured milkfish, but other components of the benthic flora and fauna are also ingested, and filamentous green algae and higher plants may be eaten, particularly if they have been softened by decay Supplementary feeding is not necessary in good ponds but may be carried out using rice bran, wheat starch, and various kinds of oil cakes

Cultured milkfish are remarkably free of parasites and hardly any of those which have been recorded are pathogenic The only disease known

to afflict milkfish is described as a "cold" Following sudden chills, milk fish may become lethargic, cease to feed, and develop a milky discoloration of the skin which disappears after 2 to 3 days The "cold itself is seldom fatal but does result in weight loss and probably increased vulnerability to predators

Predatory fishes, crabs, and so on, may present some problems but can be controlled by adequate screens on sluice gates and by occasional draining of the tambaks In east Java, this is done up to four times a year, not only to control predators but to increase the fertility of the tambak and to harvest juvenile prawns for culture

A common pest in tambaks is the snail *Centhidea,* which has been observed at densities of up to 700/m^2 *Centhidea* is reputed to compete for food with milkfish and may deplete the calcium content of tambak water in the process of shell formation Fertilization with molasses has been recommended as a control measure, but this is uneconomic and functions only by promoting the growth of blue green algae, which should be abundant in any event In tambaks which are properly managed so as to maintain blue green algae blooms *Centhidea* populations seldom reach problematical levels Another pest is the polychaete worm *Eunice,* which by its burrowing activities causes tambak soils to become excessively porous No preventive or remedial measures have been devised specifically for *Eunice,* but poisoning with teaseed cake is effective in control of the related *Nereis* in Taiwan

Despite the lack of the disease and parasite problems which beset many other fish culturists, Indonesian milkfish farmers generally experience poor survival of their stock Normally 20 to 50% of the fry stocked are harvested, but some Chinese culturists, who are generally more skilled and meticulous than the native Javanese farmers, achieve 60 to 80% survival So far as is known, the chief causes of mortality are increasing salinity and pollution through decay of organic detritus Proper tambak management, as described above, will control the latter, while salinity may be held down by occasional draining and/or flushing of tambaks with freshwater

Milkfish are occasionally grown to weights of 1 to 3 kg but most are harvested at 300 to 800 g The time required to reach this size depends on the skill of the culturist, but also on the location of the tambak. Porrong type tambaks in east Java may yield three crops a year, whereas in inland tambaks up to 10 months are required for growth to marketable size

Around 1952 a new system of milkfish culture in freshwater, which may have application in inland tambaks of low salinity, was developed in central Java Fry are stocked directly into shallow production ponds

2500 m^2 or less in area The ponds contain dilute sewage, the concentration of which is gradually increased until a bloom of blue green algae and diatoms appears In this enriched environment a 3 month rotation system can be used and annual yields of 5000 kg/ha are not uncommon

The average yield of conventional milkfish culture in Indonesia has been variously estimated at from 50 to 500 kg/ha. The discrepancy in figures is in part due to variations in soil type, as some tambaks are constructed over sterile substrates of senile lateritic soil or even sand

POLYCULTURE

Milkfish culture in Indonesia is essentially a monoculture system, and other species are not intentionally introduced, but the nature of the tambaks insures that some extraneous organisms will find their way in Some of these may be chiefly detrimental by competing with or preying on the milkfish, but other extraneous species may be harvested and sold, notably Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) tarpon (*Megalops cyprinoides*), ten pounder (*Elops hawaiensis*) sindo (*Mugil engeli*), cock up (*Lates calcarifer*), and erong-erong (*Therapon jarbua* and *Therapon theraps*) Total yield of extraneous fishes is usually about 16 to 35 kg/(ha)(year), but in tambaks in the early stages of construction or in those with weak dikes wild fish may be encouraged and 100 to 150 kg/(ha)(year) of mixed fish, chiefly *Mugil engeli*, harvested

Of greater importance are various species of crustaceans In particular, Penaeid shrimps, including the Indian prawn (*Penaeus indicus*), the green tiger prawn (*Penaeus semisulcatus*) the yellow prawn (*Metapenaeus brevicornis*) and *Metapenaeus ensis*, are encouraged The methods of trapping and harvesting prawns are essentially the same as those practiced in Malaysia (see pp 592–593) Yields vary from 25 to 400 kg/(ha)(year) Other crustaceans of commercial importance include crabs (*Scylla serrata*) primitive Mysid shrimps or rebon,' and 'djembret,' a mixture of small and larval decapods augmented by fish larvae An average of 15 to 30 kg/(ha)(year) of rebon and djembret are harvested from coastal tambaks and cured by partial drying and bacterial action to produce a paste called trassi, highly valued as a flavoring ingredient in Javanese cookery

In practice only 70% of the income of a typical Javanese milkfish monoculture operation is derived from sale of milkfish Prawns account for 20%, extraneous fish for 5% and by products (rebon, djembret, crabs mangrove wood, vegetables planted on the dikes, etc.) for the remaining 5%

Intentional polyculture is practiced in the region of the Bengawan

Solo River, where 6000 ha of tambaks are of such low salinity (less than 8‰) as to be essentially freshwater ponds. There milkfish are sometimes cultured together with tawes (*Barbus gonionotus*). Tawes generally constitute the main crop, but some ponds contain up to 75% milkfish, depending on the demand for the two species and the availability of suitable food. Where filamentous green algae and higher aquatic plants are abundant, it is wise to stock large numbers of tawes. Not only do they thrive on such food, but partly digested plant remains in their feces provide both a source of food for the milkfish and fertilizer for blue-green algae.

HARVEST AND PROCESSING

Milkfish are most easily harvested in tambaks where strong tidal currents occur. At high tide they tend to congregate near the sluice gates and can be netted easily. Where tidal influence is not strong, tambaks may be drained for harvesting, or cast nets may be employed.

Milkfish is an important food for all economic classes in Java. Small farmers auction most of their crop as fresh fish in local markets. Larger operators usually work through middlemen and ice their fish for shipment throughout the country. Sometimes a large dealer will offer a flat rate for the entire crop of a small farmer's tambak.

In addition to being sold fresh and iced, milkfish are cured for market by boiling in brine or by smoking. Boiling, which is particularly prevalent in remote areas where ice is not available, yields an important by-product. The evaporate of the brine after boiling is a paste known as "petis," which is sold as a flavoring ingredient. Smoked milkfish is principally a luxury food enjoyed by well-to-do Indonesians.

YIELDS, PRODUCTION, AND PROSPECTUS

Although recent data are difficult to obtain from Indonesian sources, 150,000 to 200,000 ha of tambaks are believed to be under cultivation, chiefly in Java, but also in Madura, Celebes, Sumbawa, and northern Sumatra. Total annual production of milkfish is estimated at 65,000 metric tons.

Application of more sophisticated methods of milkfish culture, such as those practiced in Taiwan, would undoubtedly prove beneficial in Indonesia. This would involve financial assistance to tambak operators, establishment of research stations and, particularly, propaganda and demonstrations aimed at the milkfish farmers, who for the most part are very conservative about adopting new methods. At present, canals and

sluice installations on most East Javanese tambak complexes have silted in and otherwise fallen into disrepair, thus rehabilitation must precede or accompany improvements and adoption of possible innovations

Increasing the area under cultivation is also possible, especially since very many tambaks incorporate large areas of unproductive shallow water It is estimated that excavating such areas could provide 14,000 ha of additional productive water in Java

Opportunities for constructing new tambaks in Java are limited, because there are only about 10,000 ha of unexploited coastal swamps remaining on the island In Indonesia as a whole, however, there are an estimated 6 million ha of mangrove swamps, some of which could be developed into tambaks Construction of tambaks in much of this area may be retarded by inaccessibility and the consequent high cost of labor Mechanization is not the answer, even if it were possible to have the necessary equipment on the spot, since heavy machinery is virtually useless in hydrophilic mud Nevertheless, ways of expanding tambak aquaculture should be sought, if as little as 5% of the undeveloped areas were brought under cultivation, the milkfish production of Indonesia could be nearly tripled with no improvement whatsoever in culture techniques

MILKFISH CULTURE IN THE PHILIPPINES

FRY COLLECTION

The milkfish fry industry in the Philippines differs from that in Indonesia in that most fry are raised to fingerling size (5 to 10 cm) before sale to market growers Fry are available for collection in Luzon from March to August, with a peak in abundance during May and June Depending on the circumstances of collection capture may be accomplished by means of nets or traps

Dip nets are most efficient at the peak of the season and wherever fry are highly concentrated, as in narrow tidal streams A variety of dip net known as a scissor net is particularly effective on level shores The net proper is triangular in shape, but only two sides have rigid frames, the third side is reinforced with rope The poles which form the rigid sides are extended to form handles Where they cross they can be rotated on each other like a pair of scissors, so that the angle between them, and thus the width and tautness of the net, can be altered Where fry are dispersed, or in the mouths of large rivers, unweighted seines 1 to 5 m long and 1 to 1 3 m deep are employed

At the mouths of tidal streams too large for efficient use of dip nets, funnel-shaped traps made of bamboo or woven palm leaves may be set facing upstream in about 1 m of water. Such traps are 2 to 5 m long, 3 to 5 m wide at the mouth, and taper to about 30 cm at the rear where a fine mesh net 0.6 m wide and 1.5 m long, spread and floated by means of two parallel bamboo poles, is attached. Traps, which may be placed close together so as to completely block off a stream mouth, are anchored to bamboo or wooden poles driven into the bottom. Sometimes traps are attached to the poles in such a manner that they float and can rise and fall with the tide.

Fry collected in the Philippines are usually only about 10 to 13 mm long, slender, and so transparent they are nearly invisible. For this reason milkfish fry are usually separated from extraneous animals not visually but by sieving through 1.5-mm mesh.

Sorted fry are transported in 15- to 30-liter unglazed earthen jars stocked at a rate of about 100 fry/liter. If they are to be taken inland, the salinity is gradually reduced by dilution to facilitate changing of water en route. It is believed beneficial to keep fry in darkness during transport, so the jars are covered. Fry are capable of surviving for up to two weeks without food, and transportation is usually arranged so as to ensure that the fry will reach the nurseries within that time. Young fry are very fragile and careless handling may result in mass mortality. Nevertheless, most consignments reach their destination with losses of only 5 to 10%.

REARING FRY IN NURSERIES

Nurseries are of various sizes, usually accounting for about 1% of the total water area of those farms which incorporate nurseries and production ponds. Individual ponds are small (500 to 5000 m^2), rectangular, and laid out in a regular pattern to facilitate management. Each of a pair of growing ponds is separated by a gate from a single 20- to 50-m^2 catching pond. As mentioned, most fry are raised to fingerling size by specialists. In the minority of farms where both fry nursing and growing for market are carried out, ponds divided into compartments, similar to Indonesian tambaks, may be used.

The success of a milkfish nursery is in large part dependent on proper site selection. The requirements for a nursery site include:

1. An adequate year-round supply of clean brackish water.
2. Location such that ponds can easily be drained.
3. Fertile soil containing large amounts of clay.
4. Freedom from floods.

5 Accessibility to fry fishing grounds
6 Proximity to milkfish farmers who will buy fry

Areas free of vegetation are preferred to thickly wooded regions, which are expensive to clear On the other hand, such areas do not yield the wealth of by products characteristic of the ecologically integrated milkfish operations in the Indonesian mangrove swamps

Preparation of nursery ponds begins 2 months before stocking First the ponds are drained, then immediately tilled with wooden rakes, and leveled, so that the bottom slopes toward the sluice gate Some culturists dig a diagonal ditch from one corner of the pond to the outlet to provide a refuge for the fry during hot weather If predator control is not strict, however, the fry refuge may become a fry trap After drying for 2 to 3 days to fertilize the pond and kill unwanted organisms which may be buried in the mud, enough water is admitted to cover the bottom to a depth of 3 to 5 cm Within 3 to 7 days the benthic complex of blue green algae, diatoms, bacteria and various animals, which is typical of well managed milkfish ponds will start forming When this biological complex, known as ' lab lab" in the Philippines is first observed, the culturist may begin to gradually add water until the pond is 10 cm deep From then on, the water should be changed at least every 2 weeks and preferably more frequently to prevent a build up in salinity

When the growth of lab-lab is luxuriant, the pond is ready for stocking Fry are stocked at 30 to 50/m², using the same methods as in Indonesia.

Predator control is particularly important in nursery ponds Despite drying and screens on sluice gates and pipes, some predatory fish, crabs, and shrimp do get in and they should be removed as soon as they are seen Frogs, as well as frog egg masses, are also removed Predatory birds may sometimes be discouraged by erecting poles on the pond bank and criss-crossing the pond with strings

Another serious cause of mortality is sudden reduction of salinity or temperature during heavy rains This is especially critical during the first 3 to 4 days after stocking, when heavy rainfall may cause up to 80% mortality by lowering the temperature of the surface water To guard against such catastrophes, the culturist should raise the water level in his ponds during rainy periods It is helpful to maintain a reservoir of brackish water for this purpose and other emergencies

In the Philippines, as elsewhere, disease is scarcely a problem in milk fish culture An epidemic fin rot has been recorded in fry, but it is rare. The only serious health problem in fry nursing is undernourishment In addition to the usual symptoms such as hollow bellies and lethargy, starved milkfish fry tend to separate from the schools in which they

normally swim and develop a blackish color on their backs. The bases of the fins may appear shiny, due to protruding bones. The only "cure" for undernourished fish is an adequate growth of lab-lab, but supplementary feeding with rice bran may be undertaken as a stop-gap measure.

Within 4 to 6 weeks of stocking the fry should reach the fingerling stage (5 to 10 cm and 1.2 to 5.0 g) and must be sold to market growers or stunted for future sale. Stunting is accomplished by stocking fingerlings at a density of at least $30/m^2$ in ponds low in lab-lab (often this can be accomplished by merely leaving them in the nursery pond) and feeding 10 kg/ha of rice bran or dried filamentous green algae daily.

The first step in harvesting fingerlings is to partially drain the pond at low tide. The fish are thus concentrated near the gate separating the nursery pond from the catching pond. On the next low tide, the gate is opened. The fry, being naturally inclined to swim against the current, swim into the catching pond, from which they may easily be seined.

Fingerlings are transported like fry, but the journeys undertaken are usually shorter. When possible, transport of fingerlings is done during the night or the cooler parts of the day.

GROWING FOR MARKET

Traditional Methods. In the Philippines, milkfish fingerlings are not usually placed directly into production ponds; first they spend a short time in 0.5- to 5.0-ha "transition ponds," 15 to 25 cm deep. Transition ponds are prepared in the same manner as nursery ponds, but they are not stocked nearly as heavily, and green algae may be permitted to grow in them. If the growth of lab-lab becomes so luxuriant that masses of it break off and float, these should be removed, or broken up so they sink, or the fingerlings transferred to another pond, since small fish may become entangled in such floating algal masses.

After about a month in the transition pond the young milkfish are 10 to 15 cm long, have attained the "garuñgin" stage, intermediate in appearance between fingerlings and mature milkfish, and are ready for stocking in production ponds at 1000 to 2500 kg/ha.

Production ponds, transition ponds and, where used, nursery ponds may form part of a complex not unlike the Indonesian tambak (Fig. 3).

In the traditional Philippine method, preparation of the 1- to 50-ha production ponds for stocking follows the pattern described for nursery and transition ponds, but extra pains are taken to assure a good growth of lab lab and filamentous green algae. Fertilization with green manures or copra slime at 450 to 900 kg/ha may be carried out while the pond is dry.

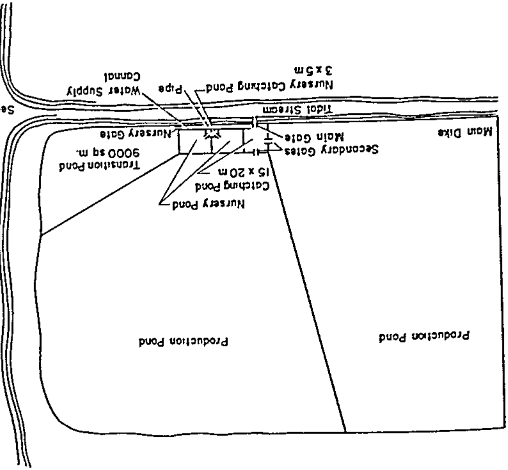


FIG 3 Milkfish pond system in the Philippines (Philippines Bureau of Fisheries)

If the algal crop of a production pond is not satisfactory, it may be supplemented by stocking with lab-lab or green algae grown in ponds set aside for this purpose. Filamentous green algae is especially well suited to this purpose since it will settle and grow on poles placed in ponds and is then easily transported from pond to pond.

Supplementary feeding is sometimes carried out, using paddy straw or hydrophilic plants such as water hyacinth (*Eichornia crassipes*), *Ruppia, Najas, Halophila,* and *Thalassia* (the latter four collectively known as "digman") in a decayed or dried form.

A more recent development is the use of fresh marine red algae (*Gracilaria*) as food for milkfish. It is in most respects a far more nourishing food than other plants commonly fed to milkfish, as it contains 1/15 to 1/10 as much water, therefore much more protein and carbohydrate per fresh weight. Table 1 shows the supposed nutritional content of fresh

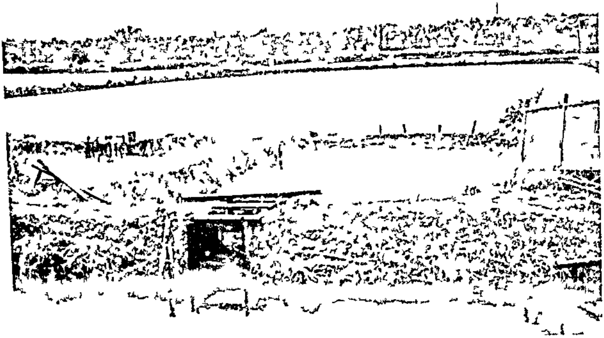


PLATE 2 Philippine milkfish ponds with nursery ponds in foreground connected to estuary by filtered flume (Photograph by J H Ryther)

PLATE 3 Closer view of bamboo fiber filter used to screen water entering milkfish ponds from the estuary (Photograph by J H Ryther)

TABLE 1 NUTRITIONAL CONTENT OF PLANTS FED TO MILKFISH (PERCENT)

FOOD PLANT	WATER	ASH		FAT		PROTEIN		CARBOHYDRATES[a]	
		FRESH	DRY	FRESH	DRY	FRESH	DRY	FRESH	DRY
Gracilaria confervoides (marine red alga)	6 92	15 31	16 48	0 4	—	11 98	12 89	65 39	70 63
Chaetomorpha spp (green algae)	85 50–91 16	2 09–2 82	19 50	0 27–0 91	0 71	2 82–3 72	27 66	7 87	52 13
Cladophora spp (green algae)	57 20	9 90	23 16	0 84	1 96	5 16	12 07	26 90	62 81
Enteromorpha intestinalis (green alga)	81 35	6 02	32 27	0 48	2 57	3 66	19 61	8 48	45 55
Mixed blue green algae	90 14	5 11	—	0 21	—	2 32	—	—	—
Phytoflagellates	88 02	0 72	—	1 32	—	3 91	—	—	—
Mixed diatoms	87 13	6 52	—	0 94	—	2 89	—	—	—
Eichornia crassipes (freshwater higher plant)	89 81	1 34	13 15	—	—	2 19	21 49	6 66	65 36

[a] In some cases, carbohydrate weights may include molecular water

and dry *Gracilaria* and a number of other milkfish food plants The water contents cited for fresh *Gracilaria* and *Cladophora*, particularly the former, seem impossibly low for aquatic plants It is likely that the apparent inconsistency lies in the inclusion of molecular water in the carbohydrate weights

On some Philippine farms *Gracilaria* has almost completely replaced lab lab and other plants as a food for milkfish in rearing ponds and has resulted in such improvements in growth that an extra harvest can be scheduled Fresh *Gracilaria* is not, however, suitable for use in inland ponds, since it will not withstand salinities below 5‰ *Gracilaria* may be added all at once, before stocking, to form a 15 cm-deep carpet on the bottom, or it may be fed in small lots throughout the period of growth In either case the cumulative amount fed usually amounts to 200 to 500 kg/ha One disadvantage of *Gracilaria*, as opposed to lab lab, filamentous green algae, and some higher plants, is that it provides no shade for the fish This may be compensated for by raising the water level as high as possible during the summer

Milkfish grown using these methods attain an average weight of 450 g and may be harvested for market 6 to 9 months after stocking Mortality during the rearing period averages 50 to 70%

Improved Methods Around 1966, the Philippine Fisheries Commission, acting on the advice of Taiwanese FAO biologists, began to promote modernization of milkfish culture in the country, using methods which have proven effective in Taiwan Suggested changes involve increasing scientific use of fertilizers, general adoption of supplementary feeding, more rigorous pest control, harvesting smaller fish, and population control by means of more or less continuous planting and cropping in rotation In a large country like the Philippines, scheduling of farm operations to take advantage of the proposed new methods must take into account local climatic conditions (Table 2) Our detailed description of techniques applies to Management Program I in Table 2 but may readily be adapted to the other two programs

Preparation of a production pond for the first growing season begins in early November with draining and drying for 2 weeks, or until the bottom soil hardens and cracks Before filling the pond with 15 cm of water, 2000 kg/ha of chicken manure and 400 kg/ha of tobacco waste are spread on the bottom Tobacco waste, which is plentiful in the Philippines serves not only to fertilize the pond but, due to the nicotine content acts as a powerful yet biodegradable natural pesticide Saponin at 15 to 18 kg/ha or quicklime at 1000 k /ha is equally effective For soils lighter than silty loam the dosage of chicken manure should be increased by 25%

TABLE 2 MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS FOR MILKFISH PONDS IN THE PHILIPPINES

TYPE OF MANAGEMENT PROGRAM	PERIOD FOR CONDITIONING THE POND BOTTOMS	PERIOD FOR REARING THE FISH	TYPE OF WEATHER	REGION
Type I				
First fish rearing season	November	December to April	First type two pronounced seasons dry from November to May wet during the rest of the year	The western part of North and Central Luzon and of Mindoro Panay Negros and Palawan
Second fish rearing season	May	June to October		
Type II				
First fish rearing season	October	November to March	Second and third types seasons not very pronounced relatively dry from November to April or with maximum rainfall from November to January	The eastern part of South Luzon Samar Leyte Panay Negros Palawan and Mindanao the western and central part of Mindanao and the whole island of Masbate and of Cebu
Second fish rearing season	April	May to September		
Type III				
First fish rearing season	February	March to May	Fourth type rainfall more or less evenly distributed throughout the year	The western part of South Luzon Samar Leyte and Mindoro the eastern part of North and Central Luzon the southern part of Mindanao and the whole island of Bohol
Second fish rearing season	June	July to September		
Third fish rearing season	October	November to January		

No more water is permitted to enter, and by December or January the pond will dry and the bottom will crack as before At this point it is recommended to add 400 kg/ha of rice bran along with inorganic fertilizer (100 to 150 kg/ha of 18-46 0 or 200 kg/ha of 16 20 0 12 12 12 or 12 24 12) It seems strange that Taiwanese biologists would recommend inorganic fertilizers which have proven inferior to manures and in some cases actually detrimental to blue green algae in every experiment conducted in Taiwan or Indonesia Perhaps it is worth noting that the FAO biologists recommendations are repeated verbatim in pamphlets distributed in the Philippines by the petrochemical industries which supply

both inorganic fertilizers and chemical pesticides. It would appear that the thinking Philippine milkfish culturist is still very much on his own when it comes to selecting and applying fertilizers. It may be helpful as a rule of thumb to remember that 14 kg of algae are required to produce 1 kg of milkfish without supplemental feeding. If fertilization produces an excess of algae, the excess may be harvested and dried for use as a supplementary food in less rich ponds.

Following fertilization, the pond is filled to 10 to 15 cm. The tobacco waste added earlier should have eliminated polychaete worms and snails, but predatory fishes, as well as such milkfish competitors as mullets (*Mugil* spp.), scats (*Scatophagus* spp.), and chironomid larvae must still be eliminated from ponds and connecting canals. FAO and the Philippine Fisheries Commission have recommended a frightening array of chemical biocides, but saponin, which is satisfactory and readily available in the Philippines (it is a component of teaseed oil), should be chosen for the safety of the consumer and the fishpond ecosystem. A dosage of 0.5 ppm is adequate to kill unwanted animals.

Three days after poisoning, the water depth should be increased to 20 to 25 cm. A week later, after two complete changes of water, the pond may be stocked. With the last water change, the culturist should try to provide, and subsequently maintain, an environment conducive to the welfare of milkfish. This includes a temperature of 25 to 36°C, a salinity of 10 to 50‰ and a *p*H of 7.8 to 9.5.

The initial stocking consists of 150 kg/ha of half-grown fish (8 to 15 fish/kg), 40 kg/ha of garuñgins (30 to 60 fish/kg), and 7 kg/ha of late fry or early fingerlings (300 to 400 fish/kg). A second batch of fish, consisting of 12 kg/ha of the smallest size group, is stocked in mid-March. The goal of this sort of stocking is to keep the population of milkfish in the pond at 450 to 550 kg/ha while permitting harvest every 2 weeks throughout the growing season. Similar techniques allow 300 to 800 kg/ha. Each time a batch of fish is harvested, the total weight of fish in the pond is temporarily reduced but, as more food per fish becomes available, growth is rapid after each harvest and the loss is soon made up. More complicated pond management schemes, involving up to five stockings in a growing season, have been proposed. Figure 4 graphically illustrates the results of such a scheme.

After stocking, fertilization is continued; the FAO biologists recommend 100 kg/ha of 16-20-0 inorganic fertilizer per month. Supplementary feeding with 30 to 50 kg/ha of rice bran is recommended on cloudy days, as long as the water is clear. If feeding should induce a bloom of dinoflagellates, which are not good food for milkfish, interfere with the vision of both fish and farmer, inhibit the growth of lab-lab, and present the danger

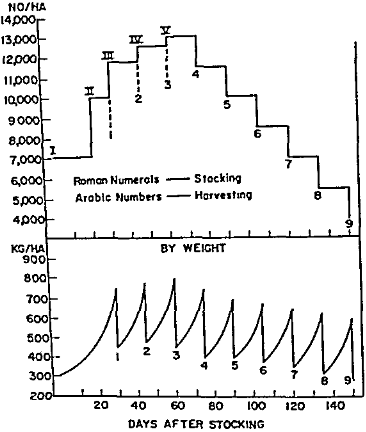


FIG 4 Composition of milkfish population by number as proposed for management in the Philippines (above) Population dynamics of a milkfish pond stocked and harvested on a staggered basis throughout the rearing season (below) (After Tang 1967)

of oxygen depletion following a sudden die-off, the pond may be treated with oil cakes or a 9 1 mixture of rice bran and starch at 30 to 50 kg/(ha)(day) until the water becomes transparent. Supplementary feeding is also practiced whenever the algal pasture becomes overgrazed.

Pond preparation for the second growing season is as described above, except that before stocking the pond should be filled to 25 to 30 cm and maintained at that depth to compensate for higher air temperatures The initial stocking in early June consists of 160 kg/ha of half-grown fish, 80 kg/ha of garuñgins, and 12 kg/ha of late fry or early fingerlings The garuñgins stocked at this time are from the fry and fingerlings stocked in February and March In late July, 6 kg/ha of the smallest size group are added. Most of these will be stocked again as garuñgins the following February

Fertilization and feeding must be heavier in the second growing season

Heavy supplementary feeding is important near the end of the growing season when lab lab is likely to become depleted Where the soil is heavier than silty loam, the rate of supplementary feeding should be increased by 25% throughout the second growing season

POLYCULTURE

Such polyculture as takes place in Philippine milkfish ponds occurs more by accident than by design Among the fish most commonly harvested together with milkfish are tarpon, ten pounders, climbing perch (*Anabas testudineus*), and hito (*Clarias batrachus*), as well as such invertebrates as the sugpo prawn (*Penaeus monodon*) and the crab *Scylla serrata* In recent years, the Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) has become increasingly common Although it is highly palatable, it is disliked by the milkfish farmers because it devours the lab lab intended for their stock

Prawns and milkfish are sometimes intentionally grown together, but the trend is for those growers who have access to good supplies of prawns to switch to monoculture of prawns, which is more profitable, though a combination of the two is more productive (see pp 594–598)

HARVEST

Various methods are used in harvesting milkfish in the Philippines, but the rotation method of stocking and harvest already described is facilitated if gill nets are used The size of net used depends on the size of fish it is desired to harvest (Table 3) Gill nets and seining may damage lab

TABLE 3 MESH SIZE OF NETS USED IN HARVESTING MILKFISH IN THE PHILIPPINES AND THE SIZE OF FISH CAUGHT

STRETCHED MESH SIZE (CM)	APPROXIMATE WEIGHT OF FISH CAUGHT (G)
7 0–7 5	285
6.5–7 0	250
6 0–6 5	222
5.5–6 0	200
5 0–5 5	182

lab particularly if the growth is thick. To prevent such damage, the pond may be partially drained and the fish captured in a specially constructed catch pond, as is done in Indonesia Near total drainage is an efficient means of harvest but is believed to impart a muddy taste to the

fish Many Philippine farmers prefer to harvest milkfish at night, so they can take the freshest possible fish to market in the morning

YIELD, PRODUCTION, AND PROSPECTUS

The average yield of traditional Philippine milkfish culture has been estimated at from 300 to 500 kg/ha The improved methods advocated by FAO biologists have been adopted by a few farmers, and their average yield is now reported to be 1000 kg/ha. Government-operated demonstration ponds have produced yields 500% greater than the national average, and the stated goal of the Philippine Fisheries Commission is to raise average milkfish production levels to 2000 kg/ha. If this goal were realized, the national production would increase from 70 000 metric tons to 200 000 metric tons

Expansion of the industry will also play a role in the future of Philippine milkfish culture. In 1966, there were an estimated 137,000 ha of water devoted to milkfish culture. In 1970, there were 157,000 ha, and there are still nearly 500 000 ha of undeveloped swamps potentially suitable for milkfish farming Thus the maximum theoretical yield of Philippine milkfish culture, using improved methods is approximately 1 3 million metric tons

The principal restraint, both to development of new areas and universal application of improved techniques, is the scarcity of fry The fry industry had difficulty supplying the 1,370,000 fry needed in 1966, and unless the efficiency of fry capture and culture improves or new sources are found, it will simply be impossible to supply the projected demands of an expanding and increasingly efficient milkfish farming industry

MILKFISH CULTURE IN TAIWAN

It is not known how milkfish culture got started in Taiwan Taiwanese freshwater fish culture originated in the sixteenth century, when immigrants from the Chinese mainland brought with them the ancient technique of pond polyculture, as well as the various cyprinid fishes used in traditional Chinese pond culture. Until the development in this century of methods for induced spawning of Chinese carps, these fish could not be reproduced in Taiwan and it is possible that, to compensate for a shortage of carp fry, Chinese farmers on Taiwan adapted their techniques to suit the milkfish which, though available on the mainland, was not cultured there Or perhaps the Dutch, who occupied Taiwan from 1624 to 1661, brought the knowledge of milkfish farming from Indonesia.

Whatever its origin, milkfish culture was well established in Taiwan by the late seventeenth century and has played an important role in the island's food economy ever since.

Despite its shorter history and the shorter growing season in Taiwan (eight months as opposed to a full year), Taiwanese milkfish culture is much more productive than that of Indonesia and the Philippines. Historically this has been due to better and more progressive farm management, and Taiwan continues to lead the world in developing improved methods of milkfish farming.

FRY COLLECTION

The best months for fry collection in Taiwan are April and May, but some fry are available as late as August. Collecting is generally best on spring tides, during full and new moons. The supply of fry varies greatly from year to year; a record 204 million were taken in 1958, but the following year only 58 million were caught. The approximate annual demand has leveled off at 160 million fry, but the catch was well below that level in five of the nine years 1958 to 1966, the most recent years for which data are available (Table 4). In years when the supply is low, fry are imported from the Philippines. It is hoped that the annual catch can be increased and stabilized by the introduction of mechanization and the development of improved methods of estimating and predicting fry crops.

As elsewhere, the traditional fry collecting gear is a triangular dip net. The Taiwanese version is 1.2 to 1.8 m wide at the front, 1.5 to 2.7 m long, and has a rigid frame on two sides only; the third side consists of a rope incorporating lead weights. A metal or bamboo receptacle is attached to the cod end of the net. All ages and sexes participate in fry fishing; the smaller nets are designed for women and children. Fry collectors may either wade or, in deep water, float on an inner tube.

A more efficient piece of gear, especially in deep water, is a sort of bag seine of varying length, with an opening in the top of the bag. Such seines may be pulled by two men wading or by one man on a raft and one on shore. Periodically the fishermen stop and dip the fry out of the bag into buckets. Where there is a strong current, the bag seine may be anchored facing into the current and operated as a trap.

Fry are stored in baskets or specially constructed cement tanks on the beach pending sale, either directly to farmers or to dealers, the latter located principally in the city of Tainan. Dealers keep fry in lots of about 20 000 in 3 m² concrete tanks fed with tap water rendered sufficiently saline by periodic addition of common salt. When fry are to be trans-

TABLE 4. AREA DEVOTED TO MILKFISH CULTURE, PRODUCTION OF MARKETABLE MILKFISH, AND MILKFISH FRY PRODUCTION IN TAIWAN, 1920 TO 1966

YEAR	TOTAL AREA (HA)	ANNUAL PRODUCTION (KG)	KG/HA	TOTAL FRY PRODUCTION (MILLIONS OF FRY)
1920–1929	8,000[a]	8,000,000	1,000	29.5 Extremes (14–49)
1930	6,940	7,990,800	1,160	24
1931	7,420	8,209,321	1,100	24
1932	7,465	8,090,730	1,080	25
1933	8,028	6,436,742	800	25
1934	7,830	7,893,758	1,000	14
1935	7,717	9,020,544	1,170	—
1936	7,667	9,592,547	1,210	—
1937–1939	—	—	—	—
1940–1944	6,835	5,761,364	840	26
1945	6,067	3,007,306	500	25
1946	6,465	5,766,080	880	50
1947	8,698	8,190,088	940	43
1948	10,600	13,078,284	1,230	73
1949	11,154	13,348,029	1,200	77
1950	13,084	15,359,992	1,180	102
1951	13,103	14,090,760	1,080	54
1952	12,724	15,467,744	1,220	93
1953	13,457	19,324,143	1,453	96
1954	13,759	22,407,427	1,620	145
1955	13,869	26,507,347	1,900	124
1956	14,315	24,397,443	1,700	151
1957	14,337	27,033,629	1,890	148
1958	14,987	29,206,180	1,940	204
1959	15,326	25,693,506	1,480	58
1960	16,713	26,156,836	1,560	202
1961	16,600	31,740,247	1,900	135
1962	16,417	25,714,543	1,560	92
1963	15,506	25,880,540	1,800	94
1964	16,147	30,686,265	1,900	171
1965	15,616	27,562,304	1,760	92
1966	15,616	29,094,000	1,863	163

[a] Rough estimate by Yamamura (1942)

ported short distances, they are placed in waterproofed bamboo baskets, for longer trips they are stocked in lots of 3000 in galvanized cans 45 7 cm high and 33 cm in diameter The water is periodically replaced with freshwater filtered through gauze Correct salinity is maintained with common salt

LAYOUT OF FARMS

The layout of milkfish farms varies from place to place in Taiwan, but the general scheme is the same An ideal site is an extensive area of tide flat where the water depth at high tide is at least 60 cm Other areas are suitable, but the sort of topography described facilitates excavation by eliminating the necessity of hauling dirt to and from the site and renders pumping of water unnecessary Ideally, the soil should consist of 64 to 82% silt, 16 to 32% sand, and 2 to 4% clay The more organic matter the better, since it has been demonstrated that there is a linear relationship between organic content of bottom soil and milkfish production

Since the Taiwanese coast is not fringed by mangroves as are more tropical coasts, the first step in building a milkfish farm is construction of a storm dike along the low water mark The dike should be 3 to 5 m high, 25 to 45 m wide at the base, and 3 to 4 m wide on top and have a slope of 1 3 to 1 4 The seaward side should be reinforced with stones or bricks Water is admitted by means of a series of gates in the dike, each connected to a canal There should be one gate and canal for every 100 to 200 ha of ponds

Three types of pond are necessary

1 *Production ponds* should be at least 30 to 40 cm deep and 3 to 5 ha in area Ponds smaller than 3 ha are costly to construct and inhibit growth of milkfish Ponds larger than 5 ha are difficult to harvest The bottom should slope slightly toward the adjacent passageway, which should be 30 to 40 cm deeper than the pond to facilitate drainage

2 *Wintering ponds* must be 1 to 2 m deep As protection against the cold (water temperatures as low as 2 to 4°C occur), a windbreak of bamboo thatched with straw or reeds, slanting toward the pond at an angle of about 30°, is constructed on the northeast side of each pond Since wintering ponds are very heavily stocked, they should be constructed adjacent to the main canal so that well-oxygenated sea water can readily be admitted Plastic greenhouses are also being tested Wintering ponds are not necessary in south Taiwan

3 *Nursery ponds* are 30 cm deep and connected by gates to the winter

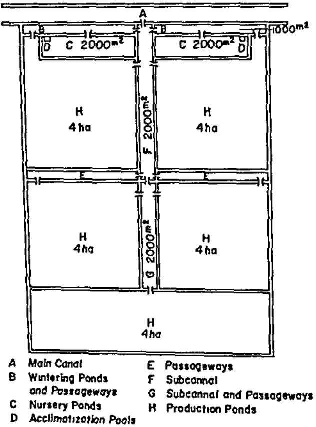


FIG 5 Milkfish farm unit in Taiwan (After Lin 1968b)

ing ponds A tiny acclimatization pool may be constructed in one corner of the nursery pond

The three types of pond are interlinked by a series of canals and passage ways, the design and function of which will become clear as the tech niques of culture are described

The size of a milkfish farm is limited only by the available land and capital, but management is facilitated if the farm is broken down into 12 to 35 ha units each containing all three types of pond and connected directly to a main water supply canal Table 5 and Fig 5 illustrate the layout of such a unit

NURSING FRY

Nursery ponds to be stocked with newly caught fry in April are prepared starting in November or December Nurseries are first drained, leveled

TABLE 5 TYPES, NUMBERS, AND SIZES OF UNITS COMPRISING A MILKFISH FARM UNIT IN TAIWAN

TYPE OF POND AND CANAL	AREA (HA)	APPROXIMATE TOTAL AREA (%)
4 to 6 production ponds, 3 to 5 hectares each	20 00	94
2 wintering ponds	0 20	1
2 nursery ponds	0 40	2
4 passageways and refuges	0 40	2
1 subcanal	0 20	1
Total	21 20	100

and dried for 2 weeks, then filled to 5 to 20 cm and allowed to evaporate to dryness, which takes 3 to 4 weeks Next they are manured with rice bran, which may be enriched with human waste, straw, or oil cakes, at 400 to 1000 kg/ha Rice bran is placed in the pond in 22 to 30 kg bags, then water is added to a depth of 7 to 13 cm When the contents of the bags are thoroughly soaked they are cut open and the fertilizer spread around This process of evaporation, drying, and fertilization may be repeated several times before stocking Finally, in March or early April, the ponds, along with all canals and passageways, are filled to a depth of 12 to 18 cm and poisoned with tea seed cake or tobacco waste at 150 to 200 kg/ha The poison will dissipate within 7 to 10 days, at which time the water level is raised to 18 to 20 cm By the time fry are stocked at 70,000 to 150,000/ha in early April there should be an abundance of blue green algae

By June the fry should have attained fingerling size and be ready for stocking in production ponds At the same time, a second lot of newly caught fry are placed in the nursery ponds The crop of algae produced by initial fertilization should last through July, but after that time the combined effects of milkfish grazing and hot weather cause deterioration of unattended algal pasture Therefore, in July or August the ponds are once again fertilized, using rice bran, peanut cake, soybean cake, human waste, or, less frequently, pig manure, chicken manure, legume seed cake (*Leucaena glauca*), flax seed cake sesame cake, or coconut cake Choice of fertilizers is made principally on the basis of availability One series of experiments was carried out to compare the effectiveness of various fertilizers in producing blue green algae, principally *Lyngbya*, in unstocked milkfish ponds Unfortunately, growing periods of two different lengths were used, and one of the most commonly used fertilizers, peanut cake, was not tested As nearly as can be determined, soybean cake was the

best of the fertilizers tested Fertilizers may be applied between fry stockings or added to ponds containing fry In the former case, the ponds may be drained If fry are present some of the fertilizer' may function as food

The Tainan Fish Culture Station has experimented with inorganic fertilizers but they have not been able to demonstrate any advantage over organic fertilizers The 1962 edition of the *Agriculture Handbook*, put out by the Ministry of Agriculture and Forestry of the Republic of China, includes a recommended schedule for fertilizing milkfish nurseries and production ponds using both manures and inorganic fertilizers, but all commercial growers continue to rely on experience and natural fertilizers *The only widespread use of inorganic fertilizers is in treatment of* yellow water caused by blooms of dinoflagellates Ponds containing such blooms may be treated with 50 to 300 kg/ha of superphosphate or zeolite, a soil conditioner containing large amounts of silica, at 100 to 200 kg/ha

Fry are seldom given supplemental foods In experiments 15 to 23 mm milkfish fed on flour, soybean meal, rice bran, and peanut meal and denied access to algae suffered much higher mortality than similar fry which were allowed to graze on benthic algae

STOCKING GROWING PONDS AND CROPPING IN ROTATION

The distinctive feature of Taiwanese milkfish culture is the system of stocking and cropping in rotation which is just beginning to be adapted for use in other countries Though the precise niches occupied by milkfish of various ages are ill defined there is little doubt that the Taiwanese stocking system is essentially a polyculture scheme, and that the carrying capacity of a pond for fry, fingerlings and adult milkfish is considerably greater than its capacity for any of these age groups alone Production ponds which are prepared for stocking in the same manner as nursery ponds, are first stocked in March or early April at which time no freshly caught fry are available Thus overwintered fish of an assortment of sizes from 5 to 100 g are stocked at 5000 fish/ha The larger fingerlings which constitute about 40% of the fish stocked are from the previous summer s fry and have been overwintered by the farmer himself The smaller fish are stunted stock obtained from nursery specialists A portion of these fish grown to weights of 250 to 600 g account for the first harvests in June and July Subsequent stockings of newly captured fry are made from April to August and harvested as 150 to 300 g adults from August to October or early November Stocking rates vary with many

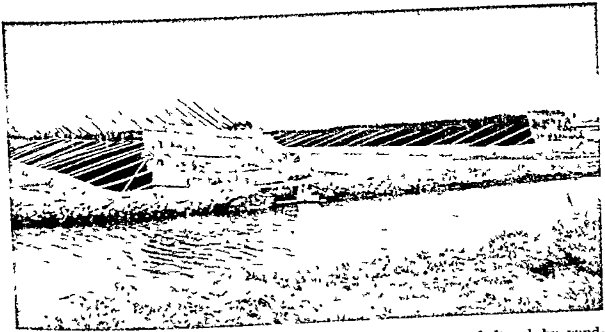


PLATE 4 Experimental overwintering milkfish pond in Taiwan sheltered by windbreak. (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii.)

factors, not the least of which is availability of fry. Table 6 illustrates a stocking system based on maximum rates in the Tainan area.

OVERWINTERING

Fry stocked in August do not reach marketable size by the end of the growing season in November and are the source of the overwintered

TABLE 6. MAXIMUM RATE OF STOCKING FOR OVERWINTERED MILKFISH FINGERLINGS AND NEW FRY IN TAINAN, TAIWAN

MONTH OF STOCKING	AVERAGE WEIGHT OF A FINGERLING OR FRY (G)	STOCKING RATE (FISH/HA)	AVERAGE WEIGHT (G) ATTAINED IN THE CULTURE PERIOD OF: 60 DAYS	90 DAYS	120 DAYS
April	70	1,500	350	400	600
	30	2,000	—	350	400
	25	1,500	—	—	250
May	0.05	2,500	30	100	250
June	0.06	2,500	—	—	200
July	0.06	2,000	—	—	200
August–September	0.06	3,000	—	100	—

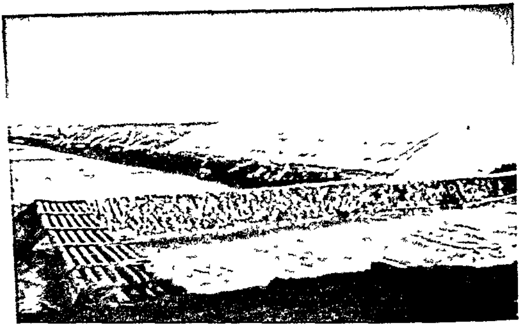


PLATE 5 Experimental overwintering milkfish pond in Taiwan sheltered by plastic greenhouse (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii)

fingerlings planted the following spring Fingerlings to be overwintered are stocked at 20/m^2 and do not grow; in fact they may lose 10 to 17% by weight. This is offset insofar as possible by feeding with rice bran on warm days

Another problem in wintering ponds is increasing salinity Since winter is the dry season in Taiwan, fresh or brackish water must be admitted periodically to dilute wintering ponds The same problem occurs in production ponds, which may reach a salinity of 40‰ by March and must be freshened before stocking in the spring If an abundant supply of water of low salinity is not available, overwintered fingerlings are first let into the passageways adjacent to the wintering ponds (Passageways, due to the constant influx of sea water, have a salinity of about 35‰.) The gates between the wintering ponds and the passageways are then closed, while the gates between passageways and growing ponds are opened so that the salinities can be equalized and the fish can acclimate naturally to production pond conditions.

High salinity and heavy stocking are probably responsible for the occasional outbreaks of sea lice (*Argulus*) which may cause weight loss or even mortality in wintering ponds but do not normally affect milkfish in production ponds. Chlorinated hydrocarbon pesticides have been found effective in eliminating *Argulus*, but in view of the danger of

residues building up in the fish, other methods of control, perhaps by salinity variation, should be investigated.

PESTS AND OTHER PROBLEMS

Predators, diseases, and parasites other than *Argulus* are not a problem in Taiwanese milkfish ponds, but a number of competitor organisms must be dealt with. Perhaps the most troublesome are larvae of the midge *Tendipes longilobus,* which compete for food with milkfish. It is estimated that during the summer a population of these Chironomids may consume 60 to 90 kg of benthic algae daily in a pond where the milkfish require 100 kg/day. Chemical pesticides are commonly employed to control this pest, but there are possibilities for biological control which should be pursued. Midge larvae are a favored food of certain fishes, notably the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), and some shrimps, and the possibilities of polyculture as a means of biological control are potentially great but have rarely been tested on a commercial scale.

Other food competitors include the polychaete worm *Nereis,* the snail *Cerithidea,* and Java tilapia. *Cerithidea* does not thrive in pond soils containing large amounts of organic matter, hence it is seldom a problem in ponds more than 5 years old. Where necessary, both *Nereis* and *Cerithidea* may be controlled by application of teaseed cake at 200 kg/ha or tobacco waste at 100 to 200 kg/ha.

Java tilapia were introduced to Taiwan in 1946 and have since become one of the dominant fish in the southern part of the island. Although they have greatly increased the total fish production of some badly polluted ponds which support other species in small numbers if at all, they compete for food with milkfish, have a tendency to overpopulate ponds, and are generally considered pests. Effective control measures have not been developed. Periodically, an unknown virus or bacterial disease causes mass mortality of tilapia in Taiwan but does not affect other fish. The causative factors are unknown.

The high concentration of organic matter in milkfish ponds makes pollution and deoxygenation constant preoccupations of milkfish farmers, even though milkfish can withstand dissolved oxygen concentrations as low as 1.5 ppm. The most common sign of impending deoxygenation is "brown water" caused by large populations of protozoans. When this condition occurs, the only remedy is to drive the fish from the production pond into the adjacent passageway, drain the pond, and refill it. Some culturists guard against brown water by aerating their ponds or providing a constant inflow of well-oxygenated water daily during the critical hours 2300 to 0800.

The relative efficiency of milkfish culture in Taiwan, the Philippines, and Indonesia is illustrated by the mortality rates prevailing in the three countries While culturists in the latter two countries consider 50% survival of planted fry a good harvest, Taiwanese culturists, some of whose stock must endure the rigors of winter, expect to harvest 80% of the fry they stock. If the overwintered stock are subtracted from the total, survival averages 85 to 95%

POLYCULTURE

Apart from Java tilapia, the fish species most commonly found in milkfish ponds in Taiwan is the striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*), which occupies a niche roughly equivalent to that of milkfish. In ponds of low salinity, milkfish may constitute a minor component of complex polyculture systems based on tilapia and/or the Chinese carp association (see Chapters 3 and 18) Sometimes the shrimps *Penaeus carinatus* and *Metapenaeus ensis*, which may be collected along with milkfish fry, are grown with milkfish.

HARVEST, YIELD, AND PRODUCTION

Harvest of milkfish in Taiwan is selective for size, as described for the Philippines

The average yield of milkfish ponds in Taiwan increased dramatically in the late 1940s and early 1950s, to 1800 to 1900 kg/ha, principally as a result of widespread adoption of the continuous stocking and harvesting system described The area under cultivation has also increased, until in 1966 roughly 16 000 ha of water were devoted to milkfish culture and produced nearly 30 million kg of fish Best yields were nearly 3000 kg/ha. (See Table 4 for a yearly listing of total and per hectare yields from 1920 to 1966) It is not likely that increases of similar magnitude will occur in the near future, as the average yield has not increased since 1955 Further, Taiwan does not have extensive undeveloped areas suitable for milkfish culture. There are perhaps 10,000 ha of swampland available for development, but new sources of fry will have to be exploited before even these swamps can be used To make matters worse, the cost of milkfish culture in Taiwan is increasing since it has been found that rice bran, the best supplemental feed, is a good source of oil. Thus much of the supply is being diverted to oil production and milkfish growers are forced to use expensive substitutes or shift to some other form of aquaculture. Nevertheless, Taiwan will continue to be one of the greatest producers of milkfish and to set the example for milkfish culturists in other countries

MILKFISH CULTURE IN OTHER COUNTRIES

The only other area where milkfish culture has a long history is Hawaii, where the ancient method of allowing the incoming tide to stock ponds has only recently been supplanted by selective stocking.

India is fortunate in that milkfish fry are available nine months of the year, from March to August and again from October to December. Fingerlings are also available in southern India, a fact which may have implications for increasing the efficiency of culture. Milkfish culture in India was initiated in Madras in 1931 and has since become regionally important. The clearing of coastal swamps for milkfish culture also opened up possibilities for rice growing and salt drying, which activities supplement the incomes of some farmers. In India, and in Ceylon as well, milkfish have been successfully acclimated and cultured in freshwater. Ceylon is also similar to India in that fingerlings as well as fry are available. The collecting seasons are March to April and October to December.

It has been less than 15 years since it was discovered that milkfish fry and fingerlings occur in large numbers off the coast of Thailand from April to October and that fry can be taken off Vietnam from May to November. Milkfish culture is thus a rather new phenomenon in the two countries but it holds great promise.

PROSPECTUS

The expansion of milkfish culture into new areas seems almost certain. In addition to the vast areas of undeveloped swampland in Indonesia, and the smaller but significant areas in the other countries where milkfish farming presently occurs, there are many hectares of suitable shoreline in east Africa, Bangladesh, Burma, the Malay Peninsula, Cambodia, Australia, south China, Mexico, and some of the Pacific islands. Assuming the availability of fry, milkfish culture could make a significant contribution to human nutrition in all these areas.

Optimism over the expansion of milkfish culture must, however, be tempered with a healthy skepticism as to the market for its product. A case in point occurred in Kenya, where the Department of Fisheries successfully raised milkfish—only to find that the local populace would not purchase them.

It has also been suggested that milkfish could be introduced and cultured in tropical Atlantic waters, for example, on the coast of Brazil. However, it seems likely that the large brackish water fauna of the

Brazilian coast already contains fish species well suited to pond culture. Even in the unlikely event that there are no such species, the possible effects of milkfish on the local ecology should be assayed before introductions are undertaken

The key to success in milkfish culture is of course proper pond fertilization The methods developed to date have been largely empirically determined and can probably be improved There is no lack of effort in this area but it is difficult to know in which direction to move, since it is not known which species of algae and other food organisms should be encouraged to maximize milkfish production There is an abundance of literature on milkfish feeding habits but the end result of reviewing it is likely to be confusion rather than enlightenment, since much of it is vague and contradictory It must also be remembered that methods of fertilization should be tailored to soil and water chemistry, thus there is no *best* system of pond fertilization. Despite these difficulties, research on nutrition and pond fertilization in milkfish culture continues particularly in Taiwan Much of it is perhaps handicapped by the premise that there must be methods of inorganic fertilization capable of producing optimum conditions in milkfish ponds If such methods were developed, they might produce considerable savings in money and labor but, based on past experience it seems likely that organic fertilization will continue to dominate practical culture. At present the true beneficiaries of research on inorganic fertilization of milkfish ponds are the chemical companies

Immediate gains in milkfish production outside of Taiwan are most likely to be made by adapting Taiwanese methods to local conditions a process which is already yielding good results in the Philippines Of particular importance is the practice of continuous stocking and harvesting which, if instituted in countries with a year round growing season, could result in yields surpassing anything achieved in Taiwan This has already been achieved on a small scale in central Java (see pp 321–322)

All increases in milkfish production, whether through expansion of the industry, improvement of fertilization or intensification of stocking methods are ultimately dependent on the availability of fry for stocking Already shortages are sometimes experienced in Taiwan the Philippines and Java There are almost certainly unexploited stocks to be discovered but the ultimate solution must be the breeding of milkfish in captivity Even with the aid of pituitary injections which have been the key to successful breeding of such stubborn fishes as the Chinese and Indian carps, it has thus far not been possible to mature and spawn milkfish in ponds Milkfish breeding experiments are under way, on a small scale, in the three major producing countries, but their progress is held back by a

lack of knowledge of the conditions required for natural spawning Once this difficulty is overcome, truly intensive culture can begin and the rate of expansion and improvement of milkfish farming may be spectacular, unless highly controlled mullet culturing methods develop so well and fast as to supply much of the market which is now being undersupplied by insufficient milkfish production

REFERENCES

BOTKE F 1951 A short survey on fishing and transportation of Bandeng fry Land bouw 23 399–409

Bureau of Fisheries Philippines 1951 Construction and layout of bangos fishponds Fish Culture Series Fishery Leaflet 3

HORA S L and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on Fish Culture in the Indo Pacific Region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Report 14 204 pp

LIN S Y 1968a Milkfish farming in Taiwan—a review of practice and problems Taiwan Fisheries Research Institute Fish Culture Rep No 3

LIN S Y 1968b Pond Fish Culture and the Economics of Inorganic Fertilizer Application Chinese American Joint Committee on Rural Reconstruction Fisheries Series No 3

LING S W 1966 Feeds and feeding of warm water fishes in ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III VIII/R 2

PROWSE G A 1966 A review of the methods of fertilizing warm water fish ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/R 2

SCHUSTER W H 1949 Fish culture in saltwater ponds on Java Department van Land bouw en Visserij Publicate no 2 van de Onderafdeling Binnenvisserij

SCHUSTER W H 1952 Fish culture in brackish water ponds of Java Indo Pacific Fisheries Council Special Publication 2

TANG Y A 1966 Evaluation of the relative suitability of various groups of algae as food of milkfish in brackish water ponds FAO World-Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III/E 4

TANG Y A 1967 Improvement of milkfish culture in the Philippines Indo Pacific Fisheries Council Current Affairs Bulletin No 49

YAMAMURA M 1942 Milkfish culture (Unpublished paper)

Interviews and Personal Communication

DELMENDO M Philippine Fisheries Commission

SHEHADEH Z Oceanic Institute Waimanalo Hawaii

18

Culture of *Tilapia*

Members of the genus tilapia (family Cichlidae) have been an important source of food for man at least since recorded history began The fish Saint Peter caught in the Sea of Galilee and those with which Christ fed the multitudes were tilapia An Egyptian tomb frieze, dated at 2500 B C, illustrates the harvest of tilapia and suggests that they may have been cultured Since that time, and probably before, the various species of tilapia have been of major importance in the fisheries of their native lands, the Near East and Africa

DISTRIBUTION OF TILAPIA SPP

From the point of view of human nutrition, tilapia was already firmly entrenched as one of the world s most important fish by the start of the twentieth century But with greatly increased emphasis on fish culture in this century, plus the advent of modern transportation, tilapia became even more valuable to man Today no fish, with the probable exception of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), is more widely cultured As early as the 1920s experiments in tilapia culture were being carried out in Kenya Tilapia had become an intercontinental traveler by 1939 when naturally propagating stocks of *Tilapia mossambica,* native to the streams of Africa s east coast, were discovered in Java No one is quite sure how they got there, but it is likely that aquarists, who have long been intrigued by the bizarre mouth brooding habits of this and most other tilapia species were implicated However *T mossambica* arrived, they made themselves at home and spread rapidly throughout the island So prevalent did they become that, despite the geographic reference in the scientific name, the generally accepted common name for *T mossambica* is Java tilapia They were originally regarded as a nuisance, but when facilities for the traditional Indonesian practice of milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) culture began to deteriorate under the Japanese occupation, the less demanding nature of tilapia became apparent, and by the end of World War II tilapia were not only too well established in the waters of Java but too deeply entrenched in Indonesian fish culture for anyone to consider control measures against them

The Japanese, always a nation cognizant of the nutritional possibilities of fish, helped spread tilapia throughout Indonesia, where today it is found in virtually every body of water, including ditches and stagnant pits where few other fish of value can be grown The retreating Japanese also introduced tilapia to Malaya from whence it spread throughout southeast Asia achieving considerable importance as a food fish in virtually every country Today, due to the enthusiasm generated by the

research of such men as H S Swingle at Auburn University in Alabama and C F Hickling at the Tropical Fish Culture Research Institute in Malaysia, plus the missionary efforts of such organizations as FAO and the Peace Corps, the Java tilapia and its congeners are cultured, at least experimentally, not only in southeast Asia, but in Japan, Asiatic Russia, the Indian subcontinent, the Near East, virtually all of Africa, parts of Europe, the United States, and many of the Latin American countries

SELECTION OF SPECIES FOR CULTURE

The Java tilapia was the first member of the genus *Tilapia* to come to the attention of large numbers of fish culturists and has remained the most widely cultured species However, according to the late A Yashouv of the Fish Culture Research Station at Dor, Israel, it is the most difficult to manage member of the genus This is not to say that there is a best tilapia for culture At least 14 species have been cultured and all share the hardiness, ease of breeding, rapid growth, and high quality of flesh which have made the Java tilapia popular Any one of them or some as yet untried species or hybrid might be the right fish for culture in a given situation Too often problems in tilapia culture have resulted from hasty or uninformed selection of a species In choosing a species the culturist should take into account the factors listed in Table 1 and discussed further here

AVAILABILITY

The Java tilapia is practically universally available, but some species are still available only within their home range or have been introduced elsewhere on a limited scale This will probably become a less important consideration as time goes by and the more desirable species are distributed among fish culturists

FOOD HABITS

All tilapia are more or less herbivorous, but some prefer higher plants, whereas others are adapted to feed on plankton If the food habits of a species are not known, they may be predicted by examination of the gill rakers Numerous long thin, closely spaced gill rakers indicate a plankton feeder, the opposite shows that the fish consumes larger particles of food Some tilapia are relatively omnivorous and will benefit from artificial feeding with vegetable materials and in some cases even accept

animal food if nothing else is available, others are obligate herbivores Some macrophyte feeders are sufficiently voracious to function well as biological weed controls, whereas others are useless in this capacity

SALINITY TOLERANCE

Most tilapia are tolerant of brackish water, but some are better adapted to it than others and may thrive and even breed in sea water

TEMPERAMENT

Tilapia are less aggressive than most carnivorous cichlids, but they may attack and nip the fins of other species, an undesirable habit if a fish is to be used in polyculture This behavior is not necessarily species specific, there are conflicting accounts in the literature for several species Such factors as sex, temperature, and population density are known to affect aggression and may be involved in the reaction of tilapia to other fish

TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE

Tilapia are essentially tropical lowland fish, but some species and some stocks withstand cool temperatures much better than others Where no data are available, valid inferences may often be drawn from consideration of the climate of a species native habitat

One more word should be said in behalf of the Java tilapia and Nile tilapia Both of these species may be and are cultured where great amounts of organic enrichment make it scarcely possible for other edible fish to survive

SPAWNING AND GROWTH OF THE YOUNG

In many forms of fish culture, obtaining spawn is one of the most difficult tasks Tilapia present no such problem, indeed it is difficult to prevent them from spawning The fact that it takes no skill whatever to spawn tilapia in ponds is one of the reasons they have been widely promoted as a fish for subsistence culture, and certainly these prolific fish have enabled many an African or Asian farmer to produce his own fish without acquiring extensive skills or technological know how

To spawn tilapia little more is needed than a pond, preferably one with a loose, sandy bottom, and some breeding stock The spawning pond should be stocked with 25 to 30 females/1000 m² and about half

TABLE 1. CHARACTERISTICS OF *Tilapia* SPP. USED IN PRACTICAL AND EXPERIMENTAL FISH CULTURE

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T. andersoni	Cultured in Katanga and Zambia, *seldom* mentioned in literature of fish culture	Omnivorous	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown
T. aurea	Native to West Africa from Senegal to the Chad Basin and the lower Nile, also Israel and Jordan, experimentally cultured in Alabama	Unknown	Mainly a freshwater species	Aggressive	Unknown
T. galilea	Native from Jordan to east and central Africa as far west as Liberia, cultured in Israel and the Congo	Uncertain, referred to *in the* literature as "omnivorous" and "strictly a plankton feeder"	May vary according to the source of stock; certainly populations in such waters as the *Sea of Galilee* or *coastal waters would* be quite tolerant, but inland populations from central Africa might not be	Unknown	Unknown, probably varies with source of stock

TABLE 1. *(continued)*

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T heudeloti (black chinned mouthbreeder)—considered by E Trewavas, the leading authority on *Tilapia* taxonomy, to be synonymous with *T macrocephala*	Range coastal west Africa from Senegal to the Congo, widely cultured experimentally	Herbivorous, but not so voracious a feeder on higher plants as some tilapia, suggesting that it may utilize phytoplankton and/or algae	Mostly found in brackish water in nature	Generally considered peaceful with its own and other species	Does well in aquaria at 20–30°C
T. hornorum (Zanzibar tilapia)	Native to Zanzibar and the east African coast opposite Zanzibar; introduced to Malaysia by C F Hickling in the 1950s, more recently introduced to Costa Rica	Unknown, small numbers of gill rakers suggest that it is not a plankton feeder	Very wide in Zanzibar population	Unknown	Unknown
T leucocista	Cultured in Uganda, where it is native, in the 1950s, since largely supplanted by *T mossambica*, *T nilotica* and *T zillii*	Unknown	Unknown, may be relatively low in cultured stocks, which are of inland origin	Unknown	Unknown

TABLE 1. (*continued*)

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T macrocephala—considered synonymous with *T heudeloti*, which see	—	—	—	—	—
T macrochir	Native to Congo Zambesi, Kafue and *Okavango river* systems has been cultured, at least experimentally, in Cameroon, the Ivory Coast, Katanga Rhodesia, Rwanda, Madagascar, and the Sudan	Phytoplankton feeder	Probably varies with source of stock	Unknown	Growth poor in cool climates
T melanopleura (Congo tilapia)	Native from Upper Congo to South Africa, commercially cultured in South *Africa* and experimentally cultured in several *Asian*, European, and American countries	*Strictly* an herbivore with a preference for higher plants, may be used in weed control	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown

TABLE 1 (*continued*)

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T mossambica (Java tilapia)	Cultured in virtually all of southeast Asia the Near East and southern Africa, experimentally cultured in Japan Latin America, the United States and the Soviet Union, stocks may currently be obtained almost anywhere in the world by far the most widely cultured *Tilapia*	Mainly a plankton feeder, but consumes all kinds of plants and artificial feeds of vegetable origin in the absence of plant food will accept animal food	Very wide found in brackish as well as fresh waters in the wild and will even breed in sea water	Somewhat aggressive toward other species this may be related to the deleterious effect of Java tilapia on production of catla (*Catla catla*) and, in some instances milkfish	There is a great deal of experimental and observational data on this species optimum temperatures suggested range from 22 to 30°C, but they can be cultured at temperatures as low as 15 5°C, below which they cease to feed, will not survive long below 12°C and 9°C is lethal does not grow during the cold months in such climates as Alabama and Israel, nor above 1000 m in the tropics, its hybrids with *T nilotica* are more cold resistant
T nigra	Cultured, at least experimentally, in east Africa	Omnivorous	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown

TABLE 1. *(continued)*

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
—	—	—	—	—	—
T macrocephala —considered synonymous with *T heudeloti*, which see					
T macrochir	Native to Congo Zambesi, Kafue, and Okavango river systems has been cultured, at least experimentally, in Cameroon, the Ivory Coast, Katanga, Rhodesia, Rwanda, Madagascar, and the Sudan	Phytoplankton feeder	Probably varies with source of stock	Unknown	Growth poor in cool climates
T melanopleura (Congo tilapia)	Native from Upper Congo to South Africa commercially cultured in South Africa and experimentally cultured in several Asian, European, and American countries	Strictly an herbivore with a preference for higher plants may be used in weed control	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown

TABLE 1 (*continued*)

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T mossambica (Java tilapia)	Cultured in virtually all of southeast Asia, the Near East and southern Africa, experimentally cultured in Japan Latin America, the United States and the Soviet Union, stocks may currently be obtained almost anywhere in the world by far the most widely cultured *Tilapia*	Mainly a plankton feeder, but consumes all kinds of plants and artificial feeds of vegetable origin, in the absence of plant food will accept animal food	Very wide found in brackish as well as fresh waters in the wild, and will even breed in sea water	Somewhat aggressive toward other species this may be related to the deleterious effect of Java tilapia on production of catla (*Catla catla*) and, in some instances, milkfish	There is a great deal of experimental and observational data on this species optimum temperatures suggested range from 22 to 30°C, but they can be cultured at temperatures as low as 15 5°C, below which they cease to feed, will not survive long below 12°C and 9°C is lethal, does not grow during the cold months in such climates as Alabama and Israel, nor above 1000 m in the tropics, its hybrids with *T nilotica* are more cold resistant
T nigra	Cultured, at least experimentally, in east Africa	Omnivorous	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown

TABLE 1. *(continued)*

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T nilotica (Nile tilapia)	Range from Syria into east Africa through the Congo to Liberia, widely introduced outside that range, probably, next to *T mossambica*, the most commonly cultured tilapia	Variously reported in the literature to be a plankton feeder, an omnivore, and to feed on higher plants to the extent that it may be used in weed control, though not as effectively as *T melanopleura*, requires plant food when kept in aquaria	Probably quite high, since it is found in brackish water and is generally considered one of the hardiest tilapia	Little studied, may be aggressive toward other species	Similar to *T mossambica*, does well above 15 5°C does not survive below 12°C, lethal temperatures 11°C and 42°C, hybrids with *T mossambica* are more cold resistant
T randalli	Once cultured in the Congo, now largely supplanted by other species	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown
T sparmanni	Native to east Africa south of the equator, cultured experimentally in Japan	Omnivorous	Unknown	Aggressive toward other species	Less tolerant of high or low temperatures than *T mossambica*, does well in aquaria at 21–30°C, optimum for breeding, 23–26°C

TABLE 1. *(continued)*

SPECIES	AVAILABILITY	FOOD HABITS	SALINITY TOLERANCE	TEMPERAMENT	TEMPERATURE TOLERANCE
T volcani	Native to Lake Rudolf, Kenya, a few specimens accidentally imported to Israel in 1967–1968, other supposed *T nilotica* from Lake Rudolf may be *T volcani*	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown
T zillii (Zill's tilapia)	Native to Near East and Africa north of the equator, cultured in east Africa and, experimentally, in Madagascar and Malaysia	Strictly herbivorous, mostly on higher plants, some use in weed control	Unknown	Aggressive toward other species	Optimum 22–24°C, aquarium stock does well at 23–26°C Optimum for breeding 26°C, central African stocks do not do well below 20°C, but north African stocks withstand 14–16°C for long periods of time, although growth is greatly retarded

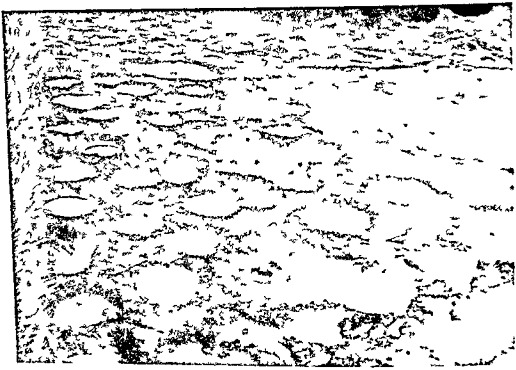


PLATE 1 Nests of *Tilapia nilotica* (Courtesy Marcel Huet Groendendaal Hoeilaart Belgium)

again as many males If the water is warm enough (see Table 1 for suggested breeding temperatures for some species) the males will begin digging holes perhaps 35 cm in diameter × 6 cm deep in the pond bottom (Plate 1) A female deposits 75 to 250 eggs in such a nest then picks them up in her mouth Next the male discharges sperm into the depression and this too is picked up by the female Fertilization thus takes place inside the female s mouth where hatching occurs within 3 to 5 days The larvae are retained in the mouth until the yolk sac is absorbed after which they may venture forth but for 10 to 15 days they still return to the female s mouth when threatened During this time the female eats seldom if at all If the young are separated from the mother during brooding they may be raised quite satisfactorily by themselves Apparently the chief function of mouth brooding is protection from predators

The young tilapia mature at an age of 2 to 3 months at which time they are 6 to 10 cm long From then on they breed every 3 to 6 weeks as long as the water is warm Whenever the water temperature approaches the lower limits of tolerance for a particular species breeding activity is suspended Thus the nonreproductive period ranges from about 2 months in subtropical climates to none whatever near the equator As for other

environmental factors impinging on spawning, it can be stated that tilapia will reproduce in almost any sort of water they can survive in. Java tilapia have been successfully spawned in water with a salinity of 35‰.

This description of spawning applies specifically to Java tilapia, but it generally fits all the cultured species except *T. heudeloti*, in which the male incubates the eggs, *T. galilea,* in which both sexes share in mouth-brooding, and *T. sparmanni* and *T. zillii,* which spawn in typical cichlid fashion, on a clean stone or other smooth object, and do not mouth brood, although the parents do guard the eggs and young. *T. sparmanni* and *T. zillii* compensate for the lack of the protective mouth-brooding trait by producing more eggs—up to 5000 in large *T. zillii.* In nature the survivors from a few thousand eggs in the open would probably approximate the survivors of a few hundred mouth-incubated eggs and young, but in the protected environment provided by the fish culturist, more eggs are likely to mean more young. Thus *T. sparmanni* and *T. zillii* are even more prone to overpopulate a pond and produce a stunted population than are other tilapia.

THE PROBLEM OF OVERPOPULATION AND METHODS OF CONTROL

Mouth-brooders or not, overpopulation is the greatest problem encountered in raising any species of tilapia (Plate 2) Stunting is bad enough in countries such as the Philippines where tilapia as small as 75 mm may be marketed, but in places like East Africa, where large fish are preferred for the table, it can spell the difference between success and failure. The seriousness of the problem may be emphasized by describing the situation in Kivu Province of the Congo. There yields to tilapia culture of 4325 kg/ha were considered normal, which sounds quite good until it is pointed out that 70% of such yields consisted of fish less than 15 cm long. Classical methods of preventing overpopulation and stunting include separating parents and young immediately upon hatching, monosex culture, and stocking predators along with the tilapia. Selective breeding for large fish has been attempted, but with no success. Apparently environmental override genetic factors in determining size.

SEPARATION OF PARENTS AND YOUNG

Separation of adults and young could theoretically be accomplished by netting out the adults after spawning. When the brooders are sufficiently

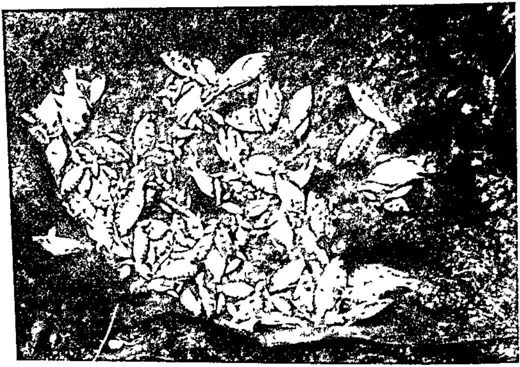


PLATE 2 Seine haul from an unmanaged tilapia population in the Congo; note the many small fish. (Courtesy Marcel Huet, Groendendaal Hoeilaart, Belgium)

disturbed by nets and the like they will usually spit out the fry. The captured adults could then be placed in another pond and the spawning pond used for a rearing pond This technique is not practicable, however, since the breeding cycles of individual adults are far from synchronous, so that in a sizable population spawning occurs more or less continuously.

It is possible to remove the young A method practiced in Indonesia makes use of a drainable spawning pond at a higher elevation than the fry pond. When the eggs hatch, the adults are disturbed so that the larvae are released and drained into the fry pond. Different sizes of fry may then be periodically cropped from the fry pond for further use in culture.

MONOSEX CULTURE

Monosex culture is much more commonly employed. Stocks of a single sex may be obtained by sexing and sorting the stock individually. The structure of the genital papillae is indicative of sex. In males there is a single urogenital opening on the tip of the papilla; in females the genital

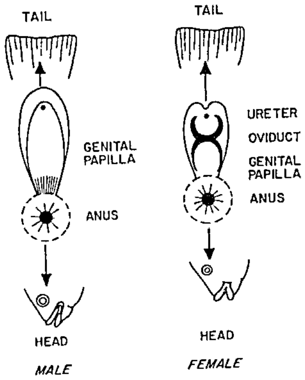


FIG 1 Distinguishing characteristics of male and female *Tilapia mossambica* (After Maar, Mortimor, and Van der Lingen 1966)

opening is separate and located on the frontal wall of the papilla, close to the apex (Fig 1) This method has the disadvantage of being laborious Moreover, even experienced workers can usually achieve only 80 to 90% accuracy Since all it takes is one female inadvertently introduced into a pond of males being fattened for consumption to undo all the labor involved in sexing, easier and more effective methods for obtaining mono sex stocks have been sought The best results have been achieved by hybridization Of the many interspecific and intraspecific tilapia crosses which have been attempted, at least three have produced 100% male offspring These are

♂ *T macrochir* ♀ × *T nilotica* (a difficult cross to produce)
♂ *T mossambica* (Zanzibar stock) × ♀ *T nilotica* (Lake Albert stock)
♂ *T hornorum* × ♀ *T mossambica*

Better than 98% males were also obtained from the intraspecific mating

♂ *T mossambica* (African stock) × ♀ *T mossambica* (Malaysian stock)

Attempts to produce monosex stocks of tilapia have generally con centrated on obtaining males since, unlike females, males continue to

grow during breeding periods However, males have one disadvantage Whether or not there are females present, they optimistically construct spawning nests The favored location for nest building is at the base of the pond bank, and the nest building activities of a great number of males may eventually undermine the bank. For this reason there has been some speculation as to the feasibility of stocking growing ponds with females No crosses which consistently produce high percentages of females have been reported, but at the Tropical Fish Culture Research Institute in Malacca, Malaysia, one male Java tilapia of Malaysian origin turned up which when bred to two females of the same stock, produced 88 and 97% female offspring Unfortunately this male was lost

As one might gather from this discussion the possibilities of hybridization in monosex culture have by no means been fully explored Only a few of the possible interspecific hybrids have been produced, to say nothing of crosses between different strains of the same species, which vary in sex composition of the F_1 generation as widely as interspecific crosses Further, the F_1 generation of many tilapia crosses are fertile and might be used in further breeding experiments Add to this the fact that the taxonomy of tilapia is by no means cut and dried, and it can be seen that the possibilities are almost unlimited, but that duplication of a desirable hybrid may be quite difficult

Monosex culture requires a certain amount of technical supervision to be successful The small farmer often lacks the time, expertise, or inclination to sex fish or keep spawning records Thus monosex culture is best suited to large commercial operations or wherever there can be considerable governmental supervision (A minority of authorities notably S Tal Israel s Director of the Inland Fisheries are skeptical of its practicability in any situation.) Thus while monosex culture of tilapia has been somewhat successful in Uganda, where the government has largely taken over fish culture in the neighboring Congo, where fish culture is the responsibility of the individual farmer, it has failed

CONTROL BY PREDATORS

Where tilapia are to be raised on small, technologically unspecialized farms a more suitable method of population control is the stocking of predaceous fish to crop the young tilapia The use of predatory fish is most common in Africa where stunted fish are often simply unacceptable as food The most commonly used predators there and in southeast Asia are catfishes of the genus *Clarias*, but eels (*Anguilla japonica*) largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) and carnivorous cichlids such as *Serranochromis robustus* and *Hemichromis* spp have also been used

CAGE CULTURE

Experiments at Auburn University suggested a completely different approach to population control: culture in floating cages. Nile tilapia stocked at 7000 to 15,000/ha in such cages exhibited growth and survival comparable to that obtained through pond culture but were apparently unable to reproduce. It was supposed that the eggs and sperm passed through the bottom of the net. More recently, however, Java tilapia have been found to have successfully reproduced in floating cages in Lake Atitlan, Guatemala.

STOCKING SYSTEMS

MONOCULTURE

Inclusion of a predator is one form of polyculture, a practice which is becoming nearly universal in raising tilapia. Indeed, except for very primitive subsistence culture, or in waters that will not support other edible fish, monoculture of tilapia for human consumption seems scarcely defensible. Monoculture is practiced, on a small scale, in rice fields in southeast Asia. Stocking rates for this practice are 120 to 180 fingerlings/ha. Care must be taken to use plankton- and algae-feeding species, since macrophages might destroy the rice crop.

POLYCULTURE

Since the ecological niches of the various *Tilapia* spp. are imperfectly known, and since the history of tilapia culture is so short compared to that of some other polycultural systems, species combinations and stocking practices are by no means codified. Table 2 outlines some of the stocking systems which have been commercially or experimentally applied, along with their results, when known.

It bodes well for the future of tilapia in fish culture that in almost every case where tilapia have been added to an existing pond culture community, total production has risen with no reduction in the non-tilapia components of the harvest. One exception was found in India where tilapia of an unknown species depressed total production of a pond and apparently virtually eradicated milkfish and catla. Where tilapia are accused of exterminating other fishes, one must wonder whether some hyperaggressive species with a more typical cichlid temperament may not have been stocked. Tilapia have not been accused of eradicating other

TABLE 2 STOCKING SYSTEMS USED IN TILAPIA CULTURE, AND THEIR RESULTS

COUNTRY	SPECIES STOCKED	TYPE OF CULTURE	RESULTS
Cameroon	*T nilotica*, *Heterotis niloticus*, *Hemichromis fasciatus*	Both subsistence and commercial pond culture	Good production and effective population control of tilapia
China	*T mossambica*, striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*) milkfish (*Chanos chanos*), Chinese carp association	Traditional Chinese pond culture	Addition of tilapia, mullet, and milkfish to Chinese carp culture increases total yield in practice, even in cases where the yield to traditional stocking was as high as 7,500 kg/ha
Costa Rica	*T melanopleura* and/or *T mossambica*	Experimental culture in private and government-operated ponds	Average annual production 2 781 kg/ha maximum, 3 149 kg/ha
England	*Tilapia* sp, common carp	Experimental culture in power station cooling ponds	—
India	*Tilapia* sp milkfish, catla, (*Catla catla*)	Growing in very fertile ponds	Yields of tilapia were quite good but the total yield of the pond was depressed, milkfish and catla were virtually wiped out, presumably by the tilapia
	Tilapia sp, *Barbus* sp, Nagendram fish (*Osteochilus thomassi*)	Commercial freshwater pond culture	—

TABLE 2 *(continued)*

COUNTRY	SPECIES STOCKED	TYPE OF CULTURE	RESULTS
Indonesia	*T mossambica* (35%), common carp (30%) nilem (*Osteochilus hasselti*) (20%), gourami (*Osphronemus goramy*) (15%)	Short term growing in small tropical ponds	Good production of small size fish
Israel	*T nilotica* (fingerlings at 2,550–3,000/ha), common carp (2,500/ha)	Experimental pond culture	Average total yield to monoculture of carp, 4,159 kg/(ha)(yr), average total yield with tilapia added, 5,292 kg/(ha)(yr)
	T nilotica (3 000/ha), common carp (5 500/ha)	Experimental pond culture	Yield of carp same for monoculture or polyculture, but addition of tilapia raised total yield by 13–35%
	T nilotica, common carp	Experimental pond culture with fertilization and supplementary feeding	Monoculture of carp yielded 900–1,500 kg/ha, total production with tilapia added was over 2,500 kg/ha
	T nilotica (1,000–1,500 fingerlings/ha), common carp (2 size groups)	Commercial pond culture	Total yield higher than can be achieved by monoculture of either species
	T nilotica, common carp, *Mugil cephalus*, *Mugil capito*	Experimental pond culture	Addition of tilapia to carp mullet ponds generally increased production of carp and mullet and invariably increased total production

TABLE 2 *(continued)*

COUNTRY	SPECIES STOCKED	TYPE OF CULTURE	RESULTS
Kenya Uganda, and Tanzania	*Tilapia* sp, mirror carp (var of *Cyprinus carpio*)	Freshwater pond culture	Carp recommended by Y Pruginin to increase yields of ponds presently devoted to monoculture of tilapia
Malaysia	*T mossambica*, *Barbus gonionotus*	Experimental freshwater pond culture with 40–120 kg/ha superphosphate	Efficient utilization of very heavy phytoplankton blooms induced by fertilization
Philippines	*T mossambica*, milkfish	Brackish water pond culture, primarily for milkfish	Tilapia enter milkfish ponds accidentally and are often unwanted by milkfish culturists nevertheless they may increase total production
Southeast Asia	*Tilapia* sp, common carp, *Barbus* sp	Brackish water pond culture	—
	Tilapia sp, common carp, kissing gourami (*Helostoma temmincki*)	Sewage ponds	—
Sudan	*T macrochir*, *T melanopleura* (mixed ages)	Freshwater pond culture	Polyculture resulted in increased yields of both species, as compared to monoculture
Taiwan	*T mossambica* (50% or more of harvest), *Mugil cephalus* (12%), silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*) (10%), remaining 28% made up of common carp, goldfish (*Carassius auratus*), big head (*Aristichthys nobilis*), eel (*Anguilla japonica*), milkfish	Fresh or brackish water pond culture in very rich, often organically polluted ponds	Good production of fish

TABLE 2 (continued)

COUNTRY	SPECIES STOCKED	TYPE OF CULTURE	RESULTS
Uganda	*T mossambica*, common carp	Freshwater pond culture	Yields to polyculture higher than to monoculture of either species
U S A (Alabama)	*T mossambica* (4,400/ha), channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*) (1,250/ha)	Experimental culture with feeding of catfish	Production with monoculture of channel catfish, 1,400 kg/ha, production with polyculture, 1,568 kg/ha of catfish plus 266 kg/ha of tilapia, feed conversion quotient of catfish same in either case
	T nilotica (2,500/ha), channel catfish (7,500/ha)	Experimental culture with feeding of catfish	Production of catfish equal to or better than achieved by monoculture, total production better with addition of tilapia, food conversion quotient of catfish same in either case
	T mossambica (2 500/ha), *T nilotica* (2 500/ha), largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) (500/ha)	Experimental freshwater pond culture	Production, 21 2 kg/ha of bass and 2,118 0 kg/ha of tilapia
	T mossambica (2,500/ha), *T nilotica* (2,500/ha), *T melanopleura* (2 500/ha), largemouth bass (500/ha)	Experimental freshwater pond culture, with addition of an unknown number of fathead minnows (*Pimephales promelas*) as food for bass	Production, 108 6 kg/ha of bass and 2,182 7 kg/ha of tilapia fathead minnows all consumed

fish in the Philippines but milkfish farmers there are ambivalent if not hostile toward the presence of Java tilapia Part of their dislike of tilapia stems not from any direct effect of tilapia on fish production but because tilapia, in addition to consuming phytoplankton and naturally occurring algae, eagerly devour the elaborately cultured lab lab meant for the milkfish In other countries, though, there are numerous examples of tilapia being deliberately stocked with milkfish, usually with good results

Surprisingly little work has been done on the combined use of two or more *Tilapia* species Although an all tilapia counterpart of Chinese carp culture may never be developed, certainly the variety of food habits among tilapia—plankton feeders, filamentous algae feeders, macrophages, and omnivores—points in this direction The association in Africa of the plankton feeding *T macrochir* and the macrophage *T melanopleura* also usually involves an assortment of ages and sizes, not to gain any particular polycultural advantage but because, given the prolific nature of tilapia, it is simpler Initial stocking of growing ponds is carried out with a mixture of fry, large breeders, and various in between ages At harvest time all but a few of the large breeders are taken for consumption Excess fry are also harvested for consumption or, more often, for use in stocking other ponds Restocking may not be necessary, but if artificial feeding is employed, 10 to 20% of the estimated production by weight may be stocked after harvest.

Granted the relative simplicity of mixed age culture, a harvest consisting of many sizes of fish may be economically disadvantageous Stocking fish of approximately the same size will not produce a harvest of even-size fish, even if monosex culture is employed, but may more closely approach it. M Huet of the University of Louvain, Belgium, has devised a formula for restocking single size artificially fed tilapia ponds

$$\text{number of tilapia to be stocked} = \frac{\text{total production}}{\text{individual growth}} + (\text{waste})\left(\frac{\text{total production}}{\text{individual growth}}\right)$$

Individual growth of fish may be fixed within certain limits by referring to the normal growth of the species cultured, or it may be determined more precisely by weighing a sample of the stock at stocking and again at harvest

Waste percentage is largely a matter of estimation or perhaps intuition Values normally used in the application of Huet s formula are 10, 15, and 20%

Total production equals natural production plus production due to feeding Natural production must be known from previous culture, without feeding, in the pond to be stocked or a similar pond Production from feeding may be obtained by dividing the weight of food used by its nutritional quotient (see p 47) Huet does not give a method for determining production due to fertilization, but many of the commonly used organic fertilizers double as feeds and may perhaps be treated on that basis

As an example of Huet s formula in application, let us suppose a 0 5 ha growing pond which is cropped twice a year Its natural production is estimated at 400 kg/(ha)(yr) Now 3000 kg of cottonseed oil cakes, which have a nutritive quotient of 5, are available as feed, and waste is reckoned at 15% Total production for 6 months thus equals

$$\frac{400\ \text{kg/(ha)(yr)} \times 0.5\ \text{ha}}{2} + \frac{3000\ \text{kg food}}{5} = 700\ \text{kg}$$

Individual growth of fish is estimated at 0 1 kg and waste at 15% So, plugging in the data, we get

$$\text{no of fry to be stocked} = \frac{700}{0.1} + (0.15)\left(\frac{700}{0.1}\right) = 8050\ \text{fry}$$

The formula is of course applicable only if the pond is to be restocked with the same size fish at the same species ratio as originally stocked

The only other noteworthy example of multiple-species tilapia stocking is H W Swingle's work at Auburn University in Alabama In addition to two or three species of *Tilapia*, one of which, *T nilotica*, has unknown feeding habits, Swingle used a presumptive predator, the largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) The bass may have gotten some nutrition from young tilapia, but when fathead minnows (*Pimephales promelas*) were added to the pond, they were eradicated by the bass over the course of 7 months, resulting in a fivefold increase in bass production but only a slight increase in tilapia production (see Table 2) It has long been part of fishermen's lore, though not well substantiated, that many predators, including the largemouth bass, are reluctant to take spiny finned prey If so, then perhaps the role of some predators in tilapia culture should be reevaluated

Swingle has also stocked Java tilapia and Nile tilapia separately with channel catfish (*Ictalurus punctatus*), which, though not as piscivorous as the largemouth bass, might conceivably act as a predator on tilapia fry Significant consumption of tilapia fry by the catfish was not noted,

but the tilapia apparently utilized not only plankton but wastes and excess feeds intended for the catfish and production of catfish was substantially increased (see Table 2)

STOCKING RATES

Most of the reported stocking densities for tilapia are lower than necessary, at least where monosex culture is employed The problem of excess small fish in tilapia ponds is more closely allied to excess reproduction than to initial overstocking Experiments at Auburn University in which 1 year-old, 100 g *T nilotica* were stocked in 2 02 ha ponds at various rates demonstrated increased production at each density increment up to 5039/ha, the highest tested

Research in Uganda on the hybrid ♂ *T mossambica* (*Zanzibar stock*) × ♀ *T nilotica* (Lake Albert stock) showed that, up to a weight of 50 g fry did not suffer retarded growth at densities as high as 8000/ha Above that size it was found necessary to transfer them to rearing ponds at 1000 to 1500/ha if normal growth was to continue

Much higher stocking densities were successfully employed in further experiments at Auburn University involving tilapia fingerlings Nile tilapia fingerlings stocked at 20 000/ha and fed gave a production of 2822 kg/ha in 196 days but those stocked at 40 000/ha produced 3699 kg/ha Of these fish, 98 5% and 91 9%, respectively, were considered to be of usable size Similar results were obtained with Java tilapia at densities up to 50 000/ha, but the percentage of usable fish 99 7 at 10 000 fish/ha, declined to 67 7 at 50 000/ha, due presumably to the very prolific nature of Java tilapia Of course it should not be assumed that more is better than less in tilapia stocking Many factors other than density enter the picture, not the least being the question of available food supplies and its corollary, the economics of feeding

MANAGEMENT OF TILAPIA PONDS

SEGREGATION OF AGE GROUPS

The practice of segregating different ages of fish in nursing, rearing, and growing ponds, so prevalent in culture of species where spawning is strictly controlled, is rare in tilapia culture However, in parts of Africa, fry may be nursed from 6 weeks to 2 months, or until they begin to breed, in 0 01- to 0 1 ha ponds This technique may become more wide spread, particularly for use in monosex culture.

POND FERTILIZATION

Pond fertilization is of vital importance in culture of tilapia, particularly the plankton-feeding species, but has yet to be treated systematically. This is largely due to the short history of tilapia culture, as well as to the frequent use of tilapia in "crash" programs designed not to provide data for more sophisticated efforts but to alleviate existing critical protein shortages. In southeast Asia, tilapia may be cultured in ponds which are already heavily enriched by agricultural runoff and/or domestic pollution. Some of these waters carry such heavy loads of organic nutrients as to be uninhabitable by other desirable fishes. Fertilization would thus be superfluous, and fertilizers are set aside for use in culture of carps, milkfish, mullet, and so on. But even in southeast Asia, such ponds are the exception rather than the rule.

It may be expected that as tilapia culture matures, especially if tilapia becomes a commercial product sought by all economic classes, fertilization will be studied in some detail.

A certain amount of research on fertilization of tilapia ponds has been carried out, most of it involving Java tilapia and all of it involving the use of phosphates, which are the most effective group of fertilizers for enhancing phytoplankton production. The importance of phosphorus in production of Java tilapia was demonstrated by a series of experiments at Auburn University in which ponds received 8-8-2 (N-P-K) fertilization, 0-8-2 (N-P-K) fertilization, or no fertilization at all. Both fertilizers significantly increased tilapia production at population densities of 4942, 9884, 14,826, and 19,768/ha. Except at the highest density, the 0-8-2 (N-P-K) mixture was actually more effective than the mixture containing nitrogen compounds. Although it can be predicted that use of phosphates will enhance phytoplankton production, the digestibility of various phytoplankton differs widely. Java tilapia digest *Anabaenopsis* and *Oedogonium* well, *Botryococcus* partially, *Microcystis* and *Spirogyra* poorly, and perhaps cannot digest *Oscillatioria* or *Anabaena* at all. Unfortunately it is not yet practical to produce cultures of a particular phytoplankton species on a large scale.

Experiments in South Africa yielded the none too surprising result that 185 kg/ha of 19% superphosphate in conjunction with lime increased yields of Java tilapia by a factor of greater than 4. Basic slag, which is often used in practical fish culture in Africa, achieved similar results when applied at 225 kg/ha. More surprising is the similar effect of experimental application of 19% superphosphate at 330 kg/ha to ponds containing the macrophagous *T. melanopleura*. Over a 5-month period an increase in production of 240 kg/ha over natural production was recorded.

Phosphatic fertilization in the form of P_2O_5 applied at 10 to 120 kg/(ha)(yr) to Malaysian ponds containing Java tilapia and *Barbus gonionotus* raised the total yield of fish by 261 to 1260 kg/(ha)(yr) It should be pointed out, though, that both of these species are plankton feeders and highly tolerant of turbidity

The effects of organic fertilizers on tilapia are not well known, but such fertilizers are fairly widely used, for example, in Indonesia, where marigold plant is used as a green manure It is also likely that where such artificial feeds as oil seed cakes are used in tilapia culture, a large percentage of the intended feed is not consumed by the fish but functions as a fertilizer Sewage is used to fertilize tilapia ponds in southeast Asia and has been suggested for use in semiarid regions of Africa where green manures are not abundant and animal manures are better employed in agriculture This suggestion has met with little enthusiasm since unlike most Asians, Africans in general are as squeamish with regard to human wastes as are Europeans and Americans

Pond fertilization in fish culture is of course not merely a matter of knowing the characteristics of the fish to be cultured, but must also take into account the chemistry of the water and soil Thus fertilization experiments carried out with Java tilapia in, say, Alabama are of only limited value to the prospective tilapia culturist in Uganda As time goes on and more on site research is carried out, scientists and fish culturists will be in a better position to evaluate the pros and cons of fertilization in culture of tilapia and all fishes

SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

Supplementary feeding in tilapia culture is as important and as little understood as fertilization Most authorities are of the opinion that supplementary feeding is essential for success in large scale culture of tilapia but nowhere is it carried out in a systematic manner Among the feeds employed in Asia and Africa are rice bran, broken rice, oil cakes, flour, corn meal, kitchen refuse, rotten fruit, coffee pulp, and a variety of aquatic and terrestrial plants In South Africa, *T melanopleura* are provided with fodder by growing rice to a height of 20 to 30 cm, then flooding it and allowing access to the fish

In countries where little money is available to purchase feeds use of waste products should be encouraged For example, in the Congo the simple expedient of throwing mill sweepings into tilapia ponds has resulted in production well above normal for the area

There is great need for research in tilapia nutrition, not only to determine what feeds are best but also what rates of feeding are most effective

The only worthwhile study of tilapia feeding rates was carried out on Java tilapia and Nile tilapia at Auburn University, using a mixture of 35% peanut meal, 35% soybean meal, 20% ground beef liver, 15% fish meal, and 15% distiller s dry solubles Experimental feeding rates were 1, 2 3, and 4% of body weight per day Java tilapia grew best at 3% but nearly as well at 2% Growth of Nile tilapia improved with each increment of feed Feed conversion rates were best at 2% and 1%, respectively The feed used seems unusual for tilapia in its high animal content, certainly such a feed would not be economically feasible where tilapia are raised to offset protein deficiencies in human diets

USE OF TILAPIA IN WEED CONTROL

Correlated with the feeding habits of the various *Tilapia* species is their use in weed control Five species have to date been used or tested in this capacity

T heudeloti fed on higher plants in experiments at Auburn University, but they did not exert effective control over any species

T melanopleura vies with the grass carp as one of the best agents of biological control of aquatic weeds

T mossambica eats filamentous algae, a principal habitat for many species of mosquito larvae thus is often used in combination with insectivorous species as an agent of malaria control For this purpose, 2500 to 5000 fish/ha are recommended Its role in relation to higher plants is not clear Some authorities claim that it does not consume them in appreciable quantities However, in ponds in Texas it appeared to effectively control some aquatic and emergent plants though it would not touch *Elodea* or *Riccia* Consumption of higher plants probably depends in part on the availability of other foods

T nilotica experimentally stocked at 2500 to 5000/ha controlled filamentous algae and reduced some higher plants It may be even more effective in malaria control than *T mossambica* since it not only eats algae but is reputedly fond of mosquito larvae

T zillii in experiments in Malaysia controlled higher plants including *Fimbristylis acuminata*, which grass carp will not touch

Weed control by tilapia is generally a matter of stocking them in ponds where weeds interfere with fish culture Thus stocked they not only perform a service by eating weeds but add to the total fish production of the pond Tilapia have occasionally been suggested for use in control of nuisance plants in natural waterways where they are not native as in

the St. John's River of Florida where water hyacinth interferes with sport fishing and boating. Such suggestions are usually resisted, since the total effect of a voracious herbivore in a new environment is, to say the least, difficult to predict.

GROWTH AND PRODUCTION

Growth of tilapia varies greatly with stocking density, frequency of spawning, and food supply. Under very favorable conditions, individual Java tilapia may reach a weight of 850 g in 1 year; in brackish water they may reach 450 g in 8 months. But in most ponds 85 to 140 g is a more realistic weight to expect after a year if the sexes are raised together. Males grow two to three times faster than females, thus monosex culture of males produces correspondingly better growth. Monosex culture of females would also improve growth by eliminating periods of no growth associated with spawning, but no data are available on this rarely practiced technique.

Heterosis is not unknown in tilapia, but the subject has been insufficiently investigated. It has been shown that both of the reciprocal crosses of Java tilapia and Nile tilapia exhibit better growth and food conversion than either parent. The same is true of both the intraspecific crosses of Java tilapia of African and Malaysian stocks.

Since the future of tilapia culture appears to be largely bound up with polyculture, it seems superfluous to discuss production at length. The question to be asked is not "How many kilograms of tilapia can be produced in this pond?" but rather "Will tilapia add significantly to this pond's fish production?" As we have seen, in most cases the answer to the second question is yes. The amount of added production will of course vary, but even in instances such as the experimental culture of Java tilapia with channel catfish, where only 266 kg/ha of tilapia were produced, the effect of adding tilapia must be regarded as significant. Although if the total production of a fish pond were 266 kg/ha it would be a poor pond indeed, the production of tilapia in this case must be considered as supplementary to the production of the primary crop, channel catfish. The 266 kg/ha of tilapia produced, *plus* an increase in catfish production of 168 kg/ha over the 1400 kg/ha achieved by monoculture, amounts to an increase of 434 kg/ha of fish, or a total production gain of 30.3%. Addition of tilapia to carp ponds in Israel has, on occasion, resulted in production gains of more than 165%.

Where monoculture of tilapia is practiced, the "normal" figure usually cited for natural production is 500 kg/ha in the tropics and somewhat

less in moderate climates. With fertilization and/or supplementary feeding yields of 1000 to 2500 kg/ha can be achieved. Huet suggests that 2500 kg/ha is a minimum desirable production in Africa but, at least in subsistence culture, smaller yields surely accrue some benefit to the culturist. Maximum yields of tilapia may be as high as 18,000 kg/ha, but reports of such yields must be taken with a grain of salt since they are likely to contain a preponderance of fish too small to be usable.

HARVESTING AND MARKETING TILAPIA

Harvesting of tilapia crops is usually done by seining or, where feasible, pond draining. However, experiments indicate that if only a portion of the stock is to be retained electrofishing may be more efficient and result in less injury to the fish.

In most places where tilapia is cultured it is marketed as fresh or iced fish, but it may also be sold frozen. The market price for tilapia varies greatly. In Israel, tilapia now brings a better price than the traditionally cultured common carp. In Africa the commercial value of tilapia is largely dependent on size (Plate 3). In southeast Asia, size is not an important factor, but the market price varies regionally. In some areas the acceptability of tilapia is lessened by its black skin, and consumption of tilapia is largely limited to people who cannot afford, say, milkfish. In other areas it is marketed as a gourmet food, which is quite appropriate, for the quality of tilapia flesh is usually very high. Tilapia too small to be marketed for human consumption need not be wasted, as they may be used as fodder for more expensive fish such as trout, as an ingredient in livestock feeds, or as bait in commercial fishing.

Experiments in Alabama indicate that tilapia could be produced in the United States at extremely low cost. Data are not available for other parts of the world, but it would appear that tilapia could compete favorably with other aquacultural and fishery products in most tropical and moderate climates.

Some authorities, however, notably S. Tal and C. F. Hickling, do not view tilapia as a good commercial proposition, at least not on a large scale. Even Tal and Hickling do not dispute tilapia's importance where there is an immediate need to feed large numbers of people or where fish can go directly from pond to pot. Whatever the commercial feasibility of tilapia culture may prove to be, it must be conceded that, thanks to subsistence culture and small-scale commercial culture, tilapia is currently one of the most important fish crops in much of the world, including most of Africa, Jamaica, southern Taiwan, and parts of Indonesia

the St Johns River of Florida where water hyacinth interferes with sport fishing and boating Such suggestions are usually resisted since the total effect of a voracious herbivore in a new environment is to say the least difficult to predict

GROWTH AND PRODUCTION

Growth of tilapia varies greatly with stocking density frequency of spawning and food supply Under very favorable conditions individual Java tilapia may reach a weight of 850 g in 1 year in brackish water they may reach 450 g in 8 months But in most ponds 85 to 110 g is a more realistic weight to expect after a year if the sexes are raised together Males grow two to three times faster than females thus monosex culture of males produces correspondingly better growth Monosex culture of females would also improve growth by eliminating periods of no growth associated with spawning but no data are available on this rarely practiced technique

Heterosis is not unknown in tilapia but the subject has been insufficiently investigated It has been shown that both of the reciprocal crosses of Java tilapia and Nile tilapia exhibit better growth and food conversion than either parent The same is true of both the intraspecific crosses of Java tilapia of African and Malaysian stocks

Since the future of tilapia culture appears to be largely bound up with polyculture it seems superfluous to discuss production at length The question to be asked is not How many kilograms of tilapia can be produced in this pond? but rather Will tilapia add significantly to this pond s fish production? As we have seen in most cases the answer to the second question is yes The amount of added production will of course vary but even in instances such as the experimental culture of Java tilapia with channel catfish where only 266 kg/ha of tilapia were produced the effect of adding tilapia must be regarded as significant. Although if the total production of a fish pond were 266 kg/ha it would be a poor pond indeed the production of tilapia in this case must be considered as supplementary to the production of the primary crop channel catfish The 266 kg/ha of tilapia produced *plus* an increase in catfish production of 168 kg/ha over the 1400 kg/ha achieved by monoculture amounts to an increase of 434 kg/ha of fish or a total production gain of 30 3% Addition of tilapia to carp ponds in Israel has on occasion resulted in production gains of more than 165%

Where monoculture of tilapia is practiced the normal figure usually cited for natural production is 500 kg/ha in the tropics and somewhat

precondition for which is usually chilling Tilapia also act as carriers of catarrhal enteritis

STATUS AND PROSPECTUS OF TILAPIA CULTURE

The prospectus for tilapia culture can best be outlined on a regional basis

THE NEAR EAST

The future of tilapia in Israel is debatable, but as long as the present demand is sustained it seems likely that tilapia will hold their own in fish culture as well as in fisheries There are perhaps more institutions carrying on fish culture research in Israel than in any other country, so breakthroughs in tilapia culture techniques may well be made and applied in Israel

The growth of fish culture in other Near Eastern countries is hampered by the lack of an aquacultural tradition and, in some cases, a shortage of water Present emphasis in the region is on culture of the common carp, but one may expect tilapia to play some role in the development of fish culture

AFRICA

There is perhaps more excitement over tilapia in tropical Africa than anywhere else, but results to date vary greatly, as does the prospectus The problem of stunting which must be reckoned with wherever tilapia are raised, is crucial in Africa due to the reluctance of most Africans to accept small fish The future of African tilapia culture is thus dependent on the improvement and spread of population control techniques

Culture of tilapia will undoubtedly continue to be practiced in virtually all African countries but, as in the past, success may be expected to be greatest in those countries where government supervision and assistance are greatest Most noteworthy in this respect are Uganda and the Malagasy Republic. Government supervision is necessary not only for economic reasons but because Africa lacks a tradition of fish culture Thus a farmer who is perfectly willing to work long and hard on a terrestrial crop is culturally conditioned to think of fish as wild game rather than as livestock to be tended and he may let a carefully constructed and stocked fish pond deteriorate for lack of attention

PLATE 3 Good sized tilapia being marketed in the Congo (Courtesy Marcel Huet Groendendaal Hoeilaart Belgium)

DISEASES AND PARASITES

Diseases and parasites are somewhat less of a problem with tilapia than with many cultured fishes Among the parasites found on tilapia are *Trichodina, Chilodon,* and *Saprolegnia* The only disease mentioned in the literature is bacterial fin rot but one might expect that, at least in marginal climates tilapia would be subject to ichthyophthiriasis the

precondition for which is usually chilling. Tilapia also act as carriers of catarrhal enteritis.

STATUS AND PROSPECTUS OF TILAPIA CULTURE

The prospectus for tilapia culture can best be outlined on a regional basis.

THE NEAR EAST

The future of tilapia in Israel is debatable, but as long as the present demand is sustained it seems likely that tilapia will hold their own in fish culture as well as in fisheries. There are perhaps more institutions carrying on fish culture research in Israel than in any other country, so breakthroughs in tilapia culture techniques may well be made and applied in Israel.

The growth of fish culture in other Near Eastern countries is hampered by the lack of an aquacultural tradition and, in some cases, a shortage of water. Present emphasis in the region is on culture of the common carp, but one may expect tilapia to play some role in the development of fish culture.

AFRICA

There is perhaps more excitement over tilapia in tropical Africa than anywhere else, but results to date vary greatly, as does the prospectus. The problem of stunting, which must be reckoned with wherever tilapia are raised, is crucial in Africa due to the reluctance of most Africans to accept small fish. The future of African tilapia culture is thus dependent on the improvement and spread of population control techniques.

Culture of tilapia will undoubtedly continue to be practiced in virtually all African countries but, as in the past, success may be expected to be greatest in those countries where government supervision and assistance are greatest. Most noteworthy in this respect are Uganda and the Malagasy Republic. Government supervision is necessary not only for economic reasons but because Africa lacks a tradition of fish culture. Thus a farmer who is perfectly willing to work long and hard on a terrestrial crop is culturally conditioned to think of fish as wild game rather than as livestock to be tended, and he may let a carefully constructed and stocked fish pond deteriorate for lack of attention.

PLATE 3 Good sized tilapia being marketed in the Congo (Courtesy Marcel Huet Groendendaal Hoeilaart Belgium)

DISEASES AND PARASITES

Diseases and parasites are somewhat less of a problem with tilapia than with many cultured fishes Among the parasites found on tilapia are *Trichodina* *Chilodon* and *Saprolegnia* The only disease mentioned in the literature is bacterial fin rot but one might expect that at least in marginal climates tilapia would be subject to ichthyophthiriasis the

way into natural waters, their effect on the local ecology could be disastrous With this in mind studies have been undertaken in a number of countries, notably Brazil, Guatemala, and Peru, to determine the aquacultural potential of native fish species Results to date are not encouraging, so experimental culture of tilapia is proceeding in many Latin American countries, especially Brazil and Costa Rica

Commercial production of tilapia is already under way in Jamaica and Trinidad In Jamaica tilapia culture is quite successful in terms of yield but shows little promise of being able to add significantly to the abundant fish supply contributed by marine fisheries In Trinidad the situation is much the same as regards pond culture, but Trinidad and some other Caribbean islands have further resources for fish culture in the form of extensive fresh and brackish water swamps It has been suggested that tilapia could be cultured and stocked in these swamps to supplement the take of fishermen who regularly exploit them

CURRENT AND FUTURE RESEARCH IN TILAPIA CULTURE

There is no form of fish culture that cannot benefit from research, but tilapia culture, as a young branch of the art involving 12 or so species grown under widely differing conditions all over the world is in particular need of information obtained through research

GROWING TILAPIA IN THERMAL EFFLUENT

One aspect of tilapia research—the experimental culture of tilapia in industrial cooling waters—may result in still further geographical expansion of tilapia culture, but most tilapia research is aimed at improving production in the tropical and moderate climates where they are already successfully raised

POPULATION CONTROL

Easily the most important advance which would be made would be a foolproof method of preventing overcrowding and stunting This has usually been approached through hybridization As mentioned earlier, there are at least three tilapia crosses that yield 100% male offspring but one of these is difficult to produce, one involves the use of stocks from rather limited geographic areas and one involves *T hornorum*, which is not available to many culturists outside east Africa and Malaysia What is needed is not only an easily obtained and duplicated all male hybrid,

SOUTHEAST ASIA

Tilapia may be expected to continue to play an important role in fish culture, particularly in Taiwan and Indonesia Whether significant ex pansion will occur depends on the results of research, on the extent to which eutrophication renders inland and brackish water unsuitable for culture of other fish, and, in some countries, on whether or not regional attitudes toward tilapia change

UNITED STATES

The consensus of workers at Auburn University is that tilapia are not presently feasible for culture in the United States, due to the premium placed on large fish, the difficulty in overwintering (even in Alabama tilapia used in research must be brought indoors during the winter), the doubtfulness of consumer acceptance, the availability of a wide variety of native fishes for culture, and the justifiable concern of conservationists and sport fishermen over the possible ecological effects of the intentional or accidental stocking of tilapia in natural waterways

Large scale culture of tilapia is not expected in the United States but, despite the warnings of ecologists, occasional introductions may be made Java tilapia and/or Nile tilapia have already been stocked locally as food or sport fish or for mosquito control in at least six of the southern states and Hawaii There is as yet no indication of their impact on fish eries or the ecology in any of these areas

TEMPERATE REGIONS OF EUROPE AND ASIA

Little future is seen for tilapia in these regions, except perhaps in in dustrial cooling waters Experiments along these lines are being carried out in England the Soviet Union, and West Germany Some success has also been reported from tilapia culture in the south of France, but details are not available

LATIN AMERICA

In no other major area of the world is fish culture so poorly developed Widespread protein deficiency in Latin America has in recent years prompted the various national governments and international aid agen cies to investigate the potential of fish culture in the region The most frequently suggested group of fishes for culture there are the *Tilapia* spp The only serious objection which can be raised is that if tilapia find their

poses, regional research stations should be established wherever large scale tilapia culture is contemplated, and surveys should be made of all waters to be cultivated so that the culturist may proceed intelligently with specific management measures appropriate for his area

Much more work needs to be done on pond fertilization and feeding in tilapia culture Both laboratory research on nutritional needs and field work on the effects of different feeds and fertilizers in practical culture are needed Not only the yields which may be achieved, but the protein content and marketability of the fish produced should be assessed

With a sound basis in research, further development of tilapia culture can proceed apace Development will surely include at least some practical culture in Latin America, gradual replacement of individually operated subsistence cultures with more efficient commercial or communal operations, education of would be tilapia growers, particularly in Africa, as to the need for population control, proper feeding, and other management measures, and further mechanization wherever tilapia are cultured More precise means of economic analysis of culture methods should also be applied

At the present time there seem to be more questions than facts with regard to tilapia culture, but it is a safe bet that, for the foreseeable future at least, the tilapia complex will continue to be an important contributor to the world s protein supply

REFERENCES

AVAULT J W and E W SHELL 1966 Preliminary studies with the hybrid tilapia *Tilapia nilotica × Tilapia mossambica* FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/E 14

BARDACH J E 1957 Marine fisheries and fish culture in the Caribbean Proceedings of the Gulf and Caribbean Fisheries Institute 10th Annual Session pp 132–137

FUJITA K K FUKUSHE J HATORI K KURONUMA and Y NAKAMURA 1966 Comparison of morphology and ecology in 3 species of tilapia Proc. Jap Soc. Syst Zool 2 (1966) 31–35

HICKLING C F 1966 Fish hybridization FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/R 1

HOFSTEDE, A E 1949 Pond culture of warmwater fishes in Indonesia Proc U.S Sci Conf Cons Util Res 7 136–138

HORA S L and T V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific Region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Report 14 204 pp

HUET M 1957 Dix années de pisciculture en Congo Belge et Ruanda Urandi Trav Sta Rech Groenendaal (D) 22 1–159

LAHSER C W 1967 *Tilapia mossambica* as a fish for aquatic weed control Prog Fish Cult 29(1) 48–50

but a series of them, including plankton feeders, macrophages, salinity and temperature tolerant strains Such hybrids might also exhibit heterosis as does the existing all male hybrid ♂ *T mossambica* (Zanzibar stock) × ♀ *T nilotica* (Lake Albert stock)

TAXONOMY AND GENETICS

To achieve the ends of hybridization it will be necessary to better understand tilapia genetics, both at the specific and subspecific levels, to understand, for example, why mating male *T mossambica* from Zanzibar with female *T nilotica* from Lake Albert produces 100% male offspring, whereas mating the same sexes of the same species from other parts of the world may not The attainment of this understanding will entail careful examination of the taxonomy of the genus *Tilapia*, which is currently quite confused

ECOLOGICAL AND ETHOLOGICAL STUDIES

Concurrent with hybridization experiments should be studies to more precisely determine the ecological niche occupied by each of the cultured species Many attempts at tilapia culture have yielded unsatisfactory results merely because the culturist did not have the necessary information to choose the right species or hybrid for the job Once the roles of the various species are known, hybridization can proceed more intelligently and the culturist will have an even wider selection of tilapia types to choose from One of the best means of approaching the problem of ecological niche would be to study tilapia behavior and food habits under natural or seminatural conditions

When the roles played by the various species and hybrids are known there will be a real basis for the foundation of tilapia polyculture, with or without nontilapia species, at a level of sophistication comparable to that of Chinese carp culture Even now, studies aimed at finding better species combinations and stocking rates for pond communities would not be amiss

POND FERTILIZATION AND SUPPLEMENTARY FEEDING

Among the less glamorous tasks facing researchers on tilapia culture is the assessment of bodies of water for culture. It is all very fine to do research on pond fertilization in Alabama or Israel but to attempt to extrapolate from there to a pond of unknown physical and chemical characteristics in East Africa is scarcely realistic. For this and other pur

19

Culture of True Eels (*Anguilla* spp.)

Among food fishes, true eels (*Anguilla* spp.) occupy a position in some countries roughly equivalent to that held among meat animals by turkey in the United States; they may be eaten any time but are traditionally served on certain days In Italy, eel is the traditional dish on Christmas Eve. Since eels are primarily a fishery product in Italy, the supply cannot be controlled, and prices go up tremendously on that day In Japan, one day in July is set aside as "eel day," and great quantities are sold, but since culture is the dominant mode of production, prices are more nearly stable.

Whatever the season, and even in countries like the United States, where eel is not liked by the majority of the populace, it is definitely a luxury food This status is due partly to the declining success of eel fisheries, and partly to the great expense of eel culture. As will be seen, one of the chief factors contributing to the expense is changing

LESSENT, P 1966 Essais d Hybridation dans le Genre *Tilapia* à la station de Recherches Piscicoles de Bouake, Côte d Ivoire FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/F 5

LIN, S Y 1968 Pond fish culture and the economy of inorganic fertilizer application Chinese American Joint Commission on Rural Reconstruction, Fisheries Series, No 6

MAAR, A, M A E MORTIMER, and I VAN DER LINGEN 1966 Fish culture in Central East Africa FAO, Rome 158 pp

PRUGININ, Y 1966 The culture of carp and tilapia hybrids in Uganda FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR IV/E 12

RABANAL, H R. 1966 Stock manipulation and other biological methods of increasing production of fish through pond fish culture in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 5

SHELL, E W 1966 Monosex culture of male *Tilapia nilotica* (Linn) in ponds stocked at 3 rates FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Fish Culture FR V/E 5

SREENIVASAN, A 1966 Fish production in some rural demonstration ponds in Madras (India) with an account of the chemistry of water and soil FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR II/E 9

STERBA G 1966 Fresh water fishes of the world Viking Press, New York

SWINGLE, H S 1966 Biological means of increasing productivity in ponds FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 1

TREWAVAS, E 1966 The name and natural distribution of the tilapia from Zanzibar (Pisces, Cichlidae) FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII I V/E-8

YASHOUV, A 1959 Studies on the productivity of fish ponds I Carrying capacity Proc. Tech Pap Gen Fish Coun Mediterr 5 409–418

YASHOUV, A 1966 Mixed fish culture—an ecological approach to increase pond productivity FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 2

YASHOUV, A and A HALEVY 1967 Studies on growth and productivity of *Tilapia aurea* and its hybrid "Gan Shmuel" in experimental ponds at Dor Bamidgeh 19(1) 16–22

Many Additional References Listed in

ST AMANT, J A, and M C STEVENS 1967 Bibliography of publications concerning *Tilapia mossambica* (Peters) Resources Agency of California, Dept of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Administrative Report, No 67 3

Interviews and Personal Communication

BROWN, R. J Proyecto de Diversification Agricola, Turrialba, Costa Rica

FISHELSON, L. University of Tel Aviv, Israel

HICKLING, C. F 95 Greenway, London N20, England

HUET, M University of Louvain, Belgium.

TAL, S Director of the Inland Fisheries, Ministry of Agriculture, Tel Aviv, Israel

YASHOUV, A Fish Culture Research Station, Dor, Israel.

Taiwanese nursery ponds are much more heavily stocked, figures of up to 3 million elvers/ha are cited Foods given include worms and minced, cooked trash fish, both presented in submerged bamboo mesh baskets

Stocking regimes for eel production ponds in Japan and Taiwan are quite different from each other, in keeping with the different aquacultural traditions of the two countries Eel culture in Japan is essentially a monoculture system, although common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) or striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*) may be stocked to clean up the excess food which is a necessary evil in eel ponds In Taiwan, however, eels are integral parts of complex polyculture systems derived from the classical method of Chinese carp culture

STOCKING PRODUCTION PONDS

In coastal Taiwanese ponds where Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) are the major crop (see Chapter 18 for details), eels may constitute a minor component of the stock, but in another class of ponds they are the principal species stocked Such ponds, which have smooth mud bottoms sloping toward the lower end, and walls lined with cement, brick, or stone, vary in size from 0 08 to 4 ha or more, but seldom average over 1 0 to 1 5 m deep One such 4 ha pond was stocked in 1967 with—in addition to elvers at about 25 000/ha—silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*), big head (*Aristichthys nobilis*) common carp, mud carp (*Cirrhinus molitorella*), and striped mullet Table 1 illustrates the roles of each of these species in the pond ecosystem and in the harvest

The system outlined in Table 1 differs from the ordinary pond polyculture systems originally developed in China and currently practiced in Taiwan and elsewhere in that it is neither the natural character of the pond nor fertilization *per se* that determines the structure of the fish community Rather, the voracious but sloppy feeding habits of the eels dictate that large amounts of food be given and the species and numbers of other fish stocked are in turn determined by the effect of the waste eel food Striped mullet, which would not ordinarily be stocked in a freshwater pond, are of particular importance not so much for their contribution to fish production as to control the dense growths of blue green algae which result from the superabundance of nitrogenous matter Other species that may be fitted into this type of ecosystem are goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) which may replace silver carp, and crucian carp (*Carassius carassius*), which, as omnivores, may take advantage of any niche that is not completely filled Grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idellus*)

NATURAL HISTORY AND COLLECTION OF ELVERS

The only country with a long history of eel culture is Japan where *Anguilla japonica* has been farmed commercially for about 150 years and on a subsistence basis for centuries longer It was not until after World War II that Taiwan became the second country where this species is cultured Like all species of *Anguilla A japonica* has the rather unusual trait of being catadromous that is spawning occurs in the sea and the young migrate inshore to mature in freshwater The inshore migration begins when the sea temperature first reaches 8 to 10°C in the spring and the transparent 5 to 7 cm long young called elvers reach Japanese shores in December to April Since Japanese biologists have had very limited success in spawning eels elvers collected at this time from streams and estuaries are the source of stock for culture

The best runs of elvers in Japan occur in the east central part of the country in Chiba Ibaragi and Shizuoka prefectures Elvers are perhaps more abundant in Taiwan and when in 1969 Taiwanese authorities relaxed the ban on export of elvers 1 to 2 million were collected and sold to Japanese culturists in addition to those purchased by Taiwanese eel growers In both countries elvers are captured in dip nets kept in floating baskets or boxes for 4 or 5 days then transferred to nursery ponds where they are reared for 6 months to 2 years or until they reach 12 to 15 cm in length before sale to culturists Some Japanese growers circumvent this expense by capturing eels of the same size from rivers by the use of traps or bamboo pipes

CULTURE IN JAPAN AND TAIWAN

REARING ELVERS

Nursing of elvers in Japan is carried out in two stages First they are stocked at a rate of 300 000/ha in ponds 200 m² or less in area After 3 months the population is thinned and redistributed in 600 m² ponds In both types of pond they are fed daily with dried sardines or sardine meal sometimes augmented by silkworm pupae Young eels are trans ported in very little water in special baskets 40 cm in diameter × 20 cm deep From 35 to 70 kg of eels may be safely carried in such baskets which are stacked one on top of another packed with straw mats and tied together Ice may be placed under the top mat during hot weather

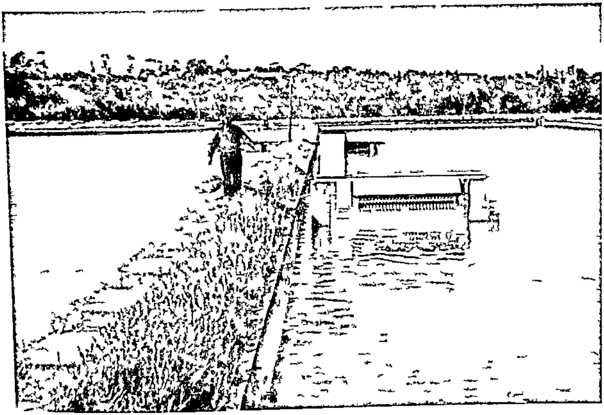


PLATE 1 Eel ponds in Taiwan showing mechanical aerator (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii)

more than 3 ha, but ponds average much larger In 1964, 84% of running water enclosures were less than 0 8 ha in area, while almost half of the eel ponds were 1 5 ha or larger Running water enclosures are much more productive than ponds, and operating costs only about ⅔ as much, but pond operators are able to make up the difference by maintaining larger culture units

The rate of stocking is determined by the rate of circulation of water and varies from 20 000 to 44,000 eels/ha When common carp are added, they are stocked as 7 cm young at 10,000/ha

FEEDING

In any eel culture system, it is primarily feeding which determines the success of the operation The more animal protein that can be supplied (at least 50% is essential), the greater the weight of eels that can be produced Food thus accounts for an average of 51 to 55% of the expenses of growing eels for market in Japan, and may run as high as 80%

The traditional foods for eels in Japan are fresh and cooked trash fish, silkworm pupae, and, to a lesser extent, earthworms, aquatic worms, and

TABLE 1 STOCKING RATE AND YIELDS OF POLYCULTURE PONDS IN TAIWAN, WITH EELS AS THE PRIMARY CROP

SPECIES	NICHE	NO STOCKED	SIZE STOCKED (G)	SURVIVAL (%)	HARVEST (KG)
Eel	Principal crop heavily fed	100 000	25	70	14,000
Silver carp	Phytoplankton feeder	8 000	10–20	50	6 000
Big head	Zooplankton feeder	1,000	10–20	100	5 600
Common carp	Utilizes excess eel food	32 000	10–20	25	4 000
Mud carp	Benthos feeder	4,000	—	100	1,600
Striped mullet	Feeds on blue green algae	6 000	0 5	50	800
Total		151,000			32 000 (8,000 kg/ha)

may also be stocked but the culturist will then have two species to feed, since few ponds support enough higher plants to satisfy this voracious species

There is a trend in Taiwan toward higher stocking rates of eels A large pond such as the one just described would probably now be stocked with double the number of elvers (50,000/ha) Ponds less than 0 5 ha in area are stocked at higher rates—up to 160 000 elvers/ha The stocking rates thus far cited assume that running water can be provided In small ponds, artificial aeration by means of pumps or mechanical paddles may also be resorted to However some eel ponds in Taiwan are stagnant, and oxygen deficiencies may develop Stocking rates of such ponds must be less than half those cited

Shizuoka Prefecture produces about 65% of the eels grown for market in Japan Young eels purchased from nurseries are stocked in two types of water, ponds and running water enclosures In addition, a closed recirculating system of the type developed by A Saeki of Tokyo University, described in detail in Chapter 2, has been tested under experimental conditions but has yet to be adopted in practical eel culture

Nearly all enclosures of both types have walls of concrete, stone or occasionally wood They vary greatly in size, from less than 0 3 ha to

TABLE 2 CONVERSION RATIOS OF EEL FEEDS USED IN JAPAN AND TAIWAN

COUNTRY	FOOD	CONVERSION RATIO
Japan	Chopped fish, silkworm pupae, etc	5 5 1
	Sardines	5 43–7 16 1
	Artificial feed (pellets)	3 03–4 36 1
Taiwan	Trash fish, etc.	10–15 1
	Artificial feed (granular)	2 1–2 6 1
	Artificial feed mixed with fish liver oil	1 9 1

of pellets, contains about 60% fish meal and 20% starch, along with vitamins, minerals, and so forth It is expensive and while it is used exclusively by the larger culturists, small operators vary their feeding plan according to the relative cost of artificial feed and fresh fish

The artificial eel feed used in Taiwan (Table 3) is granular in form and is of slightly more recent origin, but has already been adopted by considerable numbers of culturists, who report it to be cheaper, easier to handle, and more sanitary than traditional foods

Whatever is fed, it is usually presented in baskets or perforated troughs, rather than being broadcast in the pond The rate of feeding should be

TABLE 3 COMPOSITION AND CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF THE ARTIFICIAL EEL FEED USED IN TAIWAN

COMPOSITION	
Fishmeal	65 00%
Defatted soybean meal	10 16
Yeast powder	10 12
Fish concentrate	5 00
Starch	8 12
Multivitamins	1 00
Lysine	0 20
Antioxidant	0 20
Binding substance	0 20
CHEMICAL ANALYSIS	
Crude protein	51 91%
Crude fat	5 36
Crude carbohydrate	16 03
Ash	17 97
Moisture	8 73

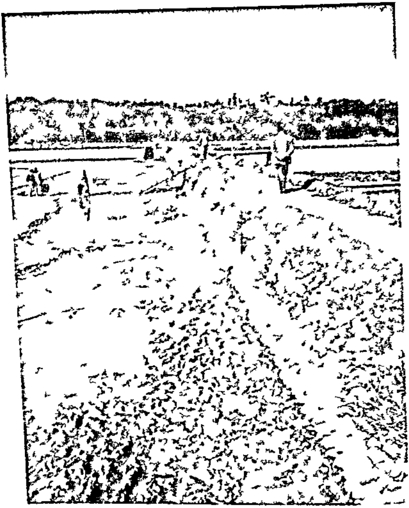


PLATE 2 Workers removing bottom sediment from eel ponds at end of growing season Note stones on dykes to prevent the eels from burrowing (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii)

crushed mollusks In Taiwan trash fish are the most commonly used food but offal from slaughterhouses and fish packing plants ox blood earthworms aquatic worms and small crabs all chopped into small pieces are also used Crabs are believed to be especially effective in promoting growth Taiwanese eel farmers feed silkworm pupae only in the last stages of culture when the fish are being fattened for market. For this purpose the pupae are soaked in water for an hour or so before feeding

Conversion ratios obtained with traditional foods are extremely poor (Table 2) but recently developed artificial feeds have produced dramatic improvement In Japan artificial eel feed which is produced in the form

5 to 10% of the body weight of eels daily, depending on temperature Below 8 to 10°C, feeding ceases

Table 2 shows conversion ratios obtained with various foods If the improved conversion achieved with the new artificial feeds can be sustained at low cost to the farmer, the status of eel culture may be radically changed

GROWTH, YIELD, PRODUCTION, AND MARKETING

Even under optimum conditions of heavy feeding, high dissolved oxygen concentration, and temperatures of 20 to 28°C, eels characteristically exhibit great differences in growth between individuals (in an experiment with the Atlantic species, *Anguilla anguilla,* some individuals doubled their weight, while others, stocked at the same size, grew by a factor of 120) and special cropping systems have evolved accordingly In Japan, about 30% of the eels stocked reach the marketable size of 100 to 200 g within 1 year after stocking These are then harvested and replaced with an equal number of young eels At the end of the second year, all the eels are harvested Total survival over the 2 year period is 60 to 90% In Taiwan, larger eels, weighing 200 g or more, are preferred by consumers Eel ponds are selectively fished for eels on a daily to monthly basis, depending on demand, and all such specimens marketed The other species stocked in eel ponds are harvested annually

Yields and production of eel culture in Japan have increased considerably in the last decade In the late 1950s, 15,000 kg/ha was considered an exceptional yield In 1965, however, the most productive running water enclosures yielded about 45,000 kg/ha, and the average yield in running water was higher than the maximum formerly achieved Although the lower yields realized from ponds lower the overall average yield considerably, it is still impressive (Table 4)

About 98% of the eels produced in Japan are sold domestically, mostly as fresh fish, but also canned or as a frozen, precooked item The remainder of the crop is exported, mostly to western Europe There is a

TABLE 4 PRODUCTION AND YIELD OF EELS CULTURED IN RUNNING WATER ENCLOSURES AND PONDS IN JAPAN, 1964

TYPE OF ENCLOSURE	TOTAL AREA (HA)	PRODUCTION (KG)	YIELD (KG/HA)
Running water	49	1,346 117	26 360
Pond	123	664,843	6,120
Total	172	1,810,960	10,528

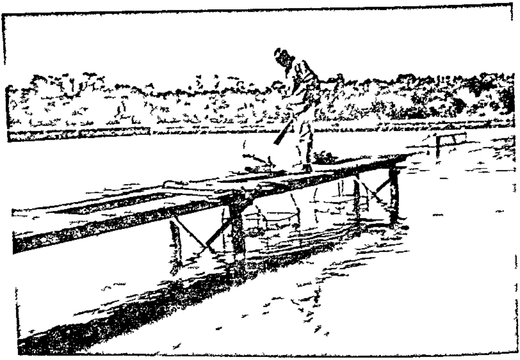


PLATE 3 Cages with feed (dough consistency) lowered into eel cages (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute, Hawaii)

PLATE 4 Eels swim into cages and burrow through food (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh Oceanic Institute Hawaii)

PROSPECTUS

It is scarcely accidental that, in Asia, eel culture has developed only in Japan and Taiwan, the two wealthiest nations on the continent. Although eels are found along the entire west coast of the Pacific and throughout the Indian Ocean (as well as on both coasts of the Atlantic), culturists in southeast Asia have been advised against eel culture. The principal objection to eels in that region is that they are extremely wasteful protein converters, thus not appropriate for culture where supplies of protein for human consumption are low However, the greatly improved conversion rates recently achieved by use of dry foods may soon render this objection obsolete

Another factor contributing to the high cost of eel is the inability of culturists to propagate them in captivity, although *A anguilla* has reportedly been artificially spawned in France. The logical way to approach artificial propagation of eels would be by considering their spawning habits in nature, but these are little known Even if they were well known, it might prove very difficult to simulate the natural conditions encountered by a catadromous fish If efficient artificial propagation can be achieved, cultured eels may eventually contribute significantly to protein supplies in southeast Asia, Africa, and Latin America Otherwise, eel will likely remain a luxury food

REFERENCES

BROWN, E. E 1969 The fresh water cultured fish industry of Japan University of Georgia College of Agriculture Experimental Station, Research Report 41. 57 pp

HORA, S L., and T. V R PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific Region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper 14 204 pp

KOOPS, H 1966 Feeding of eels (*Anguilla anguilla* L.) in ponds FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III VIII/E-3

LIN, S Y. 1968 Pond fish culture and the economy of inorganic fertilizer application Chinese American International Commission on Rural Reconstruction, Fisheries Series No 6

LING, S W 1966 Feeds and feeding of warm water fishes in ponds in Asia and the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR III VIII/R 2

Interviews and Personal Communication

MOZZI, C Institute of Hydrobiology, University of Padua, Italy

great demand for eels in Europe, which increases as the fisheries there decline, but Japan has not made a major effort to enter the market To do so effectively, Japanese culturists would have to grow eels to twice the length of the 45 to 60 cm specimens currently marketed

If the growth of eel culture in Japan has been fast, its growth in Taiwan has been spectacular In 1965 122,753 kg were produced, by 1969 about 2 million kg were being produced annually from about 200 ha of water, for an average yield of 10,000 kg/ha Taiwanese culturists have since the beginning of eel culture in the country, grown somewhat larger eels than their Japanese counterparts, thus they export a significant portion of their crop

CULTURE IN EUROPE

Imports are not adequate to satisfy the high demand for eels which exists in virtually every European country and, as natural populations decline due to increased pollution of rivers, interest in culture of the native *Anguilla anguilla* grows not only in Europe but in Israel and the United Arab Republic as well Large numbers of eels are still taken in the Italian valli and other Mediterranean lagoons, in practices some of which constitute low intensity aquaculture (see pp 296–302), but intensive eel culture is a new phenomenon outside of Asia

Commercial culture is already a reality in the Soviet Union and West Germany, where 20-cm elvers are collected along the coast for stocking Culture proceeds much as in Japan or Taiwan, but *A anguilla* is thus far reluctant to accept dry food, so trash fish are fed almost exclusively Conversion ratios of 8 to 10 1 are realized, but ratios might be improved through monosex culture, since females of *A anguilla* grow much faster than males West German researchers have found that the shape of the culture enclosure also has an effect on growth Eels which are olfactory feeders, can locate food more efficiently in long, narrow ponds

Diseases represent more of a problem with *A anguilla* than they do with *A japonica* West German biologists refer to a cauliflower' disease and a red disease, both of which severely affect growth and, to a lesser degree, survival, but no cures are suggested An apparently more serious problem occurred in 1957 in the Po River delta of northern Italy, where eels constitute 70% of the production of valle fish culture Eels there developed heavy infestations of an apparently new species of *Argulus*, and production declined by 50% Attempts to eliminate the parasite by flushing the valli with large volumes of freshwater were only partly successful

In 1589, when Henry IV, King of France, promised "a chicken in every pot," it seemed almost an extravagant offer. Today, in the United States and other affluent countries, a politician making the same offer would be accorded a blasé reception, for, through streamlined production methods, chicken has become one of the cheapest meats. Trout may soon achieve an analogous position among quality fish products, already commercial trout culturists are gaining production levels undreamed of by the early hatcherymen, with consequent reduction in cost per unit weight.

In the United States and some European countries trout culture has the longest history of any form of fish culture, due largely to the popularity of trout as a sport fish. At least since the appearance of Dame Juliana Berners' "Treatise on Fysshynge with an Angle" in the *Boke of St Alban's*, published in 1486, salmonids have been *the* prestige fish among freshwater anglers. Unfortunately, since salmonids prefer environments which are sterile compared with those favored by such other popular sport fishes as the black basses and the pikes, they are also among the most easily depleted by fishing and other activities of man. As early as 1741, when Stephen Ludwig Jacobi established the first trout hatchery in Germany, anglers began to depend on culturists to augment and, too often, substitute for natural production in the maintenance of sport fisheries.

SPECIES CULTURED

The most widely cultured salmonid for sport fishery purposes is the rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). Native to the Pacific Coast drainages of North America from Alaska to Baja California, the rainbow trout has

20

Commercial Culture of Freshwater Salmonids

Genera *Salmo, Salvelinus, Thymallus,* and *Hucho*

and is the most delicate of the three species, particularly with respect to temperature However, it is preferred by some culturists where trout are sold by weight rather than length since it is a deeper bodied fish than rainbow or brown trout Many fishermen also consider it a superior table fish

Virtually all large scale commercial trout culture is based on these three species, but in regions where salmonids enter commercial fisheries young fish of other species may be cultured and released to supplement natural reproduction for commercial as well as sport purposes

HATCHERY TECHNIQUES

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Wherever rainbow, brown, or brook trout are raised the basic techniques of spawning and hatching are the same In nature, most salmonids dig nests, called redds, in streambeds in riffle areas The eggs are deposited in these depressions, fertilized, and buried with gravel, to hatch some months later In no instance are cultured trout allowed to spawn in this manner Rather, eggs are artificially obtained, fertilized, and hatched, resulting in fertilization rates of nearly 100% and hatching rates well in excess of those achieved in nature

In general, wild rainbow trout spawn in the spring whereas brown trout and brook trout breed mainly in the fall However, strains of these species, particularly the rainbow trout, may be found spawning at practically any time of year Some commercial culturists take advantage of this variability by importing eggs from various parts of the world to maintain a constant supply of trout of all sizes Others have selectively bred early or late spawning strains Spawning time may also be regulated by artificial control of the photoperiod to simulate seasonal change or by injection of pituitary hormones The latter technique has not found as much application among trout culturists as among growers of catfish, carp, and some other species

The rate of hatching of eggs appears to be partially genetically controlled and brood stock is carefully selected for hatching rate as well as for production of large eggs Large eggs, which are associated with the size of the female as well as the genetic strain, produce large larvae, which generally exhibit better survival than smaller ones

Even trout of selected strains do not all mature at the same time and during spawning season brood females must be sorted frequently so that the very ripest individuals, as determined by how readily eggs ooze

been introduced as a sport fish to virtually all suitable waters in the affluent countries Nearly as much effort has been devoted to the propagation of the European brown trout (*Salmo trutta*), which has been distributed throughout the world and has assumed special importance in the United States, where it has been the savior of trout fishing in many streams which have become too warm and/or polluted to support native salmonids The only other salmonid species which has received comparable attention from culturists is the brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) Originally restricted to northeastern North America, the brook trout has been introduced wherever water temperatures are cold enough to meet its demands, which are somewhat more restrictive than those of rainbow or brown trout

Other species cultured for sport fishery purposes on a more limited basis include the Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) of the European coast, Iceland, and the Atlantic coast of North America from Maine north, the lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*) of northern North America, the cutthroat trout (*Salmo clarki*) of western North America, the Sunapee trout (*Salvelinus aureolus*) of northern New England, and the most beautiful of all salmonids, the golden trout (*Salmo aguabonita*) of California s High Sierras

Among the qualities that have endeared trout to sport fishermen is the high quality of the flesh Thus it is not surprising to find that attempts at commercial trout culture were made as early as 1853 in the United States and perhaps earlier in Europe Until recently, most of the techniques used in commercial trout culture were identical to those practiced in sport fish hatcheries Though understanding of the rather different goals of the two types of trout culture has resulted in considerable differences in culture practices today, the commercial trout culturist should keep abreast of developments in the sport fish hatcheries, where many relevant new developments occur There is an extensive literature on trout culture for sport fishing but this book is concerned only with commercial trout culture (The reader seeking a detailed treatment of trout culture for sport fishing is referred to *Trout and Salmon Culture* by Earl Leitritz and *Culture and Diseases of Game Fishes* by H S Davis)

The big three species in commercial trout culture are the same three favored by sport fishermen but the preeminence of the rainbow trout is more solidly established Of all the salmonids none is so amenable to captivity or so tolerant of different temperatures, salinities, and population densities The brown trout is nearly as adaptable as the rainbow trout with respect to environmental parameters but is more territorial thus does not do as well when cultured at high densities Some also consider it slightly less desirable as food The brook trout grows less rapidly

PLATE I Vertical drip salmonid incubation system (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

most commercial hatcheries use a tray incubator. This consists of a series of metal or fiberglass trays stacked rather like the drawers in a dresser, so that any individual tray may be totally or partially removed. Eggs are placed in trays, a single layer to a tray, as soon as they are water hardened—within a few minutes after fertilization. Egg trays are made of a special type of wire screen with oblong openings about 15 mm × 3.5 mm. The oblong mesh retains the eggs but permits the elongate alevins to pass through.

Formerly it was necessary to inspect eggs daily and individually remove each dead one, or else fungus would gain a foothold on dead eggs and spread to smother adjacent live ones. This tedious task has been largely

from the fish when handled, are spawned Overripeness as well as under ripeness is a problem for trout will seldom release eggs naturally under hatchery conditions Use of overripe or underripe spawners may result in lower rates of fertilization and injury to the female

Not only must brood females be handled very carefully during sorting precautions must also be taken with their diet Commercial feeds containing cottonseed meal adversely affect egg production and are to be strictly avoided

ARTIFICIAL FERTILIZATION

The process of obtaining eggs and milt is called stripping and requires a fair amount of skill to avoid injuring either fish or eggs In some hatcheries injury to the spawners is reduced by anesthetizing them with MS-222 Where anesthesia is not employed, stripping may be carried out as a one man operation, but less fumbling and consequent injury to the fish occurs if it is done by a two man team One man grasps a ripe female by the caudal peduncle and pectoral fins and holds it over a pan, while the other gently extrudes the eggs by applying pressure to the abdomen with thumb and forefinger, beginning just forward of the vent and proceeding forward to the pelvic fins If the fish is held tail down the eggs will flow naturally into the pan Pressure should not be applied forward of the pelvic fins, since this may damage the internal organs Another advisable precaution is to wear wool gloves so as to be able to grip the fish firmly Care should also be taken not to break any eggs, as the albumen from broken eggs will coat other eggs and inhibit fertilization For this reason it is not wise to try to extract every egg from a female. Forcing out the last hundred or so eggs increases the chance of eggs being broken

As soon as a female has been stripped, a ripe male is stripped into the pan using the same technique. The eggs and sperm are then gently mixed to effect fertilization by what is referred to as the "dry" method At one time, a "wet" method was also popular, in which a small amount of water was added just prior to mixing the eggs and sperm, but the dry method is now almost universally preferred If no eggs are broken it is customary to strip two or more pairs before emptying the pan, to eliminate the chance of fertilization not taking place due to a sterile male.

INCUBATION OF EGGS

Hatching is best carried out in gently flowing water with a temperature of 8 to 13°C, containing at least 7 ppm of dissolved oxygen Several devices for artificially incubating salmonid eggs have been developed, but

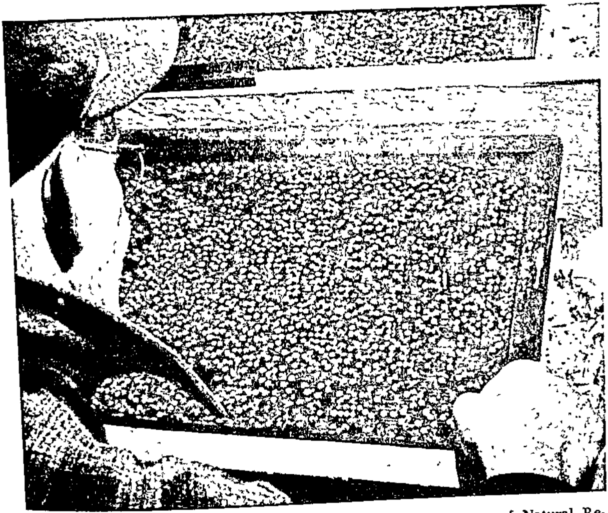


PLATE 3. Newly hatched trout fry. (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources.)

and allowed to drip down over the eggs. This provides enough moisture to maintain the embryos but, since the trays do not retain water, the eggs must be removed to troughs just before hatching.

In the vertical flow incubator water also enters at the top but is piped from tray to tray in such a manner as to enter each tray at the bottom. Upwelling through the eggs provides adequate aeration. Since the trays containing the egg baskets are not perforated, the eggs may be allowed to hatch and alevins left in the incubator until they begin to feed.

Both types of incubator operate on a rather small volume of water, thus it is economical to control temperature to accelerate or retard development. To provide for 20 35-cm square trays, or about 600,000 to 1,350,000 eggs, 14 liters/min, is considered adequate. (The precise number of eggs depends on size and may be outside this range for exceptionally large or small eggs or for species other than those usually cultured commercially.) During incubation treatment with malachite green is repeated twice weekly, using 3.75 g dissolved in 3 liters of water. Water

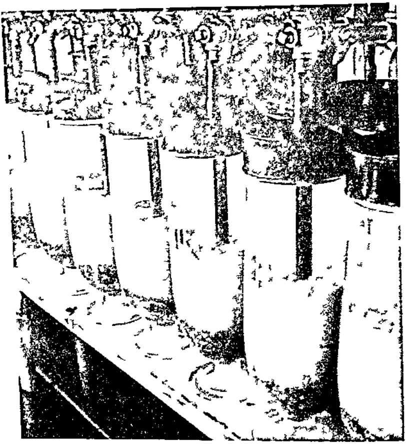


PLATE 2 Egg incubation by the jar battery system (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

eliminated by using malachite green to control fungus The first malachite green treatment takes place before the loaded egg trays are placed in the incubator The loaded trays are stacked four high in a trough with the bottom tray supported 25 mm off the floor of the trough Water flow in the trough is maintained at 24 liters/min Each stack of trays is separated from adjoining trays by a divider The dividers act as baffles to produce an upwelling of water through each tray The trays are left in the trough for about 9 hours, at the beginning and end of which they are flushed with 7 6 g of a solution of 43 g of malachite green in 4 liters of water, introduced at the head of the trough At the conclusion of the second such treatment the trays are placed in the incubator During this and all subsequent operations until hatching the eggs must be covered, since exposure to light may result in premature hatching or death

Two types of incubator are used In the drip incubator egg trays are alternated with perforated metal trays Water is introduced at the top

PLATE 5 Newly hatched trout fry (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

Salmonid eggs are extremely tender during some periods in their development, but they are quite tolerant of handling during the first 48 hours after water hardening and again after they are eyed. Eggs are referred to as "eyed" as soon as the eye of the embryo is clearly visible—about 2 to 3 weeks after fertilization at normal temperatures. Except for extremely short journeys, eyed eggs are chosen for shipping Eggs which have only recently become eyed are preferred since they are less likely to hatch prematurely under the relatively high temperatures experienced in even the best shipping containers.

Salmonid eggs are shipped in trays similar to those used in hatching Since malachite green treatment can scarcely be applied en route, all dead eggs must be removed to prevent the spread of fungus. The first step

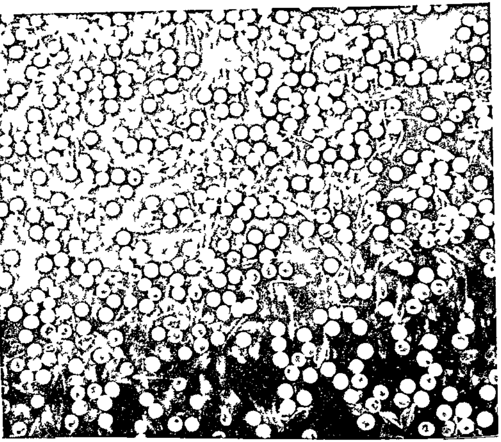


PLATE 4 Newly hatched trout fry (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

flow is reduced to 8 liters/min during treatment and the solution is allowed to drip in at about 30 ml/min for 1 hour

The rate of hatching is determined by temperature Table 1 shows hatching rates for the three commercially important species

SALE AND SHIPPING OF EGGS

Some culturists grow their own stock through all phases of the life cycle, but not a few hatcheries specialize in egg production since, perhaps due to the presence of trace elements or other solutes, certain localities seem better suited to producing high percentages of viable eggs Markets for eggs include not only commercial and experimental culturists around the world but also state fish and game departments in the United States, some of which are not able to produce eggs as cheaply as commercial culturists

trout streams is retarded by warm water in summer and/or cold water in winter

COMMERCIAL TROUT CULTURE IN THE UNITED STATES

WATER SUPPLY

Illustrative of the potential of trout culture under optimum conditions is the world's largest trout farm, the Snake River Trout Company, located near Buhl, in southern Idaho The owner of the farm, Bob Erkins, has tapped natural springs which supply him with 240,000 liters/min of isothermal 15°C water Erkins believes a large part of his success is due to this water supply Certainly it has played a role in making his property the richest food producing acre in the world There is more to it, however, for the same water source has been and is still used by other culturists who do not approach Erkins' production of 600,000 kg/year with 10 acres of land This amounts to 12% of the total United States production of trout The following comments on commercial trout culture in the United States are drawn largely from Erkins experience

STOCKING DENSITY

One of the first departures from tradition made by Erkins was in stocking density It had formerly been generally believed that in order to attain good growth trout had to have considerable room Erkins however, recognized that since trout culture is carried out in flowing water, stocking rates should be dependent not on the volume of water in an enclosure at a given moment but on the volume flowing through that enclosure in a given time which is a function of current velocity

At the present time determination of optimum current velocity is as much a matter of art as science If the current is too swift, energy which might go into growth will be used up in swimming On the other hand, slack water results in the accumulation of wastes As a rule of thumb, current should be sufficient to provide at least one complete exchange of water per hour

The amount of trout which may be held in a given enclosure depends on many factors in addition to volume of water flow, so stocking rates must be empirically determined by the individual culturist A well managed farm should be able to sustain 100,000 kg/ha of fingerlings Erkins gauges his operations to produce about 2 2 kg of marketable size

TABLE 1 RATE OF HATCHING AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES, OF EGGS OF RAINBOW, BROWN, AND BROOK TROUT

SPECIES	TEMPERATURE (°C)	DAYS TO HATCHING
Rainbow trout	4.5	80
	7.3	48
	10.0	31
	12.0	24
	15.7	19
Brown trout	1.7	156
	4.5	100
	7.3	64
	10.0	41
Brook trout	1.7	144
	4.5	103
	7.3	68
	10.0	44
	12.0	35

in this process is "shocking," which amounts to nothing more than agitating the eggs vigorously enough to rupture the yolk membrane of any infertile eggs but not severely enough to injure viable eggs. After shocking, dead eggs turn white and can be individually removed by siphoning. The trays are then stacked one on top of another in a plastic bag with one or two trays of some absorbent material on the bottom and a tray of ice on top. Eggs must be kept moist during shipment, but water is not added because, without aeration, it would result in smothering the eggs. When so packed and placed in some sort of rigid container with good insulating properties, eggs may be shipped anywhere in the world.

Alevins are held in egg trays or in concrete or aluminum troughs until the yolk sac is absorbed. Water flow is maintained at about the level used for hatching. Once the fry become free swimming the water supply becomes crucial to the success of the operation. This is the principal reason that large-scale trout farming is confined to a few areas; most regions of the world cannot offer water in the quantity and quality needed for commercial trout culture. The minimum acceptable flow is about 3600 liters/min and considerably more is preferable. Ideally, the water should be isothermal between 10 and 18°C, have a pH of 7.0 to 8.5, contain at least 50 ppm of dissolved solids and 5 ppm of dissolved oxygen, and be free from pollutants. Surface water may meet most of these requirements but is almost never isothermal. Growth in even the best of

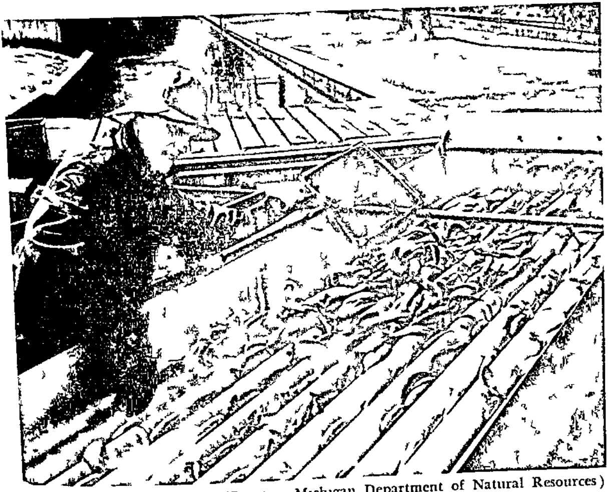


PLATE 7 Size grading trout (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

trout per liter of water per minute Beginning culturists should err on the low side and aim for 1 5 to 1 8 kg/(liter)(min)

Since the holding capacity of an enclosure is determined by the weight rather than the number of fish in it it is necessary to periodically thin out stock if growth is to be maintained Concurrent with thinning the stock is size grading to equalize competition among the fish and produce more uniform fish at harvest time Grading is done by netting the fish and placing them in a box with a slatted bottom The smaller fish pass between the slats while the larger ones are retained With small fish the process may be accelerated by lifting the grader out of the water and shaking it

Some sport fish hatcheries use more sophisticated graders The Murray Hume automatic grader has the advantage of not necessitating removal of the fish from the water It functions by forcing the fish to swim upstream until they meet a series of bars set at a predetermined distance apart The smaller fish pass through, while the larger ones remain behind Other grading devices which sort fish into more than two size groups consist essentially of nothing more than a series of conventional graders

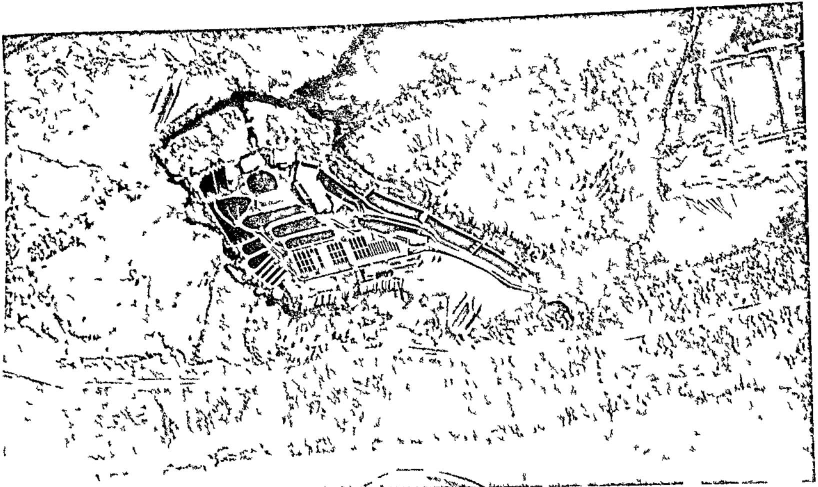


PLATE 6 Aerial view of Snake River Trout Co (Courtesy Robert A Erkins)

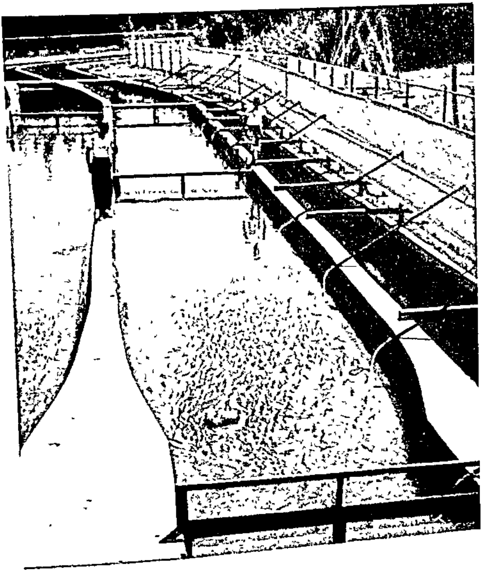


PLATE 9. Outdoor raceway culture of trout fingerlings. (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources.)

against disease which is necessary in some localities is to construct raceways and ponds of concrete. In areas where disease is not a major problem, earthen ponds have their proponents, who claim that trout derive substantial benefit from natural food organisms produced on an earthen bottom.

Before constructing any sort of trout culture facility, it must be determined whether the site is suitable. The soil should retain water *or* be suitable for concrete construction. Slope of the land should be 1 to 3% to permit an adequate flow of water and to allow for a vertical drop of at least a few inches at the inlet of each enclosure used to hold trout. The latter precaution is needed to insure adequate oxygenation at all times.

PLATE 8 Weighing young trout (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

POND AND RACEWAY CONSTRUCTION

Raceways 25 to 35 m long, 3 to 10 m wide, and 0.7 to 1.0 m deep are preferred to wider ponds of other shapes for rearing fingerlings. Not only is it easier to maintain a satisfactory flow of water in raceways but eddying is reduced. Lack of eddies allows continuous flushing of metabolic wastes which may not only cause oxygen depletion and increase the danger of disease but are claimed to be responsible for the "hatchery taste" of some cultured trout. Where it is possible to provide rapid enough exchange of water, larger ponds (up to 3 acre feet) may be used as "finishing ponds" to grow 15 cm fingerlings to marketable size.

Raceways and ponds should be so constructed that no pond flows into another pond and any pond can be drained individually. Not only is this more convenient for the culturist, it prevents the passage of metabolic wastes and disease organisms from pond to pond. Another precaution

particularly cheap source of meat or fish, prepared dry foods pay for themselves in convenience

Erkins was one of the first commercial trout culturists to convert to an exclusive diet of dry feed The feed he adopted in 1953 contained wheat, fish meal, whey, cottonseed meal, and yeast Since then a number of feed companies have come out with trout pellets containing as many as 30 to 40 ingredients, including vitamin B_{12}, antibiotics, and even paprika, to bring out the red spots of brown trout and brook trout Most American trout farmers have followed Erkins' lead, thus the feed industry has vigorously attempted to improve trout feed formulas This work continues even though existing feeds have produced conversion ratios as low as 1 5 1 in commercial culture and 1 13 1 in experimental culture of fingerlings Table 2 lists guidelines for trout feed as determined at the U S Fish Farming Experimental Station in Stuttgart, Arkansas

In practice, great variation is to be found in the protein content of trout feeds In areas where there is a cheap and abundant supply of fish

TABLE 2 GUIDELINES FOR COMPOSITION OF TROUT FEED, AS DETERMINED AT THE U S FISH FARMING EXPERIMENTAL STATION, STUTTGART, ARKANSAS

COMPONENT	AMOUNT
Total protein[a]	35–40%
Carbohydrate (allowable)	30%
Fat	8–10%
Fiber	4%
Vitamins per ton of feed	
Vitamin A	3 000,000 USP
Vitamin D_3	640,000 IC
Vitamin E	216 000 IU
Riboflavin	100,000 mg
D calcium pantothenate	48,000 mg
Folic acid	80,000 mg
Niacin	500,000 mg
Choline chloride	1,000,000 mg
Vitamin B_{12}	20 mg
D biotin	400 mg
Ascorbic acid	240 mg
Thiamine hydrochloride	60,000 mg
Pyridoxine hydrochloride	~20,000 mg

[a] To include at least 30% fish meal

SOURCE Meyer (1969)

PLATE 10 Feeding trout fry on ground liver (Courtesy Michigan Department of Natural Resources)

FEEDING

Early trout culturists usually fed beef liver or ground low-grade beef, and these foods may still be in use in some places Fish offal has also been used but has often been associated with disease problems Nevertheless, one of the most successful American trout farms Trout Lodge Springs Hatchery, near Ephrata Washington, feeds mainly ground carp and salmon cannery waste and has not experienced excessive disease problems Diseases or no, unless the culturist is able to take advantage of a

In feeding very small trout it may be necessary to grind prepared food to produce tiny particles. Grinding entails both a crushing and a cutting action. Crushing breaks down cell walls and makes the food more susceptible to leaching by the water, thus should be minimized in favor of cutting.

Suggested daily feeding portions are shown in Table 4. These amounts should be divided into three or four daily feedings or, for young fry, as many as ten feedings. Young fry should be fed as much as they will consume at one time or slightly more. The opposite holds true for larger fish. It is general practice in commercial trout culture to gauge feeding by the appetites of the smaller fish in a group so as to equalize the growth rate and create a more uniform product. Feeding in excess may result in slightly improved growth, but only with the loss of uniformity, and is unlikely to compensate for the increased expenditure.

A more sophisticated feeding guide, suitable for young of any salmonid species, and taking into account differences in the nutritional value of diets, was developed by David C. Haskell of the New York State Conservation Department. Table 5 is a slightly modified form of Haskell's guide. Before using it past records of trout growth and water temperature must be consulted to compute a "hatchery constant" as follows:

Instruction for Use of Feeding Guide

I. For hatcheries with constant water temperatures:

A.
$$\frac{L_2 - L_1}{\text{days in period}} = \mathrm{L}$$

where: L_1 = length of fish at beginning of period,
L_2 = length of fish at end of period,
L = daily increase in length.

B. Hatchery constant = 300 × conversion × L

Note: Choice of a conversion should be based on recommendation of the feed manufacturer or past experience with the diet.

C. Enter the feeding guide under size of fish opposite the appropriate constant and read the percentage of body weight to feed daily. *Note:* It is necessary to calculate the hatchery constant only once for each species or strain, as long as there is no change in diet or water temperature.

II. For hatcheries with variable water temperatures:

A. Determine average monthly water temperature in °F.

B. Determine temperature units for the month. (TU = average monthly water temperature minus 38.6.)

C. Determine the length increase per month.

or meat trout diets may contain as much as 60% protein On the other hand in the United States the tendency is to try to maximize profits by getting along with as little protein as possible Some authorities have suggested protein levels as low as 20%

Just what is the minimum amount of protein required to maintain trout growth and energy is not known Research at the U S Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife s Eastern Fish Nutrition Laboratory at Cortland New York indicates that substitution of carbohydrates for protein as an energy source which has been effective with some species of fish does not work with trout but that under some circumstances small amounts of fat may demonstrate a protein-sparing action

Another Snake River Valley culturist Thorleif Rangen of Rangen Inc is approaching the problem of economical trout nutrition by at tempting to develop a high protein diet which contains little or no animal matter yet produces conversion ratios near 1 1 Thus far 100% vegetable foods have been found lacking in essential amino acids but chemical experiments with amino acid sysnthesis and the success of horticulturists in selectively breeding corn with ten times the usual amount of lysine and tryptophane suggest that Rangen s goal may be attainable

Whereas the same feed formula may be used for trout of all sizes particle size and rate of feeding vary according to the size of fish Table 3 shows the size of food particles (commercial size designations) recom mended for various sizes of trout

TABLE 3 PARTICLE SIZE OF DRY FOOD RECOMMENDED FOR FEEDING TROUT OF DIFFERENT SIZES

SIZE OF PELLET (STANDARD COMMERCIAL DESIGNATIONS)	SIZE OF FISH
1	4 224–2 816/kg
1 and 2 mixed	2 992–2 464/kg
2	2 840–2 112/kg
2 and 3 mixed	1 936–1 056/kg
3	1 232– 704/kg
3 and 4 mixed	880– 352/kg
4	528– 352/kg
4 and crumbles mixed	528– 176/kg
Crumbles	352– 106/kg
Crumbles and 3/32 in pellets mixed	176– 70/kg
24 cm pellets	70– 20/kg
40 cm pellets	20/kg and larger

TABLE 1 (continued)

WATER TEMPERATURE (°C)	NUMBER PER KG / APPROX SIZE (CM)	5 592+ / 1–2 3	5 592–669 / 2 5–5 0	669–194 / 5 0–7 5	191–83 / 7 5–10 0	83–43 / 10 0–12 5	43–26 / 12 5–15 0	26–16 / 15 0–17 5	16–11 / 17 5–20 0	11–8 / 20 0–22 5	8–6 / 22 5–25 0	6– / 25 0+
11–12		5 4	1 5	3 6	2 8	2 1	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 1	1 0	0 9
		5 6	4 7	3 8	2 9	2 2	1 8	1 5	1 3	1 1	1 1	1 0
12–13		5 8	4 9	3 9	3 0	2 3	1 9	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 1	1 0
		6 1	5 1	4 2	3 2	2 4	2 0	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 1	1 0
13–14		6 3	5 3	4 3	3 3	2 5	2 0	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 2	1 0
		6 7	5 5	4 5	3 5	2 6	2 1	1 8	1 5	1 4	1 2	1 1
14–15		7 0	5 8	4 8	3 6	2 7	2 2	1 9	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 2
15–16		7 3	6 0	5 0	3 7	2 7	2 3	1 9	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 2
		7 5	6 3	5 1	3 9	3 0	2 4	2 0	1 7	1 5	1 4	1 3
16–17		7 8	6 5	5 3	4 1	3 1	2 5	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 4	1 3
		8 1	6 7	5 5	4 3	3 2	2 6	2 1	1 8	1 6	1 5	1 4
17–18		8 4	7 0	5 7	4 5	3 4	2 7	2 1	1 9	1 7	1 5	1 4
		8 7	7 2	5 9	4 7	3 5	2 8	2 2	1 9	1 7	1 6	1 5
18–19		9 0	7 5	6 1	4 9	3 6	2 9	2 2	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 5
		9 3	7 8	6 3	5 1	3 8	3 0	2 3	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 5
19–20		9 6	9 1	6 6	5 3	3 9	3 1	2 4	2 1	1 9	1 6	1 6
20–21		9 9	9 4	6 9	5 5	4 0	3 2	2 5	2 1	2 0	1 8	1 7

TABLE 1. RECOMMENDED AMOUNTS OF DRY FEED TO FEED RAINBOW TROUT OF DIFFERENT SIZE GROUPS AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES (PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT)

WATER TEMPERATURE (°C)	NUMBER PER KG / APPROX SIZE (CM)	5,592+ 1-2 5	5 592-669 2 5-5 0	669-191 5 0-7 5	191-83 7 5-10 0	83-45 10 0-12 5	45-26 12 5-15 0	26-16 15 0-17 5	16-11 17 5-20 0	11-9 20 0-22 5	8-6 22 5-25 0	6 or — 25 0+
		27	22	17	13	10	09	07	06	05	05	01
2-3		27	23	19	14	11	09	07	06	05	05	01
		29	24	20	1.5	12	09	08	07	06	05	05
3-4		30	25	22	17	13	09	08	07	06	06	05
4-5		32	26	22	17	13	10	09	08	07	06	05
		34	28	22	18	14	11	09	08	07	06	05
5-6		35	28	24	18	14	12	09	08	07	06	05
		36	30	25	19	14	12	10	09	08	07	06
6-7		38	31	25	20	15	13	10	09	08	08	06
		40	33	27	21	16	13	11	10	09	08	07
7-8		41	34	28	22	17	14	12	10	09	08	07
		43	36	30	23	17	14	12	10	09	08	07
8-9		45	38	30	24	18	15	13	11	10	09	08
9-10		47	39	32	25	19	15	13	11	10	09	08
		52	43	34	27	20	17	14	12	11	10	09
10-11		54	45	35	28	21	17	15	13	11	10	09

TABLE 1 *(continued)*

Water temperature (°C)	Number per kg / Approx size (cm)	5 592+ / 1–2 3	5 592–669 / 2 5–5 0	669–194 / 5 0–7 5	194–83 / 7 5–10 0	83–43 / 10 0–12 5	43–26 / 12 5–15 0	26–16 / 15 0–17 5	16–11 / 17 5–20 0	11–8 / 20 0–22 5	8–6 / 22 5–25 0	6– / 25 0+
		5 4	4 5	3 6	2 8	2 1	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 1	1 0	0 9
11–12		5 6	4 7	3 8	2 9	2 2	1 8	1 5	1 3	1 1	1 1	1 0
		5 8	4 9	3 9	3 0	2 3	1 9	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 1	1 0
12–13		6 1	5 1	4 2	3 2	2 4	2 0	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 1	1 0
		6 3	5 3	4 3	3 3	2 5	2 0	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 2	1 0
13–14		6 7	5 5	4 5	3 5	2 6	2 1	1 8	1 5	1 4	1 2	1 1
14–15		7 0	5 8	4 8	3 6	2 7	2 2	1 9	1 6	1 4	1 3	1 2
		7 3	6 0	5 0	3 7	2 7	2 3	1 9	1 7	1 5	1 3	1 2
15–16		7 5	6 3	5 1	3 9	3 0	2 4	2 0	1 7	1 5	1 4	1 3
		7 8	6 5	5 3	4 1	3 1	2 5	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 4	1 3
16–17		8 1	6 7	5 5	4 3	3 2	2 6	2 1	1 8	1 6	1 5	1 4
		8 4	7 0	5 7	4 5	3 4	2 7	2 1	1 9	1 7	1 5	1 4
17–18		8 7	7 2	5 9	1 7	3 5	2 8	2 2	1 9	1 7	1 6	1 5
		9 0	7 5	6 1	4 9	3 6	2 9	2 2	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 5
18–19		9 3	7 8	6 3	5 1	3 8	3 0	2 3	2 0	1 8	1 6	1 6
19–20		9 6	9 1	6 6	5 3	3 9	3 1	2 4	2 1	1 9	1 7	1 6
20–21		9 9	9 4	6 9	5 5	4 0	3 2	2 5	2 1	2 0	1 8	1 7

TABLE 5 FEEDING GUIDE FOR YOUNG SALMONIDS IN HATCHERIES

LENGTH (CM)	1 9	2 0	2 2	2 3	2 4	2 5	2 7	2 8	2 9	3 1	3 2	3 4
NUMBER PER KG	13 200	10,100	8,800	7,700	6,600	5,500	4,400	3,960	3,520	3,030	2,640	2,200
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
2 10	2 8	2 7	2 5	2 4	2 2	2 1	2 0	1 9	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6
2 40	3 2	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 6	2 4	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 0	1 9	1 8
2 70	3 6	3 4	3 2	3 0	2 9	2 7	2 5	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 1	2 0
3 00	4 0	3 8	3 5	3 4	3 2	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 6	2 5	2 4	2 2
3 30	4 4	4 2	3 9	3 7	3 5	3 3	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 6	2 4
3 60	4 8	4 6	4 2	4 0	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 2	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 7
3 90	5 2	4 9	4 6	4 4	4 2	3 9	3 6	3 5	3 4	3 2	3 1	2 9
4 20	5 6	5 3	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 2	3 9	3 8	3 6	3 5	3 3	3 1
4 50	6 1	5 7	5 3	5 1	4 8	4 5	4 2	4 1	3 9	3 7	3 5	3 3
4 80	6 5	6 1	5 6	5 4	5 1	4 8	4 5	4 3	4 1	4 0	3 8	3 6
5 10	6 9	6 5	6 0	5 7	5 4	5 1	4 8	4 6	4 4	4 2	4 0	3 8
5 40	7 3	6 8	6 3	6 1	5 8	5 4	5 0	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 3	4 0
5 70	7 7	7 2	6 7	6 4	6 1	5 7	5 3	5 1	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 2
6 00	8 1	7 6	7 1	6 7	6 4	6 0	5 6	5 4	5 2	5 0	4 7	4 4
6 30	8 5	8 0	7 4	7 1	6 7	6 3	5 9	5 7	5 4	5 2	5 0	4 7
6 60	8 9	8 4	7 8	7 4	7 0	6 6	6 2	5 9	5 7	5 5	5 2	4 9
6 90	9 3	8 7	8 1	7 8	7 4	6 9	6 4	6 2	5 9	5 7	5 4	5 1

TABLE 5 (continued)

LENGTH (CM)	1 9	2 0	2 2	2 3	2 4	2 5	2 7	2 8	2 9	3 1	3 2	3 4
NUMBER PER KG	13,200	10,100	8 800	7,700	6 600	5,500	4,400	3,960	3,520	3,030	2,640	2,200
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
7 20	9 7	9 1	8 5	8 1	7 7	7 2	6 7	6 5	6 2	6 0	5 7	5 3
7 50	10 1	9 5	8 8	8 4	8 0	7 5	7 0	6 8	6 5	6 2	5 9	5 6
7 80	10 5	9 9	9 2	8 7	8 3	7 8	7 3	7 0	6 7	6 4	6 1	5 8
8 10	10 9	10 3	9 5	9 1	8 6	8 1	7 6	7 3	7 0	6 7	6 4	6 0
8 40	11 3	10 6	9 9	9 4	9 0	8 4	7 9	7 6	7 2	6 9	6 6	6 2
8 70	11 7	11 0	10 2	9 8	9 3	8 7	8 1	7 8	7 5	7 2	6 9	6 4
9 00	12 1	11 4	10 6	10 1	9 6	9 0	8 4	8 1	7 8	7 4	7 1	6 7
9 30	12.5	11 8	10 9	10 4	9 9	9 3	8 7	8 4	8 0	7 7	7 3	6 9
9 60	12 9	12 2	11 3	10 8	10 2	9 6	9 0	8 6	8 3	7 9	7 5	7 1
9 90	13 3	12 5	11 6	11 1	10 6	9 9	9 3	8 9	8 5	8 2	7 8	7 3
10 2	13 7	12 9	12 0	11 5	10 9	10 3	9 5	9 1	8 8	8 4	8 0	7 6
10 5	11 1	13 3	12 3	11 8	11 2	10 6	9 8	9 5	9 1	8 7	8 3	7 8
10 8	14 5	13 7	12 7	12 1	11 5	10 9	10 1	9 7	9 3	8 9	8 5	8 0
11 1	11 9	14 1	13 0	12.5	11 8	11 2	10 4	10 0	9 6	9 2	8 7	8 2
11 1	15 3	14 4	13 4	12 8	12 2	11 5	10 7	10 3	9 8	9 4	9 0	8 4
11 7	15 7	14 8	13 7	13 1	12 5	11 8	10 9	10 5	10 1	9 7	9 2	8 7
12 0	16 1	15 2	14 1	13 5	12 8	12 1	11 2	10 8	10 3	9 9	9 4	8 9

TABLE 5 *(continued)*

LENGTH (CM)	3 6	3 7	3 9	4 1	4 3	4 5	4 6	4 9	5 1	5 4	5 9	6 0	6 1
NUMBER PER KG	1,980	1,760	1 540	1,320	1,100	990	880	770	660	550	440	418	396
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY												
2 10	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 0	0 98	0 91	0 89	0 88
2 40	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 1	1 0	1 0	1 0
2 70	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 1	1 1
3 00	2 1	2 1	2 0	1 9	1 8	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 2
3 30	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 1	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 7	1 6	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4
3 60	2 6	2 5	2 4	2 3	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 8	1 7	1 6	1 5	1 5
3 90	2 8	2 7	2 6	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 1	2 0	1 9	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6
4 20	3 0	2 9	2 8	2 6	2 5	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 1	2 0	1 8	1 8	1 8
4 50	3 2	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 6	2 6	2 5	2 3	2 2	2 1	1 9	1 9	1 9
4 80	3 4	3 3	3 2	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 6	2 5	2 4	2 2	2 1	2 0	2 0
5 10	3 6	3 5	3 4	3 2	3 0	2 9	2 8	2 7	2 5	2 4	2 2	2 2	2 1
5 40	3 9	3 7	3 6	3 4	3 2	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 5	2 3	2 3	2 3
5 70	4 0	3 9	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 2	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 7	2 5	2 4	2 4
6 00	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 8	3 5	3 4	3 3	3 1	3 0	2 8	2 6	2 5	2 5
6 30	4 5	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 7	3 6	3 4	3 3	3 1	2 9	2 7	2 7	2 6
6 60	4 7	4 5	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 3	3 1	2 9	2 8	2 8
6 90	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 2	3 0	2 9	2 9

TABLE 5 *(continued)*

LENGTH (CM)	3 6	3 7	3 9	4 1	4 3	4 5	4 6	4 9	5 1	5 4	5 9	6 0	6 1
NUMBER PER KG	1 980	1 760	1 540	1,320	1,100	990	880	770	660	550	440	418	396
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY												
7 20	5 1	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 2	4 1	3 9	3 8	3 6	3 4	3 1	3 1	3 0
7.50	5 4	5 1	4 9	4 7	4 4	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 7	3 5	3 2	3 2	3 1
7 80	5 6	5 3	5 1	4 9	4 6	4 4	4 3	4 1	3 9	3 6	3 4	3 3	3 3
8 10	5 8	5 5	5 3	5 1	4 8	4 6	4 4	4 2	4 0	3 8	3 5	3 4	3 4
8 40	6 0	5 8	5 5	5 3	4 9	4 8	4 6	4 4	4 2	3 9	3 6	3 6	3 5
8 70	6 2	6 0	5 7	5 4	5 1	4 9	4 8	4 5	4 3	4 1	3 8	3 7	3 6
9 00	6 4	6 2	5 9	5 6	5 3	5 1	4 9	4 7	4 5	4 2	3 9	3 8	3 8
9 30	6 6	6 4	6 1	5 8	5 5	5 3	5 1	4 8	4 6	4 5	4 0	4 0	3 9
9 60	6 9	6 6	6 3	6 0	5 6	5 5	5 2	5 0	4 8	4 5	4 2	4 1	4 0
9 90	7 1	6 8	6 5	6 2	5 8	5 6	5 4	5 2	4 9	4 6	4 3	4 2	4 1
10 2	7 3	7 0	6 7	6 4	6 0	5 7	5 5	5 3	5 0	4 7	4 4	4 3	4 2
10 5	7 5	7 2	6 9	6 6	6 2	6 0	5 7	5 5	5 2	4 9	4 5	4 5	4 4
10 8	7 7	7 4	7 1	6 8	6 4	6 1	5 9	5 6	5 3	5 0	4 7	4 6	4 5
11 1	7 9	7 6	7 1	6 9	6 5	6 3	6 1	5 8	5 5	5 2	4 8	4 7	4 6
11 4	8 1	7 8	7 5	7 1	6 7	6 5	6 2	5 9	5 6	5 3	4 9	4 9	4 8
11 7	8 4	8 0	7 7	7 3	6 9	6 6	6 4	6 1	5 8	5 5	5 1	5 0	4 9
12 0	8 6	8 2	7 9	7 5	7 1	6 8	6 6	6 3	5 9	5 6	5 2	5 1	5 0

TABLE 5 (*continued*)

LENGTH (CM)	6 2	6 3	6 5	6 6	6 8	7 0	7 2	7 4	7 5	7 7	7 8	8 0
NUMBER PER KG	374	352	330	308	286	264	242	220	209	198	187	176
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
2 10	0 86	0 84	0 83	0 81	0 79	0 77	0 74	0 72	0 71	0 70	0 68	0 67
2 40	0 98	0 96	0 94	0 92	0 90	0 88	0 85	0 82	0 81	0 79	0 78	0 76
2 70	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 96	0 93	0 91	0 89	0 88	0 86
3 00	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 98	0 96
3 30	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1
3 60	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1
3 90	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2
4 20	1 7	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3
4 50	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4
4 80	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6	1 5
5 10	2 1	2 0	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 7	1 6
5 40	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7
5 70	2 3	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 9	1 8
6 00	2 5	2 4	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	2 0	1 9
6 30	2 6	2 5	2 5	2 4	2 4	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 1	2 0
6 60	2 7	2 7	2 6	2 5	2 5	2 4	2 3	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1
6 90	2 8	2 8	2 7	2 7	2 6	2 5	2 4	2 4	2 3	2 3	2 2	2 2

TABLE 5 (continued)

LENGTH (CM)	6.2	6.3	6.5	6.6	6.8	7.0	7.2	7.4	7.5	7.7	7.8	8.0
NUMBER PER KG	374	352	330	308	286	264	242	220	209	198	187	176
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
7.20	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.4	2.4	2.3	2.3
7.50	3.1	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.5	2.5	2.4	2.4
7.80	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.6	2.6	2.5	2.5
8.10	3.3	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.7	2.7	2.6	2.6
8.40	3.4	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.8	2.8	2.7	2.7
8.70	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	2.9	2.9	2.8	2.8
9.00	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.0	3.0	2.9	2.9
9.30	3.8	3.7	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.1	3.1	3.0	3.0
9.60	3.9	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.2	3.2	3.1	3.1
9.90	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.2	3.2
10.2	4.1	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.4	3.3	3.3	3.2
10.5	4.3	4.2	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5	3.5	3.4	3.3
10.8	4.4	4.3	4.3	4.2	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.6	3.5	3.4
11.1	4.5	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.2	4.1	3.9	3.8	3.8	3.7	3.6	3.5
11.4	4.7	4.6	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.2	4.0	3.9	3.9	3.8	3.7	3.6
11.7	4.8	4.7	4.6	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.1	4.0	4.0	3.9	3.8	3.7
12.0	4.9	4.8	4.7	4.6	4.5	4.4	4.3	4.1	4.1	4.0	3.9	3.8

TABLE 5 (continued)

LENGTH (CM)	8.1	8.3	8.5	8.8	9.0	9.3	9.7	10.0	10.5	11.0	11.7	12.6
NUMBER PER AC	165	151	143	132	121	110	99	88	77	66	55	44
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
2.10	0.66	0.64	0.63	0.61	0.59	0.57	0.55	0.53	0.51	0.48	0.45	0.42
2.40	0.75	0.73	0.71	0.70	0.68	0.65	0.63	0.61	0.58	0.55	0.52	0.48
2.70	0.84	0.82	0.80	0.78	0.76	0.71	0.71	0.68	0.65	0.62	0.58	0.54
3.00	0.94	0.91	0.89	0.87	0.84	0.82	0.79	0.76	0.73	0.69	0.65	0.60
3.30	1.0	1.0	0.98	0.96	0.93	0.90	0.87	0.84	0.80	0.76	0.71	0.66
3.60	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	0.98	0.95	0.91	0.87	0.83	0.78	0.72
3.90	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.98	0.94	0.90	0.84	0.78
4.20	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.97	0.91	0.84
4.50	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.97	0.90
4.80	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0	0.96
5.10	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0
5.40	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1
5.70	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.1
6.00	1.9	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.3	1.2
6.30	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3
6.60	2.1	2.0	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4	1.3
6.90	2.2	2.1	2.1	2.0	1.9	1.9	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.5	1.4

TABLE 5 *(continued)*

LENGTH (CM)	12 9	13 1	13 3	13 6	13 9	14 2	14 6	15 0	15 5	15 9	16 2	16 5
NUMBER PER KG	42	10	37	35	33	31	29	26	24	22	21	20
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
2 10	0 12	0 41	0 40	0 39	0 38	0 37	0 37	0 36	0 35	0 33	0 33	0 32
2 10	0 47	0 47	0 46	0 45	0 44	0 13	0 42	0 11	0 39	0 38	0 38	0 37
2 70	0 53	0 52	0 51	0 50	0 49	0 48	0 47	0 16	0 44	0 43	0 42	0 12
3 00	0 59	0 58	0 57	0 56	0 55	0 53	0 52	0 51	0 49	0 48	0 47	0 46
3 30	0 65	0 64	0 63	0 62	0 60	0 59	0 57	0 56	0 54	0 53	0 52	0 51
3 60	0 71	0 70	0 69	0 67	0 66	0 64	0 63	0 61	0 59	0 57	0 56	0 55
3 90	0 77	0 76	0 76	0 73	0 71	0 70	0 68	0 66	0 64	0 62	0 61	0 60
4 20	0 83	0 82	0 80	0 78	0 77	0 75	0 73	0 71	0 69	0 67	0 66	0 65
1 50	0 89	0 87	0 86	0 84	0 82	0 80	0 78	0 76	0 74	0 72	0 71	0 69
4 80	0 95	0 93	0 91	0 90	0 88	0 86	0 83	0 81	0 79	0 77	0 75	0 74
5 10	1 0	0 99	0 97	0 95	0 93	0 91	0 89	0 86	0 84	0 81	0 80	0 78
5 40	1 1	1 0	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 96	0 94	0 92	0 89	0 86	0 85	0 83
5 70	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 97	0 94	0 91	0 89	0 88
6 00	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 96	0 94	0 92
6 30	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0	0 99	0 97
6 60	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 0	1 0
6 90	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1	1 1

TABLE 5 *(continued)*

LENGTH (CM)	12 9	13 1	13 3	13 6	13 9	14 2	14 6	15 0	15 5	15 9	16 2	16 5
NUMBER PER KG	42	40	37	35	33	31	29	26	24	22	21	20
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
7 20	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 1	1 1	1 1
7.50	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2
7 80	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 2	1 2	1 2
8 10	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3	1 2
8 40	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 3	1 3	1 3
8 70	1 7	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4	1 3
9 00	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 4	1 4	1 4
9 30	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5	1 4
9 60	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 5	1 5	1 5
9 90	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6	1 5
10 2	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6	1 6
10 5	2 1	2 0	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 6	1 6
10 8	2 1	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7	1 7
11 1	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 7	1 7
11 4	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8	1 8
11 7	2 3	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8	1 8
12 0	2 4	2 3	2 3	2 2	2 2	2 1	2 1	2 0	2 0	1 9	1 9	1 8

TABLE 5 (continued)

LENGTH (CM)	16.8	17.2	17.5	17.5	18.1	18.9	19.4	20.1	20.8	21.6	22.6	23.8
NUMBER PER KG	19	18	17	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
2.10	0.32	0.31	0.30	0.30	0.29	0.28	0.28	0.27	0.26	0.25	0.24	0.22
2.40	0.36	0.35	0.35	0.34	0.33	0.32	0.31	0.30	0.29	0.28	0.27	0.26
2.70	0.41	0.40	0.39	0.38	0.37	0.36	0.35	0.34	0.33	0.32	0.30	0.29
3.00	0.45	0.44	0.43	0.42	0.41	0.40	0.39	0.38	0.37	0.35	0.34	0.32
3.30	0.50	0.49	0.48	0.47	0.46	0.44	0.43	0.42	0.40	0.39	0.37	0.35
3.60	0.54	0.53	0.52	0.51	0.50	0.48	0.47	0.46	0.44	0.42	0.40	0.38
3.90	0.59	0.58	0.57	0.55	0.54	0.52	0.51	0.49	0.48	0.46	0.44	0.42
4.20	0.63	0.62	0.61	0.59	0.58	0.56	0.55	0.53	0.51	0.49	0.47	0.45
4.50	0.68	0.67	0.65	0.64	0.62	0.60	0.59	0.57	0.55	0.53	0.51	0.48
4.80	0.73	0.71	0.70	0.68	0.66	0.65	0.63	0.61	0.59	0.56	0.54	0.51
5.10	0.77	0.75	0.74	0.72	0.70	0.69	0.67	0.65	0.62	0.60	0.57	0.54
5.40	0.82	0.80	0.78	0.76	0.75	0.73	0.71	0.68	0.66	0.63	0.61	0.58
5.70	0.86	0.84	0.83	0.81	0.79	0.77	0.75	0.72	0.70	0.67	0.64	0.61
6.00	0.91	0.89	0.87	0.85	0.83	0.81	0.78	0.76	0.73	0.70	0.67	0.64
6.30	0.95	0.93	0.91	0.89	0.87	0.85	0.82	0.80	0.77	0.74	0.71	0.67
6.60	1.0	0.98	0.96	0.93	0.91	0.89	0.86	0.84	0.81	0.78	0.74	0.70
6.90	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.98	0.95	0.93	0.90	0.87	0.84	0.81	0.77	0.74

TABLE 5 (continued)

LENGTH (CM)	16.8	17.2	17.5	17.5	18.4	18.9	19.4	20.1	20.8	21.6	22.6	23.8
NUMBER PER KG*	19	18	17	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7
HATCHERY CONSTANT	PERCENTAGE OF BODY WEIGHT TO FEED DAILY											
7.20	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	0.99	0.97	0.94	0.91	0.88	0.85	0.81	0.77
7.50	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	0.98	0.95	0.92	0.88	0.84	0.80
7.80	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	1.0	0.99	0.95	0.92	0.88	0.83
8.10	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.1	0.99	0.95	0.91	0.86
8.40	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.99	0.94	0.90
8.70	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.98	0.93
9.00	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.1	1.0	0.96
9.30	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.0	1.0	0.99
9.60	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1	1.0
9.90	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1
10.2	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1	1.1
10.5	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2	1.1
10.8	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2	1.2
11.1	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.2	1.2
11.4	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.3	1.2
11.7	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.4	1.3	1.2
12.0	1.8	1.8	1.7	1.7	1.7	1.6	1.6	1.5	1.5	1.4	1.3	1.3

D
$$\frac{TU/\text{month}}{\text{length increase/month}} = TU/\text{in}$$

Repeat this procedure for a number of months to obtain an average TU per inch of growth This figure should remain constant for any particular species or strain of trout, within the temperature range of 38 6° to 60°F, as long as the diet is not changed or the fish do not become stressed

E.
$$\text{Projected daily length increase} = \frac{\text{expected } TU/\text{month}}{TU/\text{in of growth}} \div 30 \text{ days}$$

F Follow I B above

GROWTH

Depending largely on diet and temperature, marketable size trout (20 to 35 cm in the United States) can be produced in 7 to 14 months of intensive culture, starting with the egg A few culturists specialize in rearing 2 5 to 16 5 cm fingerlings for sale to other trout farmers Growth is fastest during the fingerling period, thus such culturists may produce salable fish within 1 to 8 months

DISEASES

Due to the relatively long history of salmonid culture, a comparatively large amount is known about the diseases of these fishes However, there has been too much emphasis on cure and not enough on prevention Further, money has literally been thrown down the drain by the needless application of medication The following hygienic measures should be applied by every culturist

1 Limiting shipping of live trout at all stages Not only is there the possibility of infecting one s own stock with someone else's disease or contaminating a disease resistant strain, but diseases may be introduced to new parts of the world A number of diseases which create problems for American trout culturists are virtually unknown in Europe and vice versa

2 If trout are purchased from another culturist, demand a patholog ical inspection of the stock.

3 Quarantine all diseased fish in ponds which are not connected with enclosures containing healthy fish

4. Use disinfectants on ponds, nets, and all equipment exposed to disease.

There is still much to be learned about the diseases of salmonids and, while various government agencies are doing their share, it would behoove the large commercial enterprises to involve themselves in pathology research. No one is better equipped to understand the problems of trout culture than the culturist himself.

HARVEST AND PROCESSING

As mentioned, there is a considerable market for trout eggs and some opportunity for sale of fingerlings, but the primary product of American trout culture is edible size trout. Some of these are sold for stocking in fish-out ponds where the public is allowed to angle for them for a fee, but most are processed and marketed iced or frozen. Canadian trout farmers are also considering offering smoked trout.

Small farmers may sell their crop to a central processor, but the large enterprises usually do their own processing. The most highly mechanized operation of this sort is Erkins. After harvest by seining or pond draining the trout are transported to the processing plant in specially constructed tank trucks with an oxygen circulating system. (Rangen, Inc., has pioneered a double floored tank truck. Since during transport the trout congregate near the bottom, this has doubled the carrying capacity.) Upon entering the plant, the trout are killed by electrocution to minimize lactic acid, graded—by machine—for the last time, and passed on to an Erkins innovation called an Eviscerator, which can automatically dress up to 56 trout/min, leaving heads and tails intact. After a careful inspection, the fish are prechilled and given a final washing in circulating refrigerated water, boned, packaged in individual polyethylene bags, and frozen at −22°C. No trout spends more than 30 min from pond to freezing room, thus ensuring a high quality product.

PROSPECTUS

The Snake River Trout Company and other American producers processed 5.0 million kg of trout in 1969. The majority of this came from the northern and western states, but the greatest growth of the industry is currently occurring in the southern states where, although the climate is too warm to support salmonids in streams, there are numerous large cold isothermal springs suitable for trout culture.

TABLE 6. STOCKING AND FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR RAINBOW, BROWN, AND BROOK TROUT IN JAPAN

LENGTH OF FRY (CM)	SIZE OF POND (M^2)	DEPTH OF POND (M)	NUMBER OF TROUT	FEED
Less than 2.5 (sac fry)	1.4	0.3	—	None
2.5– 3.0	1.4	0.3	—	Fresh animal spleen and liver crushed into a juice, earthworms and *Gammarus* may also be fed
3 – 5	1.4	0.3	—	Cattle liver—50%, meat or fish powder—20%, chopped fish—10%, live chrysalids—20%; all ingredients chopped and kneaded into a soft mass
5 – 7	42	0.4	10,000	Chopped fish—40%, live chrysalids—40%, cattle liver—20%; scattered on surface
7 – 9	80	0.65	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—20%, various animal foods—80%
9 –15	210	1.0	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—20%, various animal foods—80%
15 –20	400	1.3	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
20 –25	400	1.3	400	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
25 –30	400	1.3	200	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
30 –40	400	1.3	100	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%

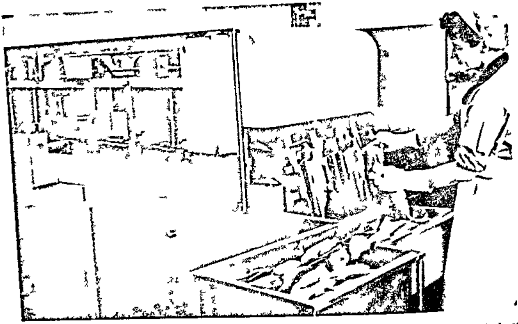


PLATE 11 Trout eviscerator developed at Snake River Trout Co (Courtesy Robert A Erkins)

Two factors impede further growth of commercial trout culture in the United States One is the lack of aggressive and imaginative marketing which has long characterized the American fishery and fish culture industries The other is competition from other countries which are able to supply trout to the American market cheaper than domestic producers Most notable in this respect are Denmark and Japan the only two countries which produce more trout than the United States (10 0 million kg and 5 1 million kg in 1966 and 1967 respectively)

COMMERCIAL TROUT CULTURE IN FRESHWATER IN JAPAN

Culture of rainbow, brown and brook trout in Japan in most respects does not differ essentially from that practiced in the United States However, fry are kept in shallow running water ponds with a layer of pebbles on the bottom All life stages receive a diet different from that fed elsewhere (Table 6)

Diets fed to larger trout vary, but the optimum food is considered to contain 60% protein 25% fat, 10% carbohydrate 5% minerals and a variety of vitamins The diet of trout of all ages is supplemented by live insects lured into the ponds at night by lamps

TABLE 6 STOCKING AND FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR RAINBOW, BROWN, AND BROOK TROUT IN JAPAN

LENGTH OF FRY (CM)	SIZE OF POND (M^2)	DEPTH OF POND (M)	NUMBER OF TROUT	FEED
Less than 2.5 (sac fry)	1.4	0.3	—	None
2.5–3.0	1.4	0.3	—	Fresh animal spleen and liver crushed into a juice, earthworms and *Gammarus* may also be fed
3–5	1.4	0.3	—	Cattle liver—50%, meat or fish powder—20%, chopped fish—10%, live chrysalids—20%, all ingredients chopped and kneaded into a soft mass
5–7	42	0.4	10,000	Chopped fish—40%, live chrysalids—40%, cattle liver—20%, scattered on surface
7–9	80	0.65	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—20%, various animal foods—80%
9–15	210	1.0	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—20%, various animal foods—80%
15–20	400	1.3	10,000	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
20–25	400	1.3	400	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
25–30	400	1.3	200	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%
30–40	400	1.3	100	Flour, rice bran, and greens—25%, various animal foods—75%

COMMERCIAL TROUT CULTURE IN DENMARK

ADVANTAGES ENJOYED BY DANISH CULTURISTS

Denmark is not favored with an abundance of isothermal springs, so the efficiency of Danish trout culture can never approach that of the best American farms, but Danish culturists do enjoy a number of advantages.

1. They are so far able to operate with earthen ponds and not suffer severe disease problems. Thus construction costs are far less than in the United States. Danish culturists also assert that earthen ponds produce tastier trout.
2. The nearby Baltic Sea and North Sea fisheries provide an excellent source of cheap food in the form of trash fish.
3. The proximity of trout farms, seaports and research stations in a small country with excellent roads minimizes transportation expenses.
4. Other industries and the government have taken an active interest in trout culture.

WATER SUPPLY

Due to the scarcity of spring water, Danish trout culturists are forced to rely upon surface water. Unpolluted streams are abundant only in one area of the country, Jutland, and virtually all of the 600 or so Danish trout farms are located there. The produce of these farms includes live and iced trout for sale in Europe, frozen fish for overseas export, and canned trout. Over 90% of the production of edible size trout is exported. Not all the farms include hatchery facilities and some of the smaller operations specialize in producing eyed eggs, fry, and fingerlings. The majority of the eyed eggs exported are brown trout, but 85 to 90% of the edible size fish produced are rainbow trout.

HATCHERY TECHNIQUES AND FRY REARING

Hatchery techniques are essentially the same as those practiced in the United States. Unlike fingerlings and adults, fry are kept in concrete, plastic, or fiberglass tanks up to the size of 5 cm. If kept in earthen ponds, fry are susceptible to "whirling disease," caused by the sporozoan *Lentospora cerebralis*. Young trout are not kept in this sort of container past the fry stage because it is believed to render them more susceptible to fin rot.

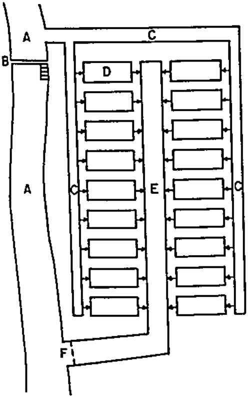


FIG 1 Layout of a Danish trout farm (After Bregnbølle 1966)

FARM LAYOUT AND POND CONSTRUCTION

A typical Danish trout farm might be constructed as shown in Fig 1 A stream is dammed (the culturist is legally responsible for any damage to the stream bank or to wild fish stocks) and diverted into a series of ponds (an average farm would consist of 35 to 60 ponds rather than the 18 shown here), each 30 m long × 10 to 12 m wide, connected to a central outlet channel Production area is increased by stocking trout in the outlet channel, which is screened off from the stream The danger of disease is lessened by stocking the ponds at densities considerably lower than those used in the United States

FEEDING

Trout in ponds are fed mainly on minced fish, usually herring and sand eels If herring are used for a prolonged period of time, the culturist must occasionally add a little vitamin B_1 (thiamine hydrochloride) to counteract the thiaminase in herring, which breaks down vitamin B_1 Fry in tanks are fed a dry food which although more expensive than fresh

fish, is made in Denmark using Danish fish meal and is still relatively cheap Increasing use is being made of pellets for feeding fingerlings and adults as well The trout are fed as much as they will eat as long as the water temperature remains below 20°C

GROWTH

Conversion ratios are high—5 1 to 7 1—and growth is slow by American standards Fry hatched in March or April will reach 8 to 15 cm by November, but then growth practically ceases for the winter The amount of time required to reach marketable size varies greatly as the 15 or more countries to which Denmark exports differ greatly in the size of trout preferred, but virtually no trout younger than 14 months are marketed and some must be retained for 2 years before being sold

TROUT FARMERS' ASSOCIATION

Danish trout farmers maintain direct ties with trout research through a research station established by an association of trout farmers Initially the farmers sustained all the costs, but now the government pays the wages of the scientific staff Opinions differ as to the value of the association, to which most of the nation's trout culturists belong One of its principal functions is to diagnose and treat diseases, and many farmers undoubtedly find it comforting to have a trained biologist at their beck and call to attend to sick fish However, some observers have suggested that the time spent running back and forth to fish farms might better be spent in research aimed at increasing production

MARKETING AND PROSPECTUS

One thing the association does not do is act as a sales organization Another group has been formed for this purpose but only 35% of the farmers belong The rest market their fish through various export firms Better marketing organization might benefit the Danish trout culture industry, but only if production is increased Increased production will come only as a result of improved techniques or expansion into brackish and salt water, since virtually all the suitable freshwater is being used

TROUT CULTURE IN BRACKISH AND SALT WATER

BRACKISH AND SALTWATER TROUT FARMS IN DENMARK

Both the Japanese and the Danes have limited supplies of freshwater available for trout farming, so it is not surprising that these two countries

have pioneered culture of these extremely euryhaline fishes in brackish and salt waters Already there are eight productive Danish trout farms located on a fjord where salinities reach 10‰ or more, as well as one which uses sea water of about 30‰ salinity The water supply for these farms is driven through the ponds by a turbine or propellor The low sea temperatures in winter raise the danger of mortality, so that fresh water must be used

SALTWATER TROUT CULTURE IN JAPAN

The warmer waters of Japan have permitted one farm, located on Okachi Bay, Miyagi Prefecture, to take the process one step further One year old rainbow trout about 23 cm long are acclimated to sea water, stocked in huge floating net cages anchored about 150 m from shore, and fed on pellets containing fish meal, starch, and vitamins At the end of about 9 months they have reached a length of 40 cm and are marketed These trout of course derive a great deal of nourishment from the sea, so that conversion ratios are actually less than 1 1 Net cages are now also being employed to grow brown trout and rainbow trout off Tasmania and Norway, Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout off Scotland, and have seen successful experimental use in freshwater with brook trout in Quebec

LOW INTENSITY TROUT CULTURE

ESTUARINE CULTURE IN DENMARK

Most brackish and saltwater trout culture schemes are less intensive than those just described One of the most successful is that carried out by the Danish Ministry of Fisheries which, in 1963, with the financial support of the Danish Sport Fishermen s Association, began to release pre adapted two year-old brown trout into fjords It was hoped that the trout would remain in the fjords for a year or so, fattening themselves for market with no further input of money or labor and be catchable in sufficient quantities to pay for the operation

The initial releases took place in eight fjords of varying configurations In three which were relatively closed and sheltered the trout for the most part remained within 12 km of the release site, grew very rapidly, and were recaptured a year later by commercial fishermen in large enough numbers to yield better than 100% profit over the cost of rearing and stocking Ecological research continues with the aim of determining what sort of fjord is most conducive to growing brown trout, but it has already been estimated that 25% of the 220 000 ha of Danish estuarine waters are suitable for this sort of culture

Experiments are also being conducted to determine the feasibility of stocking one year-old fish. Mortality would surely be higher, but rearing costs would be reduced. Growth would also be enhanced, since two year-old fish reach sexual maturity during their year in the sea. Thus much energy that might have gone into growth is diverted to maturation. By stocking one year-olds and harvesting just before the onset of maturation this problem could be circumvented.

SALTWATER CULTURE IN JAPAN

Japanese biologists have tested a more sophisticated version of the Danish technique which might be applicable in a wider variety of waters. Rainbow trout, while being acclimated to sea water, were trained to associate the sound of a buzzer with feeding at certain hours. When the trout were acclimated to full strength sea water they were placed in the sea in a net cage off Takamatsu on the island of Shikoku. Training was continued using an automatic feeding device. When they were thoroughly trained, the net cage was removed and the trout set free to roam the sea at will. However, they continued to return daily to be fed. Reinforcement of the learned behavior was continued until the trout were harvested.

Using this technique it was possible to harvest 1.2 kg fish after a year and 2.0 to 2.5 kg fish after 2 years. The fish used in the experiments were a special fast growing strain developed at the University of Washington. (Details on selective breeding of trout follow.) Nevertheless, it is truly remarkable to achieve such growth using inexpensive methods. The process might be intensified by training different species, strains, or age groups of fish to feed at different times of day and to respond to different wavelengths of sound.

Experiments are also being conducted to determine the feasibility of stocking one year-old fish Mortality would surely be higher, but rearing costs would be reduced Growth would also be enhanced, since two-year-old fish reach sexual maturity during their year in the sea Thus much energy that might have gone into growth is diverted to maturation By stocking one year-olds and harvesting just before the onset of maturation this problem could be circumvented

SALTWATER CULTURE IN JAPAN

Japanese biologists have tested a more sophisticated version of the Danish technique which might be applicable in a wider variety of waters Rainbow trout, while being acclimated to sea water, were trained to associate the sound of a buzzer with feeding at certain hours When the trout were acclimated to full strength sea water they were placed in the sea in a net cage off Takamatsu on the island of Shikoku Training was continued, using an automatic feeding device When they were thoroughly trained the net cage was removed and the trout set free to roam the sea at will However, they continued to return daily to be fed Reinforcement of the learned behavior was continued until the trout were harvested

Using this technique it was possible to harvest 1 2 kg fish after a year and 2 0 to 2 5 kg fish after 2 years The fish used in the experiments were a special fast-growing strain developed at the University of Washington (Details on selective breeding of trout follow) Nevertheless, it is truly remarkable to achieve such growth using inexpensive methods The process might be intensified by training different species strains, or age groups of fish to feed at different times of day and to respond to different wavelengths of sound

FRESHWATER CULTURE IN CANADA

Low intensity methods may also be effective in freshwater For example, in Manitoba and Saskatchewan wheat farmers, who have long unsuccessfully tried to drain the many small, shallow, unproductive lakes, or potholes, which dot that part of Canada, now stock them with rainbow trout Fry purchased from hatcheries and stocked in the spring exhibit survival rates of up to 69% and average about 28 cm in length when harvested in the fall Supplementary feeding is not necessary, since the trout nourish themselves on the abundant crustacean *Gammarus lacustris* Predation is no problem since the lakes freeze solid in winter, and thus support no permanent fish populations The dollar return of this extremely simple form of fish culture is about two and one half times as

much per hectare as the return to wheat farming. Total trout production in the region is expected to eventually increase to 4.5 million fish/year.

CULTURE OF ANADROMOUS SALMONIDS

TO SUPPLEMENT FISHERIES

As mentioned, all salmonids are highly euryhaline, and most, if not all species exhibit anadromous traits wherever they have access to the sea. By far the most important anadromous salmonids from the point of view of commercial fisheries or fish culture are the Pacific salmons (genus *Oncorhynchus*), which are treated in Chapter 21, but some anadromous species of *Salmo, Salvelinus,* and *Thymallus* are also important as human food. By far the most studied of these, due primarily to their great popularity with sport fishermen, are the rainbow trout, the anadromous form of which is often referred to as "steelhead," and the Atlantic salmon. Both are extensively propagated in hatcheries and released to augment sport fisheries. There is at present no commercial fishery for steelhead, but Atlantic salmon are fished commercially in Europe and are propagated for that purpose in several countries. The greatest success in culture of this most difficult of all salmonid species has been achieved in Iceland and Sweden. In Iceland 7.6% of stocked smolts (young salmon about to migrate to sea) return to the fishery, averaging about 7.6 kg in weight. Until recently the Swedish fishery was threatened by the damming of rivers to produce hydroelectric power. Now the fishery is stabilized and at least 20% of the catch is derived from hatchery raised smolts. Salmon hatched in Swedish hatcheries also contribute to Danish and Finnish fisheries.

A large part of the success of the Swedish hatchery system is attributed to the development by Aktiebolaget Ewos, a Swedish subsidiary of Astra Pharmaceutical Products, Inc., of a special dry food (Table 7) acceptable to Atlantic salmon, which usually refuse conventional trout pellets. This diet, which incorporates fish protein concentrate (FPC), has also been found suitable by the Maine Department of Inland Fisheries and Game for rearing the landlocked strain of Atlantic salmon, as well as lake trout, which present similar feeding problems.

Recently Poland has imported eyed Atlantic salmon eggs from Canada for restocking rivers where the species has been exterminated. A trout hatchery is also being built on the Vistula River, where a commercially important run of anadromous brown trout is threatened by dams and pollution.

In Japan the Dolly Varden (*Salvelinus malma*) a highly anadromous

TABLE 7 COMPOSITION OF A DIET FOR ATLANTIC SALMON DEVELOPED BY AKTIEBOLAGET EWOS OF SWEDEN, AND SIZE OF PARTICLES TO BE FED TO FISH OF DIFFERENT SIZES

	FEED ANALYSES		FEED GRADES			
	STARTER FEED (TYPE F-48) (%)	GROWER FEED (%)	GRADE AND SIZE	PARTICLE SIZE (CM)	NUMBER OF FISH PER KG	FISH LENGTH (CM)
Crude protein	58	47.0	Starter			
Fat	8	4.9	1	0.025–0.075	4,991–2,497	2.5–3.3
Ash	15	10.4	2	0.075–0.15	2,497–1,250	3.3–4.1
Water	7	6.5				
Fiber	1	1.5				
			Grower			
Carbohydrate	11	29.7	2	0.075–0.15	1,250–332	4.1–7.1
Vitamins[a]	—	—	3	0.15–0.23	332–66	7.1–10.9
Minerals[b]	—	—	4	0.23–0.41	66–23	10.9–15.0

[a] Vitamin A, vitamin D, vitamin E, vitamin K (menadion), vitamin B_1 (aneurine), vitamin B_2 (riboflavin), vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine), vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin), niacin, calcium pentothenate, vitamin H (biotin), folic acid, inositol, p-Aminobenzoic acid, choline, vitamin C (ascorbic acid)

[b] The product contains all necessary minerals and trace elements.

species usually scorned by sport fishermen, is raised in hatcheries and stocked in rivers to support a commercial fishery.

The grayling (*Thymallus thymallus*) is generally restricted to wilderness waters, but in Sweden, where grayling spawning rivers have been obstructed by power dams, they are bred in hatcheries and stocked.

MORE INTENSIVE CULTURE OF STEELHEADS AND ATLANTIC SALMON

A refinement of the hatchery method of supplementing fisheries for anadromous salmonids has been suggested by Ichthyological Research Corporation of Palo Alto, California. They propose to rear steelhead in a hatchery situated at the head of a short artificial stream, preadapt 15- to 20 cm fingerlings to sea water, and release them in the stream. These fish would theoretically enter the sea, to spend the next 2 to 5 years concentrating nutrients. With sexual maturity they would return to the hatchery where they could be harvested immediately with no competition from sport fishermen and none of the deterioration usually associated with long stays in fresh water. By spawning and releasing fish year-round it might be possible to achieve year-round harvests as well. Sport fishery research in Washington has shown that steelhead runs can be artificially established in the manner proposed with 7 to 14% returns.

More intensive culture of a normally anadromous salmonid species is being explored at the University of Rhode Island, where biologists have succeeded in rearing Atlantic salmon, spawned in freshwater, from an average weight of 0.04 to 0.30 kg in 6 months, using plastic-lined pools containing sea water. Improvement is expected as techniques are perfected.

CULTURE OF FRESHWATER SALMONIDS TO SUPPLEMENT COMMERCIAL FISHERIES

Propagation of salmonids to bolster commercial fisheries is not limited to anadromous species. Lake trout have long been stocked for this purpose in the North American Great Lakes. The program was limited and of doubtful value until the parasitic sea lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*) virtually eradicated the lake trout in the upper Great Lakes, necessitating a crash lake trout culture-lamprey control program. This joint effort by the United States and Canadian governments succeeded in reestablishing the fisheries to some extent. If lake trout populations eventually return to anything approaching their former magnitude, it is doubtful whether

the present large-scale hatchery program (more than 6 million eggs are produced in Michigan alone) will continue to be justifiable.

Techniques for hatchery propagation of lake trout are essentially the same as those described earlier in this chapter for other salmonids. Until recently, the major source of spawners was fish taken in nets set near the spawning grounds, but the distinct threat that the sea lamprey would completely eliminate the lake trout necessitated the development of hatchery brood stocks.

The incubation period of lake trout eggs is about 2 months at 8.5°C, 4 months at 4°C, and over 5 months at 2°C. The hatching rate of artificially fertilized eggs averages about 65%.

Newly hatched lake trout fry develop slowly and do not absorb the yolk sac until they are about a month old. Their first food should be finely ground meat, such as beef liver or heart. Later, they may be gradually shifted to a conventional hatchery trout diet.

In the Great Lakes, lake trout usually inhabit depths of 30 to 100 m, but, fortunately, lake trout culturists have not found it necessary to simulate this aspect of the natural habitat. Hatchery ponds should, however, be covered or otherwise shaded, since exposure to strong sunlight may cause cataracts.

Lake trout have been stocked at all ages from the alevin stage to two years. Survival of course increases with age. Experiments in Lake Superior indicate that survival is markedly improved by rearing through the first winter, thus most lake trout are now planted in the spring of their second year, at a length of 10 to 13 cm. Rearing to maturity requires 4½ to 6½ years or more.

SELECTIVE BREEDING AND HYBRIDIZATION

Of the many experimental techniques being applied in efforts to increase trout production probably none has greater potential than selective breeding. Sport fish hatcheries have long practiced selective breeding at least in a rudimentary manner, for high fecundity, large egg size, high hatching percentage, rapid growth, early maturity, high temperature tolerance, and disease resistance. To facilitate hatchery operations, selection has also been carried out for time of spawning, so that there now exist stocks of rainbow trout which, without manipulation, will spawn in any month of the year. In recent years strains have also been developed which have a pronounced tendency to leap out of the water when hooked. These "jumpers" are preferred by sport fishermen and are thus sought by fish-out pond operators, as are albino or golden

rainbow trout and other "novelty" strains Cultured trout are far enough removed from wild genotypes that trout, particularly rainbow trout, can take their place alongside the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) and a few species of ornamental fish as our only truly domesticated aquatic livestock

Selection is a never ending process, but it does not take long to achieve some worthwhile results For example, the California Department of Fish and Game has been able to

1 Increase the number of rainbow trout spawning at 2 years of age from 53% to 98% in three generations
2 More than double the average weight of yearlings in five generations
3 Increase egg production by 2 year old females fourfold in six generations

Less attention has been paid to selective breeding for characteristics desirable in commercial culture, although most of the characteristics sought by sport fishery culturists would be advantageous to any trout grower In recent years, a number of workers have sought to improve the commercial breed of rainbow trout The most famous result of such work is certainly the 'supertrout' developed by one of the pioneers in selective breeding of salmonids, Lauren R Donaldson of the College of Fisheries, University of Washington After 38 years of selection for 10 characteristics, Donaldson's strain exhibits superior hatching qualities, grows to a length of 67 cm in 3 years and is so tolerant of high temperatures and certain pollutants that it can be grown in water one would not normally consider fit for the species

Danish biologists have also developed fast growing strains of rainbow trout, some of which surpass Donaldson's fish with respect to egg size These and other selected strains are now available to culturists throughout the world It should be emphasized, however, that each of these strains is specifically adapted to certain conditions and that no two environments offer the same conditions It should therefore be the responsibility of each individual culturist not only to start with the best stock obtainable, but to practice selection so as to improve his own strain Thus far, only a few of the better farmers have undertaken this task

It is possible that some of the good results claimed for selective breeding should be attributed to other factors For example, the role of endocrines in determining egg size is not known But this sort of uncertainty does not negate the importance of selection as an integral part of any efficient farming operation

Hybridization does not appear to hold as much promise as selection for commercial trout culture Sport fishery culturists have produced virtually

PLATE 12 Wild and mass selected, hatchery fed rainbow trout at the University of Washington School of Fisheries, Seattle Fish are two years old, and the large one is the result of over 30 years of selective breeding (Reproduced with permission of *Science*)

every possible hybrid of rainbow, brown, brook, cutthroat, and lake trout, and Atlantic salmon, but only one or two have proved useful. The only existing hybrid of interest as a food fish is an intraspecific rainbow trout cross developed by Donaldson. By crossing anadromous and land-locked strains, he was able to produce a fish which consistently returns to spawn at two years of age, whereas only a minority of wild steelhead return that early. This hybrid has been used to establish runs in several coastal streams which did not previously support steelhead

There are other wild strains of trout which should be investigated by culturists For instance, the deep water Kamloops strain of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri kamloops*) native to certain lakes in British Columbia consistently outgrows all other strains Before the decimation of the lake trout in the Great Lakes by the sea lamprey there was a subpopulation of a subspecies known as the siscowet (*Salvelinus namaycush siscowet*) in Lake Superior. These fish had a much higher fat or oil content than ordinary lake trout. In fact, large specimens contained up to nearly 70% oil, perhaps the highest oil content of any fish in the world. There may also be genetic factors involved in the extremely large size attained by steelhead in a few streams such as British Coumbia's Kispiox River and Alaska's Russian River, or by the Lahontan strain of cutthroat trout (*Salmo clarki henshawi*) found only in two Nevada lakes. Hybridization of these strains with domestic stocks might produce beneficial results

TROUT CULTURE IN THERMAL EFFLUENT, RECIRCULATING WATER SYSTEMS, AND TANKS

Although trout are generally considered cold water fish, the development of temperature resistant strains raises the possibility that they might be grown in thermal effluent, particularly in areas where normal winter water temperatures greatly retard growth Heated water might well be employed in conjunction with a recirculating system Such a system, using small tanks supplied with 14°C water, is presently being successfully used to rear trout fry and fingerlings (species unknown) in Austria, but commercial applications to date have been infrequent

One such operation exists in Canada, where Sea Pool Fisheries, located in Clam Bay, near Lake Charlotte, Nova Scotia, plan to annually market 1 8 million kg of rainbow trout, Atlantic salmon, brook trout, chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tschawytscha*), and possibly Arctic char (*Salvelinus alpinus*) reared in a semiclosed system in which over 90% of the water is recycled The basic techniques of filtration, temperature regulation, and so on, are like those used in Columbia River salmon hatcheries (see pp 487–488), but the facilities are adapted for growth of marketable size fish (up to 7 kg in the case of chinook salmon) Eggs and young fish are maintained in conventional hatchery facilities, while larger fish inhabit a series of large fiberglass pools clustered in groups of three to ten around single filter pools

A principal feature of Sea Pool Fisheries is the gradual increase in salinity of the water with the age of the fish By 8 months, at which age rainbow and brook trout have reached marketable size (about 0 2 kg), they are maintained in full strength sea water In addition to the enhancement of growth and reduction of disease problems associated with high salinity, the sea water brings in with it many organisms which serve as dietary supplements for the trout

Another interesting development occurred in 1969, when the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries began an aquaculture training program for American Indians of the Lummi Reservation near Bellingham, Washington Part of the training involves raising of trout and Pacific salmon to the smolt stage in a recirculating system using 90 to 95% recycled water Water contaminated by raw sewage passes through swimming pool filters and a series of ultraviolet lights at 4 to 10 liters/min then through a chiller at 400 to 500 liters/min so that a constant temperature of 10°C is maintained Another filter is used to treat water that has circulated through the hatchery once or more The concentration of ammonia nitrogen is monitored daily to determine the amount of new water that must be fed into the system

PLATE 12 Wild and mass selected, hatchery fed rainbow trout at the University of Washington School of Fisheries, Seattle Fish are two years old, and the large one is the result of over 30 years of selective breeding (Reproduced with permission of *Science*)

every possible hybrid of rainbow, brown, brook, cutthroat, and lake trout, and Atlantic salmon, but only one or two have proved useful. The only existing hybrid of interest as a food fish is an intraspecific rainbow trout cross developed by Donaldson By crossing anadromous and land-locked strains, he was able to produce a fish which consistently returns to spawn at two years of age, whereas only a minority of wild steelhead return that early This hybrid has been used to establish runs in several coastal streams which did not previously support steelhead.

There are other wild strains of trout which should be investigated by culturists For instance, the deep water Kamloops strain of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri kamloops*) native to certain lakes in British Columbia consistently outgrows all other strains Before the decimation of the lake trout in the Great Lakes by the sea lamprey there was a subpopulation of a subspecies known as the siscowet (*Salvelinus namaycush siscowet*) in Lake Superior. These fish had a much higher fat or oil content than ordinary lake trout In fact, large specimens contained up to nearly 70% oil, perhaps the highest oil content of any fish in the world. There may also be genetic factors involved in the extremely large size attained by steelhead in a few streams such as British Coumbia's Kispiox River and Alaska's Russian River, or by the Lahontan strain of cutthroat trout (*Salmo clarki henshawi*) found only in two Nevada lakes. Hybridization of these strains with domestic stocks might produce beneficial results.

TROUT CULTURE IN THERMAL EFFLUENT, RECIRCULATING WATER SYSTEMS, AND TANKS

Although trout are generally considered cold water fish, the development of temperature resistant strains raises the possibility that they might be grown in thermal effluent, particularly in areas where normal winter water temperatures greatly retard growth. Heated water might well be employed in conjunction with a recirculating system. Such a system, using small tanks supplied with 14°C water, is presently being successfully used to rear trout fry and fingerlings (species unknown) in Austria, but commercial applications to date have been infrequent.

One such operation exists in Canada, where Sea Pool Fisheries, located in Clam Bay, near Lake Charlotte, Nova Scotia, plan to annually market 1.8 million kg of rainbow trout, Atlantic salmon, brook trout, chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tschawytscha*), and possibly Arctic char (*Salvelinus alpinus*) reared in a semiclosed system in which over 90% of the water is recycled. The basic techniques of filtration, temperature regulation, and so on, are like those used in Columbia River salmon hatcheries (see pp. 487–488), but the facilities are adapted for growth of marketable size fish (up to 7 kg in the case of chinook salmon). Eggs and young fish are maintained in conventional hatchery facilities, while larger fish inhabit a series of large fiberglass pools clustered in groups of three to ten around single filter pools.

A principal feature of Sea Pool Fisheries is the gradual increase in salinity of the water with the age of the fish. By 8 months, at which age rainbow and brook trout have reached marketable size (about 0.2 kg), they are maintained in full strength sea water. In addition to the enhancement of growth and reduction of disease problems associated with high salinity, the sea water brings in with it many organisms which serve as dietary supplements for the trout.

Another interesting development occurred in 1969, when the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries began an aquaculture training program for American Indians of the Lummi Reservation near Bellingham, Washington. Part of the training involves raising of trout and Pacific salmon to the smolt stage in a recirculating system using 90 to 95% recycled water. Water contaminated by raw sewage passes through swimming pool filters and a series of ultraviolet lights at 1 to 10 liters/min, then through a chiller at 400 to 500 liters/min so that a constant temperature of 10°C is maintained. Another filter is used to treat water that has circulated through the hatchery once or more. The concentration of ammonia nitrogen is monitored daily to determine the amount of new water that must be fed into the system.

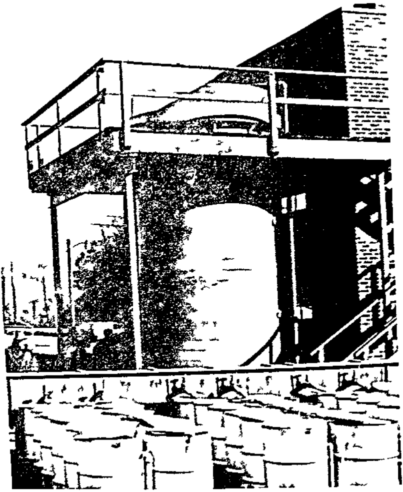


PLATE 13 Silo capable of rearing 20 000 trout Benner Spring Fish Research Station Bellefonte Pennsylvania (Courtesy Pennsylvania Fish Commission)

A potentially revolutionary breakthrough in trout culture was recently made by the Pennsylvania Fish Commission at its Benner Spring Research Station at Bellefonte There biologists have succeeded in rearing 20 000 rainbow trout, weighing at least 2720 kg in a cylindrical fiberglass tank 5 m high and 2.3 m in diameter with a capacity of 20 640 liters The use of this tank has resulted in the production of more protein per acre than has any other known food production method If such devices are eventually applied commercially it will be possible to institute trout culture at springs and other water sources located where terrain space soil type or some other factor makes it impossible to construct ponds or raceways A further advantage is that both construction and maintenance costs for such tanks are much lower than for conventional hatcheries

TROUT IN POLYCULTURE

All of the trout culture systems thus far discussed are monoculture systems. Unlike most instances of single-species culture, trout monoculture is not ecologically inconsistent, since these essentially cold water species normally inhabit relatively sterile environments with limited species associations. Nevertheless, trout do have some potential for use in polyculture, particularly as predators to control excess reproduction of small wild fishes which compete for food with cultured species. Trout are sometimes preferred for such purposes over such traditional pond predators as the northern pike (*Esox lucius*) and the largemouth bass (*Micropterus salmoides*) since trout forage in open water, as well as along shorelines and weed beds.

Trout are most commonly used as predators in conjunction with common carp, particularly in Poland and Czechoslovakia, where 1-year-old rainbow trout are stocked in ponds at 1200 to 1500/ha, or about 10 to 15% of the carp population, and are harvested as 2-year-olds. Growth depends principally on the availability of carp fry and other natural foods. In fertile ponds, trout thus stocked may contribute 20 to 50 kg/ha over and above the normal production of carp. Production may be increased by stocking the orfe (*Leuciscus idus*) and the roach (*Rutilus rutilus*), which do not compete with carp, as food for the trout.

The application of trout in pond culture may be wider than was previously assumed. Russian biologists have found that, as long as dissolved oxygen concentrations remain above 5 ppm most of the time, rainbow trout stocked at low densities do well at 16 to 18°C, continue to feed at up to 24°C, and can withstand temperatures as high as 28°C for short periods.

In 1964 biologists of the Soviet Union's All-Union Institute of Pond Fisheries conducted an experiment with rainbow trout in a more complex polyculture system. Two fertile ponds containing 4 year classes of common carp, 2 year classes of grass carp (*Ctenopharyngodon idella*), and 1 year class of silver carp (*Hypophthalmichthys molitrix*) were stocked with 2-year-old rainbow trout as well. The food niche of the trout remained intact, as they ate aquatic and terrestrial insects, *Daphnia*, carp fry, and frogs, most of which were not utilized by the other species. At harvest, the trout contributed 30.8 and 36.5 kg/ha, respectively, or 4.7% and 6.3% of the total fish production of the two ponds. Brown trout have been recommended for similar use in polyculture in the Soviet Union.

It has been reported that the taimen (*Hucho taimen*) and the huchen

(*Hucho hucho*) are being investigated for fish cultural purposes in China and Spain respectively Details are not available but these large, typically solitary and piscivorous salmonids are probably being considered for use as predators

PROSPECTUS

Clearly, trout culture is undergoing a period of expansion Not only are individual farms increasing their output and new farms being established in areas where trout culture is traditional but whole new regions of the world including the oceans are being opened up for trout farming It is conceivable that in the not too-distant future rainbow trout will be as nearly universal in fish culture as common carp or *Tilapia mossambica* Certainly the day of trout as a luxury food is nearly over and its day as a staple protein source is approaching

REFERENCES

ANON 1969 Worlds largest trout farm Am Fish Farmer 1(1) 6–9

ANON 1970 Washington trout hatchery Am Fish Farmer 1(2) 13–16

BREGNBALLE F 1963 Trout culture in Denmark Prog Fish Cult 25(3) 115–120

BROWN E E 1969 The fresh water cultured fish industry of Japan University of Georgia Agricultural Experimental Station Research Rep 41

BURROWS R E and B D COMBS 1968 Controlled environments for salmon propagation Prog Fish Cult 30(3) 123–136

BUTERBAUGH G L and H WILLOUGHBY 1967 A feeding guide for brook brown and rainbow trout Prog Fish Cult 29(4)

DAVIS H S 1953 Culture and diseases of game fishes University of California Press Berkeley 332 pp

ERICKSON J D no date Trout production opportunities and problems in the west Snake River Trout Company Buhl Idaho (Mimeographed)

ESCHMEYER P H 1968 The lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*) U.S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Fishery Leaflet 555

GUNSTROM G K 1970 Canadian Mariculture Facility begins operation Am Fish Farmer 2(1) 8–11

HASKELL D C 1959 Trout growth in hatcheries N Y Fish Game J 6(2) 204–237

LEITRITZ E. 1960 Trout and salmon culture (hatchery methods) California Department of Fish and Game Fishery Bulletin No 197

LOCKE D O and S P LINSCOTT 1969 A new dry diet for landlocked Atlantic salmon and lake trout Prog Fish Cult 31(1) 3–10

MEYER F P 1969 Commercial fish production in the U.S and its relationship to the feed industry Feedstuffs 41(7) 27

OVCHNYNNYK, M 1961 Soviet fish culture *In* Atlantic Ocean Fisheries London, pp 267–273 Fish News Inter (Books), London

PHILLIPS, A M, and D R BROCKWAY 1959 Dietary calories and the production of trout in hatcheries Prog Fish Cult 21(1) 3–16

SCHEFFER, P M, and L D MARRIAGE 1969 Trout farming U.S Soil Conservation Service, Leaflet 552

SMITH, T E 1965 Operation steelhead Ocean Sci and Eng 2 1229–1239

Interviews and Personal Communication

BERTELSEN, P C Danish Ministry of Fisheries

BREGNBALLE, F Danish Trout Research Station, Brøns Denmark

CLEAVER, F Oregon Fish Com, Portland, Ore

DONALDSON, L College of Fisheries, University of Washington

FUJIYA, M Japanese Fisheries Agency

RANGEN, T Rangen, Inc, Buhl, Idaho

21

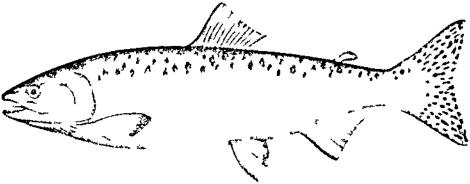
Culture of the Pacific Salmons (*Oncorhynchus* spp.)

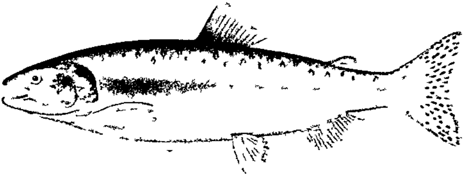
The seven Pacific salmons (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) together comprise one of the world's most important fisheries. In the United States, where they are commercially the second most important fishery product, over 140,000 metric tons were landed in 1965. In Japan, 150,000 metric tons were landed that year, and Canadian, Russian, and South Korean boats also bring in substantial catches. In the last few decades, salmon populations and catches have declined in almost all of the major fishing areas as a result of overfishing, pollution, and damming of rivers. Among the remedial measures taken are various forms of salmon culture involving improved or artificially constructed spawning areas, fry hatcheries, fingerling rearing stations, and the beginnings of true husbandry.

The need for artificial propagation of salmon is intensified by the peculiar reproductive biology of *Oncorhynchus* spp., which, with the possible exception of certain landlocked stocks of *O. masu*, inevitably die after spawning. As a consequence of this fact of salmon life, an individual which is allowed to spawn is unlikely to contribute directly to the fishery. Ripe and spent spawners are potentially harvestable, but often only at the expense of great amounts of labor. The value of ripe and spent fish is further vitiated by the deterioration of the tissues, which results from the cessation of feeding with the attainment of maturity. Nevertheless, ripe fish are eaten in Japan, and spent salmon from hatcheries are beginning to find a market in the United States. However, it appears unlikely that large numbers of natural spawners will ever enter the commercial picture. Thus the management of Pacific salmon fisheries, even more than that of other fisheries, depends on intelligent regulation of the harvest. As long as natural reproduction is a major source of fishery stocks, this necessitates that a certain number of fish be allowed annually to escape the fishermen. This number is not fixed but depends on the survival rate of the progeny to adulthood; under natural conditions this is but a fraction of 1%. If this figure could be substantially increased by artificial propagation, then less spawners would be needed, and the fishery quota could be correspondingly increased.

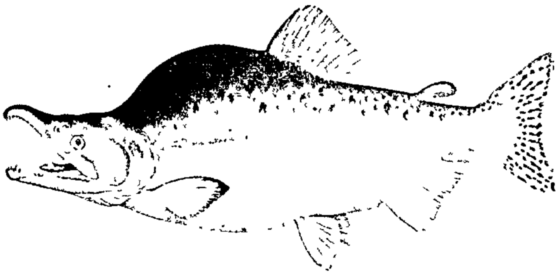
The pressure placed on existing salmon stocks has been intensified, first by the introduction of high seas fishing techniques to what was initially an inshore fishery and, more recently, by the entry into the fishery of South Korea. High seas fishing increases the likelihood that fish taken by fishermen of one nation were destined to spawn in another country's waters. Salmon fishery management has thus become an international issue. Although the attitudes toward the resource of the five salmon fishing nations differ considerably, fair cooperation, with probable benefit to the fishery, has been achieved.

In addition to international regulation of the fishery, large numbers





c



D

PLATE 1. Pink (humpback) salmon. (A) Adult female, (B) adult male, (C) breeding female; (D) breeding male. (Courtesy U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, XXVI, 1906.)

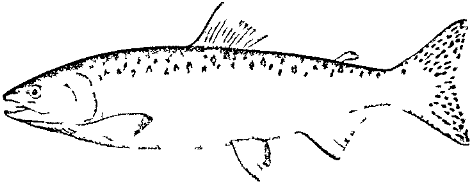
of scientists in all four of the major salmon-producing countries are working on the various aspects of Pacific salmon culture. In this chapter we concentrate largely on methods developed in the United States and Canada, but only because we have not had full access to the Japanese and Russian literature. Any reader who can avail himself of the latest developments in Japan and the Soviet Union should do so, to gain a more complete picture of the state of the art of Pacific salmon culture.

THE SPECIES OF PACIFIC SALMON AND THEIR CHARACTERISTICS

CHINOOK SALMON

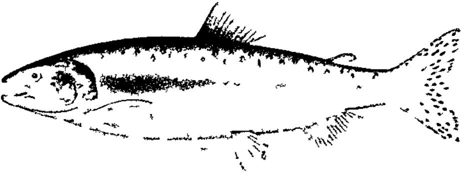
The largest of the Pacific salmons is the chinook salmon or king salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*), which occasionally reaches weights of 45 kg. It spawns mainly in large rivers, from northern California to northwestern Alaska. It is less common and usually smaller along Asiatic shores, although Russia's Kamchatka River supports a sizable run. Over 90% of the commercial catch is landed at North American ports.

The life history of the chinook salmon is the most variable among the Pacific salmons. Maturity and spawning occur within 2 to 7 years of



A

B



C

Japan. Like the chinook salmon, it is more common and larger in American waters. Coho salmon usually mature at 2 to 4 years of age (extremes 1 to 5 years) and ascend streams in late fall or winter, after most other *Oncorhynchus* spp. have completed spawning. The freshwater nursery period of the coho salmon averages about 1 year at the southern limits of its range and 2 years at the northern limit. It is generally considered the hardiest of the Pacific salmons with respect to environmental conditions.

Chinook and coho salmons are taken mostly by trollers, who find the effort worthwhile since these two species, which usually reach the market smoked or as salmon steaks, bring a higher price than their congeners. Chinook and coho salmons are also the overwhelming favorites of sport fishermen, and in Alaska and Oregon anglers may purchase a commercial fishing license and market their catch. Not a few sport fishermen finance their recreation in this manner.

SOCKEYE SALMON

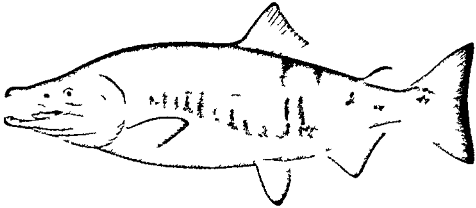
The sockeye salmon or red salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) spawns from northern California north to the Bering Sea and south to Hokkaido, but only in streams that have one or more lakes in their courses. Spawning occurs in, above, or occasionally below such a lake and the young spend their first 2 to 3 years in the lake, followed by 1 or 2 years in the sea. Some waters, landlocked or otherwise, also contain populations of non-anadromous sockeye salmon, sometimes referred to as kokanee. Sea-run sockeye salmon occasionally reach lengths of over 100 cm; kokanee are usually much smaller.

Like the chinook and coho salmons, sockeye salmon are most abundant in American waters; before the inauguration of the high seas fishery 64% of the catch was landed in the United States. In some areas, notably the Bristol Bay region of Alaska and the Fraser River of British Columbia, it is the most important species. Sockeye salmon generally are delivered to canneries and are considered the finest salmon for that purpose.

CHUM SALMON AND PINK SALMON

The lower grades of canned salmon consist chiefly of chum salmon or dog salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*) and pink salmon or humpback salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*). The chum salmon is the larger of the two, attaining lengths of nearly 1 m and weights of 20 kg, whereas the pink salmon reaches no more than 4 to 5 kg. The chum salmon is also the most widely distributed of the Pacific salmons, ranging from San Francisco, California, north to Alaska, and south to Korea. Runs also occur in

A



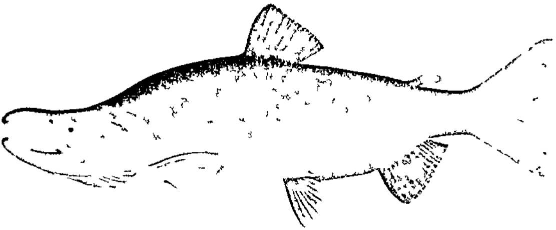
B

PLATE 2 Chum (dog) salmon (A) Breeding female; (B) breeding male (Courtesy U.S Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin XXVI 1906.)

hatching usually after 4 years Most spawning streams support two or more annual runs, in summer, fall, and/or winter, but some of the larger streams also support spring runs, which characteristically travel further upstream than summer, fall, and winter fish. The usual figure cited for the duration of the freshwater nursery period is 6 months, but it may vary from 90 days to 2 years

COHO SALMON

The coho salmon or silver salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*), which may reach 15 kg is found from Monterey Bay, California, to Hokkaido



D

PLATE 3 Sockeye (red) salmon (A) Adult female, (B) adult male, (C) breeding female, (D) breeding male (Courtesy U S Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, XXVI, 1906)

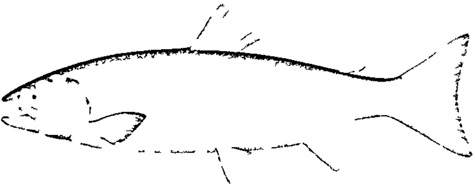
tributaries of the Arctic Ocean from Canada's Mackenzie River on the east to Russia's Lena River on the west. Throughout most of its range it is represented by both summer and fall spawning stocks The distribution of the fall spawning pink salmon is almost identical, but it is not found south of the San Lorenzo River, California, nor east of Alaska's Colville River on the Arctic Coast

Both species spawn in very small streams as well as large rivers, typically, especially in the case of the pink salmon, not far from the sea, or even in the intertidal zone. Young of both species drift down to the sea within the year of hatching, if not immediately, to return as adults 2 years after hatching in the case of the pink salmon, or in 2 to 6 years for chum salmon

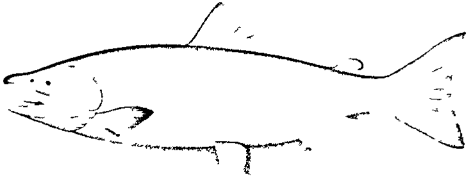
Of the two species, the chum salmon is the more important in the Japanese fishery, while American, Canadian, and Russian inshore fishermen land more pink salmon. Collectively, chum and pink salmon are the most commercially important of the Pacific salmons, and both suffer from overfishing throughout their range.

CHERRY SALMON

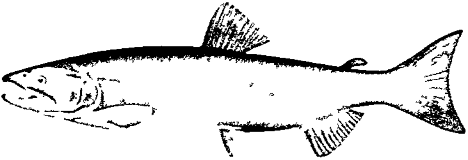
There are two additional species of *Oncorhynchus* found only in Asiatic waters The cherry salmon (*Oncorhynchus masu*), the most warmth-resistant of all the Pacific salmons, ranges from Korea north to the Kamchatka Peninsula and spawns chiefly in the summer, during its third



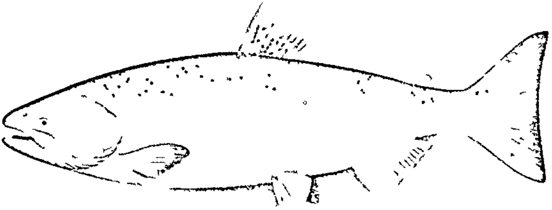
A



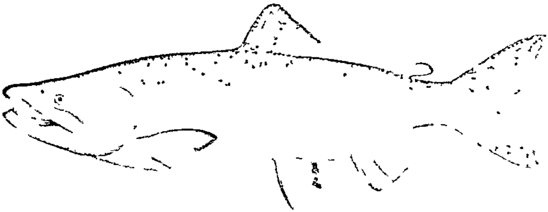
B



C



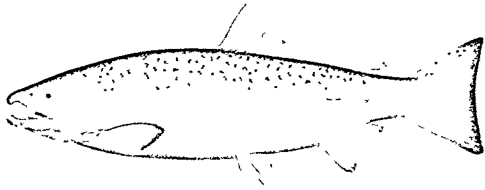
A



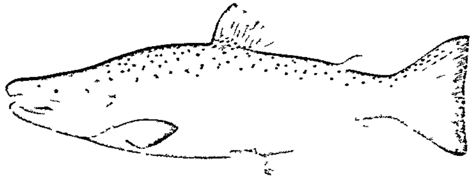
B

PLATE 5 Chinook (king) salmon (A) Adult female, (B) adult male (Courtesy U.S Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, XXVI, 1906)

nounced secondary sexual characteristics, cease feeding, and move first into estuaries, then into streams After reaching the spawning grounds, which may be located anywhere from the intertidal zone (some chum and pink salmon) to 4000 km upstream (chinook salmon in the Yukon River, Alaska), the females select suitable spawning sites and, turning on their sides, excavate circular egg pits in the gravel with undulations of body and tail Eggs are deposited in three or more such pits, which collectively comprise the nest or "redd" Fertilization is accomplished by one or more males at the time the eggs are released. Fertilized eggs are buried immediately by the female in the same manner in which the pits were excavated, except that her digging motions become much more rapid They



A



B

Plate 4. Coho (silver) salmon. (A) Adult male; (B) breeding male (Courtesy U.S Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, XXVI, 1906)

or fourth year of life. *Oncorhynchus rhodurus*, sometimes also called cherry salmon, is comparatively little known and apparently restricted to southern Japan It spawns in November at an age of 3 to 5 years. Both species are small, slow-growing fish, seldom exceeding 50 cm in length, and are of comparatively minor importance in commercial fisheries

NATURAL REPRODUCTION OF PACIFIC SALMONS

The mechanics of reproduction are, in general, the same for all *Oncorhynchus* spp. Some time prior to spawning mature adults develop pro-

ARTIFICIAL AND IMPROVED SPAWNING CHANNELS

Fishways cannot compensate for the many kilometers of spawning riffles inundated by power dams, nor are they usually highly efficient in maintaining spawning populations in remaining riffle areas. The loss of spawning grounds to impoundments and the mediocre success of fishways may thus be added to pollution, overfishing, and mechanical destruction of spawning grounds as initiative factors in the construction of salmon hatcheries and artificial spawning channels. Of the two techniques the hatchery method is much the older, but artificial spawning channels involve considerably less expenditure of money, materials, and labor, and some authorities believe they offer greater potential benefits to the fishery.

RATIONALE AND FACTORS INVOLVED IN CONSTRUCTION

The environmental prerequisites for successful spawning of the species in question must be known in order to construct a satisfactory artificial spawning channel. The first clue to these requirements is the observed preference of the spawners. The types of spawning areas generally selected by the five North American species of *Oncorhynchus* are outlined in Table 1.

It should not be assumed that the data in Table 1 constitute the last word in the determination of optimal spawning conditions for Pacific salmons. There may be a number of factors involved which are not directly concerned with survival to emergence of the larvae from the stream bed. For example, safety from predators of the spawners and competition with other species may enter into the picture. Further, the best natural spawning area is likely to be suboptimal in some ways, thus potentially susceptible to improvement. This raises the possibility of augmenting salmon production by construction of artificial spawning channels in areas relatively unmodified by man, as well as where dams and the like have obstructed or obliterated natural spawning areas.

This approach would appear to be particularly appropriate to culture of pink and chum salmons, for which species mortality prior to emergence appears to be the chief factor limiting abundance. It is unusual for spawns of these fishes to experience less than 70% mortality during their time in the stream bed, and mortalities in excess of 95% are common.

Spawning channel construction and improvement may be less appropriate as conservation measures for chinook, coho, and sockeye salmons, whose preemergent mortality is believed to be less important than that

PLATE 6 Natural spawning of chum salmon showing female excavating a redd (Courtesy W. J. McNeil)

hatch in the stream bed where the larvae remain for a number of months before emerging to immediately seek an estuarine or marine environment (chum and pink salmons), or spend up to 2 years in freshwater (cherry, chinook, coho, and sockeye salmons).

FISHWAYS OR FISH LADDERS

The Pacific salmons have been cultured to augment the results of natural spawning runs, for transplantation into waters where salmon are not native, and for commercial rearing to marketable size, but the first is the prevalent rationale. Among the man made devices used to assist salmon spawners, the simplest in principle are the fishways or fish ladders commonly incorporated in power dams built on salmon streams These and devices designed to aid young salmon in their seaward migration do not fall within our definition of aquaculture, and they are not discussed here.

ARTIFICIAL AND IMPROVED SPAWNING CHANNELS

Fishways cannot compensate for the many kilometers of spawning riffles inundated by power dams, nor are they usually highly efficient in maintaining spawning populations in remaining riffle areas. The loss of spawning grounds to impoundments and the mediocre success of fishways may thus be added to pollution, overfishing, and mechanical destruction of spawning grounds as initiative factors in the construction of salmon hatcheries and artificial spawning channels. Of the two techniques the hatchery method is much the older, but artificial spawning channels involve considerably less expenditure of money, materials, and labor, and some authorities believe they offer greater potential benefits to the fishery.

RATIONALE AND FACTORS INVOLVED IN CONSTRUCTION

The environmental prerequisites for successful spawning of the species in question must be known in order to construct a satisfactory artificial spawning channel. The first clue to these requirements is the observed preference of the spawners. The types of spawning areas generally selected by the five North American species of *Oncorhynchus* are outlined in Table 1.

It should not be assumed that the data in Table 1 constitute the last word in the determination of optimal spawning conditions for Pacific salmons. There may be a number of factors involved which are not directly concerned with survival to emergence of the larvae from the stream bed. For example, safety from predators of the spawners and competition with other species may enter into the picture. Further, the best natural spawning area is likely to be suboptimal in some ways, thus potentially susceptible to improvement. This raises the possibility of augmenting salmon production by construction of artificial spawning channels in areas relatively unmodified by man, as well as where dams and the like have obstructed or obliterated natural spawning areas.

This approach would appear to be particularly appropriate to culture of pink and chum salmons, for which species mortality prior to emergence appears to be the chief factor limiting abundance. It is unusual for spawns of these fishes to experience less than 70% mortality during their time in the stream bed, and mortalities in excess of 95% are common.

Spawning channel construction and improvement may be less appropriate as conservation measures for chinook, coho, and sockeye salmons, whose preemergent mortality is believed to be less important than that

TABLE 1 SPAWNING REQUIREMENTS OF THE NORTH AMERICAN PACIFIC SALMONS (*Oncorhynchus* SPP.)

SPECIES	LOCATION OF REDD	SUBSTRATE COMPOSITION	STREAM FLOW OR DISCHARGE	WATER TEMPERATURE	DIMENSIONS OF REDD
Chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*)	Main channels	55–95% medium and fine gravel (no more than 15-cm diameter) tolerates no more than 8% silt and sand	0.5–2.0 ft^3/sec	—	Vary from 1.2 to 9 m in diameter average size in Columbia River basin 3.25 m^2 for spring run fish 5.1 m^2 for fall and summer fish
Chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*)	Near shore often in very shallow water in the U.S.S.R. summer run fish do not usually locate over upwellings of intragravel water whereas fall run fish do	Gravelly in the Columbia River basin chum salmon strictly avoid areas where there is poor circulation of water through the stream bed	0.1–1.0 m/sec	Spawning recorded at 0.5–16.0°C	Average 2.5 m long 30–40 cm deep in U.S.S.R. average size in Columbia River basin 2.25 m^2 3 m^2 considered optimal
Coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*)	Usually in small streams or narrow side channels of large streams locations at head of riffles preferred may spawn in extremely shallow water	Prefers small medium gravel but very adaptable will tolerate up to 10% mud	3.4 ft^3/sec preferred (since coho salmon usually spawn in late fall after rains this discharge is not typical of year round conditions in most coho spawning streams)	—	Average 2.8 m^2 in Columbia River basin
Pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*)	Main channels often over upwellings	Medium gravel	0.03 m/sec or more	About 12°C	Average 1.1 m^2 9.3 cm deep in southeastern Alaska
Sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*)	In shallows of lakes or in small streams directly above lakes	No more than 1% particles 15 cm or more in diameter fine-medium gravel preferred	Varied	—	Average 1.75 m^2 in streams in Columbia River basin larger and more irregular in lakes kokanee redds considerably smaller

suffered in freshwater nursery areas. However, preemergent mortalities of up to 96% have occasionally been recorded for chinook salmon, and several artificial channels have been constructed expressly for use by this species. Coho salmon eggs and young appear to experience lower mortality in spawning beds than the other *Oncorhynchus* spp., and no spawning channels have been built primarily for this species.

A necessary adjunct of any program designed to enhance the success of salmon spawning is a strong program of research into the factors limiting survival of the eggs and young. This, in essence, is a never-ending process for, as Dixon MacKinnon of the Canadian Department of Fisheries put it, "Virtually all biological research on salmon has some application to the problem." Research to date indicates that the chief limiting factors are spawning bed stability, water quality, and, in some cases, meteorological conditions. Following is an outline of the action of each of these and other factors, and ways in which artificial spawning channels may aid in their control.

Spawning bed stability is a function of both stream-bed particle size and current velocity. A stream bed composed largely of silt, sand, or fine gravel is subject to constant shifting and disturbance, which may result in eggs and larvae being washed out to perish in the open water. Even stream beds composed of cobbles or large particles may be unstable during severe flooding. This is a particularly severe problem in southeastern Alaska, where torrential fall rains are common. In an artificial spawning channel both variables may be controlled by selection of predominantly large substrate materials and diversion of flood waters through an overflow channel or natural stream channel.

Water quality covers a multitude of variables, but of primary importance is dissolved oxygen content, which should be at least 6 ppm in the intragravel water for good survival of salmon embryos. If concentrations of dissolved oxygen are reduced by the action of pollutants in the vicinity of the spawning area, an artificial spawning channel will not alleviate the situation, but in most salmon spawning streams pollutants are not the chief factor determining oxygen content.

One might suppose that in a cold, unpolluted, relatively sterile, and swiftly flowing salmon stream the concentration of dissolved oxygen would be at or near saturation, and this is usually the case for surface water in the riffles where salmon spawn. However, eggs and larvae are found at various depths in the stream bed where there is no source of aeration. Oxygen dissolved in intragravel water can originate only in the surface water, which typically circulates into and out of the bed at a rate partly determined by stream velocity but also by the gradient, profile, and particle size of the bed. The more rapid the circulation, the less

the likelihood that the dissolved oxygen in a given volume of intragravel water will be severely depleted before the water reaches an area of upwelling Circulation of intragravel water may be increased in an artificial channel by proper gradient selection, construction of baffles and other such devices, and selection of large-diameter bed materials which afford maximum porosity (There is a limit to the size of particles which may be profitably employed. If the particles are too large spawners may have difficulty construcing redds, thus the eggs may be inadequately buried and subject to being washed out)

Droughts may drastically reduce the dissolved oxygen content of intra gravel water, both by restricting circulation and by allowing decaying salmon carcasses to remain in the stream rather than being washed out Further, droughts may expose some eggs and larvae to dehydration Artificial spawning channels are constructed so that there are no areas of extremely shallow water and flow can be maintained by pumping, or diversion from the main stream channel may relieve the impact of droughts

The chief meteorological limiting factor other than flooding and drought is freezing of the intragravel water The incidence of freezing may be reduced by any measures taken to ensure good circulation and constant water depth and flow

Other factors which may affect survival of eggs and preemergent fry, and which may be controlled to some degree in artificial spawning channels are redd superimposition, temperature, and predation The phenomenon of redd superimposition becomes a problem when the number of female spawners approaches the number of spawning sites Late spawners, in the process of redd excavation, may uncover eggs of previous spawners Under some circumstances, the results may be a reduction in the number of fry produced If access to an artificial spawning channel can be controlled, or if the channel is artificially stocked, a predetermined optimum number of spawners may be admitted

Temperature plays a very important role in reproduction of all fish, *including the Pacific salmons* In artificial spawning channels located below impoundments it is often possible to draw on water sources with different temperatures and thus exercise some control over this variable.

Predation has seldom been found to be an important limiting factor in survival of eggs and preemergent larvae, though it may be very important in later life stages It has been experimentally shown that the large particles deliberately chosen for use in improved spawning beds may facilitate the activities of predatory fishes, particularly sculpins (*Cottus* spp), which feed heavily on eggs and young of salmon when given the opportunity There have, however, been no reported instances of serious predation problems in actual operation of improved spawning channels.

If predation were thought to be important, predator access could often be more easily controlled in an artificial channel than in a natural one

DESIGN AND OPERATION OF EXISTING CHANNELS

With the foregoing factors in mind, at least 20 artificial spawning channels for Pacific salmon have been constructed since the mid 1950s in the United States and Canada, plus one for Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) in Newfoundland Similar channels may exist in Japan or the Soviet Union, but we have no indication that this is the case, so this discussion will be limited to North American structures

Although some salmon spawned in artificial channels have certainly entered the commercial catch, the technique is still essentially experimental and, other than the general stipulations already indicated, there are few rules for success The existing structures vary from 60 m to 0 7 km in length, 4 to 11 m in width, and 10 to 76 cm in depth and are designed to handle 100 to 10,000 fish Much larger channels are being planned and constructed Existing channel gradients vary from 0 0006 to 0 002 and average discharges from 2 to 130 ft^3/sec It is now generally believed that higher gradients, with the attendant better circulation, produce better results and the gradient of most new channels is toward the upper end of the cited range Stream beds are constructed of various proportions of particles ranging from 6 mm to 15 cm in diameter Rather than describe each of the existing channels, we have selected for discussion a few which are illustrative of key points

A primitive form of the artificial spawning channel is the improved spawning channel, two of which were built in 1961 by the U S Forest Service and Bureau of Commercial Fisheries in intertidal sections of Harris River and Indian Creek, near Ketchikan, Alaska The principal causes of mortality in spawning areas of Indian Creek are flooding and freezing whereas in Harris River poor circulation of intragravel water may be the chief limiting factor in survival of salmon embryos Accordingly, the design of the Indian Creek channel emphasized construction of a 12 to 15 m wide flood plain on both sides of the main channel, to carry excess water while maintaining a fairly constant moderate flow in the 360 × 4 5 m spawning area, and modification of the Harris River involved chiefly the removal of sand and silt

Since the natural substrate of Indian Creek is largely composed of particles measuring 5 to 15 cm in diameter, the stream bed was not extensively modified, but baffle boards were installed to increase intragravel circulation The improved channel was definitely attractive to pink salmon, which account for most of the run, spawning occurred

the likelihood that the dissolved oxygen in a given volume of intragravel water will be severely depleted before the water reaches an area of upwelling Circulation of intragravel water may be increased in an artificial channel by proper gradient selection, construction of baffles and other such devices, and selection of large-diameter bed materials which afford maximum porosity (There is a limit to the size of particles which may be profitably employed If the particles are too large, spawners may have difficulty construcing redds, thus the eggs may be inadequately buried and subject to being washed out.)

Droughts may drastically reduce the dissolved oxygen content of intra gravel water, both by restricting circulation and by allowing decaying salmon carcasses to remain in the stream rather than being washed out Further, droughts may expose some eggs and larvae to dehydration Artificial spawning channels are constructed so that there are no areas of extremely shallow water and flow can be maintained by pumping or diver sion from the main stream channel may relieve the impact of droughts

The chief meteorological limiting factor other than flooding and drought is freezing of the intragravel water The incidence of freezing may be reduced by any measures taken to ensure good circulation and constant water depth and flow

Other factors which may affect survival of eggs and preemergent fry, and which may be controlled to some degree in artificial spawning chan nels, are redd superimposition temperature, and predation The phe nomenon of redd superimposition becomes a problem when the number of female spawners approaches the number of spawning sites Late spawners, in the process of redd excavation, may uncover eggs of previous spawners Under some circumstances, the results may be a reduction in the number of fry produced If access to an artificial spawning channel can be controlled or if the channel is artificially stocked, a predetermined optimum number of spawners may be admitted

Temperature plays a very important role in reproduction of all fish including the Pacific salmons In artificial spawning channels located below impoundments it is often possible to draw on water sources with different temperatures and thus exercise some control over this variable.

Predation has seldom been found to be an important limiting factor in survival of eggs and preemergent larvae, though it may be very impor tant in later life stages It has been experimentally shown that the large particles deliberately chosen for use in improved spawning beds may facilitate the activities of predatory fishes, particularly sculpins (*Cottus* spp) which feed heavily on eggs and young of salmon when given the opportunity There have, however, been no reported instances of serious predation problems in actual operation of improved spawning channels.

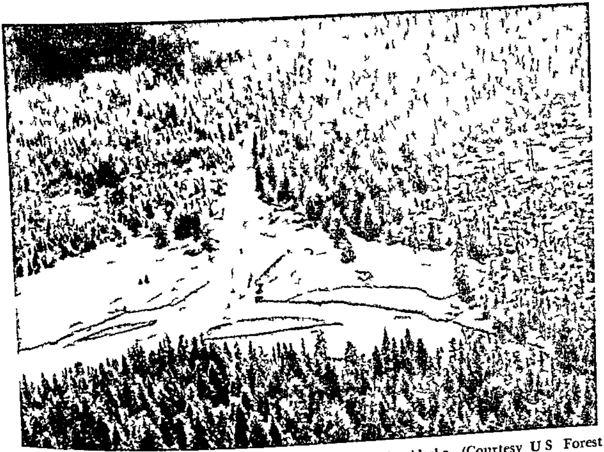


PLATE 7 Artificial spawning channel at Indian Creek Alaska (Courtesy U S Forest Service)

spawning bed consists of a 30 to 45 cm deep layer of 0 6 to 4 3 cm gravel

A few chum and coho salmon spawn in the Jones Creek channel but the principal species is the pink salmon Natural runs of pink salmon occur in Jones Creek only during the odd numbered years results of the first four such runs to utilize the artificial channel are shown in Table 2 Survival was four to six times the previous average for the stream (Cur

TABLE 2 FRY SURVIVAL AND RETURN OF ADULT PINK SALMON TO THE JONES CREEK BRITISH COLUMBIA ARTIFICIAL SPAWNING CHANNEL

YEAR	TOTAL NUMBER OF SPAWNERS	NUMBER SPAWNING ABOVE COUNTING FENCE	EGGS DEPOSITED ABOVE COUNTING FENCE[a]	FRY OUTPUT	PERCENTAGE OF SURVIVAL
1955	400	400	428 000	158 436	37 0
1957	1 456	1 056	947 000	363 169	38 4
1959	2 604	2 119	1 519 000	958 581	63 0
1961	5 000	4 388	3 789 300	1 100 000	30 0

[a] Based on an average of 1700 eggs per female

SOURCE Croker and Reed (1963)

throughout the modified area at discharges of 5 to 1000 ft³/sec. Less than 10% of the spawners utilized the flood plain Some damage occurred as a result of spawners undermining the banks of the spawning area, which was depressed 46 cm below the surface of the flood plain, but this occurred only when the banks were not protected with a layer of rubble

Serious damage did occur, however, as a result of severe flooding shortly after the completion of spawning The modified channel was designed to withstand discharges of at least 1000 ft³/sec, which left some room for doubt as to its stability, since peak instantaneous discharge of Indian Creek in most years is between 1500 and 2000 ft³/sec. In October, 1962 two unprecedented floods occurred, with peak discharges of 2700 and 6400 ft³/sec, respectively The result was some erosion of the spawning area, removal of some of the baffle boards and burial of most of the rest, filling in of a settling pool at the head of the channel, and deposition of 30 to 45 cm of gravel over the entire length of the channel The precise effects of this catastrophe are unknown, but estimated survival to emergence of the larvae was 12%, or no better than might be expected under natural conditions in a good year

In 1962, the settling pool was cleaned out, the gravel deposited by the previous year s floods was removed, and the basic configuration of the channel was restored, but missing baffle boards were not replaced and no attempt was made to remove fine materials from the spawning bed Once again the modified channel was attractive, drawing 1 5 times as many spawners as the most densely populated unmodified areas of Indian Creek or Harris River, but survival of the spawn was only 10%

In the Harris River, 1400 m^2 of stream bed were improved by hydraulic flushing of fine particles Sand and silt reentered during the 1961 floods and estimated survival of that year s spawn was only about 0 1%

The results of the Indian Creek Harris River experiments are inconclusive but indicate that channels constructed in natural stream beds, without adequate means of controlling flow, run the risk of being damaged or destroyed by high water This is particularly true in southeastern Alaska where unstable runoff patterns are the rule, but would apply nearly anywhere It might also be added that structures such as the Indian Creek channel in which the stream course is necessarily straightened and the banks heaped with loose gravel are esthetic disasters and as such should not be tolerated, particularly in such a beautiful area as the Pacific Northwest of the United States and Canada

The first large artificial spawning channel was constructed by the Canadian Department of Fisheries in 1954 at Jones Creek British Columbia to compensate for spawning grounds lost to a hydroelectric project The Jones Creek channel is 610 m long 4 25 m wide and handles a controlled discharge of 25 to 30 ft³/sec during the spawning period The

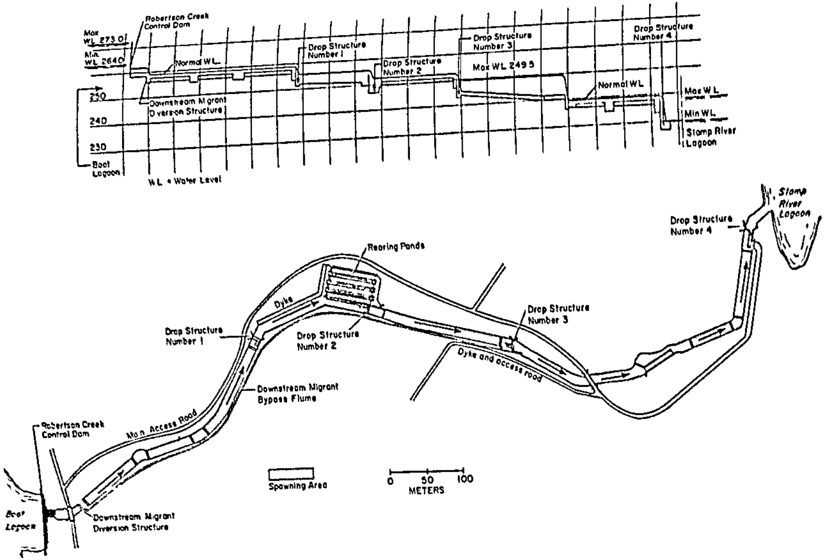


FIG. 1. Robertson Creek artificial spawning channel. Plan and profile.

rent results are much poorer, since the channel has been subject to heavy sedimentation)

The preliminary success achieved at Jones Creek was the impetus for construction in 1959 to 1961 of a larger and more elaborate channel at Robertson Creek on the west slope of Vancouver Island A plan and profile of this channel (actually six artificial spawning areas, with a com bined length of 662 m separated by a total of 518 m of relatively un modified stream) are shown in Fig 1 Further specifications are as follows

Cross-sectional shape	trapezoidal
Width, bottom	10 7 m
top	12 5 m
Water depth	43–62 cm
Gradient	0 0006
Substrate particle diameter	19–102 mm
Depth of graded substrate	38–61 cm
Discharge minimum	20 ft³/sec
maximum	250 ft³/sec controlled by dam, submerged pipe, and valve
average	130 ft³/sec

Emphasis at Robertson Creek has been on transplantation of fertilized pink salmon eggs Exceptionally high survival rates of 90 to 95% to emergence have been consistently recorded, but returns of adults have been as low as might be expected under natural conditions, from 0 009 to 0 03% The adult statistic may be due to early emergence of fry in the relatively warm water of Robertson Creek, with consequent poor early growth in the ocean It may also have to do with some inherent weakness of fry hatched from artificially fertilized eggs as similar problems have been observed in connection with hatcheries (see pp 472–474), or some as yet unknown factor may be at work. The survival rate of eggs and larvae on the other hand would surely not have been as high had natural spawn ing been allowed to occur However, very respectable survival rates to emergence of 68 4 to 86 1% have been recorded for naturally spawned sockeye salmon since 1965 in an artificial channel constructed by the International Pacific Salmon Fisheries Commission on Weaver Creek, British Columbia (Fraser River system) A preliminary estimate of the benefit cost ratio for the Weaver Creek channel is 7 1 The estimated benefit-cost ratio for the same agency's Pitt River pink salmon channel which, like the Robertson Creek channel, receives plants of artificially fertilized eggs, is 14 1

A few chinook and coho salmon spawners have been stocked in the Robertson Creek channel Problems have been experienced with mortality

tion of chinook and coho salmon is an effective fishery management technique.

In 1877, the American technique of salmon culture was introduced to Japan, where it was applied principally to chum salmon, the most commercially important species in that country. The history of salmon culture in Japan parallels the American experience of early failure and subsequent success, though for different reasons.

Hatchery propagation of salmon was slower to develop in Russia, but with the emphasis, under the Communist regime, on development of hydroelectric power, it became imperative that some sort of salmon culture program be initiated. Today, the Soviet Union leads the world in stocking of artificially propagated salmon. Annual releases of pink and chum salmon fry in that country number about 600 million, while about 400 million are released in Japan. The combined annual production of fry of these two species from hatcheries and artificial spawning channels in Canada and the United States totals less than 100 million.

Hatchery propagation of other *Oncorhynchus* spp. is largely confined to the United States. Chinook and coho salmon are the principal species cultured, 81 hatcheries in California, Oregon, and Washington release about 200 million fish annually. Anadromous sockeye salmon are bred in at least one hatchery in the United States, but culture of sockeye salmon is principally a Canadian concern and to date artificial spawning channels, rather than hatcheries, have been emphasized in that country. Most salmon biologists believe that hatchery culture, using present methods, is not an efficacious way of increasing sockeye salmon production.

BASIC HATCHERY TECHNIQUES

Techniques of artificial fertilization and hatching of Pacific salmon eggs are generally the same as those used in hatchery culture of freshwater trout (see Chapter 19), except that female spawners are customarily killed and the eggs surgically removed. Given the peculiar reproductive cycle of *Oncorhynchus* spp., this results in no loss of reproductive potential, and produces fewer damaged ova. Brood fish are generally ripe individuals selected from natural runs or artificially established runs which enter the hatchery. In Japan, salmon may be caught just as they ascend rivers and held in ponds until they ripen. More often, chum salmon eggs artificially hatched in Japan are supplied by Fishermen's Cooperatives who are allowed to take salmon from rivers on the condition that they fertilize their eggs and turn them over to government hatcheries. This financially and biologically economical practice now has an analog in

of the adults, but over 60% of the progeny of those adults which lived to spawn are estimated to have survived to emergence This compares more than favorably with results obtained in channels constructed specifically for chinook salmon in California and Oregon.

The Department of Fisheries envisions much larger artificial channels in British Columbia One, on Babine Lake, is billed as the world's largest such structure. (A similar claim advanced by the British Columbia Hydro Power Authority and Department of Recreation and Conservation for the Meadow Creek channel, located on a tributary of Kootenay Lake, is of no concern to us, since this channel is utilized only by kokanee, for which there is no commercial fishery) The Babine channel is designed for use by sockeye salmon and will be able to accommodate 240,000 spawners. The rationale for its construction is that the natural spawning streams from which Babine Lake receives sockeye salmon fry are too small and environmentally unstable to produce a number of fry approaching the carrying capacity of the lake. Experimental releases in Babine Lake of fry from the nearby Fulton River artificial spawning channel disclosed no significant difference in survival over 5 months of rearing, or up to the time of seaward migration It is estimated that the combination of spawning in the artificial channel and natural rearing in the lake will add 1 million salmon to the Skeena River fishery at a benefit cost ratio of 4:1.

PACIFIC SALMON HATCHERIES

HISTORY

Hatcheries have a much longer history and have been more thoroughly evaluated than artificial spawning channels A technique for hatchery propagation of anadromous salmonids was first developed in Canada around 1857 and soon spread to the United States. Early emphasis in both countries was on chinook and coho salmon, and these species were propagated and stocked continuously thereafter, despite the lack of any evidence of success until recently

The failure of the early hatchery programs in North America was largely due to ignorance of the life history of chinook and coho salmon The discovery, in the 1910s, that chinook salmon spend their first 90 days to 2 years of postemergent life in freshwater and the subsequent realization that coho and sockeye salmon require a similar freshwater nursery period have radically changed the ecological basis of Pacific salmon culture in North America Today it can be asserted that hatchery propaga-

criticism of these devices has recently been voiced, particularly for culture of chum and pink salmon, which are usually transferred directly from the incubator to estuarine waters. The environment in a hatchery tray is of course very different from that in a stream, and it is believed by critics of tray incubation that this may be an important factor in the repeatedly observed poor survival of hatchery bred fry. Research in Japan indicates that less than 0.5% of hatchery chum salmon fry return as adults, as compared to the 1 to 5% returns normally anticipated for wild fry.

Suggested changes in incubation technique have to do with substrate texture and water velocity. Currents in standard hatchery incubators are ten times as swift as those found in high quality natural or artificial spawning beds, while the more or less smooth, two dimensional bottoms of the trays offer no shelter comparable to that afforded by the irregular conformation of a gravel bed. The net effect may be that hatchery fry must exert considerably more effort than wild fry in maintaining their positions, resulting in poor utilization of the yolk and reduced stamina.

These factors were apparently considered first by Russian biologists, but it is not known if any practical application in the Soviet Union has resulted. More recent work in Canada and the United States has been extended to the field in several locations in Alaska, British Columbia, and Oregon.

At the Nanika River hatchery of the Canadian Department of Fisheries sockeye salmon eggs are kept in trays until they reach the eyed stage then removed and hatched in a gravel bottom controlled flow channel. In 1968 to 1969, the first season of operation survival from the eyed stage to emergence was 60 to 80%, and the young which left the channel were comparable in size to wild fry.

A more thorough comparison of channel reared versus natural fry was made for chum salmon from the Big Qualicum River, British Columbia. No differences in length, weight, length weight relationships, or chemical composition were observed in young salmon captured during the downstream migration nor in fish reared in saltwater ponds for 10 weeks. At Hooknose Creek, British Columbia, 70% of chum and pink salmon fry artificially incubated in gravel were adjudged very similar to wild fry in rate of development, but growth of the remainder was retarded.

Laboratory studies at Oregon State University have indicated that salmon eggs and alevins develop best when arranged in gravel in a single layer perpendicular to a water flow with a velocity of 50 to 220 cm/hour, and the university's Netarts Bay hatchery seeks to provide such conditions on a fairly large scale. Water is pumped from a natural chum

PLATE 8 Making incision in the belly of a pink salmon for spawn taking (Courtesy J M Olson)

Oregon and Washington, where spent fish from chum salmon hatcheries are sold as food

COMPARISON OF HATCHERY REARED AND WILD FRY

The largely temperature-dependent processes of hatching and rearing to the free swimming stage (corresponding roughly to the time of emergence in nature) may take several months Both processes are normally carried out in troughs or drip-type incubators (see pp 400–404) but considerable

FRY REARING

As one might expect, young of chinook, coho, and sockeye salmons must be reared for some time in freshwater if stocking is to be effective It has been shown that, for sockeye salmon at least, feeding must begin very early in the rearing process If food is not present in quantity immediately upon absorption of the yolk sac, impaired growth will result For this reason, food is usually presented to alevins as well as fry and fingerlings, although actual feeding by alevins may be insignificant

The general policy with regard to chum and pink salmons seems to be to release the fry upon emergence It matters little whether they are released directly into an estuary or into a stream, in the latter case they will make their way to the sea with little delay There is, however, some evidence that artificially produced chum and pink salmon fry may also benefit from short term rearing in freshwater

The first efforts along these lines were apparently some experiments carried out in the early 1960s by the Washington State Department of Fisheries, in which pink salmon fry reared in freshwater for a short while returned to their hatchery as adults at the excellent rate of 0 7%

The Washington experiments might have led to practical application were it not for the difficulty of feeding the fry On the one hand, a diet of brine shrimp (*Artemia*) resulted in a survival rate of almost 90% but poor growth, on the other hand, fry fed on meat and fish suffered losses of 40 to 50%, but attained sizes two to three times as large as those fed on brine shrimp Returns from stocking indicate that overall survival, from egg to adult, did not differ between the two groups

An experiment in freshwater rearing of chum salmon fry was carried out in 1965 by researchers at the Sakhalin Branch of the Soviet Pacific Fisheries Research Institute A 620 m^2 controlled flow pond with a maximum depth of 50 cm and a bottom similar to that of a natural chum salmon spawning area was stocked with 1 68 million fry and harvested after 37 days The fry apparently obtained much of their food from natural sources, but supplemental feed was provided in the form of walleye pollock (*Theragra chalcogrammus*) eggs, placed on underwater feeding tables two or three times daily Growth was excellent, and at the time of release it was determined that the stomachs of the pond reared fry were three times as full as those of comparable fry from conventional hatcheries or natural stocks It is not known if further use was made of this technique

Applied rearing programs for Pacific salmon fry and fingerlings have usually been carried out at low levels of intensity One of the most extensive such operations was the controlled natural rearing program of

salmon spawning stream to elevated circular tanks and fed by gravity to a series of covered hatchery tanks, with a total surface area of 35.5 m². Flow within the tanks is directed so as to proceed at 50 to 100 cm/hour in both upward and downward directions through a substrate of 0.6 to 1.8-cm crushed rock. At this rate it is believed that a discharge into the hatchery of 1 ft³/sec would be adequate for 5 to 10 million fry.

Fertilized eggs are placed in the tanks in screen bottom trays. On hatching, the alevins drop through the screen and onto the rocks. The layer of rocks need not be deep; it has been found that growth of alevins on the surface of a gravel bed is as good as that of buried alevins, provided they are shielded from light. The tanks are allowed to overflow so that emergent fry may escape in a natural manner and, after traversing about 15 m of shallow ditches, pass directly into Netarts Bay.

The 1969 to 1970 season was the first season of operation for the hatchery so a complete evaluation cannot be essayed for several years, but initial rates of hatching and emergence are encouraging (Table 3).

TABLE 3 SURVIVAL OF PINK AND CHUM SALMON EGGS IN TANKS AT THE NETARTS BAY HATCHERY, OREGON

SPECIES	MONTH SPAWNED	NO. EGGS STOCKED	NO. EMERGENT FRY	PERCENTAGE SURVIVAL	DURATION OF FRY EMERGENCE
Pink salmon	September	600 000	393 000	65.6	Early December–mid February
Chum salmon	November	280 000	225 000	80.4	February 8–March 15

SOURCE: McNeil (1970).

The better survival of chum salmon than pink salmon was attributed to poor water circulation in pink salmon tanks, which was corrected by the time chum salmon tanks were placed in operation. The source of eggs may also have been a factor; chum salmon eggs were obtained from Whiskey Creek, which supplies water to the hatchery, while pink salmon eggs had to be imported from Alaska. On the other hand, chum salmon survival might have been even higher were it not for 5000 eggs removed for experimental use. The behavior patterns of fry emerging from the tanks were quite similar to those of wild fry.

In several cases there is reason to believe that more intensive management would have resulted in increased production, but application of the appropriate measures, particularly fertilization and water level control, would often have conflicted with recreational and other uses of the bodies of water involved. On the basis of individual economic evaluations of 29 of the rearing areas, it was recommended to the Department of Fisheries that the controlled natural rearing program be discontinued in at least 12 with a combined surface area of 288 ha. This recommendation, along with consideration of the marginal character of some of the other areas, the costs of maintaining stations to take spawn from the adults which return to the rearing areas and transporting the fertilized eggs to hatching facilities, and the lack of control by the state over shore line development, pollution, and so on, eventually led to a reevaluation of the entire program and rejection of the concept of controlled natural rearing, except for experimental purposes or where it can be combined with conventional hatchery operations.

The Oregon Fish and Game Commission has experimented with somewhat more intensive pond rearing of chinook and coho salmon. Preliminary indications are that freshwater ponds show promise, provided the fish can be given supplementary feeds. The results with saltwater ponds are less auspicious because of the prevalence of the as yet incurable disease vibriosis.

The Washington Department of Fisheries has also reared fair numbers of salmon, mostly fall chinook salmon, in hatcheries, but, as of 1963, overall average returns to the hatcheries were only 0.1%. In several instances, however, returns of 0.8 to 1.0% were recorded at different hatcheries, suggesting that the rearing process might be improved considerably. Two major improvements have been made since the inception of the fall chinook salmon rearing program. First, long, narrow raceways, as used in trout hatcheries, have been abandoned in favor of recirculating ponds, which produce stronger fingerlings, for reasons analogous to those favoring "natural" spawning beds over raceways for growth and health of alevins (see pp. 472–474). Second, research has indicated that the optimum length of the rearing period is about 90 days. Experiments in Washington showed that young fall chinook salmon liberated after 17, 45, and 91 days of rearing returned at rates of 0.01, 0.1, and 0.7%, respectively. In a similar experiment, survival of fingerlings reared for 90 days was 21 times greater than that of fry. Survival was little increased by further extension of the rearing period, and improvement was more than offset by increased feeding costs. Coho salmon fry released at a size that would comprise 77/kg showed a return of 1 to 2%, whereas 7 to 8% of fish released at twice that size returned.

the State of Washington's Department of Fisheries. Under this program salmon fry were stocked in protected natural and seminatural bodies of fresh and salt water, and allowed, after a suitable time interval, to escape to the sea. The waters stocked ranged from 0.4 to 210 ha in surface area. In 1964, 8 saltwater areas totalling 174 ha and 25 freshwater areas totalling 785 ha, were in use.

Predatory fishes were usually eliminated by use of rotenone or toxaphene, and in some cases it was thought necessary to regulate the water level. Otherwise, management of the rearing areas was slight, though some attempts were made in small ponds to artificially turn over the water by means of aeration and supplemental feeding and/or fertilization with one or more of a bewildering variety of substances was sometimes employed. In 1964 chinook, coho, chum and pink salmons were all stocked in controlled natural rearing areas (Table 4) and a few sockeye salmon had been stocked in previous years, but fall chinook and coho salmon predominated, largely due to their paramount importance in the increasingly valuable sport fishery.

TABLE 4 NUMBERS OF SALMON STOCKED BY THE WASHINGTON STATE DEPARTMENT OF FISHERIES IN CONTROLLED NATURAL REARING AREAS IN 1964

TYPE AREA	NO OF AREAS	TOTAL AREA IN USE (HA)	SPECIES AND NO. STOCKED				
			COHO	FALL CHINOOK	SPRING CHINOOK	CHUM	PINK
Fresh water	25	785	1 759,536	3,210,572	105,860	—	—
Salt water	8	174	1,006,351	2,510 472	—	1,524,216	1,539 156
Total	33	959	2 765,887	5,721,044	105,860	1,524,216	1,539 156

SOURCE Crutchfield et al (1965)

An economic analysis in 1965 of the controlled natural rearing program indicated a benefit-cost ratio of only 0.13:1. Although resources such as salmon populations can never be adequately evaluated in monetary terms, this definitely cast doubts on the advisability of the program. Biological and economic evaluations were also made of individual rearing areas. Standing crops of coho salmon, where they could be determined, ranged from 1.1 to 407 kg/ha, populations just prior to seaward migration ranged from 29 to 39 840 smolts/ha. Less data are available for the other species stocked, but coho salmon are generally assumed to be the most productive species in environments such as those presented by the controlled natural rearing areas.

Rearing of sockeye salmon fry is done relatively seldom. The only sizable sockeye salmon culture program in the United States goes on at the Leavenworth National Fish Hatchery, Leavenworth, Washington, where conventional Pacific salmon hatchery techniques are used up to the time of absorption of the yolk sac. Free-swimming fry are kept in indoor troughs until about the first of April, when the weather starts to warm up, then stocked in outdoor ponds. The young are not overwintered at Leavenworth but are released in October into nearby Lake Wenatchee. Sockeye salmon have been successfully cultured for the first full year of life at the Winthrop National Fish Hatchery and released in the spring for their seaward migration.

DISEASES AND NUTRITION

Two problems which have beset Pacific salmon culturists since fry rearing first became part of the culture process are disease and nutritional deficiencies. Among the diseases observed in hatchery populations of Pacific salmon are bacterial cold water disease, bacterial gill disease, columnaris and a similar saltwater disease caused by the bacterium *Sporocytophaga*, furunculosis, vibriosis, kidney disease, mycobacteriosis or fish tuberculosis,' protozoan diseases, white spot or coagulated yolk disease, worm infections, and a number of specific virus diseases. Some of these, particularly the virus diseases, are presently incurable, but most can be treated with fair to excellent results.

The traditional approach of salmon culturists to disease problems is drug treatment (the reader interested in specifics is referred to Davis, 1953) but present emphasis is on preventive measures. Chemical prophylaxis, as applied in trout hatcheries, is used, and vaccination is beginning to play an important role, but genetic selection and nutrition are increasingly being recognized as major factors in disease prevention.

One link between nutrition and pathology of young salmon was made clear when the practice of feeding the carcasses of spent spawners and other fresh offal was generally abandoned. The incidence of disease, particularly mycobacteriosis and some of the viruses, was dramatically reduced. The concept of using salmon carcasses as feed is extremely attractive economically, since at a hatchery there will always be large supplies available annually at no cost. They can now be safely converted to feed by means of a process developed and used at the University of Washington. The carcasses are made into meal and combined with an ortholisate also derived from the spent salmon. The ortholisate may be prepared very rapidly by use of synthetic enzymes, but acid digestion by natural salmon enzymes takes only a matter of hours. The two ingredients

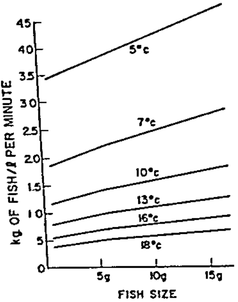


FIG 2 Carrying capacity of oxygen-saturated water at normal activity level of fingerling chinook salmon as affected by water temperature and fish size (After Burrows and Combs 1968)

Stocking rate is a crucial factor in any form of fish culture, including hatchery culture of salmon Although many variables are involved in determining maximum and optimum population densities in hatcheries, and each hatchery must work out its own requirements, Fig 2, which illustrates the carrying capacity of oxygen-saturated water for chinook salmon fingerlings, may be useful

Many other factors affecting survival of hatchery reared chinook and coho salmons are being studied by fishery biologists in Washington and Oregon, among them nutrition, genetics, time, place, and manner of release, and acclimatization to sea water

Studies of young salmon adapted to salt water are presently being made at the Netarts Bay hatchery Under study, in addition to fall chinook salmon, are the presumably more salinity tolerant hybrids of chinook salmon with chum or pink salmon Pilot production studies are just under way, but laboratory experiments have already shown that chinook salmon fry reared in water of about 15‰ salinity for 20 days or longer will survive in full-strength sea water Growth of such fish is inhibited, however, thus an intermediate exposure to water with a salinity of 25‰ is being tested The effects of rearing to a larger size before introduction to salt water and nutrition in salt water are also being studied Preliminary indications are that the hybrids ♀ *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* × ♂ *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* and ♀ *Oncorhynchus keta* × ♂ *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* may adapt rapidly to sea water and render gradual acclimatization unnecessary

TABLE 5 (*continued*)

INGREDIENT	PERCENTAGE	SPECIFICATIONS
Soybean or herring oil	6 0[b c]	Stabilized with 0 333% BHA BHT (1 1) soybean oil to be fully refined, herring oil to contain less than 5 ppm DDT (including analogs), less than 2% free fatty acids and not to be alkaline re processed
Choline chloride	0 5	Liquid, 70% product
	100 0	

[a] Not to be used in 1/32 or 3/64 inch pellets
[b] Delete 0 3 parts oil for every 10 parts dogfish in total diet
[c] Add 0 5 additional parts oil for every 10 parts hake in total diet
[d] May be deleted from 1/32 inch pellets
SOURCE Leith (personal communication)

are combined with a commercial congealing agent and blended to make a highly nutritious and palatable feed

Most chinook, coho, and sockeye salmon hatcheries now feed prepared, pelleted, and powdered feeds in appropriate sizes The prevalent feed in hatcheries in the United States is the Oregon Moist Pellet, whose com position is shown in Table 5 (The Oregon Fish Commission subsequently developed a starter mash for fry, the composition of which is shown in Table 6) Experiments conducted at various hatcheries in Oregon indicate that chinook and coho salmon fed the Oregon pellet diet return to the hatchery at significantly higher rates than fish fed on fresh meat

Vitamins are of course important in nutrition and disease prevention in Pacific salmons, and their requirements have been fairly well worked out Hatcheries usually meet these requirements by adding a preprepared crystalline vitamin premix to the feed The composition of this premix and other parts of hatchery diets changes continually as more and more is learned about the nutritional requirements of salmonids The com position of the premix used in Oregon as of November, 1970, is shown in Table 7, while Table 8 lists the known symptoms of vitamin deficien cies in salmonids

Most of the important advances in nutrition of Pacific salmons have been the result of work done by Oregon State University s Seafood Tech nology Group or by Dr John Halver and his staff at the United States Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife's Western Fish Nutrition Labo-

TABLE 5 FORMULA AND INGREDIENT SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE OREGON MOIST PELLET SALMON DIET, NOVEMBER, 1970

INGREDIENT	PERCENTAGE	SPECIFICATIONS
Meal mix		
Herring meal	28.0	Canadian or domestic, minimum 70% protein, *Full meal*, containing the herring solubles
Cottonseed meal	15.0	Prepressed solvent extracted, not more than 0.01% free gossypol minimum 50% protein
Dried whey product	5.0	Foremost MNC or equivalent
Shrimp or crab meal (preferably shrimp)	1.0	Maximum 5% salt (NaCl), crab meal to contain minimum 30% protein
Wheat germ meal	4.0	Minimum 25% protein and 7% fat
Corn distiller's dried solubles	4.0	
Vitamin premix	1.5	See Table 7
Wet mix Two or more of the following six fish products, provided that none shall exceed 15% of the total diet, and *1/32* and *3/64* inch pellets shall contain at least 7.5% tuna viscera	30.0	
Albacore tuna viscera (*Thunnus alalunga*)		Without heads and gills, with livers
Turbot (*Atheresthes stomias*)		Whole
Salmon viscera		Without heads and gills, with livers pasteurized
Herring (*Clupea pallasii*)		Whole, pasteurized
Dogfish (*Squalus acanthias*)[a,b]		Whole, with livers
Hake (*Merluccius productus*)[a,c]		Whole, pasteurized
Kelp meal	2.0[d]	Algit

chinook salmon, which has been more thoroughly studied than any other salmon from a hatcheryman's point of view If we assume that the average fecundity of a chinook salmon female is about 4000 eggs, and that virtually 100% of these are fertilized, we have, in nature, 4000 embryos per spawning pair Under normal conditions, 99% of these will perish before reaching the sea as smolts On the average, 90% of the 40 remaining smolts will not survive to sexual maturity, leaving only 4 fish The old salmon fishery management policy was to attempt to predict the size of the annual run and harvest 50%, leaving 50% to reproduce Applying this to the remnant of our original 4000 embryos, and assuming a 1 1 sex ratio, we are left with 2 of the potential 4000 fish for human use, and 2 to perpetuate the species Since actual survival varies greatly from year to year, depending on factors which are little understood, the task of the fishery manager is not enviable In an exceptionally good year, the spawning streams may be crowded with excess fish, and the manager may be accused of wasting fish In a poor year, a high fishery quota may result in depletion of the stock, and again it is the fishery manager who is "to blame" for not being omniscient

Let us now assume that our hypothetical pair of chinook salmon spawners were artificially bred in a hatchery We may safely allow for only 40% mortality to the smolt stage (in practice, much better results are often achieved), which leaves 2400 fish, instead of 40, to go to sea Even if survival of the hatchery reared smolts is only half as good as that of natural smolts (5% instead of 10%), the result will be 120 mature adults The fishery manager now has 118 salmon to put on the table, in the can, on the hook, or wherever we want them, and a far greater margin of error to work with

Have these theoretical calculations any basis in reality? Yes, according to an economic study conducted by the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries During 1961 to 1964, BCF biologists fin clipped 30 million chinook salmon smolts liberated from 12 hatcheries in Oregon and Washington which, together, account for 95% of the total hatchery production of the species Starting in 1963, they examined an average of 23% of the total sport and commercial catch of chinook salmon from Monterey Bay, California, to Alaska for marked fish It was concluded that the Spring Creek hatchery alone had produced 22% of the 1965 catch of the Columbia River gill net fishery, plus 15% of the sport catch In concrete terms, the Spring Creek hatchery had contributed about 675,000 kg of 3 year-old chinook salmon to the Columbia River fisheries, while other hatcheries contributed as much as 225,000 kg each The benefits of the program are also felt outside Oregon and Washington and, in 1966, it was calculated that 25,000, or 11 1% of the 225,000 4 year old chinook

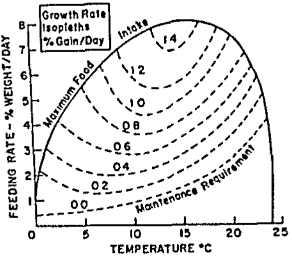


FIG 3 Relationship of feeding rate temperature and growth in yearling sockeye salmon (After Brett Shelbourne and Shoop 1969)

ratory, Cook, Washington, and further important developments may be expected from these sources

The quantity of feed is as important as the quality, overfeeding is not only uneconomic but may result in water pollution, while the effects of underfeeding are obvious The optimum feeding rate is partially determined by water temperature, over which the culturist often has little or no control Figure 3 illustrates the relationship of feeding rate (with a prepared feed similar to the Oregon Pellet), temperature, and growth in weight of yearling sockeye salmon

From Fig 3 it would appear that the optimum temperature for growth is in the neighborhood of 15°C, and this figure does coincide with a general physiological optimum which allows greatest tolerance to oxygen debt, maximum sustained swimming speed, and maximum total metabolic activity However, it should be borne in mind that this temperature is also more favorable for most disease organisms than the colder temperatures customarily encountered by salmon in nature

EVALUATION OF HATCHERY PROGRAMS AND THEIR POTENTIAL

Economic and biological evaluations of hatchery propagation programs for fishery animals have generally been negative, as they have been for the efforts of the early Pacific salmon culturists in Canada, the United States, and Japan Recent improvements in technique, however, have greatly altered the picture Let us take, for a theoretical example, the

TABLE 8 VITAMIN DEFICIENCY SYNDROMES IN SALMONIDS

VITAMIN	SYMPTOMS
Thiamin	Poor appetite, muscle atrophy, convulsions, instability and loss of equilibrium, edema, poor growth
Riboflavin	Corneal vascularization, cloudy lens, hemorrhagic eyes, photophobia, dim vision, incoordination, abnormal pigmentation of iris striated constructions of abdominal wall, dark coloration, poor appetite, anemia, poor growth
Pyridoxine	Nervous disorders, epileptiform fits, hyperirritability, ataxia, anemia, loss of appetite, edema of peritoneal cavity, colorless serous fluid, rapid postmortem rigor mortis, rapid and gasping breathing, flexing of opercles
Pantothenic acid	Clubbed gills, prostration, loss of appetite, necrosis and scarring, cellular atrophy, gill exudate, sluggishness, poor growth
Inositol	Poor growth, distended stomach, increased gastric emptying time, skin lesions
Biotin	Loss of appetite, lesions in colon coloration, muscle atrophy, spastic convulsions, fragmentation of erythrocytes, skin lesions, poor growth
Folic acid	Poor growth, lethargy, fragility of caudal fin, dark coloration, macrocytic anemia
Choline	Poor growth, poor food conversion, hemorrhagic kidney and intestine
Nicotinic acid	Loss of appetite, lesions in colon, jerky or difficult motion weakness, edema of stomach and colon, muscle spasms while resting, poor growth
Vitamin B_{12}	Poor appetite, low hemoglobin, fragmentation of erythrocytes, macrocytic anemia
Ascorbic acid	Scoliosis, lordosis, impaired collagen formation, altered cartilage, eye lesions, hemorrhagic skin, liver, kidney intestine, muscle
p-Aminobenzoic acid	No abnormal indication in growth, appetite, mortality

SOURCE Halver (1970)

salmon taken in the Canadian troll fishery had originated in the hatcheries under study The overall benefit cost ratio of the hatchery program was estimated at 2 8 1.

Similar evaluations of coho salmon hatchery programs were initiated in Oregon in 1965 The following year, the Columbia River experienced its largest coho salmon run in history, an event which was generally at

TABLE 6 FORMULA FOR THE OREGON STARTER MASH SALMON FRY DIET, NOVEMBER, 1970 (INGREDIENT SPECIFICATIONS SAME AS IN TABLE 5)

INGREDIENT	PERCENTAGE
Meal mix	
Herring meal	46 0
Wheat germ meal	10 0
Dried whey product (MNC)	10 0
Corn distiller's dried solubles	4 0
Vitamin mix	1.5
Wet mix	
Albacore tuna viscera	8 0
Turbot, salmon viscera or herring	8 0
Kelp meal (Algit)	2.0
Soybean or herring oil[a]	10 0
Choline chloride	0.5
	100 0

[a] To contain 0.333% BHA BHT (1 1)

TABLE 7 OREGON VITAMIN PREMIX FOR SALMON DIETS, GUARANTEED MINIMUM ANALYSIS AND VITAMIN SOURCE LIMITATIONS, NOVEMBER, 1970

VITAMIN	GUARANTEED MINIMUM ANALYSIS PER POUND	SOURCE LIMITATION
Ascorbic acid	27 0 g	
Biotin	18 0 mg	
B_{12}	1.8 mg	
E	15,200 0 IU	Water dispersible alpha tocopheryl acetate
Folic acid	215 0 mg	Not zinc folate
Inositol	17 0 g	Not phytate
Menadione	180 0 mg[a]	Menadione sodium bisulfite complex or menadione dimethyl pyrimidinol bisulfite
Niacin	5 7 g	
d Pantothenic acid	3.2 g	Calcium pantothenate or choline pantothenate
Pyridoxine	535 0 mg	
Riboflavin	1 6 g	
Thiamine	715 0 mg	

[a] The biological activity of 180 mg of menadione is required

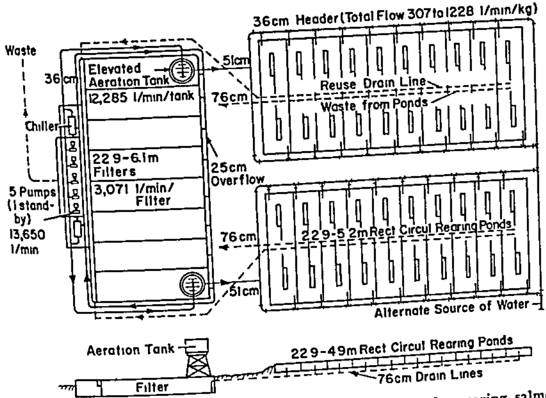


FIG. 4 Recirculating water and environmental control system for rearing salmonid fishes (After Burrows and Combs, 1968)

mists currently claim a benefit-cost ratio of 14 to 20:1. At present, it is estimated that chum salmon runs in Hokkaido can be maintained by investing only 6.2% of the average value of the annual commercial catch.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROL IN HATCHERIES

Future developments in Pacific salmon hatchery techniques are likely to emphasize environmental control. At present, the salmon culturist is much more at the mercy of the elements than the pond fish culturist. Far greater control could be exercised over a number of environmental variables if hatchery waters were recirculated. It would then be possible to regulate the water temperature, maximize dissolved oxygen content, remove ammonia, and sterilize the water as a prophylactic measure.

Figure 4 is a schematic drawing of a recirculating hatchery system designed to provide a controlled environment for salmonids. Water which has been through the system once is collected from the rearing ponds in the reuse drain line and passed to filters containing a 1.2-m-deep layer of sharp rock covered by a 0.3-m layer of crushed oyster shell. The rock and oyster shell bed is ideal for the growth of nitrifying bacteria, which convert nitrogenous wastes to nitrates, harmless within the recirculating

tributed to improved hatchery techniques A tentative economic evaluation of the better coho salmon hatcheries suggests benefit cost ratios (not taking account of amortization) of 3 5 to 5 5 1

Proponents of chum and pink salmon hatcheries are optimistic that artificial propagation can also contribute effectively to North American fisheries for these species Speaking of chum and pink salmon, William J McNeil head of Oregon State University's Pacific Fisheries Laboratory, has asserted that Hatcheries and other artificial methods can increase egg to fry survival by 4 to 80 times over that in natural streams' Even if we assume as we did for chinook salmon smolts that hatchery fry of chum and pink salmon are only half as viable as wild stock, the potential for supplementation of the fishery is obvious McNeil has calculated that in nature a high quality spawning bed, receiving a flow of 10 ft^3/sec, may with an optimum density of spawners produce 2 2 million fry/ha In an improved spawning channel under similar conditions, this production might be increased by a factor of 5 But, based on experience at Oregon State s Netarts Bay facility, a well-designed hatchery, using the same amount of water and far fewer adult fish might produce 220 million fry/ha The latter figure, based on a small prototype study, is of course highly speculative but indicates that tremendous improvement over present methods of salmon production is conceivable

Again there are supporting data, this time from the Japanese chum salmon fishery On the island of Hokkaido there are approximately 160 chum salmon spawning streams 65 of the larger ones which together contribute 98% of the total run have hatcheries on their courses Of the chum salmon which enter these 65 streams an average of 57 7% or approximately 56% of the total Hokkaido run, are spawned artificially at the hatcheries It has been estimated that this 56% of the spawners contribute an average of 77 2% of the adult chum salmon returning to Hokkaido No data are available for the success of natural reproduction of chum salmon in Hokkaido but if eggs from undammed and unpolluted streams in southeastern Alaska are used as a basis of comparison it can be shown that the rate of return from hatchery produced eggs in Hokkaido is 80% greater Even in Honshu which is near the southern limits of the range of *Oncorhynchus keta*, and where pollution damming and other detrimental human interventions are common hatchery reproduction is 21% more successful than natural reproduction in southeastern Alaska streams

As elsewhere hatchery fry in Hokkaido suffer greater mortalities in nature than wild fry, in this case by a factor of 2 to 2 5 If this mortality could be substantially reduced then the already impressive contribution of Japanese chum salmon hatcheries could be increased Japanese econo-

salmon. Its potential for producing salmon fry has, however, historically been reduced by annual scouring floods. In 1963, this problem was eliminated by the installation of a control dam on Horne Lake, and a bypass for flood water from a tributary stream. Discharge, which formerly varied annually from 15 to 7000 ft^3/sec, is now controlled at 40 to 700 ft^3/sec. In addition to enhancing the survival of natural spawns, this has made it possible to construct and maintain a 0.3 km long, 12 m wide artificial spawning channel, two spawning and egg incubation stations, and several rearing ponds. In addition, pink salmon have been introduced to the watershed. In 1969, the combined production of chum salmon fry from the hatchery, the artificial channel, and natural spawning areas was a record 53.5 million. Such combinations of responsible human intervention with optimum use of the natural environment should be encouraged wherever Pacific salmons are spawned.

PROSPECTUS FOR PACIFIC SALMON HATCHERIES

In 1963, it was calculated that to sustain anything approaching the all-time-high North American salmon catch of 152 million fish (all species combined) would require 266 billion eggs, at hatchery survival rates. Obviously no system of artificial propagation could begin to fertilize and hatch that many eggs. It was assumed that hatcheries, while even then locally important, were destined to play only a supplementary role in the overall salmon production picture. The calculations leading to the figure given were, however, based on the old 50–50 escapement formula. As we have seen, if hatcheries are a major source of stock, it should be possible to harvest well over 50% of a run without depleting the source. At the rates of survival typical of the best present-day hatcheries, a fishery yield of 152 million fish could theoretically be maintained through the fertilization of 4 to 5 billion eggs—the product of perhaps 3 million pairs of spawners.

The spectacular improvements in techniques for artificial propagation of *Oncorhynchus* spp. should delight anyone concerned with the future of the Pacific salmon fisheries, and maximum use should be made of them, but they should not be construed as an excuse for environmental complacency. Even if it becomes possible to support all the commercial and sport salmon fisheries solely on the basis of artificial propagation, the continuing destruction of natural salmon runs by pollution, dams, and thoughtless urbanization should be resisted. Natural runs should be maintained not only for esthetic reasons but also to preserve wild stocks and gene pools. It is not inconceivable that some sort of unforeseen calamity, local or widespread, could negate many of the gains thus far made in hatchery culture of *Oncorhynchus* spp. In such an event, the continued

system The oyster shells also prevent the accumulation of free carbon dioxide This technique, though commonplace in sewage treatment, has rarely been applied in aquaculture

Water from the filters is pumped under pressure through aspirators into the aeration tank and returned to the rearing ponds by gravity flow In this way, the dissolved oxygen content can be maintained at a minimum of 6 ppm without causing supersaturation with nitrogen Surface agitation, as used in conventional hatcheries, is equally effective as a means of aeration but, in a recirculating system, also allows possibly lethal concentrations of nitrogen and carbon dioxide to be built up

Temperature control devices may be built into the filtration system, and these can be automated at little additional cost Ultraviolet sterilization may also be incorporated in the filtration process Sterilization is not feasible in conventional hatcheries, but with a recirculating system such as described, where only 2 to 10% of the total volume of water need be replaced to make up for evaporation, leakage, and so forth, ultraviolet radiation may economically be employed The reader interested in more detailed information on the design of hatchery recirculating systems should consult Burrows and Combs (1968)

Systems such as the one just described undoubtedly have the capability to increase the number and size of young salmon produced, with the desirable side effect of reducing pollution from hatcheries Before salmon culturists commit themselves to wholesale adoption of water recirculation and environmental control, however, they should pause to consider the possibility that young salmon reared under uniformly favorable conditions may be less well equipped to cope with the natural environment than the less numerous survivors of more primitive propagation systems

HATCHERY SPAWNING CHANNEL COMBINATIONS

Although artificial spawning channels and hatcheries have been discussed separately, it is not to be assumed that these two approaches to Pacific salmon conservation are mutually exclusive On the contrary they may profitably be combined where more spawners are available than can be handled at a hatchery, or where it is desired to improve the quality of artificially produced fry An outstanding example of the integration of various methods of salmon culture and fishery management is the Big Qualicum River Development Project of the Canadian Department of Fisheries

The Big Qualicum River, which flows 4 3 km from Horne Lake into Qualicum Bay on the east coast of Vancouver Island, has in the past supported a fair natural run of chum salmon and a few chinook and coho

hatched sockeye salmon eggs from the Baker River in northwestern Washington and stocked the fingerlings in the Cedar If the planting were successful, it was reasoned that substantial numbers of adult sockeye salmon should have homed to the river starting in 1935 Few appeared, and the experiment was written off as unsuccessful Then, unexpectedly, in 1960, 12,000 sockeye salmon entered the river Apparently a small run had been present but undetected for 25 years Subsequent runs have numbered as high as 75,000 and are considered to contribute importantly to commercial fisheries

What makes the Cedar River run all the more surprising is the present status of the watershed In the years between the initial stocking and the present, the banks of the Cedar River, which flows through the city of Seattle, have become the most heavily industrialized area in the Pacific Northwest, accommodating, among other industries, the giant Boeing Aircraft complex

The nursery area for Cedar River sockeye salmon is Lake Washington, which is nominally a ' warm water lake Like most such lakes in temperate regions it stratifies during the summer, remaining warm only in the surface layer, or hypolimnion Beneath the hypolimnion is a layer of water called the thermocline, characterized by temperatures which decline rapidly with depth The thermocline is little used by warm water fishes, but is well suited to young sockeye salmon Possible utilization by salmon of this largely unexploited portion in other lakes should be explored

Transplantation, in combination with hatchery techniques may even be employed to establish salmon runs in waters which are unsuitable for natural propagation If conditions can be artificially provided such that hatching of eggs and rearing of the young salmon can be carried out all that is necessary is that ripe spawners be able to reach the hatchery Such methods have considerable potential in culture of sockeye salmon, which have the most restrictive spawning requirements among the Pacific salmons A case in point is the establishment by United States Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife personnel of a sockeye salmon run in the Methow River, Washington Unlike all natural sockeye salmon spawning streams the Methow River has no lakes on its course The run, which originates at the Winthrop National Fish Hatchery, is maintained solely by artificial propagation and rearing of the offspring until time for seaward migration

OUTSIDE THE NATURAL RANGE OF *Oncorhynchus* SPP

No sooner had it been demonstrated that Pacific salmon eggs could be artificially fertilized and hatched, than demands for stock issued from

existence of large natural runs might avert a fishery disaster In maintaining the stocks of Pacific salmon, as in all ecologically based ventures, we should remember that diversity tends toward stability

Improvements in salmon propagation techniques have served to increase or renew interest in a number of other culture and management techniques including transplantation, genetic selection, and commercial salmon farming Transplantation of fish to new waters does not of itself fall within our definition of aquaculture, but in the case of the Pacific salmons this practice is so intimately connected with culture as to merit treatment here

TRANSPLANTATION OF PACIFIC SALMON STOCKS

WITHIN THE NATURAL RANGE OF *Oncorhynchus* SPP

Since the early days of Pacific salmon culture, *Oncorhynchus* spp have been introduced all over the world in regions far removed from their native haunts but, until recently, more notable results have been obtained from introductions within the coastal tributaries of the North Pacific. Such local transplantations may be carried out not only to introduce a species to a body of water where it is not native but to bolster production of weak runs This sort of stocking is particularly applicable to pink salmon management, since pink salmon have a rigid two-year life cycle, and in most streams either the odd or even year run predominates, in some pink salmon streams one or the other cycle may be completely missing Attempts have been made, with at least tentative success, to establish runs in such cases

One of the earliest introductions of a Pacific salmon species to a new body of water occurred in 1923, when fry of anadromous *Oncorhynchus masu* were stocked in the landlocked freshwater Lake Biwa, Japan, where they became established Since that time, attempts have been made to establish most if not all the *Oncorhynchus* spp in watersheds where they are not native. Until recently, young fish have been stocked, but today it is not unusual to plant eyed eggs in an artificial spawning channel as in the introduction of pink salmon to the Big Qualicum River, British Columbia or to propagate and rear the salmon entirely within a hatchery, in which case the stream serves only as a water supply and a highway for the spawners

Another early and notable instance of successful transplantation took place in the Cedar River, Washington In 1932, Loyd Royal, then chief biologist for the Washington Department of Fisheries, obtained and

runs of both sides of the lake. The pink salmon showed promise of importance as a commercial fish but is not generally considered a good sport fish. Consequently, several other species, including the native rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) and brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*), as well as the chinook salmon, coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus masu*, and the striped bass (*Morone saxatilis*), were considered.

It was eventually decided to concentrate on coho salmon, continue normal hatchery operations with rainbow trout and brook trout, and postpone introduction of the other species. Selection of the coho salmon as the chief agent of alewife control was based on its desirability as a sport fish, its hardiness in egg and fry stages, the availability of eggs, and the belief that it is one of the least expensive of the salmonids to propagate and rear.

Although sea-run coho salmon stock has never been successfully adapted to freshwater, Michigan officials profited from the experience of earlier culturists by correcting several mistakes, as follows:

1. Stock was selected, insofar as possible, from environments similar to the new environment. In at least one instance eyed eggs were obtained from a run which enters the Swanson River on Alaska's Kenai Peninsula. A fair percentage of the coho salmon hatched in the Swanson River never return to the sea but pass their lives in freshwater lakes.

2. Fingerlings rather than fry were planted. The Oregon Fish Commission, which supplied the first lot of eggs, stipulated as a precondition that all young be reared at least until they averaged 55/kg.

3. The early Pacific salmon transplants were often of small numbers of fish scattered among many bodies of water. This time, initial plantings consisted of no less than 200,000 fish each, all released in one place. In this way it was felt that individuals which were poorly endowed genetically to cope with the new environment could be weeded out without seriously reducing the reproductive potential in a given spawning stream. Only three of the most promising streams were stocked, and fingerlings were released where they would have easy access to the lake.

4. It has been found that Michigan hatchery water supplies are deficient in iodine. Inadequate supplies of this trace element might well be crucial to eggs and fry of anadromous salmonids, so iodine was added at al hatcheries where coho salmon were kept.

5. The original intent of stocking Pacific salmons in the Great Lakes had been to establish natural spawning runs. Physiological difficulties in adaptation to freshwater notwithstanding, Michigan officials also hoped for natural spawning runs but did not intend to rely solely on natural reproduction for maintenance of fisheries. It was estimated that to sup-

all over the world The result was a plethora of ill advised stocking programs, which accomplished little more than to feed large numbers of *Oncorhynchus* eggs and fry to various predators For example, between 1873 and 1934 more than 6 million chinook salmon mostly fry, were stocked in the Great Lakes of the United States and Canada, but there is no indication that the survivors ever successfully reproduced The introduction of chinook salmon to New Zealand resulted in a sport fishery which is sustained entirely on the basis of natural reproduction, but all the other early transplants failed

It is understandable, then, that more than a few eyebrows were raised when the Michigan Department of Conservation announced its intention to stock coho salmon in Lakes Michigan and Superior, starting in 1966 By now, all fishery and fish culture workers are aware that it appears that this introduction will be successful beyond the fondest hopes of its original proponents It may be instructive to examine the factors which differentiate the stocking program initiated in Michigan from earlier attempts to introduce the coho salmon and other Pacific salmons in the region

Certainly the time was ripe for introduction of a predatory fish Construction in 1932 of the Welland Canal, which circumvents the impassable Niagara Falls, opened the four upper Great Lakes to invasion by a number of previously absent fish species One of these, the parasitic sea lamprey (*Petromyzon marinus*), eventually became so abundant as to effect the virtual extinction of the lake trout (*Salvelinus namaycush*) and the burbot (*Lota lota*), the major piscivorous species in lakes Huron, Michigan and Superior After years of research, an effective method of controlling lamprey populations was discovered and implemented, but by that time the valuable commercial and sport fisheries for lake trout had been destroyed At the same time, another invader, the alewife (*Alosa pseudoharengus*), finding itself virtually free of predation, began to multiply at an enormous rate By 1966, it was estimated that 90% by weight of the total fish population of Lake Michigan was composed of alewives Annual production was estimated at 90 million kg, much of which was wasted in periodic mass mortalities

Alewives have virtually no value as fishery animals, but it was reasoned that they would provide an excellent source of forage for the populations of predatory fishes which could be established now that the lamprey menace was eliminated Of course lake trout figured prominently in the list of prospective alewive predators, but lake trout are confined to very deep water for most of the year To exert control over the alewife at all levels, it was decided to stock a relatively shallow water predator Already, the pink salmon, accidentally introduced to Thunder Bay, on the Canadian side of Lake Superior in 1956, was establishing

mental stocking of *Oncorhynchus masu* in a small lake Indications from this preliminary study and observations of *O masu* in Japanese waters are that it would occupy about the same biological and economic niches as the coho salmon but might adapt more readily to a strictly freshwater life cycle

Chum and pink salmon have rarely been stocked in waters distant from their native habitats, but in the 1930s and again in the 1950s Russian biologists traditionally the world's primary enthusiasts of fish transplan tations distributed these species from Pacific waters to the European waters of the Soviet Union The early introductions were unsuccessful, but later transplants of fish from Sakhalin Island to the Barents and White seas, were accompanied by the construction of three hatcheries on the Kola Peninsula, and appear to have been effective Fry releases at these hatcheries have increased from 3 5 million in 1959 to 30 million in 1962 and pink salmon now appear not only in Barents Sea catches, but in the fisheries of Finland, Norway, Iceland and the United Kingdom Since 1962, a similar program has been carried out in the Caspian Sea and it appears that it may also be successful

SELECTIVE BREEDING

Among salmonid fishes, selective breeding has been most highly devel oped in the rainbow trout (see Chapter 20) In 1949, Lauren Donaldson of the University of Washington's College of Fisheries, who was chiefly responsible for the development of the famous supertrout, decided to begin similar experiments with *Oncorhynchus* spp The first step was to establish spawning runs in a small stream which flows into Union Lake, on the Washington campus Runs of chum, coho, sockeye, and fall chinook salmon were successfully developed, but only the chinook salmon have returned in numbers sufficient to permit selection The sur vivors of the 1949 plant of chinook salmon returned as 4 year-old adults in 1953 and provided twice as many eggs as were needed to maintain the run Thus it was possible to cull up to 50% of the spawners Eventually it became possible to stabilize the production rate at 250,000 selected fingerlings/year Excess eggs and fingerlings are stocked in streams where it is hoped they will contribute to fisheries Donaldson and his co work ers have selected for the following five characteristics

1 Better growth and larger size Size selection both advertent and inadvertent, has long taken place at salmon hatcheries Under hatchery conditions one male can be used to fertilize the eggs of many females

port significant fisheries for coho salmon, rainbow trout, and brook trout in the upper Great Lakes would require production of 40 million yearlings annually, but that natural reproduction could not be relied on to provide more than 25% of that total Accordingly, spawn taking stations and hatchery facilities were constructed on all the streams to be stocked

The primary aim of the Michigan Department of Conservation was to provide a new sport fishery Only if considerable stock was left over was it intended that coho salmon contribute to the rejuvenation of the upper Great Lakes commercial fishery The rapid growth (30 g to 1 8 kg in 7 months) and good survival of the first plants suggested that there might soon be more than enough fish to go around Results in subsequent years have done nothing to dim the early optimism, as coho salmon have been taken in unexpected numbers and in sizes averaging better than normal on the Pacific coast Though the specter of mercury pollution clouds the Great Lakes commercial fishery picture, it appears that there will be no problem in allotting adequate numbers of coho salmon to sport fishermen, commercial fishermen, and hatcheries It is still too early to say whether coho salmon will be able to reproduce satisfactorily, by natural or artificial means, without spending time at sea, but indications to date are favorable, although pesticide residues in spawning streams may pose a threat

The original stocking program continues to expand into Michigan streams, while the other Great Lakes states and the Canadian province of Ontario, encouraged by the apparent success of Michigan s efforts, have proceeded to stock coho salmon in all of the Great Lakes, even grossly polluted Lake Erie, with generally positive preliminary results Interest has been generated in the coho salmon overseas as well, and hatchery stocking programs have been set up in Chile and Spain

Michigan has followed up the coho salmon program by introducing chinook salmon to Lakes Michigan and Superior The initial stocking of 850 000 fingerlings in April, 1967, was made solely to provide a source of eggs for future operations, but it is hoped that in a few years it will be possible to open fisheries Since the chinook salmon is larger and more exclusively piscivorous than the coho salmon, it may prove to be even more valuable as an alewife predator Further, its shorter average residency in streams offers promise of economies in hatchery operation, as well as the establishment of natural runs in streams unsuited for year round habitation by salmon

There continues to be some interest in introducing *Oncorhynchus masu*, or perhaps *Oncorhynchus rhodurus*, to the Great Lakes, and the Ontario Department of Lands and Forests has undertaken one experi

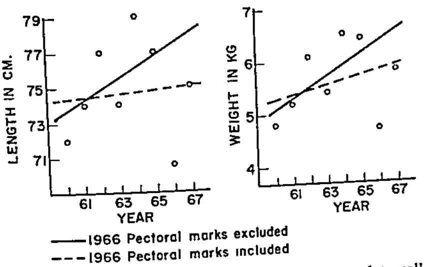


FIG 6 Average size of 3-year-old chinook salmon which returned to collecting ponds at the University of Washington (After Donaldson, 1970)

be selected, for the sake of convenience to hatchery workers, to spawn during a short period of time rather than dribbling in over a fairly long season Before placing much emphasis on this sort of selection, culturists should pause to consider that every time the spawning season is shortened, the potential for a population disaster is increased.

4. Environmental tolerance. Better results have been achieved in this regard with rainbow trout, but there is evidence that the tolerance of chinook salmon for high temperatures, and probably other environmental variables, can be increased.

5. Disease resistance. Again, most of the progress has been made with trout, but the vigor of Donaldson's chinook salmon has certainly been a factor in the deemphasis of drug therapy as a solution to disease problems in Pacific salmon hatcheries.

Further selection is exercised at the fry and fingerling stages Since each batch of embryos, representing the offspring of one spawning pair, is usually maintained separately to the free-swimming stage, batches of eggs and larvae exhibiting poor survival or other undesirable characteristics may be rejected. For economic reasons selected lots of fingerlings must be combined for rearing, so selection at that stage is confined to the routine hatchery process of size grading (see p. 409).

One possible result of a selection program such as that just described is better survival, and this has been achieved. Unselected wild stock have continued to return to the Washington campus on a 4-year cycle at a rate of about 0.1%. Survival from egg to adult of the selected 3-year fish, however, has averaged 1.0 to 3 25%.

The effects of genetic selection are often slow to be felt. Although the

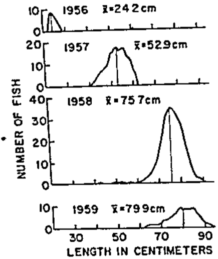


FIG 5 Length distribution of 1955 brood year chinook salmon that returned to collecting ponds at the University of Washington in four different years (After Donaldson and Menasveta 1961)

thus it has become customary to release or destroy all small males At the Spring Creek hatchery in Washington this practice alone has resulted in the establishment of a run of fall chinook salmon which average larger in size than local wild fish and return in three years instead of four The shift to a three year cycle of course increases the chances of survival and provides a theoretical 25% increase in the number of fish that can be produced

Donaldson has continued to select males for size and also selects large females and those which produce large eggs The bulk of the selected stock now return after 3 years at sea, and some have returned after only 2 years, or even 1 year, an event unprecedented in the history of chinook salmon culture The 1 and 2 year-old fish average considerably smaller than the older fish, but, even in the early years of the project, the length of the 3 year-olds did not differ greatly from that of 4 year-olds (Fig 5)

The average size of returning 3 year-olds has increased over the years, albeit with great fluctuations, some of which are now felt to be due to injudicious choice of marking methods in certain years, particularly the removal of the pectoral fins of 1963 brood year fingerlings (Fig 6)

2 Fecundity The more eggs per female, the less females are needed to maintain a run, and the more that can safely be harvested by the fisheries The average number of eggs per female in Donaldson's experiments increased by 34 5%, from about 3800 in 1960 to about 4900 in 1965 to 1967

3 Time of return It has been demonstrated that salmonid stocks can be selected to spawn early or late in the season Since optimum conditions are unlikely to prevail throughout the spawning period, this has some implications for survival It has also been suggested that salmon might

the National Marine Fisheries Service (formerly Bureau of Commercial Fisheries) in collaboration with Ocean Systems, Inc suggest that net cages could be similarly used along the North American coast (for a general discussion of fish culture in floating cages, and its advantages, see p 559) In Puget Sound, coho salmon fingerlings have been reared from an average weight of 0 02 kg to 0 28 kg in 6 months A conversion ratio of 1 5 1 was obtained, using conventional pelleted feed, the incidence of disease was negligible, and all indications are that the system would be commercially feasible Such an undertaking has since been initiated by Ocean Systems, Inc who experimentally marketed their first cage reared salmon in 1972

Actual commercial application would require the construction of private hatcheries for propagation of salmon and rearing to the fry stage From the hatchery facilities, the fry would be transferred to nursery ponds where they could gradually be adapted to salt water while being reared to fingerling size The adaptation process could be eliminated if the growing cages were located in freshwater, which seems feasible at least for chinook, coho, or sockeye salmon The first application of these techniques may come not only on the Pacific coast but also in Nova Scotia, where Sea Pool Fisheries, Ltd, plans to include hatchery spawned and reared chinook salmon among its products

The prospective market size of salmon reared in net cages is 0 20 to 0 35 kg at which weight they might be more competitive with cultured trout than with fishery caught salmon The flesh of the coho salmon experimentally reared by Bureau of Commercial Fisheries biologists was adjudged superior to trout, a factor that lends further economic credibility to commercial net cage culture schemes

The large scale culture in Japan of yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*) has shown that it is possible to profitably rear large fish in net cages, and it is not inconceivable that Pacific salmon might be reared to a size comparable to those harvested by commercial fishermen In some places this or other cage culture programs might be facilitated by mixing heated water from power plant effluents with sea water to maintain optimum growing temperatures year round

PROSPECTUS

The prospectus for culture of the Pacific salmons is one of growth, expansion, and intensification It is to be hoped that those responsible for the management of this huge resource will have the wisdom not to concern themselves with determining *the* most efficient way to produce

history of Donaldson's fall chinook selection program spans only 21 years, as compared to the 38 years he has devoted to the rainbow trout, it has already been shown that genetic selection stands to contribute greatly to the Pacific salmon fisheries Donaldson and others have also studied hybridization, but at the present time it appears to offer less promise Of the several hybrids of *Oncorhynchus* spp which have been produced, only the crosses of chinook salmon with chum or pink salmon, as mentioned, have thus far shown promise for fish culture

SALMON FARMING

In Donaldson's opinion, demonstration of the possibilities in selective breeding of chinook salmon points the way toward true husbandry of *Oncorhynchus* spp Intensive culture of freshwater trout is a sizable industry in several countries, but farming of anadromous salmonids has been slow to develop, despite the great improvements in hatchery techniques

Extensive but unsuccessful experiments in salmon farming were carried out in various locations around the perimeter of Puget Sound, Washington, during the 1950s The plan was to plant hatchery reared chinook and coho salmon fingerlings in saltwater lagoons, where it was hoped that they would grow to marketable size on natural food, with no supplementation In fact, however, the food supply in most of the lagoons was inadequate, which, along with heavy mortalities due to high temperatures, oxygen depletion following die-offs of algae, and disease, eliminated any chance of the operators realizing a profit Attempts were also made at about the same time to raise salmon in concrete raceways, but the high summertime incidence of vibriosis rendered such schemes unfeasible A team of microbiologists at Oregon State University under the direction of John Fryer are currently attempting to develop an oral vaccine for vibriosis which would render the prognosis for future experiments of this sort more favorable

To date, intensive commercial culture of Pacific salmon occurs only in Japan At Okachi Bay, Miyagi Prefecture, 9 month-old salmon (species not known), measuring about 14 cm in length and weighing about 75 g, are stocked in large floating net cages anchored about 150 m from shore The fingerlings are fed for 9 months on pellets made of fish meal and starch with added vitamins and harvested at a length of about 35 cm and a weight of 0 5 kg The conversion ratio achieved in this operation is 1.3 1

Recent experiments by workers at the Seattle Biological Laboratory of

GUNSTROM, G K 1970 Canadian mariculture facility begins operation Am Fish Farmer 2(1) 8–11

HALVER, J E 1970 Nutrition in marine aquiculture *In* W J McNeil (Ed) Marine Aquiculture Oregon State University Press, Corvallis pp 75–102

HALVER, J E, E T MERTZ, D C DELONG, and R E CHANCE 1960 The vitamin and amino acid requirements of salmon Fifth Industrial Congress on Nutrition, Abstracts, No 191

HUBLOU, W F, J WALLIS, T B MCKEE, D K LAW, R O SINNHUBER, and T C YU 1959 Development of the Oregon pellet diet Res Briefs, Fish Comm Ore 7(1) 28–56

International Pacific Salmon Fisheries Commission 1970 Annual Report—1969 33 pp

Japan Fisheries Resource Conservation Association 1966 Propagation of the chum salmon in Japan

KISABURO, T 1965 Returning effect and its limit resulting from the artificial propagation of chum salmon in Hokkaido Bull Jap Soc Sci Fish 31 323–326

LEITRITZ, E 1960 Trout and salmon culture (hatchery methods) California Department of Fish and Game, Fishery Bull 107

LUCAS K C 1960 The Robertson Creek spawning channel Can Fish Cult 26 3–23

McDONALD, J G 1969 Distribution, growth, and survival of sockeye fry (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) produced in natural and artificial stream environments J Fish Res Board Can 26 229–267

McLARNEY, W O 1964 The coastrange sculpin *Cottus aleuticus* structure of a population and predation on eggs of the pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* M.S Thesis, School of Natural Resources University of Michigan 83 pp

McNEIL W J 1962 Variations in the dissolved oxygen content of intragravel water in 4 spawning streams of southeast Alaska U.S Fish and Wildlife Service, Special Scientific Report—Fisheries No 402 15 pp

McNEIL W J 1964 Redd superimposition and egg capacity of pink salmon spawning beds J Fish Res Board Can 21(6) 1385–1396

McNEIL, W J 1969 Survival of pink and chum salmon eggs and alevins *In* T G Northcote (Ed), Symposium on Salmon and Trout in Streams, H R McMillan Lectures in Fisheries University of British Columbia, pp 101–117

McNEIL, W J 1970 Culture of salmon acclimated to sea water Paper presented to Western Division American Fisheries Society and Western Association of State Game and Fish Commissioners, July 13–16, 1970 Victoria, British Columbia

McNEIL, W J, and W H AHNELL 1964 Success of pink salmon spawning relative to size of spawning bed materials U.S Fish and Wildlife Service Special Scientific Report—Fisheries, No 469 15 pp

NECE, R E 1961 Hydraulic design and construction details of salmon spawning channel improvement areas on Indian Creek and Harris River University of Washington, Fisheries Research Institute, Circular 145 4 pp

NIKOLSKII G V 1961 Special Ichthyology Israel Program for Scientific Translations Jerusalem

PALMER, D D, H E JOHNSON L A ROBINSON, and R E BURROWS 1951 The effect of retardation of the initial feeding on the growth and survival of salmon fingerlings Prog Fish Cult 13(2) 55–62

salmon It is the combination of aggressive conservation of natural runs maximum supplementation by means of hatcheries and artificial spawning channels and encouragement of true salmon farming that is likeliest to perpetuate *Oncorhynchus* spp in their role as important contributors to human well being

REFERENCES

BAMS R A 1967 Differences in performance of naturally and artificially propagated sockeye salmon migrant fry as measured with swimming and predation tests J Fish Res Board Can 24 1117 1153

BAMS R A 1970 Evaluation of a revised hatchery method tested on pink and chum salmon fry J Fish Res Board Can 27(8) 1429–1452

BEVAN D E 1963 An experiment to improve an Alaskan salmon spawning area Proceedings of the 13th Alaskan Science Conference

BORGESON D P and W H TODY (Eds) 1967 Status report on Great Lakes fisheries Michigan Department of Conservation Fisheries Management Rep No 2

BRANNON E. L. 1965 The influence of physical factors on the development and weight of sockeye salmon embryos and alevins International Pacific Salmon Fisheries Commission Project Rep 12 26 pp

BRETT J R. J E. SHELBOURNE and C T SHOOP 1969 Growth rate and body composition of fingerling sockeye salmon *Oncorhynchus nerka* in relation to temperature and ration size J Fish Res Board Can 26 2363–2394

BURROWS R E., and B D COMBS 1968 Controlled environments for salmon propagation Prog Fish Cult 39(3) 123–136

CROKER R. S., and D REED (Eds) 1963 Report of Second Governor's Conference on Pacific Salmon Seattle Wash Jan 7 10 1963 State Printing Plant Olympia Washington

CRUTCHFIELD J A K B KRAL and L A PHINNEY 1965 An economic evaluation of Washington State Department of Fisheries controlled natural rearing program for coho salmon (*O kisutch*) State of Washington Department of Fisheries Research Division 27 pp (Mimeographed)

DAVIS H S 1953 Culture and Diseases of Game Fishes U of California Press Berkeley 332 pp

DISLER, N N 1953 Development of autumn chum salmon in the Amur River Trudy Soveshchaniya po Yoprosan Losoevoge Khorgaistva Dal rego Vostoka 9 129–143 (Trans IPST Cat No 763)

DONALDSON L. R. 1966 Selective breeding of salmonoid fishes and application of the results to management Paper presented at 11th Pacific Science Congress Tokyo 1966

DONALDSON L. R. 1970 Selective breeding of salmonoid fishes *In* W J McNeil (Ed) Marine Aquiculture Oregon State University Press Corvall s pp 65–74

DONALDSON L. R. and D MENASVETA 1961 Selective breeding of chinook salmon Trans Am Fish Soc. 90(2) 160–164

22

Culture of Coregonid Fishes in the Soviet Union

The whitefish and ciscoes (*Coregonus* spp) and the sheefish or inconnu (*Stenodus leucichthys*) were formerly considered to constitute the family Coregonidae but are now placed in the Salmonidae, along with the trouts, salmons, chars, and graylings Culture of cold water fishes for food is an offshoot of sport fish culture, thus culture of the coregonids is less advanced than that of the trouts and salmons, which include some of the world's most popular game fishes

The whitefish group does contain a number of important food fishes but, although various whitefish were cultured in the United States and Europe during the hatchery craze of the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, it is only in the Soviet Union that hatchery culture of coregonids on a large scale persists Some species of *Coregonus* are artificially propagated in Sweden for stocking in rivers where natural spawning is hindered or prevented by power dams The Russian coregonids include species occupying a wide variety of ecological niches thus Soviet culturists also increasingly employ them in pond culture Table 1 lists some of the characteristics of the species cultured in the Soviet Union

PHILLIPS, R. W., and E. W. CLAIRE. 1966. Intragravel movement of reticulate sculpin, *Cottus perplexus*, and its potential as a predator on salmonid embryos. Trans. Am. Fish. Soc. 95(2): 210–212.

TODY, W. H., and H. A. TANNER. 1966. Coho salmon for the Great Lakes. Michigan Department of Conservation, Fisheries Management Report No. 1.

VANSTONE, W. E., J. R. MARKERT, D. B. LISTER, and M. A. GILES. 1970. Growth and chemical composition of chum (*Oncorhynchus keta*) and sockeye (*O. nerka*) salmon fry produced in spawning channel and natural environments. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 27: 371–382.

WAHLE, R. J. Salmon hatcheries, an encouraging supplement to a Pacific coast fishery. Unpublished manuscript, U.S. Bureau of Commercial Fisheries.

WORLUND, D. D., R. J. WAHLE, and P. D. ZIMMER. 1969. Contribution of Columbia River hatcheries to harvest of fall chinook salmon (*O. tshawytscha*). U.S. Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, Fishery Bull. 67(2).

Interviews and Personal Communication

BOYD, F. C. Canadian Department of Fisheries.

DONALDSON, L. R. College of Fisheries, University of Washington.

LEITH, D. A. Program Leader, Nutrition Physiology Investigations, Oregon Fish Commission, Research Laboratory, Sandy, Oregon.

McNEIL, W. J. Head, Pacific Fisheries Laboratory, Marine Science Center, Oregon State University, Newport, Oregon.

WEED, J. Washington Department of Fish and Game.

TABLE 1. *(continued)*

SPECIES	DISTRIBUTION	SIZE	HABITAT	FOOD
Coregonus muksun (muksun)	Baltic Sea to Siberia	To 70 cm	Bays and estuaries; anadromous	Mostly benthos, some zooplankton, also dead fish
Coregonus nasus (broad whitefish)	Siberia to northern Canada	To 16 kg	Rivers, lakes, and occasionally estuaries	Benthos
Coregonus peled (peled)	Siberia; introduced widely in U.S.S.R. as far south as the Ukraine	To 50 cm and 5 kg	Lakes and rivers; cultured in ponds	Planktonic crustaceans
Stenodus leucichthys (inconnu)	Arctic Ocean and its tributaries; Alaska from the Yukon River north; Caspian Sea	To 1 m and 40 kg	Oceans, rivers, and lakes; usually anadromous	Fish

TABLE 1 SPECIES OF COREGONID FISHES CULTURED IN THE SOVIET UNION, THEIR DISTRIBUTION AND CHARACTERISTICS

SPECIES	DISTRIBUTION	SIZE	HABITAT	FOOD
Coregonus albula (European cisco)	British Isles to the Baltic Sea, also in some lakes in the Volga Basin, introduced to many parts of the USSR	To 46 cm	The oceans and warm and cold lakes marine populations anadromous cultured in ponds	Zooplankton
Coregonus autumnalis (Arctic cisco)	Arctic Ocean and its tributary rivers also Lake Baikal	To 60 cm and 2 5 kg	Mostly found in or near estuaries, also rivers and lakes anadromous	Zooplankton and fish fry
Coregonus lavaretus (common whitefish)	Northern Europe south to Switzerland and east to Siberia, introduced to Japan and southern USSR	To more than 50 cm	Many subspecies each with a characteristic habitat, found in the sea, rivers, and deep and shallow waters of lakes, marine forms anadromous lacustrine forms may be anadromous, cultured in ponds	Zooplankton as young mostly benthos as adults

now also stocked in Ukrainian ponds, where they do well at temperatures of up to 25°C

Coregonid fishes seem firmly entrenched in Soviet fish culture, both for intensive cultivation as a luxury food and for low intensity polyculture in new impoundments, where they are stocked as part of an artificial ecosystem. Both types of culture are limited by the normally slow maturation of coregonids; at present insufficient data are available to predict whether culture of coregonids, in or out of the Soviet Union, will expand

REFERENCES

NIKOL'SKII, G V 1961 Special Ichthyology, 3rd ed Translated from the Russian Israel Program of Scientific Translation, Jerusalem

OVCHYNNYK, M 1963 Soviet fish culture Fish News Inter 2(3) 279–282

Hatchery culture of coregonids is not dissimilar to trout culture (see Chapter 19) in its methodology The major function of coregonid hatcheries in the Soviet Union is to produce fry for stocking both as a means of replenishing stocks depleted by overfishing and/or dams which interfere with spawning migrations and for introduction to new waters No recent data are available, but Table 2 lists numbers of fry stocked for 1954 The effects of this program are not known

TABLE 2 NUMBER OF FRY OF FIVE SPECIES OF COREGONID FISHES STOCKED IN THE SOVIET UNION IN 1954

SPECIES	NUMBER OF FRY STOCKED (MILLIONS)
European cisco	108 6
Arctic cisco	131 0
common whitefish	127 2
peled	1 2
inconnu	2 8
Total	370 8

SOURCE Ovchynnyk (1963)

Coregonus muksun and *Coregonus nasus* are not used for stocking natural waters, but Soviet hatcherymen have succeeded in hybridizing these species with *Stenodus leucichthys* to produce a large fish said to show promise for stocking in the lakes rivers, and reservoirs of Siberia Another promising coregonid hybrid is *Coregonus albula* × *Coregonus lavaretus maraenoides*, which matures in the rather short time span of 2 years and is suitable for culture in ponds 5 ha in area or larger

Although the peled has been considered for use in monoculture, the principal use of coregonids in pond culture is to supplement production of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) or common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) The European cisco, which feeds on zooplankton, is the species most frequently stocked, but the peled also a zooplankton feeder, or the benthos-feeding broad whitefish or common whitefish may be stocked in addition to, or in place of, the peled In the vicinity of Leningrad, common whitefish mature in 2 years in ponds, as opposed to the 4 to 5 years required in nature

Most of the Russian coregonids are native to northern waters, but the European cisco is found as far south as the Volga Basin and is stocked in ponds with common carp in the Ukraine Soviet biologists have had considerable success in acclimating cold water fishes to the warm waters of the southern Soviet Union and the common whitefish and peled are

Ayu have been spawned in captivity, but results have been poor, and the practice has not yet been adopted by commercial culturists Artificially spawned ayu have occasionally been used to stock new waters For this purpose, ripe fish, captured by means of traps, seines, cast nets, or hook and line, are stripped and the eggs fertilized, using the dry method (see p 400 for a description of these techniques) Fertilized eggs, in lots of about 20,000, are distributed on 36 × 24 cm mats made of hemp palm bark and placed in floating boxes until they are eyed Eyed eggs are quite hardy and, when covered with moss, will withstand shipment to distant hatcheries, where they may be hatched in flowing water tanks and the fry stocked in streams It has been reported, perhaps erroneously, that in Taiwan, ayu eggs have been collected on sunken mats similar to those described above

Practical ayu culturists in Japan neither strip eggs from adult fish nor collect them from streams but rather rely on fry collected from the sea, estuaries, and rivers during January to May as a source of stock The rivers of Tokushima Prefecture, located on the Island of Shikoku in the Inland Sea, are the source of two thirds of the estimated 1500 tons of fry collected annually About half of these fry are shipped elsewhere in Japan for growing

Growing of marketable size ayu is a short process and, since stocks of fry are not available year round, it is often practiced as a seasonal sideline by culturists whose principal product is some other fish Fry 50 to 65 mm long are preferred for stocking and can be grown to marketable fish 17 5 to 23 0 cm long, weighing about 0 1 kg each, in 90 days at optimum temperatures of 21 0 to 23 5°C

Ayu are grown in ponds as small as 15 m² in area, raceways, and, very rarely, rice fields, best results have been achieved in raceways, where heavy feeding is less likely to pollute the water They have also been grown experimentally in a closed recirculating water system designed by A Saeki of Tokyo University (see pp 55, 58 for description), but the device has yet to be adopted by commercial ayu culturists Whatever type of enclosure is used, cultured ayu are heavily fed on prepared foods and harvested from April to September

The poor conversion by ayu of artificial feed (feed accounts for 56 1% of the average ayu grower's budget) is the principal contributing factor to the extremely high price of cultured ayu Nevertheless, the demand is increasing rapidly, as are yields and production totals In 1960 the average yield was 3816 kg/ha, by 1961 it had risen 103% to 7810 kg/ha The Japanese government ceased to keep production figures on ayu after 1961, but it is estimated that 1810 metric tons were produced by culturists in 1965 and 2420 metric tons in 1967 The majority of this produc

23

Culture of Smelts and Ayu

Though the smelts (family Osmeridae) small, slender fishes found in marine and freshwaters throughout much of the northern hemisphere, are popular food fishes over most of their range, they have generally been successful in maintaining their numbers in the face of fishery exploitation Thus smelt culture, though practiced on a small scale in Japan and the Soviet Union, has not assumed great commercial importance

The ayu (*Plecoglossus altivelis*), sometimes classified in the Osmeridae and sometimes in its own family, Plecoglossidae, presents a different picture This smeltlike fish is considered a gourmet delicacy in east Asia and is the basis for a profitable, though fairly primitive, form of fish culture in Japan

Ayu are anadromous, but pass most of their one year life cycle in freshwater After spending their first few months of life in the sea (or in Lake Biwa, where ayu are landlocked), 20 to 30 mm fry enter rivers in the spring and gradually migrate upstream, feeding on benthic organisms, principally algae, as they go By late summer, they have reached lengths of up to 25 cm and begin to migrate back to the lower reaches of the river, where spawning occurs in September to November Each female deposits 10,000 to 100 000 tiny, extremely adhesive eggs on a gravel bed in 30 to 50 mm of swiftly flowing water After spawning, the adults die. The eggs hatch in 10 to 24 days at 15 to 23°C, and the newly hatched fry are carried out to sea.

supply ayu as late as New Year's Day Spawning may be delayed very simply, by lighting the culture area so that the photoperiod is extended to 14 to 18 hours from July or early August to October Ayu thus treated have been kept alive until February to April of the following year without experiencing reproductive activity

Outside of Japan, ayu are found in Korea, China, and Taiwan but are not cultured in these countries It is possible that in Taiwan there would be a demand for such a luxury product as cultured ayu, but it seems unlikely that ayu culture will excite much interest elsewhere in Asia at this time

One species of true smelt, the wakasagi or pond smelt (*Hypomesus olidus*), is also cultured in Japan It is an annual, anadromous fish similar to the ayu but reaches only half the ayu's size Wakasagi, which spawn in January to March, have been artificially spawned and used to stock streams in the manner described for ayu Wakasagi fry may also be stocked, along with other fishes, in farm ponds used as irrigation basins for rice fields Since wakasagi are plankton feeders they are considered most suitable for deep ponds of this type

Another smelt, *Osmerus eperlanus*, is the object of hatchery culture for stocking of natural waters in some parts of the Soviet Union *O eperlanus*, like most smelts, is fished during its spawning run, and fishermen on the Neva River achieve at least a theoretical economy by supplying eggs and milt from their catch for hatchery use in providing fry to be stocked back into the river

The immediate prospects for widespread culture of smelt and smeltlike fishes seem remote, since the individual fish are rather small, the important fisheries are not seriously threatened, and with the notable exception of the ayu, most species bring low prices

REFERENCES

Brown E E. 1969 The fresh water cultured fish industry of Japan University of Georgia College of Agriculture Experiment Station Research Rep 41

Crawford D R 1926 Hatching of Japanese ayu eggs in the United States Copeia 1926(152) 113–114

Hora S L and T V R Pillay 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biological Technical Paper 14 204 pp

Kuronuma K 1956 Fish production in fresh water units of Japan Proc 8th Pac Sci Cong IIIA 1089–1104

Kuronuma K 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in the Far East FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII IV/R 1

Nikolskii G V 1961 Special ichthyology 3rd ed Translated from the Russian Israel Program for Scientific Translation Jerusalem

tion comes from Honshu in the vicinity of the cities of Kobe, Kyoto, and Nagoya, but Tokushima Prefecture is also an important culture region

Ayu culturists count on heavy feeding to produce rapid growth, so that their product hits the market before the fishery product By August and September, when the market may be flooded with both cultured and wild ayu, the price, while still high may be less than one fourth that in April The better restaurants constitute the principal market, but at such times ayu may also be purchased for home use

As long as supplies of fry hold out, the prospectus for ayu culture as a profitable business looks bright If artificial spawning of ayu becomes commercially feasible, expansion appears even more likely, and prices may be reduced The principal stumbling block is the difficulty of providing enough natural food during October to November, when the fry are too small to utilize artificial feeds and pond water is too cold to maintain abundant benthos

Biologists at a number of fisheries stations in Japan have sought to circumvent this problem by controlling the photoperiod to speed up sexual maturation and spawning so that fry will be on artificial feed by the time cold weather sets in Success was achieved by shading ponds containing brood stock to shorten the photoperiod during May, returning to a natural regime until mid June then suddenly or gradually shortening the daily photoperiod by 5 to 6 hours Fish so treated spawned about 2 months ahead of schedule, but the quality of eggs was low, as can be seen in Table 1

TABLE 1 QUALITY OF EGGS AND LARVAE PRODUCED BY NATURALLY AND ARTIFICIALLY RIPENED AYU (*Plecoglossus altivelis*)

	EGGS SHED BY LIGHT TREATED AYU	EGGS STRIPPED FROM RIVER AYU
Diameter of egg (mm)	0 78–0 98	0 83–1 20
Hatching (%)	65 17	74.39
Size of fry (mm)	3 8 –6 3	6 0 –7 3
Mortality immediately after hatching (%)	47 0	0 1

SOURCE Kuronuma (1966)

If the process of inducing early spawning is perfected, it will not only increase the likelihood of artificial spawning assuming an important role in commercial culture of ayu but will give the culturist a further advantage over the fisherman by enabling him to produce fish for market before the fishery opens A similar advantage may be attained by means of delayed spawning which has already been used by some culturists to

a chapter to itself (Chapter 1), and the few cultured African cyprinids are discussed along with other fishes under Culture of Native Freshwater Fishes of Africa (Chapter 12) No cyprinids are native to Australia or South America North America boasts a large number of native cyprinids, but most of them are small and none are esteemed as food fishes, nor have any of them been cultured for that purpose There remain to be discussed a number of commercially valuable cyprinids native to Europe, the Near East, and Asiatic Russia Biologists in the Soviet Union have been especially active in culturing these species, both for use in experimental polyculture and for stocking in natural waters, and the bulk of this chapter will deal with Russian work Table 1 lists the species of cyprinids (other than those discussed in other chapters) which are cultured in the Soviet Union and their outstanding characteristics Readers interested in a particular cyprinid species should consult the index if it is not to be found here

PROPAGATION AND STOCKING OF ANADROMOUS FORMS

A number of Russian Cyprinidae are atypical for the family in being more or less anadromous Some of these species spend most of their time in fresh or brackish water and spawn in the lower reaches of rivers, others feed well offshore in the open saline waters of the Caspian, Aral and Black seas and make spawning migrations of 1000 km or more The Aral Sea race of the shemaia (*Chalcalburnus chalcoides*) has become so adapted to salt water that it can reproduce successfully in water with a salinity of 11‰

All the anadromous cyprinids are threatened, at least locally, by the proliferation of hydroelectric dams on Russian rivers Among the species which are commercially valuable, six—the shemaia, the roach (*Rutilus rutilus*) the cut tooth (*Rutilus frisii*) the bream (*Abramis brama*) the vimba (*Vimba vimba*), and the Aral barbel (*Barbus brachycephalus*)—are propagated in hatcheries and released in the hope of ameliorating the situation Maintenance and improvement of natural spawning grounds are also practiced for roach and bream and special floating spawning beds have been constructed for bream The numbers of four of these species stocked in 1954 are listed in Table 2 No more recent data are available, but it can be stated that three changes have been made

1 More fish of all species are stocked
2 The cut tooth and the Aral barbel have been added to the list of species stocked

24

Culture of Cyprinids Native to Europe and Asiatic Russia

SPECIES CULTURED

No family of fishes has contributed so much to aquaculture as the Cyprinidae 55 species of which are treated in this text. With the exception of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) which holds the distinction of being the world s most widely cultured fish monoculture of Cyprinids is rare More often they are stocked as components in polyculture systems which reach a zenith of sophistication in the traditional practices of Chinese carp culture. A large percentage of the cultured cyprinids are native to China, southeast Asia, or the Indian subcontinent all of these species have been treated under Chinese Carp Culture (Chapter 2) and Culture of the Indian Carps (Chapter 3) The common carp is accorded

TABLE 1 (*continued*)

SPECIES	DISTRIBUTION	SIZE	HABITAT AND SPAWNING HABITS	FEEDING HABITS	ECONOMIC VALUE
Rutilus rutilus (roach)	Europe east of Pyrenees and north of Alps, Siberia and Aral Sea Basin	Freshwater stocks to 30 cm or more, migratory stocks to 50 cm and 1 kg	Freshwater stocks in sluggish rivers and lakes, in deep waters, often hide in vegetation, spawns in May at 10°C, migratory stocks in fresh and salt water, may winter in rivers, spawn March May in sluggish water in lower reaches of rivers	1st year zooplankton, 2nd year on aquatic vegetation and benthic animals, large roach may eat fish	Extremely important commercially, particularly in Caspian Sea Basin; cultured in France
Tinca tinca (tench)	Lowland rivers and lakes of Europe, Asian basin of Arctic Ocean, widely introduced in Asia, Australia, North Africa, and North America	To 70 cm and 7.5 kg, usually smaller	Stagnant waters over soft bottoms prefers heavy growths of vegetation, very tolerant of low O_2 concentrations spawns on vegetation in May July at 19–20°C	Fry zooplankton, young and adults benthic invertebrates, algae, and vegetable detritus	Important in pond culture, not in fisheries
Vimba vimba (vimba)	Basins of North, Baltic, Black and Caspian seas	To 35 cm or more	Open waters winters in rivers in basins of Black Sea and Sea of Azov spawns on stones in streams and rivers during June July at 18–25°C	Young zooplankton, adults benthic invertebrates	Important commercially, high quality food fish

TABLE 1 CULTURED CYPRINID FISHES (OTHER THAN *Cyprinus carpio*) NATIVE TO EUROPE AND ASIATIC RUSSIA, THEIR DISTRIBUTION, CHARACTERISTICS AND ECONOMIC VALUE

SPECIES	DISTRIBUTION	SIZE	HABITAT AND SPAWNING HABITS	FEEDING HABITS	ECONOMIC VALUE
Abramis brama (bream)	All of Europe east of the Pyrenees and north of the Alps also basins of the Black Caspian and Aral seas widely introduced in Asiatic Russia	To 70 cm usually not over 45 cm	Freshwater and semianadromous populations in deep water spawns in lower reaches of rivers over weeds April July at 17–20°C	Fry zooplankton young and adults benthic animals, especially chironomid larvae large individuals occasionally take fish	Extremely important commercially
Barbus brachycephalus (Aral barbel)	Basins of Aral and Caspian seas	To 1 m and 20 kg	Open waters anadromous spawns June August	Young benthic invertebrates especially chironomid larvae adults carnivorous mostly on aquatic insects	Very important commercially in Aral basin mostly eaten dried superior quality for this purpose
Chalcalburnus chalcoides (shemaia)	Basins of Black Caspian and Aral seas	To 40 cm	Open waters of seas and some freshwater lakes winters in streams spawns in fresh or brackish water in May at 18–20°C	Plankton	Saltwater stocks commercially important mostly eaten dried superior quality for that purpose
Leuciscus idus (ide or orfe)	Europe north of the Alps and east of the Rhine to Kolyma River Siberia	To 75 cm and 4 kg usually smaller	Upper layers of sluggish rivers and lakes spawns April May at 6°C or more	Young zooplankton, adults benthic invertebrates mostly insects occasionally fish	Commercially important in U.S.S.R. only
Rutilus frisii (cut tooth)	Basins of Black and Caspian seas	To 60 cm and 6 kg	Mostly freshwater rivers and lakes spawns April May over stones	Mollusks insect larvae, and crustaceans	Commercially important stocks declining

TABLE 1 (*continued*)

SPECIES	DISTRIBUTION	SIZE	HABITAT AND SPAWNING HABITS	FEEDING HABITS	ECONOMIC VALUE
Rutilus rutilus (roach)	Europe east of Pyrenees and north of Alps Siberia and Aral Sea Basin	Freshwater stocks to 30 cm or more, migratory stocks to 50 cm and 1 kg	Freshwater stocks in sluggish rivers and lakes, in deep waters, often hide in vegetation, spawns in May at 10°C, migratory stocks in fresh and salt water, may winter in rivers, spawn March May in sluggish water in lower reaches of rivers	1st year zooplankton, 2nd year on aquatic vegetation and benthic animals, large roach may eat fish	Extremely important commercially, particularly in Caspian Sea Basin; cultured in France
Tinca tinca (tench)	Lowland rivers and lakes of Europe, Asian basin of Arctic Ocean, widely introduced in Asia, Australia, North Africa, and North America	To 70 cm and 7.5 kg usually smaller	Stagnant waters over soft bottoms, prefers heavy growths of vegetation, very tolerant of low O_2 concentrations, spawns on vegetation in May July at 19–20°C	Fry zooplankton, young and adults benthic invertebrates, algae, and vegetable detritus	Important in pond culture, not in fisheries
Vimba vimba (vimba)	Basins of North, Baltic, Black, and Caspian seas	To 35 cm or more	Open waters winters in rivers in basins of Black Sea and Sea of Azov, spawns on stones in streams and rivers during June July at 18–25°C	Young zooplankton, adults benthic invertebrates	Important commercially, high quality food fish

TABLE 2 NUMBERS OF LARVAE AND YOUNG OF NATIVE CYPRINID FISHES (OTHER THAN *Cyprinus carpio*) STOCKED IN THE SOVIET UNION IN 1954

SPECIES	LARVAE	YOUNG FISH
	(MILLIONS)	
Bream (*Abramis brama*)	222 9	762 3
Roach (*Rutilus rutilus*)	209 1	3,358 3
Shemaia (*Chalcalburnus chalcoides*)	—	0 8
Vimba (*Vimba vimba*)	7 2	2 3

SOURCE Ovchynnyk (1963)

3 More young fish and less larvae are stocked, as the latter practice has been shown to result in poor survival

POND CULTURE

Sufficient data are not available to estimate the value of rearing and stocking anadromous cyprinids but there can be little doubt of the success of the Soviet pond stocking program Among the fishes discussed in this chapter, five, the tench (*Tinca tinca*), the roach, the ide or orfe (*Leuciscus idus*), the vimba, and the shemaia, are of some importance in pond culture

TENCH

Some artificially propagated tench (*Tinca tinca*) are stocked in natural waters in the Soviet Union, and artificial ponds are built for them to spawn in Spain but their primary use in Russia and other European countries is as a supplementary fish in common carp ponds Tench have been widely introduced outside Europe but have not achieved much importance, though they are or have been occasionally cultured in Australia, India, Indonesia, Israel, Japan and Tunisia

In Europe, the general practice is to stock 90% common carp and 10% tench, but more complicated polyculture schemes may also include tench (see p 229) Carp-tench culture has been criticized by a number of biologists as being an inadequate means of increasing pond productivity, but tench possess several desirable attributes, and operators persist in growing them Among the advantages of tench for culture, alone or with carp are

1 In feeding, tench probe more deeply into the mud than carp, and so increase pond productivity by recycling nutrients

2. Although the food habits of tench overlap with carp to some extent, they utilize natural food items left untouched by carp. (It is not clear just what are the food habits of tench. In Russia they are supposed to eat mainly benthic invertebrates, but Asian stocks commonly consume algae and vegetable detritus, and are said to derive only one third of their nourishment from animal matter.)
3. Tench may consume partially digested pieces of artificial feed found in carp feces.
4. The oxygen consumption of tench is very low.
5. Tench brings 20% more in the market than does carp.

Disadvantages of tench are:

1. Tench are usually able to reproduce naturally in fish farm ponds, and may thus overpopulate them, in which case they begin to compete with carp.
2. Tench are very easily injured by handling.
3. Tench grow slowly and never obtain the size reached by carp; market demand is chiefly for 120 to 300 g fish.
4. Tench prefer to spend much of their time concealed in aquatic vegetation or buried in mud. Many may remain so hidden when a pond is drained, and thus be lost to the culturist.

It is likely that there will continue to be a small but steady demand for tench in Europe. Since the habits of tench ensure that a major tench fishery will not develop, it is likely that certain culturists, particularly in France and Yugoslavia, where tench culture is traditional, will continue to supply this demand.

In nature, tench spawn on vegetation in still water, during May to June when the temperature reaches 19 to 20°C. The culturist may spawn them under essentially the same circumstances in special 0.5 to 1.0 ha spawning ponds or in ponds also used for the rearing of fingerling or one summer old carp. In the latter case, 1 to 2 pairs/ha of 3 to 4 year-old breeders are stocked and the resulting young reared along with the carp until the end of the second summer, at which time the species are separated. If a special spawning pond is used, the bottom should be soft but not too muddy, and it should contain a fair amount of submerged vegetation. Under these circumstances, 20 to 40 pairs/ha may be stocked. The sexes may be distinguished by the size and structure of the pelvic fins which in the male are larger and have a thickened second ray (Fig. 1).

Whichever method is used, the culturist will experience difficulty in collecting the small, secretive one-summer-old tench. The only way to achieve success is by keeping the drain channels clean at all times and

TABLE 2 NUMBERS OF LARVAE AND YOUNG OF NATIVE CYPRINID FISHES (OTHER THAN *Cyprinus carpio*) STOCKED IN THE SOVIET UNION IN 1951

SPECIES	LARVAE	YOUNG FISH
	(MILLIONS)	
Bream (*Abramis brama*)	222 9	762 3
Roach (*Rutilus rutilus*)	209 1	3,358 3
Shemaia (*Chalcalburnus chalcoides*)	—	0 8
Vimba (*Vimba vimba*)	7 2	2 3

SOURCE Ovchynnyk (1963)

3 More young fish and less larvae are stocked, as the latter practice has been shown to result in poor survival

POND CULTURE

Sufficient data are not available to estimate the value of rearing and stocking anadromous cyprinids, but there can be little doubt of the success of the Soviet pond stocking program Among the fishes discussed in this chapter, five, the tench (*Tinca tinca*), the roach, the ide or orfe (*Leuciscus idus*), the vimba, and the shemaia, are of some importance in pond culture

TENCH

Some artificially propagated tench (*Tinca tinca*) are stocked in natural waters in the Soviet Union, and artificial ponds are built for them to spawn in Spain, but their primary use in Russia and other European countries is as a supplementary fish in common carp ponds Tench have been widely introduced outside Europe but have not achieved much importance, though they are or have been occasionally cultured in Australia, India Indonesia, Israel, Japan, and Tunisia

In Europe the general practice is to stock 90% common carp and 10% tench, but more complicated polyculture schemes may also include tench (see p 229) Carp-tench culture has been criticized by a number of biologists as being an inadequate means of increasing pond productivity, but tench possess several desirable attributes, and operators persist in growing them Among the advantages of tench for culture, alone or with carp, are

1 In feeding, tench probe more deeply into the mud than carp, and so increase pond productivity by recycling nutrients

2. Although the food habits of tench overlap with carp to some extent, they utilize natural food items left untouched by carp. (It is not clear just what are the food habits of tench. In Russia they are supposed to eat mainly benthic invertebrates, but Asian stocks commonly consume algae and vegetable detritus, and are said to derive only one third of their nourishment from animal matter.)

3. Tench may consume partially digested pieces of artificial feed found in carp feces.

4. The oxygen consumption of tench is very low.

5. Tench brings 20% more in the market than does carp.

Disadvantages of tench are:

1. Tench are usually able to reproduce naturally in fish farm ponds, and may thus overpopulate them, in which case they begin to compete with carp.

2. Tench are very easily injured by handling.

3. Tench grow slowly and never obtain the size reached by carp; market demand is chiefly for 120 to 300 g fish.

4. Tench prefer to spend much of their time concealed in aquatic vegetation or buried in mud. Many may remain so hidden when a pond is drained, and thus be lost to the culturist.

It is likely that there will continue to be a small but steady demand for tench in Europe. Since the habits of tench ensure that a major tench fishery will not develop, it is likely that certain culturists, particularly in France and Yugoslavia, where tench culture is traditional, will continue to supply this demand.

In nature, tench spawn on vegetation in still water, during May to June when the temperature reaches 19 to 20°C. The culturist may spawn them under essentially the same circumstances in special 0.5 to 1.0 ha spawning ponds or in ponds also used for the rearing of fingerling or one summer old carp. In the latter case, 1 to 2 pairs/ha of 3 to 4 year old breeders are stocked and the resulting young reared along with the carp until the end of the second summer, at which time the species are separated. If a special spawning pond is used, the bottom should be soft but not too muddy, and it should contain a fair amount of submerged vegetation. Under these circumstances 20 to 40 pairs/ha may be stocked. The sexes may be distinguished by the size and structure of the pelvic fins, which in the male are larger and have a thickened second ray (Fig. 1).

Whichever method is used, the culturist will experience difficulty in collecting the small, secretive one summer old tench. The only way to achieve success is by keeping the drain channels clean at all times and

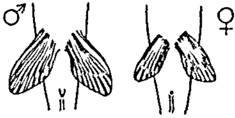


FIG. 1 Sex distinctions in the tench (*Tinca tinca*). Note the larger pelvic fins with thickened second ray in the male. (After Nikolskii 1961.)

draining the pond at night, keeping the water level constant by day. Drainage should be so slow as to require 3 to 4 nights to completely drain a 2 ha pond. A process for artificially spawning tench and rearing them in incubators has been developed in Hungary which would eliminate this necessity, but it has yet to be put into practical application.

Tench are not fed directly but nourish themselves on excess carp feed and naturally occurring food items. Growth is slow at best (Table 3); maximum yields of tench in carp-tench ponds reach 80 kg/ha, but 20 kg/ha is more typical.

TABLE 3 AGE AND GROWTH OF TENCH

AGE (NUMBER OF SUMMERS)	WEIGHT (G)
1	2–20
2	25–150
3	150–450
4	500 or more

Harvesting adult tench is slightly easier than collecting the young; the same techniques and precautions must be used.

OTHER SPECIES

Perhaps the most important cyprinid in Soviet fisheries is the roach (*Rutilus rutilus*); catches exceed even those of the wild common carp. While roach are widely distributed in Russian inland waters, growth in freshwater is very slow, and the fishery is based almost entirely on anadromous populations. Thus it is not surprising to learn that roach culture in the Soviet Union is largely confined to hatchery propagation and stocking of the anadromous form, though freshwater roach are occasionally stocked in ponds. Inclusion of roach in pond polyculture is more common in France, where the roach occupies a position similar to that of the tench. Roach may also be stocked as a forage fish for trout,

pike, and others, but more often they are considered to be pests, and nowhere can the species be said to be important in intensive aquaculture

The ide (*Leuciscus idus*) has a long history in fish culture, probably due more to the esthetic qualities of a golden variety, the orfe, native to Bavaria, than to its value as a food fish. Commercial fishing, stocking, and pond culture of the ide are almost entirely confined to the Soviet Union, and there it is of minor importance. It is likely to remain relatively unimportant since it does not seem to present any particular advantages for use in aquaculture

The vimba and the shemaia enter the polyculture picture, as benthos feeder and plankton feeder, respectively, in the southern Soviet Union Sufficient information is not available to assess their value in pond culture

PROSPECTUS

The ranks of the Cyprinidae, in Europe and elsewhere, have by no means been exhausted by fish culturists In the Soviet Union alone, there are at least 25 species of known commercial value which have not been cultured Culture of many other species, including most of those mentioned in this chapter, is far from perfected Fish farmers may never come up with another cyprinid as amenable to culture as the common carp, but they are sure to experiment with new and unusual species, and to succeed with some of them.

REFERENCES

BREDER, C M, JR, and D E ROSEN 1966 Modes of reproduction in fishes Natural History Press, Garden City, N Y 941 pp

LOZANO Y REY, L 1935 Los peces fluviales de España Mem Acad Cien Exac Fis Nat Madrid, Ser Cien Nat Vol 5 390 pp

NIKOL'SKII, G V 1961 Special ichthyology, 3rd ed Translated from the Russian, Israel Program of Scientific Translation Jerusalem

OVCHYNNYK, M M 1961 Development of some marine and inland Russian fisheries, and fish utilization *In* Atlantic Ocean fisheries, pp 267–273 Fish News Inter (Books), London

OVCHYNNYK, M M 1963 Soviet fish culture Fish News Inter 2(3) 279–282

STERBA, G 1966 Fresh water fishes of the world Viking Press New York

WOYNAROVICH, E 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in Europe FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII IV/R 3

YASHOUV, A 1966 Mixed fish culture—an ecological approach to increase pond productivity FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR V/R 2

25

Culture of Sturgeon

Fish culturists and fishery managers must repeatedly acknowledge that one man's gourmet dish is another man's garbage. The failure of the common carp (*Cyprinus carpio*) in the United States and the milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) in Kenya are only two of the many reminders that regional and cultural biases are fully as important as biological and economic efficiency in determining the fate of a fishery or fish culture enterprise.

HISTORY OF THE STURGEON IN THE AMERICAN GREAT LAKES

EARLY DESTRUCTIVE PRACTICES

Few fishes illustrate the vagaries of human taste better than the sturgeons (family Acipenseridae) In Russia and other European countries, sturgeon

have been prized for centuries not only for their flesh but especially for their roe, which constitutes the true caviar, the gourmet food par excellence. One might suppose then that the many Europeans who emigrated to the United States and Canada would have regarded the North American sturgeons, and particularly the extraordinarily abundant lake sturgeon (*Acipenser fulvescens*) of the Great Lakes, as a valuable resource. Nothing could be further from fact. Prior to 1885, Americans (who, perhaps significantly, included few persons of Russian ancestry) regarded sturgeon as scarcely edible. In addition, lake sturgeon were accused (justly) of damaging nets intended for the capture of smaller fishes and (unjustly) of being highly predatory on the spawn of other fishes. Even the roe was considered worthless.

If there was such a thing as "management" of the lake sturgeon during that time, its goal was extermination. If sturgeon were used at all it was as fuel or fertilizer. Often their carcasses were not even accorded such minimal dignity, and great piles were burned on the beaches. Such treatment of any animal would stand as a shameful example of needless destruction, but sturgeon are for a number of reasons particularly susceptible to depletion by man.

1. Owing to their great size (to nearly 3 m in length and over 120 kg in weight for the lake sturgeon and to 4 to 5 m and 1½ tons for the European *Huso huso*), populations of sturgeon are never very great in number, compared to those of other fishes.
2. Sturgeon grow very slowly; few of any species enter the breeding population before they are at least 6 years old; females of *H. huso* in Russia's Ural River mature at 18.
3. Sturgeon are unusual among very large fishes in preferring shallow water where they are, of course, very vulnerable to man.
4. Exposure to human predation is particularly severe during spawning, which takes place in shallow riffles.

Thus it is not surprising that, as early as 1850, the abundance of the lake sturgeon was noted to have drastically decreased in some areas. The senseless waste of sturgeon now has ceased, but pollution of the Great Lakes and damming of their tributaries still militate against the lake sturgeon's success so that, although it is not yet extinct, its population today is certainly less than 1% of its original numbers.

DEVELOPMENT OF A FISHERY

Attitudes toward the lake sturgeon started to change around 1855, when the first American caviar began to be produced at Sandusky, Ohio. In

1860, smoked lake sturgeon entered the market, and the flesh of sturgeon, which had once been unsalable, began to increase in price until today it brings the highest price of any freshwater fish in the United States and Canada The oil and isinglass (a high-quality gelatin obtained from the swim bladder) also became commercially valuable, and by 1880 the lake sturgeon supported an important fishery Between 1885 and 1890, the sturgeon fisheries of Lake Erie and Lake Huron began a rapid decline, soon to be followed by all the other major producing areas, until by 1915 the total catch was scarcely 10% of that taken during the 1880s

ATTEMPTS AT ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Once the lake sturgeon had been proven 'valuable, after all, the cry went up to save the species At the time, American fish culturists, their egos inflated by recent breakthroughs in hatchery spawning of trout and other fishes were advocating artificial propagation and release of young fish as a panacea for declining fisheries The lake sturgeon was not spared their ill founded optimism and, for over 40 years, culturists, first in the United States then in Canada, persisted in experimenting with its artificial propagation

The first sturgeon to attract fish culturists in the United States was not the lake sturgeon but the Atlantic sturgeon (*Acipenser oxyrhynchus*) a marine species which enters rivers from Labrador to the Gulf of Mexico In 1875 Seth Green the pioneer American fish culturist, hatched a number of eggs of this species in the Hudson River, using the floating screen bottomed boxes he had earlier developed for use with shad (*Alosa sapidissima*) Green s eggs and the sperm to fertilize them, were obtained by surgical removal of the gonads Until the development of hormonally induced spawning both American and Russian biologists usually found it necessary to resort to this tactic, it being virtually impossible to obtain eggs from female sturgeon by stripping," as is done with salmonids, pikes, and other fishes (see p 400 for details of this technique)

In 1888, the United States Fish Commission began efforts, which continued sporadically for the better part of a decade, to propagate the Atlantic sturgeon of the Delaware River All attempts failed, due largely to the difficulty of simultaneously securing ripe fish of both sexes

Experiments with the lake sturgeon were begun at the United States Fish Commission station at Alpena, Michigan around 1883, and were continued for about 30 years by federal and state agencies and private individuals in various locations throughout the Great Lakes basin Considerably greater success was experienced in obtaining and fertilizing the eggs of this species and although the incidence of *Saprolegnia* was un

usually high, some hatches were obtained and the fry stocked in various locations There is no indication that any of these stockings contributed to the fishery Two attempts were made to ripen sturgeon in captivity but both failed At the height of enthusiasm over sturgeon culture, in 1898, the United States government seriously considered establishing a hatchery on Lake Erie or Lake Ontario, but by 1912 the Fish Commission had ceased to experiment with sturgeon

Only two attempts at sturgeon culture were made in Canada In 1924, C P Paulson, superintendent of a federal hatchery at Gull Harbour on Lake Winnipeg, Manitoba, succeeded in fertilizing and hatching lake sturgeon eggs without killing the fish and subsequently released about 8000 fry Paulson s experience was similar to that of other workers in that he was not able to strip sturgeon, but he was able to secure a few of the eggs expelled by a ripe female which was being lifted from the water, a method which would scarcely be suitable for large scale operations

More extensive efforts were made by W J K Harkness, of the University of Toronto, who devoted a lifetime to the study of the lake sturgeon In 1924, after two previous unsuccessful attempts he was able to obtain a plentiful supply of ripe sturgeon by journeying to the spawning grounds on the remote Gull River a tributary of Lake Nipigon Ontario Eggs obtained and fertilized by sacrificing the adults were hatched in 5 to 8 days at 24 to 25°C The fry were reared to the free swimming stage, but efforts to feed them were unsuccessful, and by 30 days after hatching almost all had died By 1926 Harkness, too, was forced to give up the idea of artificial propagation of lake sturgeon

STURGEON CULTURE IN RUSSIA

HISTORY

In Russia sturgeon have historically been accorded treatment more in keeping with Henry Wadsworth Longfellow s appellation ' Mishe Nahma king of fishes Nevertheless Russian biologists have for some time had cause for concern over sturgeon populations The decline in sturgeon catches seems to be directly related to emphasis by the Soviet regime on hydroelectric power, and the consequent construction of dams sometimes with inadequate fishways on the major Russian rivers Overfishing is probably also a factor

Since the Soviet Union supplies 91% of the world s sturgeon it is not surprising that concern has been translated into action Actually, experimental sturgeon culture in Russia dates back to before the revolution

the first incubation station having been established in 1913, but it is only since the development of hormonally induced spawning that large numbers of sturgeon have been hatched and stocked

SPECIES PROPAGATED

Of the 25 or so species of sturgeon in the world, 13 are native to the Soviet Union, but only five predominantly southern species are presently cultured These are the beluga (*Huso huso*) (not to be confused with the whale known as beluga in Canada), the sterlet (*Acipenser ruthenus*) the Russian sturgeon (*A guldenstadti*), the thorn sturgeon (*A nudiventris*), and the starred sturgeon (*A stellatus*) The principal fisheries are located in the Black Sea, the Sea of Azov, the Caspian Sea, and the Aral Sea *A nudiventris* is rare in the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov but, in general, all five species are found in all these waters, since Soviet biologists have been most zealous in introducing edible fishes to new waters

ARTIFICIAL SPAWNING AND HATCHING

Techniques used in spawning sturgeons at the ten or so hatcheries, located principally in the Astrakhan region in the Volga Delta, do not differ appreciably from species to species Wild fish with the gonads in the final stage of development are selected as breeding stock Although, contrary to experience in the United States, Russian culturists have found it possible to ripen about one third of adult sturgeon in captivity by holding them in running water under conditions which duplicate nature as closely as possible, particularly with respect to temperature and chemical content of the water, the vast majority of sturgeon in Russian hatcheries are induced to ripen with pituitary injections Sturgeon pituitary only is successful and both sexes must be injected, either in the dorsal musculature or the peritoneal cavity Injected fish are held in tanks and checked periodically until they are judged to be ripe.

Ripe spawners are killed slit open, and the gonads removed Prior to fertilization, eggs are mixed with silt to eliminate their adhesive qualities which, while functional in nature, reduce the efficiency of hatchery incubating devices In *A guldenstadti* and *A stellatus*, eggs from the middle and rear portions of the ovaries have been found to give the best results After mixing with sperm for 4 to 5 min, the eggs are placed in Yuschenko incubators or similar devices with automatic stirrers for hatching One Yuschenko incubator can handle about 300,000 beluga eggs, 350 000 eggs of *A guldenstadti*, or 550 000 of *A stellatus* Hatching time of course varies with temperature Table 1 shows sample hatching rates for the cultured species

TABLE 1. HATCHING RATES, AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES OF EGGS OF THE STURGEONS CULTURED IN THE SOVIET UNION

SPECIES	TEMPERATURE (°C)	TIME TO HATCHING (HOURS)
A. guldenstadti	11.9	236
	23.0	96
A. nudiventris	19.5	120
A. ruthenus	10.0	264
	14.0	168
A. stellatus	19.8	100
	18.0	89
	23.0	50–61
H. huso	12.6–13 8	192

FRY REARING

The greatest mistake of the early American fish culturists was the naive assumption that fishery production could be materially increased by releasing fry in great numbers, an assumption that does not even hold true with respect to natural spawning. Russian sturgeon culturists at first repeated this mistake; in 1954, 176.4 million sturgeon larvae were stocked in rivers. Current emphasis, however, is on methods of rearing fry to sizes at which they are presumably more capable of coping with the natural environment.

Newly hatched larvae are stocked at densities of 5000 to 20,000/m² in shallow troughs or basins filled with running water, or in screen-bottomed boxes floated in ponds. Once the yolk sac has been absorbed, the fry are fed on small *Daphnia* and another cladoceran, *Moina rectirostris.* After 10 days of intensive feeding, the fry average about 300 mg in weight and may be stocked in ponds. Of course it is possible to stock fry directly into ponds without nursing them in basins, but survival of such fry to fingerlings suitable for stocking is only 5 to 10%, compared to 80 to 90% for nursed fry. Some culturists compromise and nurse fry for 5 to 6 days, at the end of which time they average 30 to 40 mg in weight. The survival rate of such fry in ponds is about 60%. However long they are kept in nurseries, fry are protected as much as possible from light, which has a negative effect on the development of most species (*A. stellatus* is an exception).

Fry are next placed in ponds for growing to the 75- to 100-mm long fingerling stage, which generally takes 1 to 3 months on a mixture of *Daphnia* and oligochaete worms, both of which are cultured for this purpose; neither food alone is adequate. At normal survival rates, the

the first incubation station having been established in 1913, but it is only since the development of hormonally induced spawning that large numbers of sturgeon have been hatched and stocked

SPECIES PROPAGATED

Of the 25 or so species of sturgeon in the world, 13 are native to the Soviet Union, but only five predominantly southern species are presently cultured These are the beluga (*Huso huso*) (not to be confused with the whale known as beluga in Canada) the sterlet (*Acipenser ruthenus*), the Russian sturgeon (*A guldenstadti*) the thorn sturgeon (*A nudiventris*) and the starred sturgeon (*A stellatus*) The principal fisheries are located in the Black Sea the Sea of Azov, the Caspian Sea, and the Aral Sea *A nudiventris* is rare in the Black Sea and the Sea of Azov but, in general, all five species are found in all these waters since Soviet biologists have been most zealous in introducing edible fishes to new waters

ARTIFICIAL SPAWNING AND HATCHING

Techniques used in spawning sturgeons at the ten or so hatcheries, located principally in the Astrakhan region in the Volga Delta, do not differ appreciably from species to species Wild fish with the gonads in the final stage of development are selected as breeding stock Although contrary to experience in the United States, Russian culturists have found it possible to ripen about one third of adult sturgeon in captivity by holding them in running water under conditions which duplicate nature as closely as possible particularly with respect to temperature and chemical content of the water, the vast majority of sturgeon in Russian hatcheries are induced to ripen with pituitary injections Sturgeon pituitary only is successful and both sexes must be injected, either in the dorsal musculature or the peritoneal cavity Injected fish are held in tanks and checked periodically until they are judged to be ripe

Ripe spawners are killed slit open and the gonads removed Prior to fertilization, eggs are mixed with silt to eliminate their adhesive qualities which, while functional in nature, reduce the efficiency of hatchery incubating devices In *A guldenstadti* and *A stellatus*, eggs from the middle and rear portions of the ovaries have been found to give the best results After mixing with sperm for 4 to 5 min, the eggs are placed in Yuschenko incubators, or similar devices with automatic stirrers for hatching One Yuschenko incubator can handle about 300 000 beluga eggs, 350 000 eggs of *A guldenstadti*, or 550,000 of *A stellatus* Hatching time of course varies with temperature Table I shows sample hatching rates for the cultured species

TABLE 1. HATCHING RATES, AT DIFFERENT TEMPERATURES OF EGGS OF THE STURGEONS CULTURED IN THE SOVIET UNION

SPECIES	TEMPERATURE (°C)	TIME TO HATCHING (HOURS)
A. guldenstadti	11.9	236
	23.0	96
A. nudiventris	19.5	120
A. ruthenus	10.0	264
	14.0	168
	19.8	100
A. stellatus	18.0	89
	23.0	50–61
H. huso	12.6–13.8	192

FRY REARING

The greatest mistake of the early American fish culturists was the naive assumption that fishery production could be materially increased by releasing fry in great numbers, an assumption that does not even hold true with respect to natural spawning. Russian sturgeon culturists at first repeated this mistake; in 1954, 176.4 million sturgeon larvae were stocked in rivers. Current emphasis, however, is on methods of rearing fry to sizes at which they are presumably more capable of coping with the natural environment.

Newly hatched larvae are stocked at densities of 5000 to 20,000/m² in shallow troughs or basins filled with running water, or in screen-bottomed boxes floated in ponds. Once the yolk sac has been absorbed, the fry are fed on small *Daphnia* and another cladoceran, *Moina rectirostris.* After 10 days of intensive feeding, the fry average about 300 mg in weight and may be stocked in ponds. Of course it is possible to stock fry directly into ponds without nursing them in basins, but survival of such fry to fingerlings suitable for stocking is only 5 to 10%, compared to 80 to 90% for nursed fry. Some culturists compromise and nurse fry for 5 to 6 days, at the end of which time they average 30 to 40 mg in weight. The survival rate of such fry in ponds is about 60%. However long they are kept in nurseries, fry are protected as much as possible from light, which has a negative effect on the development of most species (*A. stellatus* is an exception).

Fry are next placed in ponds for growing to the 75- to 100-mm long fingerling stage, which generally takes 1 to 3 months on a mixture of *Daphnia* and oligochaete worms, both of which are cultured for this purpose; neither food alone is adequate. At normal survival rates, the

contents of each basin suffice to stock 1 ha of growing pond Overall survival is often very good in 1961 one hatchery produced 3 million fingerlings from 8 to 9 million eggs

STOCKING

Rather than simulate nature by liberating fingerlings at the hatchery and allowing them to find their way to the estuaries, Russian culturists transport the young sturgeon to brackish water in special live boats It has been found that this greatly reduces losses to predators The first stocking of this sort was done in 1955, in 1960, 18 million young were released, in 1965, 52 million, the goal of the program is to stock 170 million sturgeon annually Since the species stocked require 8 to 15 years to reach maturity, the returns cannot yet be assessed, but such information as has been accumulated suggests that 3% of the stocked fish survive to adulthood

POND CULTURE

One species, the sterlet, because of its relatively small size (usually no more than 80 cm) and tolerance of freshwater, is also grown to marketable size in ponds either alone or in combination with carp It has been suggested that sterlet also be stocked in combination with pike perch (*Lucioperca lucioperca*) The sterlet represents a rare opportunity for the pond culturist, no other fish which can survive and grow in a fresh water pond possesses its combination of large size, high value, and low position on the food chain (It feeds mainly on insects) Still more valuable to pond culturists may be a hybrid sturgeon created by crossing ♂ *Acipenser ruthenus* × ♀ *Huso huso*, then backcrossing the male hybrids with pure line *Huso huso* females The resulting animal is said to combine the high growth rate of the beluga and the euryhalinity of the sterlet Apart from these animals the large size and anadromous habits of sturgeon would seem to insure that the role of sturgeon culture will continue to be to bolster fisheries

PROSPECTUS

Although the results of the experiments just described are only beginning to come in Russian sturgeon culturists are pushing ahead with expansion of their operations Current plans call for construction by 1975 of a sturgeon hatchery on the Amur River in Siberia. The hatchery, the first

in that part of the Soviet Union, is designed to produce and release 1 million fry of the kaluga (*Huso dauricus*) annually, using techniques recently worked out at the University of Vladivistok. If efforts with the kaluga are successful, similar techniques may be applied to such other commercially important but depleted sturgeons of Asian Russia as the Siberian sturgeon (*Acipenser baeri*), the Amur sturgeon (*Acipenser schrencki*) and the shovelnose sturgeon (*Pseudoscaphirhynchus kaufmanni*). It is reported that officials of the People's Republic of China are also considering the kaluga as a potential species for culture.

At least three species of sturgeon (two of them rare) are native to Japan, but experimental sturgeon culture, which started in that country in 1964, involves sturgeon (species not known) imported from the Soviet Union. Biologists at the Enoshima Aquarium have achieved the rather startling result of maturing sturgeon in four years by means of a special diet and increased temperatures. It is hoped that this is the first step in the eventual entry of Japan into the caviar market.

In addition to the nations thus far mentioned, sturgeons are found in a number of European countries, but, as far as we know, only Rumania and Iran have culture programs. Presumably in the immediate future, fishery biologists outside the Soviet Union will be watching the progress of the Russian and Japanese experiments. If sustained and profitable fisheries of any magnitude are achieved others may be moved to follow the Russian lead. Otherwise, the future of sturgeons in fisheries and fish culture does not look bright.

REFERENCES

HARKNESS, W. J. K., and J. R. DYMOND. 1961. The lake sturgeon. Ontario Department of Lands and Forests. 121 pp.

NIKOLSKII, G. V. 1961. Special ichthyology. 3rd ed. Translated from the Russian. Israel Program of Scientific Translation, Jerusalem.

OVCHYNNYK, M. 1963. Soviet fish culture. Fish News Inter. 2(3): 279–282.

RODD, J. A. 1925. Propagation of sturgeon. *In* Annual Report of Fish Culture. Fisheries Branch, Ontario Department of Marine and Fisheries, 1924.

26

Culture of Miscellaneous Anadromous Fishes (Shad and Striped Bass)

Some of the world's important cultured food fishes, most notably the Pacific salmons, are anadromous. Logistic difficulties in their culture have been overcome by shortcircuiting their migratory habits or, more frequently, by confining husbandry to the early stages of life and using the ocean as a rearing ground. Culture of the Pacific salmons, other anadromous salmonids, coregonids, smelts, anadromous cyprinids, and sturgeons are covered in Chapters 21, 20, 22, 23, 24, and 25, respectively. Culture of many other anadromous fishes has been attempted, particularly in North America. During the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, fish culturists in the United States and Canada experimented with propagation of virtually every edible native anadromous fish and some exotic species in the belief that artificial propagation was the key to the solution of all fishery problems. Their expectations proved to be far too optimistic, and most of their programs have long since been discontinued. Today only the Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*), the rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*), the five Pacific salmons (*Oncorhynchus* spp.), and the striped

bass (*Morone saxatilis*) are cultured as anadromous fishes in North America.

Striped bass, which are native from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the St. John's River, Florida, and have been successfully introduced on the Gulf and Pacific coasts of the United States, as well as in some inland waters, are usually thought of as sport fish, but their commercial importance is increasing, particularly along the Atlantic coast of the United States. In a number of localities, successful reproduction is threatened by pollution or obstruction of spawning streams, and hatchery propagation has been suggested as a possible means of compensating for these problems. Already hatcheries are in operation on the Roanoke River in North Carolina and the Santee-Cooper River in South Carolina, while experimental culture is under way in Maryland and Florida. The efficacy of striped bass culture in maintaining fishery stocks is by no means established, but American experiments have begun to attract attention abroad, and in 1968 experimental culture was instituted in the Soviet Union.

Artificial propagation of striped bass necessitates capture and hormonal injection (see p. 90) of partially ripe females during the spring spawning season. Success to date has been extremely variable, and optimum dosages and techniques have not been worked out.

At 14.5 to 21.0°C, the eggs hatch in about 2 days, during which time they must remain suspended off the bottom. Suspension is also necessary for high survival of the very delicate larvae during the first 5 to 7 days of life. Jar culture (see pp. 92–93) is thus virtually universal in striped bass hatcheries; a current velocity of about 0.3 m/sec is considered adequate. Once the larvae become fry, rearing becomes somewhat easier, but supplying adequate amounts of suitable feed is problematical.

Pioneer North American fish culturists much earlier turned their attention to the American shad (*Alosa sapidissima*), valued both for its flesh and for its eggs, which are rated second only to sturgeon roe for the preparation of caviar. There is no evidence that the shad fishery on the Atlantic coast, where it is native, ever benefited from stocking. Attempts to introduce American shad to other waters were similarly unsuccessful, with the notable exception of plants in Pacific Coast streams, where self-sustaining runs now occur from California to southeastern Alaska.

Despite the poor success of American shad culture, a program of propagation of the Indian shad (*Hilsa ilisha*) has been begun at the Central Inland Fisheries Research Institute, Barrackpore, India. In the first season the success of artificial fertilization was generally adequate, ranging from 75 to 90%, but hatching rates were extremely variable (2 to 65%). Larvae are reared for the first 7 to 17 days in cloth cages fixed in rivers near the

bank then stocked as 4 to 7 mm fish in nursery ponds So far, the first spawning has yielded about 600 000 35 mm 1 month old fry

REFERENCES

BARKULOO J M 1970 Taxonomic status and reproduction of the striped bass (*Morone saxatilis*) in Florida U.S *Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Technical Paper 44*

NICHOLS P R 1966 The striped bass U S Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Fishery Leaflet 592

27

Culture of Pompano

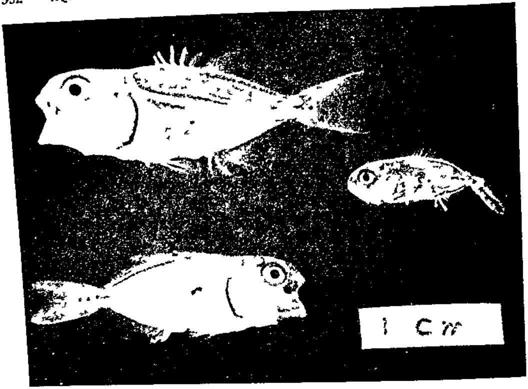


PLATE 1 Pompano (*Trachinotus carolinus*) fry (Courtesy Marine Research Laboratory, Florida Department of Natural Resources)

food, at least not at first It is perhaps for this reason that there has been almost no interest in pompano culture outside of the United States

In the United States, pompano are fished commercially from Virginia to Texas, but 90 to 95% of the catch is landed in Florida With the exception of recently initiated projects in California and Louisiana, all efforts at pompano culture have been made in Florida

There are three species of *Trachinotus* (Plates 1 and 2) found in Florida waters, but pompano play by far the largest role in fisheries and have enjoyed a similar dominance in aquacultural practice and planning One of the other two species, the palometa (*Trachinotus goodei*), is of marginal size for culture, reaching a maximum length of about 33 cm. On the other hand, the permit (*Trachinotus falcatus*) is a very large fish, attaining lengths of about 1 m and weights of more than 22 kg There has been some speculation that permit might therefore grow more rapidly than pompano, but the possibility has not been investigated The maximum size of the pompano is not known, since large specimens are often confused with permit, but it certainly does not attain the size of large permit

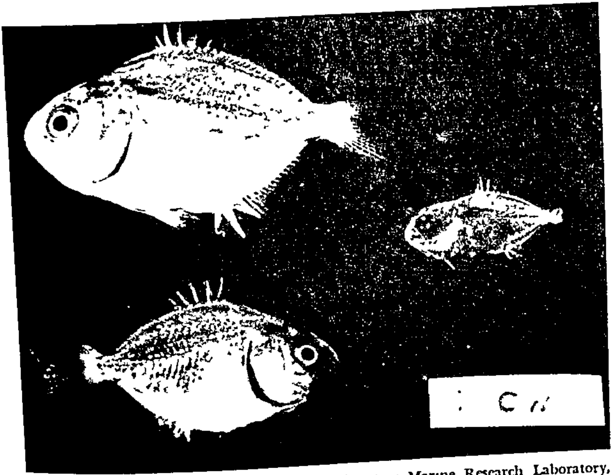


PLATE 2 Permit (*Trachinotus falcatus*) fry (Courtesy Marine Research Laboratory, Florida Department of Natural Resources)

Apart from size, the three species are similar in most respects and possess the same advantages for culture. From an economic viewpoint, they are attractive to fish culturists by virtue of the high, stable demand and the erratic, and usually inadequate supply of the fishery product. If commercial pompano culture were to become very efficient, culturists might be able to sell pompano cheaper than fishermen, as the expense of harvesting wild pompano is very great. Biologically speaking, pompano are favored for culture by virtue of their hardiness and by the ease with which they adapt to confinement and artificial feeds

HISTORY OF EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE

Pompano culture, despite the efforts begun in 1957 by government agencies, universities, and private corporations, is still in the experimental stages. In only one instance has a crop of cultured pompano been marketed, and that particular crop represented only one of six attempts by the same organization over a six-year period. Large numbers of researchers,

representing the U S National Marine Fisheries Service, the Florida Board of Conservation, the National Science Foundation, the University of Miami's Institute of Marine Sciences, the Battelle Memorial Institute, Armour and Company, and the United Fruit Company, are currently or have been involved in experimental pompano culture Nevertheless, the problems which confronted the first pompano culturists in 1957 remain unsolved

LIFE HISTORY, HABITS, AND HABITAT

Some of the difficulties encountered in experimental culture of pompano may be due to the meager knowledge of the environmental *requirements* of *T carolinus* Tolerances, insofar as they are known, have been largely determined experimentally, with captive animals The following conclusions have been reached with regard to various environmental parameters

Salinity Pompano of all ages are normally found in waters of high salinity, juveniles in Tampa Bay, Florida, have been found to prefer water with a salinity of 32‰ Nevertheless, they are highly tolerant of gradual salinity changes and can be adapted to water that is fresh or nearly so

Temperature Pompano suffer thermal shock, from which they may recover, at about 12°C, the lower critical temperature is about 10°C The upper tolerance limit for adults is thought to be about 38 5°C, but very small juveniles have been found in tide pools with temperature exceeding 45°C Most culture experiments have been conducted at 21 to 25°C, but biologists of the University of Miami s Institute of Marine Sciences reported rapid growth and low mortality of young at 34°C

Dissolved oxygen Stress occurs at concentrations below 3 ppm, and 2 5 ppm is lethal Ponds used in pompano culture should always contain at least 4 ppm of dissolved oxygen

p*H* Pompano are able to withstand any extreme of *p*H likely to be encountered in a saltwater pond

Turbidity Like *p*H, *turbidity is not usually critical Pompano will* survive in water so turbid that visibility is virtually zero

It should be unnecessary to point out the difference between critical limits and optimum values for environmental parameters, but it may be *that part of the reason for the poor success in pompano culture to date* is overemphasis on the hardiness of the species and neglect of possible synergistic effects

The life history of pompano is scarcely known. Ripe, flowing adults have never been observed, but from available evidence it appears that the species has an extended spawning period—February to September in the southeast United States and perhaps year round in more southerly waters. At least part of the population apparently migrates northward in the spring and returns south in the fall, but it is not known whether this is directly connected with reproduction. It is speculated that spawning occurs well offshore, as this is where the smallest juveniles have been captured. Juveniles are found on Florida beaches from April to mid November. Maturity is probably reached in the second year of life. The longevity of pompano is unknown, the best guess hazarded by biologists is 3 to 4 years.

The food habits of pompano are known only in a general way. Young have been observed to eat benthic and pelagic invertebrates and larval fishes. Adults have similar food habits but take fish more frequently and are thought to rely less on benthic organisms.

ATTEMPTS AT ARTIFICIAL PROPAGATION

Certainly lack of knowledge of the habits of pompano is a contributing factor in the inability of culturists to spawn pompano, or, for that matter, any of those fishes with small, pelagic eggs and larvae. Attempts at hormonal induction of spawning had all been unsuccessful until 1969, when biologists at the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Laboratory at St. Petersburg, Florida, succeeded in obtaining and fertilizing eggs by the use of human chorionic gonadotropin. For unknown reasons, none of these eggs hatched. Most workers, however, are confident that the problems of spawning pompano will eventually be solved, but they predict that more serious difficulties will be encountered in rearing the larvae to the fry stage.

CAPTURE OF WILD STOCK

For the present, would-be pompano culturists must rely on wild stock. As mentioned, pompano fry are found along Florida beaches from mid April to November, or as long as surface temperatures remain above 21°C. Even though optimal conditions for pompano culture are found only in extreme southern Florida, particularly the Florida Keys, the largest and purest stocks of juveniles are found on the east coast, from Daytona north into Georgia. This led to an initial concentration of pompano

culture in northeast Florida, but since good methods of transporting live young pompano are available, this need no longer be the case.

Beaches with a gradual slope produce the best catches of fry Particularly good locations are long, shallow miniature sounds bounded by small sand bars parallel to the surf line Haul seining in such areas at low tide with nets 5 to 8 m long and 1 to 2 m deep has produced up to 10,000 juveniles in a single haul and total yields of up to 80,000

The size of juveniles taken varies Those taken in April are 15 to 30 mm long, by July to August fish of the same age are 75 to 130 mm long However, later influxes of younger juveniles virtually ensure that a large range of sizes will be included in most catches These should be sorted before stocking for, although pompano are not cannibalistic, the smaller fish are likely to fare poorly in competition for food

Another sorting problem involves separating the species of *Trachinotus* This is particularly important in southern Florida, where permit and palometa outnumber pompano Table 1 lists the characteristics used in distinguishing among the three species

EXPERIMENTAL CULTURE TECHNIQUES

RESULTS

Stocking and feeding techniques and other pompano culture practices have barely begun to be worked out Researchers have done little to hasten standardization of methods, most experiments have thus far been carried out in anything but a systematic manner Despite the limited knowledge of suitable culture techniques, cultured pompano have repeatedly been found to grow faster than wild fish in similar environments

Several types of enclosure have been employed in experimental pompano culture, including concrete or wooden tanks, raceways floating net cages, and estuarine impoundments but most of the investigations to date have been carried out in 1 to 2 m-deep earthen ponds supplied with tidal water In one of the most successful experiments, at Marineland, Florida, juveniles weighing 0 4 to 9 4 g each were stocked in fertilized ponds at 1324 to 4942/ha and fed as much ground whole trash fish as they would consume daily Average mortality was 18 7%, food was converted at 6 1 1, and 270 to 438 kg/ha of pompano were produced in 65 to 133 days of growth The greatest production occurred in the most heavily stocked ponds indicating that the stocking densities used did not approach the maximum On the other hand, none of the fish, in either the lightly or heavily stocked ponds reached the preferred commercial

TABLE 1. DISTINGUISHING CHARACTERISTICS OF FRY OF THE THREE SPECIES OF *Trachinotus* TAKEN IN FLORIDA AND GEORGIA

SPECIES	DORSAL SOFT RAYS	ANAL SOFT RAYS	BODY DEPTH (ORIGIN OF SEVENTH DORSAL TO FIRST ANAL SPINE) IN STANDARD LENGTH	COLOR OF ANAL FIN LOBE
Pompano (*Trachinotus carolinus*)	24–25	21–22	2⅓ or more times	Yellow or lemon yellow; tip of lobe cinnamon in some individuals
Permit (*Trachinotus falcatus*)	17–21	16–19	2¼ or less times	Bright orange or red; almost black in some dark-bodied individuals
Palometa (*Trachinotus goodei*)	17–21	16–19	2⅓ or more times	Clear with black on the anterior edge of the lobe

size of about 340 g; the largest individual harvested weighed 268 g. All the experiments were, however, prematurely terminated due to mass mortalities.

It is probable that, once the causes of such mortalities are better understood and controlled, and feeding techniques are improved, pompano can be grown to marketable size within one year at densities greater than those used in most experiments to date. It may be found advantageous to raise them in a series of ponds such as those sometimes employed in culture of milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) in southeast Asia (see Chapter 17). Juveniles could be stocked in nursery ponds, in which suitable food organisms had previously been cultured, for the first few weeks of life then successively introduced to a series of growing ponds, in each of which the population density could be controlled.

More effort has been devoted to the study of feeding captive pompano than to stocking densities (Plate 3), but the results are no more conclusive. Early culturists used mostly ground trash fish, but during the extended

PLATE 3 Juvenile pompano feeding on a fish cake in a rearing pen (Courtesy Biology Laboratory Natural Marine Fishery Service St Petersburg Fla)

periods of very windy weather which commonly occur in Florida, supplies of fish become scarce, so attention was soon focused on prepared foods Commercial fish meal was usually found to produce poor results, but floating trout feeds are readily accepted by pompano and have produced the best growth of any feeds used so far Other foods which have been tested include shrimp, shrimp meal, crab wastes, and tankage Frozen adult brine shrimp (*Artemia*) are considered valuable in the diet of very young fish

PROBLEMS

Whatever food is used, cultured pompano are still subject to such apparently diet related problems as fatty or discolored livers, enlarged kidneys and gall bladders, swollen abdomens, fluid in the body cavity, exophthalmus, and hemorrhages of the skin and muscles It is to be hoped that such problems will become less frequent when special diets,

based on the specific nutritional requirements of pompano, are developed. Unfortunately, the nutritional needs of pompano are known only in a very general way. It is thought that an ideal diet would include about 30% animal protein, 18% carbohydrates, 10% bulk, and less than 10% fat. Young pompano will consume up to 30% of their body weight in ground fish daily, but satisfactory growth has been achieved with commercial trout feed by feeding 10% of the weight of pompano daily. Several small feedings are preferred to one large one.

Thus far, pompano culturists have not suffered greatly from many of the problems which afflict growers of other fishes. Disease, in particular, has had small effect on cultured pompano. High mortalities due to sporozoans and monogenetic trematodes have occasionally been reported, but most of the parasites commonly found on pompano have caused little or no difficulty. This does not necessarily mean that pompano are highly resistant to diseases and parasites. It may be that, after a few more years of culture at high population densities, epizootics will appear.

Mass mortalities due to cold spells or oxygen depletion have occasionally occurred, the latter usually as a result of pollution by uneaten feed, particularly fish meal. Wiser use of food and the adoption of pellets rather than powdered feeds should reduce the incidence of oxygen depletion.

Perhaps the most serious problem in pompano culture, apart from lack of knowledge of optimum stocking densities and feeding regimes, is predation. Screening is currently the standard preventive method, but it does not stop the entry of predatory fishes in larval form, and in ponds where water enters through pipes, screens may significantly restrict the flow of water. If pompano continue to be grown in tidewater enclosures, some combination of screening, poisoning, and periodic draining will probably be adopted.

PROSPECTUS

If culturists succeed in producing large quantities of pompano on a regular basis, marketing should be no problem, since, as mentioned, pompano command a high, stable price and fishery catches seldom satisfy the demand. In addition to the established market for fresh pompano, new markets could be developed in the restaurant and frozen food trades.

The market situation notwithstanding, the prospectus for pompano culture is uncertain. A number of improvements in basic techniques must be made before commercial culture can be sustained. In addition to further development of stocking and feeding methods, it is imperative

that practical culturists be able to spawn pompano in captivity A few small operators might be able to profitably rear ocean-caught juveniles for market, yet the undependable supply of such stock precludes large scale culture of pompano on such a basis Further, to depend on wild juveniles might result in the depletion of natural pompano populations

Controlled spawning of pompano would aid culturists in avoiding temperature problems, which have plagued pompano growers in north east Florida by eliminating their dependence on natural populations Culture operations could then be shifted with no loss in efficiency to ex treme southern Florida or to locations where it would be possible to take advantage of power plant discharges and other sources of thermal effluent

There are several other species of *Trachinotus* found on the Atlantic and Pacific coasts of North and South America that might eventually be cultured, but *T carolinus* is the only one currently popular among cul turists and has in fact, been transplanted to the Pacific Coast of the United States for purposes of experimental culture Polyculture of pom pano with other fishes and invertebrates has been suggested In an experi ment conducted by the United States Bureau of Commercial Fisheries in Tampa Bay, Florida, striped mullet (*Mugil cephalus*), spotted seatrout (*Cynoscion nebulosus*), blue crab (*Callinectes sapidus*), and American oyster (*Crassostrea virginica*) grew to commercial size in ponds stocked with pompano

Still other possibilities for the future of pompano culture could be described but, given the state of the art, they are no more than specula tion A great deal of work remains to be done, in some vital areas, for example, larval culture the surface has yet to be scratched Thus it seems that if there is ever to be large-scale commercial culture of pom pano, it is still well in the future

REFERENCES

Berry F and E S Iversen 1967 Pompano biology fisheries and farming potential Proceedings of the Gulf and Caribbean Fisheries Institute 19th Annual Session pp 116–128

Fielding J R 1966 New systems and new fishes for culture in the United States FAO World Symposium on Warm Water Pond Fish Culture FR VIII/R 2

Finucane J H 1970 Pompano mariculture in Florida *Am Fish Farmer* 1(4) 5–10

Moe M A R. H Lewis and R M Ingle 1968 Pompano mariculture preliminary data and basic considerations Florida Board of Conservation Technical Series 55

28
Culture of Miscellaneous Brackish Water and Inshore Marine Fishes

Whereas a great diversity of freshwater fishes are grown in confinement, practical culture of marine and brackish water fishes is largely restricted to southeast Asia, where the milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) and various mullets (*Mugil* spp) have been raised in brackish water ponds for centuries. (See Chapters 17 and 16 for descriptions of milkfish and mullet culture, respectively.) In recent years, the Japanese yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*) has been added to the list of marine fishes which are cultured on a large scale. (See Chapter 29 for a description of yellowtail culture.)

Culture of yellowtail is a startling achievement, since in nature they are extremely active, wide ranging, pelagic fish, which one would not expect to respond favorably to confinement Their successful culture has stimulated speculation and experimentation with culture of other pelagic fishes (see Chapter 30) but the majority of efforts in marine fish farming continue to involve inshore and estuarine species which can be adapted to brackish water Large scale studies have been carried out with pompano (*Trachinotus carolinus*) in the United States, and with various flatfishes in the United Kingdom, this work is described separately in Chapters 27 and 31, respectively Here we wish to deal with the other species of brackish water and inshore marine fishes which have been cultured

CULTURE OF INSHORE MARINE FISHES IN JAPAN

In addition to yellowtail, the Japanese have succeeded in commercially culturing puffers (*Fugu rubripes* and *Fugu vermicularis*), red porgy (*Chrysophrys major*) black porgy (*Mylio macrocephalus*), and a few other fishes Of these fishes, which annually account for up to 25% of Japan s production of cultured marine fish, the most important are the puffers

PUFFERS

Unlike yellowtail, puffer is anything but a staple food and brings a very high price from gourmets in Japan Korea, and China Puffers are seldom eaten in other countries largely because of the presence in some of the tissues, particularly ovary, liver, intestines, and skin, of a neurotoxin about 13 times stronger than potassium cyanide This substance, known as tetrodotoxin, cannot be broken down by cooking However, its presence in muscle tissue is rare and, when properly prepared, puffers are reportedly completely safe to eat

Originally, puffer farmers utilized 3 to 4 year-old wild fish as a source of stock, and this practice is still carried on to some extent, but, since the first success in artificial propagation of puffers in 1960, most culturists have started to rely on artificially produced stock Brood fish, usually *Fugu rubripes*, are selected from the commercial fishery catch during the 2 to 3 week spawning period in May or June As a rule only about 2% of the fish taken are ripe enough for use as breeders but each female produces 300,000 to 500,000 eggs, and the rate of hatching is quite high Eggs and milt are obtained by hand stripping, and artificial fertilization, usually by the wet method (see p 400 for details) is done on board the fishing boat.

Once the egg membranes have hardened, the zygotes are packed in sea water in polyethylene bags, at about 50,000 eggs/liter Gaseous oxygen is routinely provided, and if the time of transportation is to be longer than 48 hours and/or the water temperature is over 20°C an antibiotic such as streptomycin may be added Most of the eggs are taken to Yamaguchi Perfecture to be hatched and reared to "seedling size at a propagation center maintained by the prefectural government

Puffer eggs are hatched in shallow tanks, framed nets, or hatchery jars In the first two, running water or aeration is supplied, the eggs are spread out in a single layer at 1 to 3/cm², and 40 to 60% hatching can be expected within 10 days at 15 to 19°C Jar hatching (see pp 92–93 for details of this technique) is much more efficient, resulting in hatches of 90% or greater when eggs are stocked at 5000 to 10,000/liter and the water changed daily

Newly hatched puffer larvae, which are strongly phototaxic, are kept in standing filtered sea water for the first week of life It is necessary to change the water daily at first, and up to eight times a day by the end of the week Almost any size tank may be used, from 50 liters to 5000 liters as long as there are adequate facilities for changing the water and maintaining the temperature at 17 to 20°C With the absorption of the yolk sac and the beginning of active feeding, running water is supplied At this point, it is necessary to initiate a complicated regime of feeding and population density control if as many as 10% of the postlarvae are to survive to seedling size (25 mm and 3 g or more) Table 1 outlines feeding and stocking practices for puffers from hatching to the seedling stage

Among the foods used are barnacles To be edible by larval fishes barnacles must be no older than the first nauplius stage To assure a steady supply of this age group, barnacles must be cultured Sets of barnacles are easily obtained by suspending bamboo sticks in the sea near the surface during summer and early fall The sticks, with barnacles attached, are then kept in saltwater tanks until nauplii are needed Exposure to air, followed by placing the sticks in tanks containing larvae, usually results in discharge of nauplii within 10 to 20 min If this is done 3 to 4 times daily during the daylight hours a density of about 100 first nauplii/liter can be maintained in the larva tank

After about the twentieth day, cannibalism may become a problem, but it is greatly reduced once the young fish start taking minced fish flesh Often however, it is difficult to wean the young from live food The effect of cannibalism is also lessened by reducing the population density after the twentieth day and by providing three or four small feedings rather than one large one daily

Puffer growers purchase seedlings in July and stock them in ponds or floating net cages anchored in at least 5 m of water In either case the

dissolved oxygen content of the water must be above 4 ppm, the temperature must not exceed 20°C or drop below 10°C, the salinity must be at least 22‰ and turbidity must be slight. The stocking density in ponds should be about 0.05 kg/m³ but may be considerably higher in net cages, say 0.08 to 0.5 kg/m³.

Puffers are fed on trash fish (horse mackerel, anchovies, sand eels, etc.). Fish which are not fresh, or which are excessively fatty, are to be avoided or nutritional diseases may result. At first the food is minced, but after the puffers reach lengths of 100 mm, the food fish are chopped. The quantity of feeding is determined empirically, but the frequency is regulated seasonally, as shown in Table 2, and is suspended whenever the water temperature falls below 14°C.

TABLE 2. FREQUENCY OF FEEDING, AT DIFFERENT TIMES OF YEAR, FOR CULTURED PUFFERS IN JAPAN

MONTHS	NO OF FEEDINGS DAILY
July-August	4
September-November	3
December	2
January-March	1
April-June	1–2

The minimum marketable weight of about 0.8 kg is reached in 1½ years after stocking, though many fish are fed for up to 2½ years, at which time they may weigh 2 kg. The survival from stocking to marketing averages 50 to 70%, and the overall rate of food conversion is about 4:1. Though puffer may cease to grow or even lose weight during the winter, cultured puffers are marketed during the winter, which is the off season for puffer fishermen, thus prices are high.

During the spring, some culturists also obtain 1-year-old fishery caught puffers, weighing about 0.2 kg each, and feed them, in the manner just described, until they attain marketable size. Very large puffers may be marketed by growers who stock 1.5- to 2.5-kg fish and feed them for a few months.

Apart from nutritional diseases, cultured puffers may suffer from vibriosis, ichthyophthiriasis, and various fungus diseases. Parasites reported include the flatworm *Diclidophora tetrodonis*, which attaches to the gills, and may cause serious problems, and the arthropods *Argulus scutiforma* and *Pseudocaligus fugu*. The reader interested in treatments for some of these diseases and parasites is referred to *Culture and Diseases of Game Fishes* by H. S. Davis.

As of 1965, 40 operators were engaged in puffer farming in Japan From 35 4 ha of water they produced 91 metric tons of fish, for an average yield of about 230 kg/ha

RED PORGY

Like the puffer, the red porgy brings high prices in Japan, not so much due to its gastronomic or nutritional value but because of the ancient association of the red porgy with good fortune It is thus traditionally served at birthday celebrations, weddings, and other such occasions

Red porgy farming was first attempted in 1887, and attempts at artifi cial propagation have been made sporadically since 1902 However, the first success in artificial propagation was not achieved until 1962, and it is only within the last few years that small-scale farming of the red porgy has become a commercially feasible proposition

As is the case with puffer farming, culture of the red porgy is dependent on wild brood stock Males are easily distinguished from females, particu larly during the spawning season (late April to early June), by the more angular shape of the head and their darker coloration It is possible to obtain viable genital products from red porgies kept in captivity, but eggs of such fish exhibit substantially lower hatching rates, so artificial fertilization, usually by the dry method (see p 400) is done on board the fishing boat.

As soon as possible after fertilization, the zygotes are washed with clean sea water, to remove all extraneous matter Great care must be exercised in transporting the fertilized eggs, which are very sensitive to temperature changes, bright light, and physical shock.

As noted, culture of the red porgy is a recent development, so facilities and procedures are not standardized The following is a general descrip tion of one set of techniques which has been successfully employed Certainly they will be improved as culturists become more experienced and as biologists gather more information on the ecology and physiology of the red porgy

Hatching is carried out in a tank 2 m × 1 m × 1 m deep, supplied with running or recirculated sea water and housed in a small building roofed with translucent plastic plates The tanks are illuminated but the inten sity of light is not allowed to exceed 3000 lux

Red porgy eggs are pelagic and must float for proper development, thus the most critical factor in hatching is the specific gravity of the water, which must not be allowed to fall below that of the eggs (1 0245 at 15°C) This corresponds to the rather high salinity of about 33.5‰ Where such water is not readily available, it is recommended that suitable

sea water be collected and stored, since chemical control of specific gravity is not always satisfactory.

Larvae are reared to "seedling" size in 5-m × 1-m × 1-m tanks, similar to those used for hatching, but supplied with a sand filter at the outlet to prevent loss of fish. A recirculating system is preferred to running water, since such predators as large copepods may be more easily excluded from a closed system.

The larvae absorb their yolk sacs wthin three days of hatching. Feeding occurs at this stage, but it is an incidental result of the larvae swimming about with their mouths open. There is no evidence that they are able to perceive or deliberately attack food organisms. Therefore, starting on the third day after hatching, the culturist must start supplying copious amounts of tiny food animals. Nauplii of copepods are perhaps best suited for this purpose, but it is not often possible to provide adequate quantities. Acceptable substitutes include the blastula and gastrula stages of sea urchins, oyster larvae, and rotifers, all of which may be cultured.

Active feeding begins on the fifth or sixth day after hatching. Larvae 5 to 10 days old do best on a diet of copepods, which must usually be captured from the sea. After the tenth day, red porgy larvae are large enough to take brine shrimp nauplii. Growth rates and survival of larvae fed on brine shrimp nauplii vary greatly, apparently with the quality of brine shrimp, and it is recommended that a small sample of larvae be fed on brine shrimp for a few days before an entire population is switched off copepods.

On about the twentieth day after hatching, at which time the larvae are about 10 mm long, they assume a benthic life habit. For the first few days of benthic life small polychaetes (3 mm long or less) and powdered, freeze dried shrimp meat kneaded with freshwater are suitable foods. For the rest of the culture period, until they attain seedling size (2 to 3 cm), the young porgies are fed minced meat of dry, white fish. Oily, fatty fish are to be avoided at all times.

The most important environmental factor in larval culture is organic pollution, which may be caused by dead larvae and/or overfeeding. In addition to such routine fish hatchery procedures as periodic siphoning, small crabs or other shellfish may be stocked in the tanks as biological pollution controls.

Light is as important to larvae as it is to eggs, but the optimum level varies with the size and age of the fish and, apparently, with individual factors which are not understood. Illumination control is simplified by lighting different sections of the tank at intensities varying from darkness to 3000 lux and letting the larvae express their own preference.

Some seedlings are released along the coast of the Inland Sea in the hope of augmenting the fishery, but most are sold to fish farmers for further culture to marketable size Farming of red porgy is usually done in floating net cages Seedlings fed on fresh fish flesh and/or commercial fish food in pelleted form reach saleable size in 12 to 18 months No serious diseases or other causes of mortality have thus far been reported

BLACK PORGY

The black porgy is a less prestigious fish than either the puffer or the red porgy but is nonetheless a fine food fish Since it is somewhat hardier than the other saltwater fishes farmed in Japan and can be spawned in captivity it may eventually assume greater importance in aquaculture.

Breeders are captured by angling and acclimatized in recirculating tanks The spawning season is March to May in southern Japan and April to June in the central part of the country, and naturally occurring water temperatures at those times are acceptable for artificial propagation Care must be taken however, that the salinity remains between 25 and 33‰ Males mature naturally under these conditions but females require treatment with the hormone preparation synahorin

Ordinarily, eggs may be stripped and fertilized using either the wet or dry method 40 to 50 hours after injection Black porgy eggs show a marked reduction in fertility if after stripping they are left for long without coming into contact with sperms Thus fertilization should be done as soon as possible, and certainly not later than 20 min after stripping

Hatching and rearing of the larvae are carried out in the same tank Tanks used for this purpose are divided into four chambers separated from each other by gates and equipped so that running water can be supplied The pelagic eggs are stocked in still water in the lowermost chamber of the tank in quantities such that at expected hatching rates a population density of 3000 to 10 000 larvae/m^2 will result when all chambers are occupied The tanks are housed in sheds with transparent roofs which may be shaded or screened when necessary The water temperature should not be allowed to exceed 20°C during the hatching period and the salinity should be maintained at at least 25‰

Under such conditions hatching usually occurs in about 40 hours Occasionally a lot of eggs exhibits a low hatching rate and pollution resulting from the decay of dead eggs may be detrimental to larvae or live eggs Therefore samples of each lot of eggs are periodically inspected for viability If it appears that the hatching rate will be less than 50%

the live eggs are removed as soon as they attain the 'eyed' stage and placed in clean sea water in another tank.

Running water is advantageous to nearly all marine fish larvae from the standpoint of health, but on the other hand it may wash away such tiny creatures as black porgy larvae. The four chambered structure of the rearing tank is an effective compromise. When the water in the hatching chamber becomes too dirty for optimum growth of the larvae, the gate into the next chamber is opened, thus permitting access to clean water and providing more room for the larvae. This process is repeated twice more, or until the full tank is being utilized. By that time (10 to 18 days after hatching) the larvae are strong enough that running water can be introduced without danger of loss. At first the running water is turned off at night, when the larvae are less active, but after about the twenty-fifth day it is left on around the clock.

Desirable temperature and salinity are the same as for hatching, but illumination requires special attention, particularly 5 to 7 days after hatching, when the larvae need a bright light for feeding. The intensity of light at this time should be 5000 to 6000 lux at the surface. This is gradually reduced to 1000 lux by the time the larvae are 1 month old. Lights should be focused from overhead, light entering from the side or bottom of the tank hinders feeding. After the first month, a minimum water depth of 0.7 m is maintained.

Though the yolk sac is seldom completely absorbed before the third day of life, active feeding may begin by the second day, thus black porgy culturists start providing food, in the form of trochophore larvae of oysters, 2 days after hatching. A number of transitions to successively larger items of food must be effected before the larvae reach seedling size at the age of 35 to 40 days. Table 3 illustrates a representative feeding regime.

Black porgy farming may be done in floating net cages or in ponds. Cages are stocked at 50 to 70 fish/m³, while ponds receive 6 to 7 fish/m³. There is an increasing tendency to stock black porgies in combination with other fishes.

Black porgies tolerate a wider range of environmental conditions than puffers or red porgies. They are particularly hardy with respect to temperature, but feeding, and therefore growth, ceases below 10°C. Temperatures below 5°C are considered potentially dangerous. No serious diseases have yet been reported.

Black porgy are quite omnivorous, they have been successfully raised on trash fish, mussels, the meat of pearl oysters, silkworm pupae, and commercial fish food pellets. The general practice is to feed chopped

TABLE 3. FEEDING SCHEDULE FOR YOUNG CULTURED BLACK PORGY IN JAPAN

AGE OF LARVAE (DAYS)	FEED	NO OF DAILY FEEDINGS	AMOUNT FED PER FEEDING
0–1	None	—	—
2–7	Trochophore larvae of oysters	1	10 larvae/ml, gradually increasing to 100/ml
8–14	Trochophore larvae of oysters, gradually changing to barnacle nauplii	1 of oyster larvae, 3–4 of barnacles	100 oyster larvae/ml, and 0 1 barnacle nauplii/ml
15–17	Barnacle nauplii	3–4	0 1/ml
18–32	Barnacle nauplii and marine copepods, (Freshwater copepods may be substituted) gradually changing to 100% copepods	3–4 of barnacles and 1 of copepods (freshwater copepods must be added more often, as they do not survive well in sea water)	0 1 barnacle nauplii/ml and an empirically determined number of copepods
33–34	Copepods	1	Empirically determined
35–40 (seedling stage)	Minced fish meat and/or pelleted commercial fish feed	Empirically determined	Empirically determined

trash fish or dry feed, whichever is cheaper, though there may be a slight problem in conditioning the fish to accept the dry feed. The conversion rate of fresh fish by black porgy is 3 to 4:1, and marketable size (about 150 g) is reached in 16 to 20 months

Some farming is or was done with 1- or 2-year-old wild seedlings The 1-year-old seedlings are seined from shallow coastal areas during late May to late July, at which time they are 1 to 4 cm long, and reach commercial size in 15 to 18 months The 2-year olds, 10 to 15 cm in length and 30 to 50 g in weight, are caught along the coast with nets or hook and line from May to July and are ready for market after 6 months of feeding The supply of 1- and 2 year-old seedlings is rather small, and as artificial propagation of black porgy becomes more prevalent and efficient, their use by fish farmers is expected to cease entirely, if it has not already.

Certain other marine fishes, including filefish (family Balistidae) and "sea eels" (family Congridae?), are reported as being cultured in Japan, but details of these practices are not known. In 1965, 126 operators were engaged in culture of marine fishes other than yellowtail and puffer. From 157.3 ha of water, they produced 101 metric tons of fish, for a rather low average yield of about 64 kg/ha.

CULTURE OF COD IN NORWAY

The first recorded large-scale success in artificial propagation of a marine fish was achieved with the Atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua*) in southern Norway over 85 years ago. The Flödevigen Biological Station, near Arendal, where cod were first bred, is still in operation. Since 1950 its operations have been intensified, until now 100 to 150 million cod larvae are produced every 2 years. The survival rate from egg to 5-day-old larvae is approximately 90%.

The larvae are released nearby in the heavily fished Oslofjord. Contrary to general experience with this sort of program, Norwegian fishermen and biologists agree that the program of artificial propagation and stocking contributes greatly to the success of local fisheries.

Cod have not been widely cultured outside of Norway, but in the Soviet Union a new experimental fish culture station on the Barents Sea is slated to begin both artificial propagation and farming of Atlantic Cod and the closely related haddock (*Melanogrammus aeglefinus*).

BRACKISH WATER POND CULTURE

All told, the rearing of fish in brackish water impoundments is of greater significance than fish farming in truly marine environments. Brackish water fish culturists are almost always at least partially dependent on tidal flow for a supply of water and sometimes for fish stocks as well. The continual influx of water from the sea renders it nearly impossible to completely control the species composition of brackish water impoundment communities, thus culturists usually find themselves harvesting a number of fishes other than those they intended to grow. Some of these fishes may eventually prove to be more valuable than currently favored crop species. They are worthy of study by the fish culturist simply by virtue of their presence, growth, and survival in the artificial environment he has provided.

IN THE MEDITERRANEAN REGION

Fishes are most extensively harvested from brackish waters in the Mediterranean Sea and in Southeast Asia. Management practices are almost nil in most parts of the Mediterranean area, but in certain locations in Italy, particularly the lagoon of Venice, fishermen have developed elaborate schemes for trapping, growing, and harvesting fish. The principal fish crop in the Italian lagoons is mullet, but two species of predatory fish, *Dicentrarchus labrax* and the gilthead bream (*Sparus auratus*), are also encouraged and subjected to a certain amount of manipulation. The methods used in managing these species are described in Chapter 16. Among the incidental species, which enter lagoons and are harvested as a matter of course, the most commercially valuable is the eel (*Anguilla anguilla*). Others include gudgeon (*Gobius* sp.), a number of flatfish including *Pleuronectes flesus, Solea vulgaris*, and *Bothus podas*, various species of silversides (*Atherina*), particularly *A. mochon*, croaker (*Umbrina cirrhosa*), and porgy (*Dentex dentex*).

IN SOUTHEAST ASIA

Brackish water fish culture is more intensive in southeast Asia than in the Mediterranean area, involving fertilization and sometimes supplementary feeding. The traditional crops are milkfish and mullet. In many areas, the introduced Java tilapia (*Tilapia mossambica*) has become a third major crop by virtue of the inability of culturists to materially reduce its numbers. (See Chapters 17, 16, and 18 for detailed accounts of the culture of milkfish, mullet, and tilapia, respectively, in southeast Asia.) Many more species enter brackish water ponds, some piscivorous ones are considered mainly destructive, to be eradicated if possible, whereas others are too small to be of direct significance to the culturist, but a few are encouraged and harvested.

Of particular interest is the pearl spot (*Etroplus suratensis*) of India, Pakistan, and Ceylon, the only Asian brackish water fish which can be easily made to spawn in confinement. In nature, pearl spot attach their eggs to the underside of submerged objects in 1 m or less of fresh or brackish water. Culturists in southern India (the only area where pearl spot are cultured) take advantage of this trait by erecting platforms made of slabs of stone or slate in their ponds. Like all cichlids, pearl spot care for their young, thus special spawning ponds are not usually provided, though the efficiency of propagation could perhaps be increased in this manner.

Pearl spot are mainly herbivores, and feed mostly on green and blue-green algae and decaying plant remains. Of lesser importance in the diet are soft macrophytes, zooplankton, insects, worms, and fish eggs. Pearl spot attain lengths of 10 to 12 cm in ponds in 1 year and have been reared to 20 cm.

Some of the generally unwanted piscivorous fishes are also of actual or potential importance, particularly in ponds where young or stunted tilapia or other small fish compete severely with desired species. Perhaps the most widely distributed piscivore is the cock-up (*Lates calcarifer*). Cock-up are generally considered unsuited for culture with milkfish or mullet, but have been recommended, along with groupers (*Epinephelus* spp.) for certain polyculture schemes in the Philippines. Where crustaceans are extremely abundant, cock-up may derive up to 75% of their food from them, and perhaps thereby spare other fish to some extent.

Monoculture of cock-up in both fresh and brackish water occurs in India, Pakistan, and Thailand. Growth and production are dependent on the amount of food (usually trash fish or offal) which can be supplied; lengths of up to 30 cm and weights of up to 0.5 kg may be attained in 1 year.

Another potentially valuable predatory fish is the ayuñgin (*Therapon plumbeus*), which has been suggested for culture in the Philippines, but so far remains an incidental product of brackish water pond culture. Its Indonesian congeners *Therapon jarbua* and *Therapon theraps* suggest similar potential.

Other widespread piscivores are the tarpon (*Megalops cyprinoides*) and the related ten-pounders (*Elops* spp.), both of which have reputations for extreme voracity. Food studies have shown that the tarpon deserves this reputation, but that the predatory capacities of ten-pounders are popularly exaggerated. *Elops machnata* has for centuries been important in pond culture in Hawaii where fry are trapped on the incoming tide, but it and its congeners are of only incidental importance in southeast Asia.

Tarpon are cultivated only in India and Ceylon, where they are grown in freshwater ponds. Larvae and fry are collected from estuaries and transferred directly to freshwater without acclimation. The young tarpon attain lengths of 35 to 40 cm in the first year. Under very favorable conditions in brackish water, this size has been reached in 18 weeks. The principal use of tarpon is as a converter of coarse fish in heavily populated ponds. Even this role seems of doubtful value as, in the Western world at least, tarpon itself is regarded as a coarse fish and scarcely considered edible.

The most complete survey of brackish water pond fish fauna has been

carried out in the tambaks used to rear milkfish in Java Among the fishes present and already discussed are mullet, *Therapon* spp, cock up, grouper, tarpon, and ten pounders Others of possible value as food fish include bonefish (*Albula vulpes*), synbranchoid eels (*Monopterus alba*), barracuda (*Sphyraena jello*), spotted scats (*Scatophagus argus*), and various catfishes, including *Plotosus canius, Plotosus anguillaris, Arius leptaspis,* and *Arius maculatus*

Under normal circumstances, with milkfish as the principal crop, these fishes may contribute an additional 30 kg/(ha)(year) to the yield of a tambak. In order to avoid possible losses of expensive milkfish, tambaks in the early stages of construction or those with weakened dikes are often stocked exclusively with 'extraneous fishes, in which case yields of 100 to 150 kg/ha may be expected

IN THE UNITED STATES

Culture of marine and brackish water fishes has only recently begun to attract the attention of large numbers of workers in the United States A pioneer in American marine fish culture was G Robert Lunz, of Bear's Bluff Laboratories, Wadmalaw Island, South Carolina. Lunz's experimental culture methods, while anything but intensive, illustrate the potential of saltwater pond fish culture in the southeastern United States.

Lunz maintained a 0 6-ha saltwater pond, averaging about 0 75 m deep, equipped with an automatic sluice gate, and allowed it to be stocked with fish on the incoming tide. On five different occasions from 1947 to 1951 he was able to produce 55 to 130 kg of marketable fish, not counting oysters, crabs, and shrimp, in growing periods of 6 to 13 months Average production, prorated for a 12 month period, was 206 kg/ha This was achieved without species selection, predator or disease control, fertilization, or feeding

The only fish that comprised a significant proportion of every harvest at Bear's Bluff Laboratories were mullet Spotted sea trout (*Cynoscion nebulosus*) spot (*Leiostomus xanthurus*), and black drum (*Pogonias cromis*) were usually present in significant amounts while ladyfish (*Elops saurus*) and red drum (*Sciaenops ocellata*) were each important in one harvest. Also present in small quantities on some occasions were weakfish (*Cynoscion regalis*), Atlantic croaker (*Micropogon undulatus*), silver perch (*Bairdiella chrysura*), pigfish (*Orthopristis chrysopterus*) sea bass (*Centropristes* spp) and sheepshead (*Archosargus probatocephalus*)

More recent attempts at brackish water aquaculture in the United States have concentrated on high priced luxury products such as pompano and

various species of shrimp (Chapters 27 and 32, respectively). In nearly every case where these animals have been experimentally cultured, large amounts of extraneous fishes, sometimes exceeding the cultivated species in numbers and weight, have been harvested. In one case where spotted sea trout invaded a shrimp pond and wiped out the shrimp, 448 kg/ha of sea trout were produced. This species would appear to have excellent potential for culture, were it not for its extreme fragility with respect to handling. Other species of potential value which have been produced include gag (*Mycteroperca microlepis*), gray snapper (*Lutjanus griseus*), crevalle jack (*Caranx hippos*), spotfin mojarra (*Eucinostomus argenteus*), kingfish (*Menticirrhus* spp.), pinfish (*Lagodon rhomboides*), great barracuda (*Sphyraena barracuda*), and flounder (*Paralichthys* spp.).

The extraneous species are mentioned in the hope that some of them will be found suitable for intensive culture. North American mariculturists, seemingly obsessed with the notion of producing a gourmet product, may be overlooking a number of valuable sources of food. A first step toward remedying this situation was recently taken by the Louisiana Wildlife and Fisheries Commission in cooperation with Louisiana State University. Their preliminary experiments with Atlantic croaker indicate that, although croakers of the size usually taken by commercial fishermen are of little value as human food, the species can be reared to a marketable size. Fingerlings 25 mm long, when stocked in ponds produced 300 kg/ha of marketable size fish in one growing season, without feeding. Current studies are concerned with the feasibility of supplemental feeding and overwintering in ponds. Similar experiments have recently been initiated with red drum.

PROSPECTUS

The ancient history of brackish water pond culture in southeast Asia, the Mediterranean, and Hawaii notwithstanding, culture of estuarine and inshore marine fishes is in its infancy. Both intensive monoculture, as recently practiced in Japan, and low intensity polyculture have great potential. Efforts should be made to introduce the latter technique to all coastal regions of the world, as it has the capability of producing large amounts of protein for human consumption with a minimum of expense and technological know-how. Both types of culture stand to benefit from a thorough investigation of the species which might be used. Certainly we have thus far utilized only a tiny minority of the cultivable fishes of the inshore environment.

REFERENCES

DAVIS, H S 1953 Culture and diseases in game fishes U of California Press, Berkeley, 332 pp

DE ANGELIS R 1960 Mediterranean brackish water lagoons and their exploitation General Fisheries Council for the Mediterranean Studies and Reviews, No 12

HORA, S L., and T V R. PILLAY 1962 Handbook on fish culture in the Indo Pacific region FAO Fisheries Biology Technical Paper 14 204 pp

LUNZ, B R 1951 A salt water fish pond Contribution from Bears Bluff Laboratories No 12 Bears Bluff Laboratories Wadmalaw Island, South Carolina

SCHUSTER, W H 1949 Fish culture in salt water ponds on Java Dept van Landbouw en Visserij Publicatie no 2 van der Orderafdeling Binnenvisserij

Interviews and Personal Communication

FUJIYA M Japanese Fisheries Agency

29
Japanese Yellowtail Culture

We remarked in the introduction (and we are by no means the first to make this observation) that aquaculture has lagged behind agriculture in its development; that man is essentially still a hunter of aquatic organisms rather than a farmer. This is especially true with respect to marine fishes While there are ancient historic examples of culture of freshwater and brackish water fishes, as well as marine invertebrates, marine fishes were strictly a fishery product until this century.

It is not surprising that the first people to practice culture of marine fishes were the Japanese, who derive a greater proportion of their food from the sea than any other major nation. Japanese researchers have at one time or another studied virtually every edible native marine fish with respect to its potential for culture, and a number of species are

experimentally or commercially cultured in Japan today, but the first species with which they had success on a commercial scale, and still by far the most important, is the yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*). A small, low intensity yellowtail culture enterprise has existed on the island of Shikoku in the Inland Sea since 1928, but the species did not assume major importance as a cultured fish until the 1960s.

SUITABILITY FOR CULTURE OF YELLOWTAIL

The yellowtail has a number of seeming disadvantages as a species for culture. It is a wide ranging, fast swimming, pelagic fish, which one would suppose not to be amenable to the close confinement necessary for fish culture, but, surprisingly, this has not presented a problem. It is also a highly piscivorous species, and one which biologists have thus far been unable to propagate artificially, even experimentally. Both of these factors are economically disadvantageous for yellowtail farmers, nevertheless, they are able to compete favorably with yellowtail fishermen.

COLLECTION OF FRY

Since yellowtail have not been bred in captivity, wild stock are the source of fry for culture. Adult yellowtail, which are found off Okinawa in March, migrate north in the spring to spawn off southern Kyushu in late April or early May. Soon after spawning larvae less than 15 mm long are brought near the coast by the Kuroshio current, captured by surrounding with fine mesh nets, and sold to fry specialists, who rear them to a size suitable for farming.

A special license is required to capture and sell yellowtail larvae, and the field is dominated by a few large operators, each of whom must abide by a catch limit set annually. The total limit for 1967 was 17 billion larvae. Thus overfishing of yellowtail larvae is not a problem, yet the demand for yellowtail has increased to the extent that the strictly regulated fishery is not able to supply it. The obvious solution to the problem is to develop means of artificially propagating yellowtail, but there is no assurance that this will be achieved in the near future.

The first task facing the fry specialist is to grade the larvae into small, medium, and large categories (see p. 409 for description of the method of grading small fish). If this is not done, up to 50% mortality may result from cannibalism.

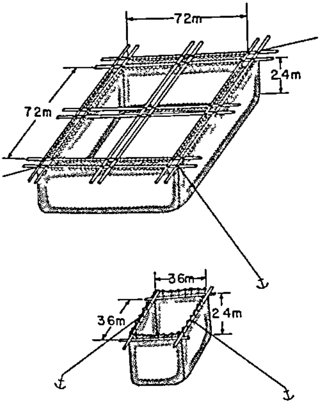


FIG 1 Floating net cage used in growing yellowtail in Japan (Courtesy of Teruo Harada Fisheries Laboratory Kinki University Wakyamaken Japan)

FRY REARING

After grading the larvae are stocked in floating nylon net cages, ranging from 2 to 50 m^2 in area and 1 to 3 m deep (Fig 1) The use of cages, both for fry rearing and for growing for market, has been the key to the success of yellowtail farming and is now being tested or adopted in a number of other types of fish culture Floating cages combine the advantages of small and large enclosures When fish are crowded into small spaces they burn fewer calories, consequently food conversion is more efficient And of course the smaller the enclosure the quicker and easier the harvest However, in conventional pond culture the lower size limit of a pond to be stocked with a given number of fish is determined by chemical factors principally the oxygen capacity of the water Assuming any significant amount of circulation, this does not hold true for floating cages While fish in cages are physically restrained in a very small area, the amount of clean, oxygenated water available is theoretically unlimited

Yellowtail cages, the location of which is strictly regulated by the prefectural governments, are set out in parallel rows They should be constantly tended, thus they are usually provided with platforms and a shelter for workers One man can look after 10 to 15 of the larger cages

As soon as the fry are ready to begin feeding they are started on

minced fish and/or shrimp Shrimp and white fleshed fish, such as sand eels and horse mackerel, which are low in oil and fat, are preferred to pink fleshed, oily fish but if, as sometimes happens, such fish are in short supply, anchovies may be substituted This is a dangerous practice, be cause yellowtail are not able to digest the unsaturated fatty acids in oily fish Up to 100% mortality has resulted when fry were experimentally fed exclusively on anchovies It is thought that some sort of dietary supple ment could eliminate this danger, but until such a substance is developed, yellowtail culturists are advised to feed anchovies and the like as seldom and as little as possible Some culturists stretch the supply of food fish by supplementing the diet of fry with zooplankton attracted into the net cages by lights suspended over them

The supply of food for yellowtail fry could be stabilized if there were a suitable artificial food, but none is commercially available Good re sults have been experimentally achieved at the Hiroshima Prefectural Fisheries Experiment Station with freeze-dried shrimp Small, commer cially valueless shrimp are dried, ground, sieved to remove bits of shell, mixed in a 1 1 ratio with water to produce a paste, and spread on a glass rod or plate for presentation to the fish

A problem sometimes encountered in 7 to 10-day old fry is the develop ment of calcium deposits in the form of urinary stones There is no known cure for this condition, which may be symptomatic of nutritional deficiencies, and it may cause 80 to 90% mortality

Fry sold for stocking in growing cages vary from 5 to 10 cm long and 8 to 50 g in weight, but those near the upper end of this range are pre ferred. Growth to this size usually requires 4 to 6 weeks in cages Fry specialists are usually located no more than 100 km from their customers, and transfer of stock could probably be accomplished by truck, but live boats are presently used An indication of the expansion of the yel lowtail culture industry is the fact that in 1955 200,000 fry were sold and stocked, while in 1960 20 million were supplied to growers

GROWING FOR MARKET

Growing for market is done in cages, 35 to 100 m² in area, 3 to 6 m deep, made of nylon or metal, and stocked with 40 to 100 yellowtail/m² (see Fig 1) In choosing a location for cages, the following factors must be taken into consideration

1 *Circulation* There must be sufficient exchange of water through the cages to wash away feces and uneaten food and ensure that dissolved oxygen concentrations are at least 3 ppm

2. Temperature. Yellowtail cease to grow below 15°C and die at 9°C. Culture is usually carried out at 18 to 29°C, and optimum temperatures are considered to be in the upper half of this range.

3. Salinity. Although yellowtail are pelagic fish, they do well at relatively low salinities. For best growth, cages should not be placed where the salinity drops below 16‰.

4. Pollution. When large-scale yellowtail farming was started, care was taken to select culture sites remote from sources of domestic, industrial, and agricultural pollution. It is clear, however, that pollution is going to be more of a problem in the future as Japan continues to grow and industrialize. Growers of piscivorous fish such as yellowtail have further cause for concern since it has been demonstrated that remoteness from agricultural lands does not completely protect their stock from contamination with pesticide residues via the food chain.

5. Protection from wind and waves. Cage culture sites should be located in sheltered waters.

6. Accessibility. It must be economically feasible to transport fry and food to the farm and ship marketable fish from it.

Feeding is as crucial in growing yellowtail for market as it is in fry culture, and the same general rules apply with regard to dry versus oily fish (see above). An indication of the importance of feeding in cage culture of yellowtail is the fact that 49.4% of the budget of the average farmer goes for food.

Artificial diets for the final phase of yellowtail culture are by no means perfected, but they are in more general use than is the case for fry culture. The best developed so far consists of at least 70% of fish meal, made from the same kinds of fish used to feed fry, with 5 to 10% of gluten as a binder. Other ingredients include a vitamin mix similar to that fed to chickens and catfish in the United States (see p. 170); minerals, especially iron and cobalt to prevent anemia; and the enzyme protease. This diet is prepared for feeding by mixing with water in a 1:1 ratio. The growth obtained on this mixture is not as good as that obtained by feeding fresh fish, but if the two foods are alternated, growth is better than if fresh fish alone is fed. Large-scale adoption of the artificial diet is presently retarded by its high cost, which will drop if yellowtail culture continues to expand. Another problem is that yellowtail do not respond well to food in pellet form. Research is now going on with the goal of finding a more suitable shape for food particles.

Considerable effort has been expended in determining how much and how often to feed. Japanese researchers, taking into account that growth, survival, and conversion are not all maximized at the same level of

minced fish and/or shrimp Shrimp and white fleshed fish such as sand eels and horse mackerel, which are low in oil and fat, are preferred to pink fleshed, oily fish but if, as sometimes happens, such fish are in short supply, anchovies may be substituted This is a dangerous practice, because yellowtail are not able to digest the unsaturated fatty acids in oily fish Up to 100% mortality has resulted when fry were experimentally fed exclusively on anchovies It is thought that some sort of dietary supplement could eliminate this danger, but until such a substance is developed, yellowtail culturists are advised to feed anchovies and the like as seldom and as little as possible Some culturists stretch the supply of food fish by supplementing the diet of fry with zooplankton attracted into the net cages by lights suspended over them

The supply of food for yellowtail fry could be stabilized if there were a suitable artificial food, but none is commercially available Good results have been experimentally achieved at the Hiroshima Prefectural Fisheries Experiment Station with freeze-dried shrimp Small, commercially valueless shrimp are dried, ground sieved to remove bits of shell mixed in a 1 1 ratio with water to produce a paste, and spread on a glass rod or plate for presentation to the fish

A problem sometimes encountered in 7 to 10-day old fry is the development of calcium deposits in the form of urinary stones There is no known cure for this condition which may be symptomatic of nutritional deficiencies and it may cause 80 to 90% mortality

Fry sold for stocking in growing cages vary from 5 to 10 cm long and 8 to 50 g in weight, but those near the upper end of this range are preferred Growth to this size usually requires 4 to 6 weeks in cages Fry specialists are usually located no more than 100 km from their customers, and transfer of stock could probably be accomplished by truck, but live boats are presently used An indication of the expansion of the yellowtail culture industry is the fact that in 1955 200 000 fry were sold and stocked, while in 1960 20 million were supplied to growers

GROWING FOR MARKET

Growing for market is done in cages, 35 to 100 m² in area, 3 to 6 m deep made of nylon or metal, and stocked with 40 to 100 yellowtail/m² (see Fig 1) In choosing a location for cages the following factors must be taken into consideration

1 Circulation There must be sufficient exchange of water through the cages to wash away feces and uneaten food and ensure that dissolved oxygen concentrations are at least 3 ppm

2. Temperature. Yellowtail cease to grow below 15°C and die at 9°C. Culture is usually carried out at 18 to 29°C, and optimum temperatures are considered to be in the upper half of this range.

3. Salinity. Although yellowtail are pelagic fish, they do well at relatively low salinities. For best growth, cages should not be placed where the salinity drops below 16‰.

4. Pollution. When large-scale yellowtail farming was started, care was taken to select culture sites remote from sources of domestic, industrial, and agricultural pollution. It is clear, however, that pollution is going to be more of a problem in the future as Japan continues to grow and industrialize. Growers of piscivorous fish such as yellowtail have further cause for concern since it has been demonstrated that remoteness from agricultural lands does not completely protect their stock from contamination with pesticide residues via the food chain.

5. Protection from wind and waves. Cage culture sites should be located in sheltered waters.

6. Accessibility. It must be economically feasible to transport fry and food to the farm and ship marketable fish from it.

Feeding is as crucial in growing yellowtail for market as it is in fry culture, and the same general rules apply with regard to dry versus oily fish (see above). An indication of the importance of feeding in cage culture of yellowtail is the fact that 49.4% of the budget of the average farmer goes for food.

Artificial diets for the final phase of yellowtail culture are by no means perfected, but they are in more general use than is the case for fry culture. The best developed so far consists of at least 70% of fish meal, made from the same kinds of fish used to feed fry, with 5 to 10% of gluten as a binder. Other ingredients include a vitamin mix similar to that fed to chickens and catfish in the United States (see p. 170); minerals, especially iron and cobalt to prevent anemia; and the enzyme protease. This diet is prepared for feeding by mixing with water in a 1:1 ratio. The growth obtained on this mixture is not as good as that obtained by feeding fresh fish, but if the two foods are alternated, growth is better than if fresh fish alone is fed. Large-scale adoption of the artificial diet is presently retarded by its high cost, which will drop if yellowtail culture continues to expand. Another problem is that yellowtail do not respond well to food in pellet form. Research is now going on with the goal of finding a more suitable shape for food particles.

Considerable effort has been expended in determining how much and how often to feed. Japanese researchers, taking into account that growth, survival, and conversion are not all maximized at the same level of

PLATE 1 Feeding small yellowtail in floating cage culture Japan (Courtesy Ziad Shehadeh, Oceanic Institute, Hawaii)

feeding, have concluded that the optimal feeding regime for yellowtail consists of two feedings daily, at about 0100 and 1400 hours, together amounting to 10% of the body weight of fish fed

Yellowtail in net cages grow remarkably rapidly By December, when they are generally harvested, the 8 to 50 g fry which were stocked in June are 30 to 50 cm long and weigh 1 0 to 1 5 kg or, occasionally, more A few fish may be left in the cages for several more months, perhaps until the start of the next farming season, at which time they are marketed as 40 to 60-cm fish weighing 2 to 3 kg This is done only in the southern most farms, where the water temperature is suitable for wintering, and accounts for only about 5% of the total production of cultured yellowtail

PROBLEMS

It has been found that if the organisms which inevitably attach them selves to the walls of net cages are not controlled, growth is retarded In addition, such organisms often harbor pathogens Therefore the nets are periodically replaced—every ten days for nylon nets, or every three months for metal ones

PLATE 2. One-kilogram yellowtail after harvest from floating cage.

Despite such precautions, diseases and parasites do occasionally occur. The commonest parasite is the flatworm *Bendenia seriolae,* which attaches to the skin. Infestation with *Bendenia* is prevented by dipping the stock in freshwater every 10 to 14 days. Since this worm matures very rapidly, to miss or postpone one of the treatments may allow it to get a foothold. If flatworms are found, they may be eliminated by exposing the fish to freshwater at 26°C for 3 min, or for 5 min at 16°C.

Axine heterocerca, a trematode sometimes found in the gills, which may cause a fatal anemia, may be cured with various drugs or, more simply, by placing the fish in strong salt water (100‰ salinity) for 2 to 4 min.

A greater danger is the bacterial disease vibriosis, which is similar to cholera. No cure for vibriosis has been perfected yet, though experimental results obtained by oral administration of sulfa drugs or antibiotics look promising. The best prevention is the usual—keep the fish well fed and in good condition.

PRODUCTION AND YIELD

Total production of cultured yellowtail has increased from 300 metric tons in 1958 to more than 30,000 metric tons in 1968. If only the area actually occupied by net cages is considered as being under culture, the

per hectare yields achieved at yellowtail farms are astronomical Estimates as high as 280 metric tons/ha have been made for farms which use a new rotary cropping system similar to that applied in culture of milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) in Taiwan (see Chapter 17) Even if the amount of unproductive water in any culture area is taken into consideration, the per hectare food yields of yellowtail farms must be among the highest ever obtained through aquaculture

MARKETING

Yellowtail farmers, mostly family groups find a ready market for their product, a staple food in Japan, and are able to realize middle-class incomes on the basis of less than one hectare of water A competitive factor in favor of yellowtail culturists, as opposed to fishermen, is that, contrary to the usual situation with cultured fish, their product is judged to taste better than wild fish.

Fishery-caught yellowtail are marketed in two separate size categories The larger fish called ' buri, have no counterpart in cultured yellowtail If only the small ' hamachi are considered, cultured yellowtail constituted 36% of the total sold at the Osaka fish market (a principal outlet) in 1965 If problems of feeding and fry supply are solved, this percentage will probably increase.

SIGNIFICANCE OF YELLOWTAIL CULTURE

Several species of *Seriola* are widely distributed in the warm waters of the Atlantic and Pacific, and it seems inevitable that eventually fish culturists in other nations will follow the Japanese lead and institute culture of *S quinqueradiata* or its congeners But the significance of the Japanese achievement with yellowtail goes far beyond the future of *Seriola* spp By successfully farming *S quinqueradiata*, Japanese fish culturists have demonstrated two important points

1 Marine fish can be intensively cultured. (Truly intensive culture would, of course, include propagation in captivity, this has not yet been achieved with yellowtail, but other marine fish are being bred in captivity in Japan, and yellowtail almost certainly will be eventually) In Japan, practical culturists, spurred by this success, are increasingly interested in other species of marine fish. While yellowtail remain the principal marine fish crop, other species already account for nearly 25% of

the total production of cultured marine fish. Outside Japan, experimental culture of marine fishes is increasingly taking place.

2. At least some species of pelagic schooling fishes can be cultured in close confinement. Already, it is being advocated that other pelagic species, even such large predators as tuna, be cultured. (See Chapter 30 for a survey of ideas in this area.)

Thus, the development in the 1960s of large-scale culture of yellowtail in Japan may be seen as having profound implications in terms of increasing the world food supply. If, however, the more pessimistic ecologists' prophecies with regard to the fate of the oceans, and particularly piscivorous fishes, come to pass, then Japanese yellowtail culture will be seen in retrospect as nothing more than a temporary, isolated phenomenon.

REFERENCES

Interviews and Personal Communication

FUJIYA, M. Japanese Fisheries Agency

30

Culture of Pelagic Fishes Other Than Yellowtail

INTRODUCTION AND RATIONALE

Fish culture probably began with freshwater pond fish When fish habitually or necessarily stay within a restricted area, it is reasonable to engage in feeding or other management activities with some expectation of realizing a return on the investment of time, labor, and capital Culture of fish of streams, estuaries, and the inshore oceans requires somewhat more elaborate precautions to ensure that the stock stays around for the

harvest but presents no insurmountable problems, and such fish also have a long history of culture But management, let alone culture, of truly pelagic fishes is quite another thing Confinement of such a fast moving, wide ranging animal as a tuna or a mackerel would seem to be unthinkable, and the efficacy of casting one's bread upon the open oceans in the hope that it will come back scaled is questionable indeed Even if pelagic fishes could be "herded," as some biologists have suggested, the three-dimensional nature of the oceanic environment would permit but little control of food supply, breeding, predation, and so on The maximum intensity of such management would be much less than that achieved with such relatively unrestricted beasts as, say, range cattle

In the 1960s, however, Japanese fish culturists exploded all the preconceived notions about culture of pelagic fishes When cage culture of the large, fast swimming, piscivorous yellowtail (*Seriola quinqueradiata*) which had been occurring on a small scale since 1928, assumed major commercial importance, it was time for reevaluation of the potential role of pelagic fishes in aquaculture (See Chapter 29 for details on culture of yellowtail)

RESEARCH IN CALIFORNIA

The most extensive work to date on the special problems of culture of pelagic fishes has been carried out at the U S National Marine Fisheries Service Laboratory at La Jolla California, where more than 20 species of marine fish have been hatched and reared to the adult form in captivity Many of the species cultured experimentally are of little commercial value but, as most pelagic fishes have similar life histories and ecological requirements, much has been learned that will be of value in future attempts to culture pelagic fishes

OBTAINING AND HATCHING EGGS

Most pelagic fishes and some other saltwater fishes lay pelagic eggs Hatching such eggs is not particularly difficult, the crucial factor being the specific gravity of the water, which must be greater than that of the eggs, so that they will float during development Once a suitable water supply is secured, it is merely a matter of regulating environmental parameters to suit the species being reared The requirements of many species were worked out in the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries by biologists of the U S Fish Commission

Obtaining eggs is somewhat more problematical, and with most species

biologists are still dependent on wild brood stock However, it seems only a matter of time until suitable techniques of hormone induced spawning are worked out for the commercially important marine fishes as they have been for so many freshwater species

MAINTAINING EARLY LARVAE

More difficult problems are encountered in attempting to culture the larvae of pelagic fishes At hatching, such larvae are in a prolarval or embryonic condition lacking pigmented eyes and have an incomplete digestive system A second period of development is undergone during which egg yolk is gradually assimilated. Prolarvae are passively active while drifting in the sea They do not have sustained powers of directed swimming but have the capability of sensing the approach of planktonic predators and avoiding the near surface water during periods of strong sunlight.

FEEDING OLDER LARVAE AND FRY

As egg yolk is used up in growth and metabolic processes, the retina of the eye becomes pigmented a functional mouth and digestive system develop and the prolarva approaches the true larval stage at which it is capable of directed swimming and capturing food organisms

The onset of the true larval phase seems to occur at one of two distinct stages of egg yolk depletion, depending on the species In one group of pelagic larvae, the feeding instinct manifests itself prior to complete utilization of egg yolk These larvae have a built in aid to survival in that an energy deficit, caused by lack of food, can be reduced by drawing *on the remaining yolk reserve*

A second group of pelagic larvae do not begin feeding until all egg yolk has been absorbed. These larvae, *to survive, must find food within a short* time because the only energy source available for swimming and physiological processes comes from absorption of body tissues A second noteworthy feature, which might be characteristic of this group of larvae, is that in all of the species reared to date, onset of feeding occurred in fish at a very small size The food organisms eaten are also small For example, the European plaice (*Pleuronectes platessa*), which begins feeding at approximately 7 mm in length, while some yolk remains in reserve, is able to consume food organisms as large as 0 3 mm in diameter The Pacific sardine (*Sardinops caerula*) however, which does not begin feeding until all yolk is absorbed at a length of 5 5 mm, is able to consume

organisms not much larger than 0.08 mm in diameter. Many of the species in the group which start feeding late, such as Pacific mackerel (*Pneumatophorus diego*), Pacific barracuda (*Sphyraena argentea*), Northern anchovy (*Engraulis mordax*), and jack mackerel (*Trachurus symmetricus*), range in size from 3 to 4 mm at onset of feeding and feed on organisms smaller than 0.05 mm in diameter. Also, being small larvae, their initial swimming endurance and range are limited.

Rearing these most difficult of pelagic larvae necessitated developing a technique for supplying very small food organisms, at the precise time of complete yolk absorption, and in sufficient quantities to allow larvae of low mobility to find food in all parts of the aquarium. The magnitude of the task can be assessed when it is learned that sardine larvae were observed to search only about 1 cm^3 of water per hour at onset of feeding but required a minimum of four food organisms per hour to replace energy lost in swimming and body functions. The 2300 liter aquaria, found most suitable for rearing this species, contain approximately 1,800,000 cm^3 of water. The staggering number of food organisms which must be supplied if high survival of larvae during the first 12 hours of active feeding is to be obtained is thus apparent.

A second major problem occurs in supplying food organisms in a series of increasing sizes. As the larvae grow, the optimum size of food organisms consumed increases, since larvae tend to seek out the largest organisms they can swallow.

The technical problems of supplying large quantities of food organisms in varying size ranges have been met, in part, by collecting them at night. A 1000 W underwater lamp connected to a submersible pump is suspended several feet below the surface of the sea. The strong light attracts copepods from a wide distance and concentrates them near the pump where they are sucked up with the water and transported to the surface. Plankton enriched water then passes through a series of filters which further concentrates food organisms and the highly enriched filtrate is piped to a 900 liter storage tank. This process collects organisms with a cross sectional diameter of 0.028 mm and larger. Prior to being fed to fish larvae, concentrated plankton is graded by filters to remove organisms larger than 0.10 mm. The portion containing large copepods, crab larvae, chaetognaths, and so on, may be fed to advanced fish fry and juveniles.

After larvae have grown large enough to consume zooplankters larger than 0.25 mm, supplemental feeding of brine shrimp (*Artemia*) eases the task of collecting an ever increasing supply of wild food organisms. *Artemia* eggs are hatched in the laboratory in a continuous series and provide a convenient but incomplete source of food for fish larvae.

GROWTH AND SUITABILITY OF VARIOUS SPECIES

Rate of growth in fish is governed by inherent individual and species gene potentials, which are, in turn, to a large degree moderated by water temperature. Quantity of food present in the environment plays a subordinate role as far as rate of larval growth is concerned; food must be present in sufficient amounts to offset the constant drain on body energy. Marine fish larvae do not seem to have much, if any, capacity for storing an energy reserve in the form of fat. Larvae held for a short time under suboptimal conditions rapidly develop lethal physiological disturbances. During the critical first days of active life, survival is a matter of balance between energy expended and energy obtained from food. The slight margin of energy obtained in excess of physiological needs is reflected in growth.

A slight increase in larval size is correlated to an increase in size of food particles eaten and in an ability to range further per minute of swimming in search of food. In short, efficiency of living increases with size. The mode this efficiency takes is, however, different in various types of fish larvae. For example, clupeoid species as Pacific sardine, northern anchovy, and a number of species of flatfish (Pleuronectidae and Bothidae) begin active life as long slender larvae. Other types of larva, such as Pacific and jack mackerel, Pacific barracuda, and tunalike fish, begin active life in a similar form but subsequent ontogeny of the two body types and food capacities are very dissimilar.

Soon after feeding begins (about 3.5 mm) the Pacific mackerel has developed a large head and capacious mouth. The sardine larva at this time is about 5.0 to 5.5 mm long and has a small head and mouth. The relative capabilities of the two types of oral apparatus may be seen in the progressive increases in food consumed by the Pacific mackerel type larva as compared to the sardine type.

At a length of 4.5 mm the Pacific mackerel might contain about 0.004 cm^3 of food. Assuming that the volume of the Pacific mackerel increases roughly with the cube of its length, then doubling its length would result in an eightfold increase of body volume; the volume of food, however, increases about 200 times. The sardine, while increasing in length from 4.0 to 7.0 mm, theoretically increases in bulk by a factor of about 5.4 times. Its average food volume increases during this growth only by a factor of 1.25 times. The sardine type larva requires approximately 30 days from onset of feeding to undergo metamorphosis to the adult body form, whereas the mackerel type larva metamorphoses to the adult form in approximately 7 days after onset of feeding.

POSSIBLE APPLICATION TO COMMERCIAL CULTURE

The factors influencing growth, as outlined, point to the potential of culturing species having a mackerel type development and growth. All of the pelagic, commercially valuable piscivorous species reared so far exhibit this type of development.

On the other hand, clupeoid fishes such as sardines and herring have the advantage of being able to digest carbohydrates, which more or less piscivorous pelagic fishes apparently cannot do. Thus advanced fry and adults can be fed on present commercial fish foods. This seeming advantage will probably be of less importance as new feeds, tailored to the needs of pelagic fishes, are developed to supplant the presently used trout pellets.

The fastest growth rates among pelagic fry have been recorded for such typically solitary piscivores as the Pacific barracuda, which has been grown from 4.5 to 35 mm in about 8 days after commencing piscivorous feeding—a doubling of length every 24 hours. Solitary fishes are ill suited for intensive culture, however, as, aside from their space requirements, they will accept only live fish as food. Schooling piscivores such as mackerel, on the other hand, may be easily stimulated to a "feeding frenzy," at which time they will take ground anchovy, squid, or other prepared foods.

Of the species studied at La Jolla, the best results have been obtained with the Pacific mackerel. The chief problem encountered has been heavy cannibalism, commencing at about 9 days after hatching, when the fry are about 10 mm long. Up to 50% population reduction has resulted, but it is believed that much of this could be averted in a more spacious environment.

Pacific mackerel fry, kept in a 2300 liter tank and grown on a diet of large copepods, adult brine shrimp, larvae of other fish, and each other, attained lengths of 25 mm in 16 days after hatching. At this stage they were transferred to a pool 4 m × 3 m × 1 m deep, where they were reared to the age of 3 months before various problems of a nonbiological nature caused a 75% mortality. A second, nearly total, mortality 3 months later terminated the experiment. The 6 month-old mackerel averaged 0.11 kg in weight and 20 cm in fork length. Based on the 311 mackerel that survived to the age of 6 months, the prorated yield of this experiment is tremendous—31,130 kg/ha.

Schooling fishes, in addition to being easiest to feed, are best suited to intensive culture since they are preadapted to crowding. The nervous temperament of many of these fishes may be less of a problem than might

be anticipated, as at least some species, when reared from early life under artificial conditions, do not exhibit the 'wild' or excitable behavior of their naturally grown counterparts but behave more like trout cultured in a trout pond A case in point is the successful rearing to the juvenile stage (80 mm) of the California flying fish (*Cypselurus californicus*) As far as can be learned, wild flying fish are extremely delicate and excitable and do not live long at any stage when placed in confinement When cultured from the egg, however, a remarkable behavioral adjustment to life in a small area is observed

THE JAPANESE TUNA CULTURE PROGRAM

Apart from yellowtail culture in Japan, growing of commercially important pelagic fishes to marketable size is largely in the realm of speculation A notable exception is the tuna culture program of the Japanese Fisheries Agency In addition to experimental breeding and hatching of bluefin tuna (*Thunnus thynnus*), this agency has inaugurated a tuna rearing experiment at Shizuoka Prefectural Fisheries Experimental Station The immediate objective is to rear 0 3 to 0 5-kg 1 year-old tuna, captured in set nets, to marketable size (2 to 8 kg) 2 year-olds The ultimate goal is to rear tuna to maturity and achieve reproduction under controlled conditions The initial experiments will involve 200 tuna, divided between two octagonal floating pens, 5 m on a side and 9 m deep It is not known whether adequate food can be provided or whether the fish will survive winter water temperatures which sometimes drop to 12°C

If tuna culture in floating cages proves unfeasible, the suggestion of M Inoue of the Fishery Research Laboratory, at Tokai, that tuna be reared in atolls and lagoons in the tropical Pacific may yet be heeded

RESEARCH OR SPECULATION WITH OTHER SPECIES

The only other pelagic fish which is remotely near the threshold of practical culture is the bluefish (*Pomatomus saltatrix*) which is being experimentally grown in tanks at the University of Rhode Island

Artificial fertilization, hatching, and limited larval rearing of a number of pelagic fishes, including the Atka mackerel (*Pleurogrammus azonus*) and the Pacific saury (*Cololabis saira*), has been achieved in Japan, but no attempts have been made to apply the results to practical culture

Efforts have been made to rear artificially propagated yellowfin tuna (*Thunnus albacares*), but larvae have survived no longer than 20 days

As mentioned, the suitability for culture of clupeoid fishes is reduced by the nature of their larval development A number of species, particularly the oceanic herring (*Clupea harengus*), are commercially valuable, however, and some effort has been made to culture them Eggs of the Baltic herring (*C harengus membras*) have been artificially fertilized in the Soviet Union as a means of transporting this delicate fish from its native Baltic Sea to the Aral Sea for the purpose of introduction So far as is known, more intensive culture is not contemplated

About 1960, in Scotland, it was demonstrated that sperm of the oceanic herring could be preserved for long periods, so that hybridization of the many subspecies and races of this widely distributed fish would be possible The problems involved in rearing the larvae have also been studied, and a few individuals have been reared past the point of metamorphosis to the adult form This work has apparently not been followed by attempts at large scale culture

PROSPECTUS

It has been suggested that some of the coral atoll lagoons in the tropical Pacific might be converted into fish farms, an idea which at first appears attractive However, schemes thus far proposed have involved organic enrichment of the lagoons Recent experience in Hawaii has shown that sewage may be lethal to the tiny coral animals which construct and maintain the Pacific atolls In some cases mortality has been attributed directly to the toxic effect of the sewage, in others excessive algal growth resulting from organic enrichment has been blamed Addition of fertilizers undoubtedly would have a similar effect Even the enrichment resulting from artificial feeding and high density stocking of fish might eventually destroy the coral Thus atoll farming, advocated as a means of increasing the world protein supply, might in fact only succeed in reducing the protein available to the peoples of the Pacific islands, while simultaneously destroying biological communities of great scientific and esthetic interest Certainly no major efforts at atoll farming should be made unless preceded by careful long term pilot studies

With the problems of larval culture and controlled reproduction well on the way to solution, practical culture of pelagic fishes other than yellowtail seems more and more likely to become a reality For the present, the Japanese method of cage growing seems most likely to

succeed in enabling culturists to supply some of these fishes more cheaply and reliably than fishermen who must hunt corral and capture them

REFERENCES

ROEDEL P M 1953 Common ocean fishes off the California coast California Department of Fish and Game Fisheries Bulletin 91

ROLLEFSEN G 1938–39 Artificial rearing of fry of seawater fish Rapp et Proc Verb Cons Internat Explor Mer 109 133–134

YUSA T 1960 Embryonic development of the Saury *Cololabis saira* (Brevoort) Bulletin of the Tohoku Regional Fisheries Research Laboratory 7

YUSA T 1967 Embryonic development and larvae of the Atka Mackerel *Pleurogrammus azonus* Jordan et Metz Sci Rep Tohoku U., 4th Series Biology Vol XXXIII 3–4

Interviews and Personal Communication

SCHUMANN G San Diego Gas and Electric Co San Diego California

Culture of Marine Flatfishes

The flatfishes (order Pleuronectiformes) include a number of valuable
food fishes, marketed as plaice, sole, flounder, halibut, and turbot. As
a group, they are among the most commercially important fish of North
Temperate waters. Since they inhabit chiefly shallow waters, are gen
erally hardy, and, unlike most of the marine commercial fishes, are
somewhat sedentary, they were among the first marine fishes to be ex
perimentally cultured.

A number of important flatfish fishing grounds showed evidence of
slight environmental deterioration and/or overfishing as early as the
last half of the nineteenth century. In an effort to maintain these fisheries,
several species of flatfish were artificially propagated and larvae stocked
along both shores of the Atlantic during the 1890s and the early part

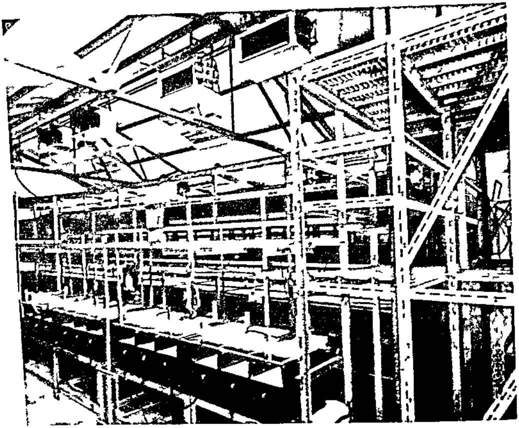


PLATE 1 Internal view of Port Erin flatfish hatchery showing racked incubation tanks (Courtesy C E Nash)

of this century Although plaice (*Pleuronectes platessa*) have been thus cultured and stocked in Norway for 60 years the efficacy of the practice is questionable, and it was long ago discontinued in most countries Almost all of the recent progress in flatfish culture has been made in the United Kingdom, under the aegis of the White Fish Authority

Research on more or less intensive culture of flatfishes in the United Kingdom began during World War II No serious problems were encountered in most phases of culture but, before 1962 no more than 10% of larvae in hatcheries could be reared to metamorphosis In 1962, flatfish culture was revolutionized by James Shelbourne, then at the Fisheries Laboratory, Lowestoft, England Shelbourne discovered that the main cause of heavy mortality of larvae was a form of bacteria By adding a mixture of penicillin and streptomycin to the hatching tanks, he was able to control these bacteria and rear 60 to 80% of the larvae to metamorphosis As cultured stocks become generations removed from wild fish, this antibiotic treatment may lead to lowered disease resistance, but there is no sign of such a phenomenon yet.

Since Shelbourne's breakthrough, the center of flatfish culture has shifted from Lowestoft to Port Erin, on the Isle of Man. A pilot hatchery built there by the British White Fish Authority was so successful that it functioned as a supply station for the other field stations which have been established (Plate 1). At present, flatfish culture in Great Britain has been restricted by limited financial support for development of hatcheries

HATCHERY CULTURE IN THE UNITED KINGDOM

SPECIES USED

The species of flatfish chosen by the White Fish Authority for their initial culture experiments was the plaice, but sole (*Solea solea*) were subsequently found to be hardier and better suited to growing at high temperatures, as well as bringing twice the price, and both species are now cultured. Other flatfish, including turbot (*Scophthalmus maximus*), and lemon sole (*Microstomus kitt*) have been bred in captivity, using the techniques to be described here for plaice and sole, but to date suitable foods have not been found for the fry of these species. Both of the principal cultured species are cold water, benthic carnivores which require an oceanic salinity of about 35‰.

SPAWNING

Brood stock at Port Erin are kept in outdoor ponds and, for the spawning season (February to May), transferred to indoor tanks, 4 2 m square and 1 2 m deep, where spawning occurs naturally from February to May without any manipulation of the animals The floating eggs are scooped off the surface and hatched separately. Spawning tanks, like all tanks at the hatchery, are supplied with recirculating, ultraviolet sterilized sea water, which has passed through plastic pipes only. A shallow layer of sand may be kept on the bottom of each tank, since captive flatfish are much less uneasy if they can partially bury themselves.

HATCHING AND FRY REARING

The hatching and fry rearing troughs, some of which have individual temperature control units, are 4.9m × 1.2 m × 1.2 m deep. Each tank is stocked with 30 to 40,000 eggs. Hatching requires 3 weeks at 6°C, and metamorphosis to the benthic form occurs 6 to 7 weeks later. Handling of all life stages is minimized by keeping the fish in the hatching tanks throughout culture. When it is necessary to transfer larvae or fry it may

2 To investigate the use of enclosed natural areas for growing flatfish, with fertilization of the water and/or supplementary feeding
3 To experiment with intensive culture in heated water

STOCKING TO AUGMENT FISHERIES

Experience had already shown that stocking flatfish larvae accomplished nothing other than to provide a free meal for various predators However, at the time when flatfish stocking was common practice, it was not possible to rear the larvae through metamorphosis, thus stocking of fry had never been tested Accordingly, considerable numbers of fry were stocked in the Irish Sea They fared no better than the previously stocked larvae It was noticed that the behavior of hatchery reared fry was altered, that they did not "know' how to cover themselves with sand, as wild fish do, to elude predators Whether or not this behavior was a crucial factor in their high mortality, the stocking program was abandoned

Actual stocking and yield data on the Irish Sea experiments are scarce, but the results of computer calculations made by Saul Saila of the University of Rhode Island s Aquatic Sciences Information Retrieval Center are of interest Saila estimated the numbers of small winter flounders (*Pseudopleuronectes americanus*) which would have to be stocked to affect the fishery for that species in Rhode Island Given the average annual fishery yield of 900,000 kg, it would require 22,500 kg of juvenile flounders, or several billion individuals, to increase the fishery yield by 10% The additional fish would not come close to offsetting the expenses of hatchery culture

CULTURE OF MARKETABLE SIZE FISH

The results of attempts to culture marketable size plaice and sole have been more encouraging The first attempts at growing hatchery reared plaice fry to marketable size were based on work done during World War II by Fabius Gross of Edinburgh University Gross found that, by fertilizing an enclosed sea loch with superphosphate and sodium nitrate, it was possible to grow flatfish two to four times as rapidly as in untreated waters, but his work was restricted by the scarcity of young fish for stocking

With hatchery techniques perfected, fry supplies ceased to be a problem and in 1965 the White Fish Authority established another field station at Ardtoe, Scotland, where a 2 ha loch was dammed and stocked with 200,000 young plaice (Plate 2) In lieu of fertilization, the fish were fed with chopped mussels and trash fish Problems were numerous the

be done by means of a vertical overflow system, or by simply partitioning off the tank.

The newly hatched larvae are planktonic (otherwise there would be no need for the hatching tanks to be so deep) and commence to feed a few days after hatching. Provision of proper food at this time is very critical. The only known suitable food for young plaice and sole larvae is brine shrimp (*Artemia*) and even brine shrimp are not accepted by some other flatfish. For reasons which are not understood, but may have to do with pesticide residues, the source of the brine shrimp eggs is also critical. In 1966, when the White Fish Authority switched suppliers and purchased Utah eggs instead of the California eggs they had been using, only 3000 plaice and 5000 sole out of an expected crop of 100,000 of each species survived.

At first each young flatfish requires about 10 newly hatched brine shrimp a day, but larger larvae may take 200 daily. To cope with the almost continuous feeding required, the Port Erin hatchery is equipped with highly sophisticated automated brine shrimp incubator feeder units.

Although brine shrimp are absolutely essential for very young larvae, British biologists attempt to wean plaice and sole larvae from brine shrimp as soon as possible, and certainly before metamorphosis. A good intermediate food has been found in the form of an oligochaete worm which inhabits the North Sea tidal zone, but automated techniques for its continuous culture have yet to be developed, and natural stocks are limited. After metamorphosis, the fry are fed on chopped mussels or fish until they are 3 cm long, at which time they are shipped to one of the White Fish Authority's other field stations for stocking in growing enclosures.

It has been found that shipping 3- to 4-day-old eggs is much more feasible than shipping young flatfish. Thousands of eggs can be shipped in a 3-liter flask, whereas at best hundreds of fry can be accommodated in a similar amount of space. It is expected that, once hatchery operations at other stations become as efficient as those at Port Erin, shipping of eggs and fry can be eliminated.

OBJECTIVES OF THE BRITISH WHITE FISH AUTHORITY IN CULTURING FLATFISH

The original objectives of the White Fish Authority in culturing flatfishes were threefold:

1. To investigate the feasibility of augmenting fisheries by stocking flatfish fry.

2. To investigate the use of enclosed natural areas for growing flatfish, with fertilization of the water and/or supplementary feeding.
3. To experiment with intensive culture in heated water.

STOCKING TO AUGMENT FISHERIES

Experience had already shown that stocking flatfish larvae accomplished nothing other than to provide a free meal for various predators. However, at the time when flatfish stocking was common practice, it was not possible to rear the larvae through metamorphosis, thus stocking of fry had never been tested. Accordingly, considerable numbers of fry were stocked in the Irish Sea. They fared no better than the previously stocked larvae. It was noticed that the behavior of hatchery-reared fry was altered, that they did not "know" how to cover themselves with sand, as wild fish do, to elude predators. Whether or not this behavior was a crucial factor in their high mortality, the stocking program was abandoned.

Actual stocking and yield data on the Irish Sea experiments are scarce, but the results of computer calculations made by Saul Saila of the University of Rhode Island's Aquatic Sciences Information Retrieval Center are of interest. Saila estimated the numbers of small winter flounders (*Pseudopleuronectes americanus*) which would have to be stocked to affect the fishery for that species in Rhode Island. Given the average annual fishery yield of 900,000 kg, it would require 22,500 kg of juvenile flounders, or several billion individuals, to increase the fishery yield by 10%. The additional fish would not come close to offsetting the expenses of hatchery culture.

CULTURE OF MARKETABLE SIZE FISH

The results of attempts to culture marketable size plaice and sole have been more encouraging. The first attempts at growing hatchery-reared plaice fry to marketable size were based on work done during World War II by Fabius Gross of Edinburgh University. Gross found that, by fertilizing an enclosed sea loch with superphosphate and sodium nitrate, it was possible to grow flatfish two to four times as rapidly as in untreated waters, but his work was restricted by the scarcity of young fish for stocking.

With hatchery techniques perfected, fry supplies ceased to be a problem, and in 1965 the White Fish Authority established another field station at Ardtoe, Scotland, where a 2-ha loch was dammed and stocked with 200,000 young plaice (Plate 2). In lieu of fertilization, the fish were fed with chopped mussels and trash fish. Problems were numerous the

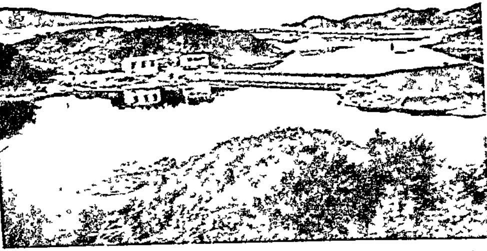


PLATE 2. General view of a Scottish loch, part of which is enclosed for flatfish culture. (Courtesy C. E. Nash.)

first year: heavy rainfall and surface runoff diluted the sea water (plaice are particularly sensitive to low salinities), rotting vegetation caused oxygen depletion; and predators and competitors ran rampant. As one worker put it, "We had found an excellent way of growing the shore crab."

Nevertheless, the culturists at Ardtoe persisted, and in 1968 the first crop of marketable fish was produced. It was decided that the original enclosure was too large, and experiments are now carried out in smaller enclosures, both within the original 2 ha loch and in the sea. Net cages are also being used. Control of predation and salinity are still of concern, but the principal stumbling block to commercial feasibility at this time is conversion of food. It is estimated that it takes 5 kg of food to produce 1 kg of plaice or sole (wet weight). While high from an ecological viewpoint, such a conversion rate does not favor economical mass rearing.

CULTURE IN HEATED WATER

More intensive culture of plaice and sole, in artificially heated water, began in 1966 at a nuclear power plant at Hunterston, Scotland (Plate 3). Sea water at Hunterston ranges in temperature from 9.5 to 16.4°C

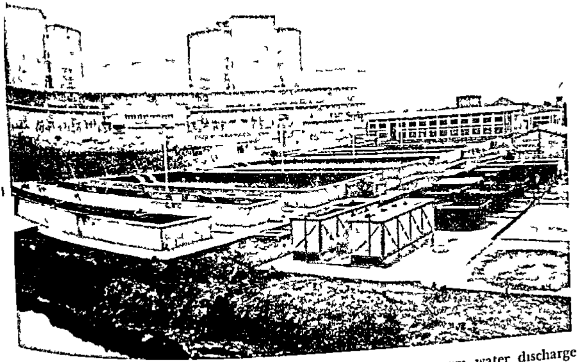


PLATE 3 Experimental ponds for rearing plaice and sole in warm water discharge from Hunterston nuclear power plant, Scotland (Courtesy C E Nash)

in the summer and gets as cold as 3°C during the winter At such low temperatures, growth of most fish, including plaice and sole, all but ceases The power plant effluent temperature ranges from 10 to 23°C and, by mixing it with sea water, temperatures can be maintained such that plaice and sole will grow throughout the year.

The original installation at Hunterston consisted of no more than four cement tanks, each 14 4 m × 7.2 m × 1.2 m deep In 1968, hatchery facilities were added, and plaice and sole are now spawned, hatched, and reared in heated water. The results have been remarkable. Growth in the early stages was accelerated and larvae metamorphosed within 3 weeks of hatching rather than taking 6 to 7 weeks as is required at the Port Erin hatchery. Growth of juveniles and adults was equally impressive (Plates 4 and 5). Sole stocked as 3.5-cm fish at 325 to 900/m² reached an average length of 15.3 cm and a maximum of 23 3 cm in 11 months Similar growth was achieved by plaice. Minimum marketable length for both species is about 20 cm, which size they attain in 3 to 4 years in nature. The experiments at Hunterston have shown that it is possible to produce cultured fish of this size in 2 years or less.

The studies thus far carried out on culture of flatfishes in thermal

PLATE 4. Ten-week-old plaice (*Pleuronectes platessa*) which have completed metamorphosis at Hunterston station. Note variety of pigmentation cover. (Courtesy C. E. Nash.)

effluent have by no means provided the last word on the subject. The maximum temperatures tolerated by plaice and sole are about 20 and 23°C, respectively; however, the optimum temperatures for culture of these fish are not known. By careful manipulation of the thermal regime, growth may eventually be further accelerated or thermal requirements may be altered by selective breeding and/or hybridization.

There was some concern about possible effects on flatfishes of the low concentrations of chlorine routinely introduced into power plant effluents to prevent fouling of pipes by sessile marine organisms. No ill effects have been observed, however, and, although the chemistry of chlorine in such situations is poorly understood, there are no indications that its use would in any way endanger human consumers of cultured flatfish. It may even have a positive effect by suppressing the growth of disease-causing bacteria. To avert another potential health hazard, fish reared in nuclear plant effluent should constantly be monitored for radioactivity.

CULTURE OF FLATFISH OUTSIDE THE UNITED KINGDOM

The achievements of the White Fish Authority have drawn the attention of fish culturists outside the United Kingdom, but so far no one has been

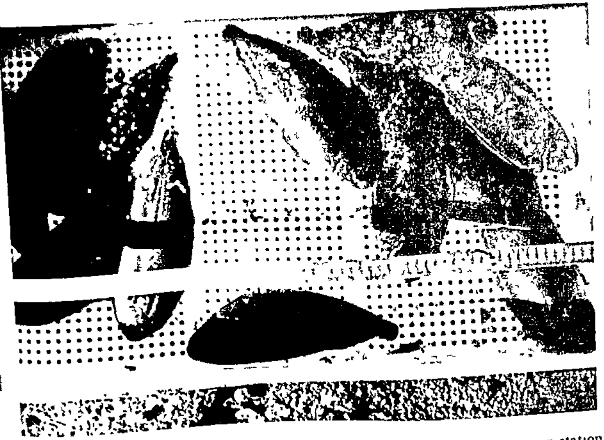


PLATE 5. Dover sole reach marketable size at 20 months of rearing in power station warm water discharge (Courtesy C. E. Nash.)

moved to emulate the British effort. As mentioned, Norwegian culturists continue to breed plaice as well as the river flounder (*Pleuronectes flesus*), but they are still concentrating on improvement of hatchery techniques. In Japan, a number of commercially valuable flatfishes, including the mud dab (*Limanda yokohamae*), the starry flounder (*Platichthys stellatus*), *Lepidopsetta mochigarei*, *Limanda schrenki*, and *Xystreurys grigorjewi*, have been artificially spawned and hatched, but there are no indications that this achievement is to be applied to commercial culture.

Perhaps the next country to take up intensive culture of flatfish will be Denmark, That country's Limfjord, although it has no indigenous plaice, is ideally suited for their growth. Yearling and two-year-old plaice, harvested from the North Sea, have been stocked in the Limfjord at least since the 1920s, and perhaps as far back as 1910, and now support a sizable fishery. Since plaice for some reason do not spawn in the Limfjord, stocking is of necessity an annual affair. At the time the stocking program began, the North Sea was abundantly supplied, perhaps even overpopulated, with plaice. This is no longer the case, thus it may become necessary for Denmark to construct her own plaice hatcheries.

PLATE 4 Ten week-old plaice (*Pleuronectes platessa*) which have completed metamorphosis at Hunterston station Note variety of pigmentation on cover (Courtesy C E Nash)

effluent have by no means provided the last word on the subject The maximum temperatures tolerated by plaice and sole are about 20 and 23°C respectively however the optimum temperatures for culture of these fish are not known By careful manipulation of the thermal regime growth may eventually be further accelerated or thermal requirements may be altered by selective breeding and/or hybridization

There was some concern about possible effects on flatfishes of the low concentrations of chlorine routinely introduced into power plant effluents to prevent fouling of pipes by sessile marine organisms No ill effects have been observed however and although the chemistry of chlorine in such situations is poorly understood there are no indications that its use would in any way endanger human consumers of cultured flatfish It may even have a positive effect by suppressing the growth of disease causing bacteria To avert another potential health hazard fish reared in nuclear plant effluent should constantly be monitored for radioactivity

CULTURE OF FLATFISH OUTSIDE THE UNITED KINGDOM

The achievements of the White Fish Authority have drawn the attention of fish culturists outside the United Kingdom but so far no one has been

PLATE 5 Dover sole reach marketable size at 20 months of rearing in power station warm water discharge (Courtesy C E Nash)

moved to emulate the British effort. As mentioned, Norwegian culturists continue to breed plaice as well as the river flounder (*Pleuronectes flesus*), but they are still concentrating on improvement of hatchery techniques. In Japan, a number of commercially valuable flatfishes, including the mud dab (*Limanda yokohamae*), the starry flounder (*Platichthys stellatus*), *Lepidopsetta mochigarei*, *Limanda schrenki*, and *Xystreurys grigorjewi*, have been artificially spawned and hatched, but there are no indications that this achievement is to be applied to commercial culture.

Perhaps the next country to take up intensive culture of flatfish will be Denmark. That country's Limfjord, although it has no indigenous plaice, is ideally suited for their growth. Yearling and two-year-old plaice, harvested from the North Sea, have been stocked in the Limfjord at least since the 1920s, and perhaps as far back as 1910, and now support a sizable fishery. Since plaice for some reason do not spawn in the Limfjord, stocking is of necessity an annual affair. At the time the stocking program began, the North Sea was abundantly supplied, perhaps even overpopulated, with plaice. This is no longer the case, thus it may become necessary for Denmark to construct her own plaice hatcheries.

PROSPECTUS

Further developments are to be expected in the United Kingdom It has already been mentioned that much remains to be learned about the thermal requirements of flatfish The same applies to stocking densities and feeding

It is apparent that plaice and sole are quite tolerant of crowding Not only has good growth been achieved at initial densities of up to 90(fry/m² at the Hunterston station, but these fish have remained completely free of disease It is likely that even better growth can be achieved at lower densities This is probably not inconsistent with economic considerations if Shelbourne's estimate is correct He calculates that if each flatfish were allotted 1 ft² (0 09 m²) of bottom, an amount equal to the entire British fishery catch could be produced annually in ponds covering 326 ha

Important as thermal regimes and stocking densities are, it is probabl feeding which is most crucial to the success of flatfish culture Develop ment of relatively inexpensive, high protein prepared foods in pelle form has been part of the key to success in culture of other carnivorou fishes and should be pursued in the case of flatfishes

Other possibilities for improvement of flatfish culture include intro duction of new species, hybridization, selective breeding polyculture and new developments in marketing and engineering The last two wil of necessity involve cooperation with personnel other than biologists an professional fish culturists The success of the White Fish Authority s far already constitutes an outstanding example of profitable collaboratio between biologists and engineers

With respect to marketing, the situation with flatfishes in the Unite Kingdom is somewhat different from that in some other fish culture in dustries, where the culturist is in direct competition with commercia fishermen The mandate of the White Fish Authority is to aid in main taining a steady supply of flatfish for the British consumer, they see to supplement the fishery, not compete with it

Nevertheless, in the course of experimental culture of plaice, on development has occurred which could eventually provide culturists wit an economic advantage over fishermen Many cultured plaice show pig ment abnormalities in the form of white patches The cause of th discoloration is not known but it is thought that handling of youn fry results in the loss of patches of skin and that thereafter the fish canno properly lay down melanin in the damaged areas Such fry are of cours at a disadvantage in a natural environment due to their high visibilit